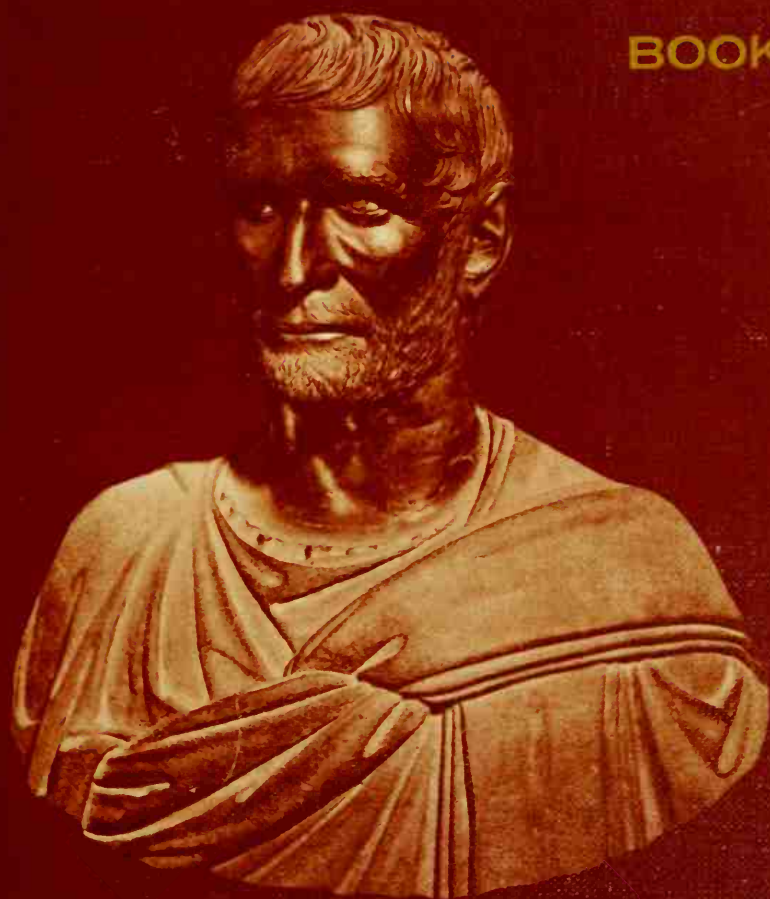


# LATIN

Our Living Heritage

BOOK I



Breslove

Hooper

Barrett

NEW JERSEY  
Union

Book No. \_\_\_\_\_  
Enter information  
in spaces  
to the left as  
instructed

[illegible]

1. Teachers should see that the pupil's name is clearly written in ink in the spaces above in every book issued.
2. The following terms should be used in recording of the condition of the book:  
**New; Good; Fair; Poor; Bad.**







Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2009

Revised Edition

# LATIN

## Our Living Heritage

BOOK I

David Breslove, M.A.  
Arthur G. Hooper, M.A., LL.D.  
Mary A. Barrett, M.A.



Drawings by Vernon Mould, A.O.C.A.

CHARLES E. MERRILL PUBLISHING CO.  
A Bell & Howell Company  
Columbus, Ohio

### COVER PHOTOGRAPH

Lucius Junius Brutus, with Collatinus, ruled as consul after the expulsion of the Tarquins, c. 500 B.C.

### MERRILL LATIN SERIES

- Latin: Our Living Heritage Book I  
*Breslove, Hooper, Barrett*
- Latin: Our Living Heritage Book II  
*Breslove, Hooper, Barrett*
- Latin: Our Living Heritage Book III  
*Gillingham, Barrett*
- An Ovid Reader  
*Gillingham, Baade*

ISBN 0-675-06248-9

Copyright © 1968, 1962 by  
CHARLES E. MERRILL PUBLISHING CO.  
A Bell & Howell Company  
Columbus, Ohio 43216

*All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced in any form, by any method whatsoever, without permission in writing from the publisher.*

Printed in the United States of America

## P R E F A C E

*Latin: Our Living Heritage*, Book I, has been prepared to meet the needs of beginning classes in all types of schools. The first six lessons are specifically designed to enable the student to learn to read or write a simple Latin sentence as soon as possible. The more frequently used cases are presented first with each case presented in its most general aspect. The principle of frequency of use has guided the presentation of forms throughout the text. As forms are presented they are used meaningfully. For example, the presentation of the future and future perfect tenses is deferred, because they are the least frequently used tenses. However, when these tenses are given in Lessons 22 and 23, they are considered along with their use in *sī*, *nisi* and *cum* clauses.

The organization of the book provides for a flexibility of course to match individual differences of curricula and students. Of the 53 lessons, the first 43 contain all the material commonly considered adequate for a course in Latin which begins at the ninth-grade level. If the teacher desires, however, the class may proceed to the end of Lesson 50, thus completing the initial study of indirect discourse and deponent verbs. For classes at still higher levels of maturity or ability, or where the book is used for a two-year junior high school course, Lessons 51-53 provide an introduction to the subjunctive mood.

A Review Lesson follows every sixth or seventh lesson, thus providing frequent and detailed review. These review lessons contain vocabulary drills, grammar exercises, word study



exercises with use in English of Latin-derived words, exercises based on the English cultural readings and, beginning with the third Review Lesson, a sight reading adapted from one of the fables of Phaedrus.

From the second lesson the student is provided with connected readings. These have been placed first in the lesson so that the introduction to the new grammar may be made in context. The readings contain several dialogues and a playlet. These have been especially designed to stress the oral aspect of the reading and, with the questions in Latin that follow the readings, they serve to remind the student that Latin was a spoken tongue, that the Romans conversed in Latin.

Starting with the tenth lesson, most of the readings are stories based on Roman history, mainly adapted from Livy, or on Graeco-Roman mythology. The excerpts from Latin prose or poetry that, with Latin proverbs, form the chapter headings, give the student, even at a very early stage, some experience with "real" Latin.

The authors believe that the student can most effectively learn to pronounce Latin by hearing words spoken correctly by the teacher and by constant practice. If reading aloud in Latin is done daily by both teacher and student, few problems should arise. However, detailed rules of pronunciation are given in an introductory chapter.

Rules of syntax are stated clearly and are amply illustrated by example. Every effort has been made to state rules in direct, simple terms without compromising the accuracy of the definition.

Small points of importance are given special treatment: for example, the use of a plural verb with *castra* and of a singular verb with *populus Rōmānus*. Less frequently used forms that need not be learned at this stage by all students such as the future infinitive passive, are given as footnotes.

The subjunctive mood is presented in its independent uses, so that from the beginning the student may understand the essential function of the mood. This arrangement, both historically and logically sound, should simplify and clarify this

vital part of Latin grammar and usage when presented in the first year. However, since the subjunctive is usually deferred until the second year, a comprehensive treatment of all aspects will be given in Book II.

The vocabulary lists contained in the text present more than 800 words and phrases, of which approximately 700 are found in the first 43 lessons. The principal parts of verbs are usually given in unabbreviated form. The use of the supine as the fourth principal part of the verb corresponds to usual practice in Latin dictionaries and reference grammars. The genitives of all nouns of the third, fourth, and fifth declensions, and of other nouns where uncertainty may arise, are given in full.

Word study units occur frequently and are systematized to introduce the student, as early as possible, to the use of roots, prefixes and suffixes and to the simpler principles of vowel change. Thus they enable him to recognize new words easily and encourage him to build a vocabulary for himself.

The exercises have been expanded to include completion, substitution, and transposition drills, as well as the translation exercises from Latin to English and from English to Latin. In some instances, teachers will prefer to use only the drills, in some only the translation exercises, and in others a combination consisting of some of each. Any of these options will provide sufficient practice to reinforce the grammar and it will rarely be necessary to use all the exercises. However, the authors feel that a generous number of drills should be included to insure opportunity for extra practice.

Throughout the text, chapter headings, reading selections, forms, syntax, vocabulary, word study, drills and translation exercises have all been selected or devised to focus on one particular point. This correlation of material concentrates practice for mastery of the lesson objective.

The English readings on Roman life and history, the illustrations and maps contained within the text merit special mention. The maps serve to inform the student of the nature of the Roman world from city to empire. Drawings, by Vernon Mould, give an authentic glimpse of life in ancient Italy. Each has been based on material found in excavations

of Rome, Ostia, Herculaneum, and Pompeii, together with contemporary accounts of life at that time. The photographs, from a variety of sources, show the great buildings and other engineering triumphs as they are today, marred by ravages of time and war, yet still standing as an enduring reminder of the past.

The authors wish to acknowledge the invaluable assistance of Miss Maureen Shugrue, a teacher of Latin at Torrington High School who cooperated in the preparation of the new drills and exercises, and of the editorial staff at Charles E. Merrill Publishing Company.

D.B., A.H., M.B.

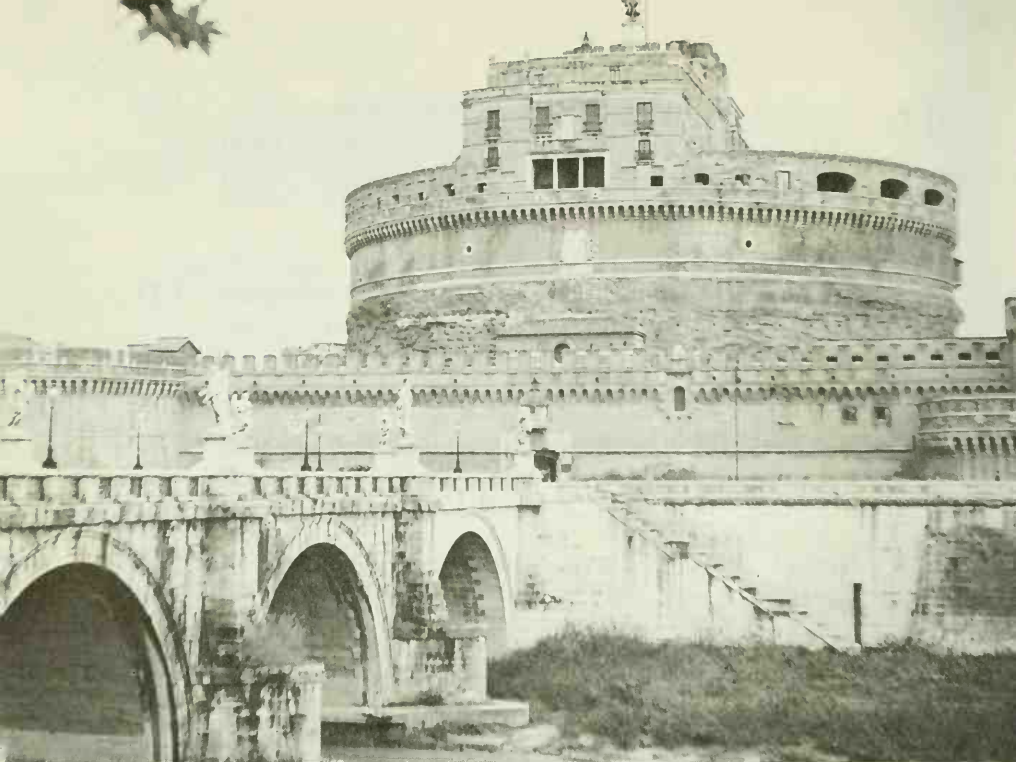
# C O N T E N T S

	Latin and modern languages. Pronunciation.	1
1	First and second conjugation verbs: present indicative active. Active personal endings. Questions and answers.	7
2	Reading: <b>Īnsula Britannia</b> . First declension nouns. Nominative case: subject. Agreement of verb. Present indicative of <b>sum</b> . Predicate nominative. Gender.	11
3	Reading: <b>Īnsula Britannia</b> . Accusative case. Word order. Prepositions. Word study. <i>Roman Roads</i> .	16
4	Reading: <b>Prōvinciae Rōmānae</b> . Ablative case: expressions of place; means; accompaniment.	24
5	Reading: <b>Agricolae</b> . Dative case: indirect object. Word study.	29
6	Reading: <b>Incolae Italiae</b> . Genitive case: possession. Summary of cases. Declension of <b>puella</b> . Word study.	34
	Review Lesson One.	40

7	Reading: <b>Dē Scholā Rōmānā (Colloquium)</b> . Second declension: masculine nouns. Declension of <b>mūrus, puer, ager, magister, vir</b> . Vocative case.	45
8	Reading: <b>Puer Rōmānus et Puer Helvētius (Colloquium)</b> . Second declension: neuter nouns. Declension of <b>bellum</b> . Apposition. Word study.	51
9	Reading: <b>Dē Servīs Rōmānīs (Colloquium)</b> . First and second declension adjectives. Agreement of adjectives. Declension of <b>bonus, liber, noster</b> . Word study.	61
10	Reading: <b>Dē Gallīs</b> . Principal parts and verb stems: first and second conjugation verbs. Perfect indicative active. Perfect indicative of <b>sum</b> .	71
11	Reading: <b>Dē Gallīs</b> . Third and fourth conjugation verbs: present and perfect indicative active. <i>A Roman Boy Grows Up</i> .	81
12	Reading: <b>Dē Gallīs</b> . Pluperfect indicative active. Word study.	88
	Review Lesson Two.	94
13	Reading: <b>Dē Colossēō</b> . Third declension nouns, consonant stems: masculine, feminine and neuter. Declension of <b>mīles, corpus</b> . Agreement of adjectives. Word study.	100
14	Reading: <b>Dē Prōserpinā</b> . Imperfect indicative active. Imperfect indicative of <b>sum</b> . Questions and answers. Word study.	107
15	Reading: <b>Dē Prōserpinā</b> . Personal pronouns: <b>ego; tū</b> . Word study. <i>Girlhood and Marriage</i> .	115



- 16 Reading: **Dē Maximō Bonō Populi Rōmānī.** Present imperative active. Negative command. **Dum** with the present indicative. Prepositions. Word study. 123
- 17 Reading: **Dē Rōmulō et Remō.** Present infinitive active. Infinitive as subject and direct object. Word study. *The Kings of Rome.* 131
- 18 Reading: **Dē Rōmulō et Remō.** Future of **sum.** **Possum.** Complementary infinitive. Word study. 139
- Review Lesson Three. Reading: **Dē Rānā et Vaccā.** 147
- Historical background: *Rome, Queen of Cities.* 154
- 19 Reading: **Dē Horātiō.** Third declension nouns, i-stem: masculine, feminine, neuter. Declension of **hostis, mōns, nāvis, mare, animal.** *The Dress of a Roman Citizen.* 162
- 20 Reading: **Dē Horātiō.** Third declension adjectives. Declension of **acer, fortis, audāx.** Adjectives with the dative. Word study. 173
- 21 Reading: **Dē Achillī (Colloquium).** Demonstrative pronoun **is.** Translation of *his, her, its, their.* 182
- 22 Reading: **Dē Mūciō.** Future indicative active. Word study. 190
- 23 Reading: **Dē Mūciō.** Future perfect indicative active. Subordinate clauses with **sī, nisi, cum.** Verb synopsis. *The Dress of a Roman Woman.* 197



The Mausoleum of Emperor Hadrian, Rome, Italy

- 24 Reading: **Viātor et Cīvis Rōmānus (Colloquium).** 206  
 Demonstrative pronouns: **hic** and **ille**. Ablative of manner.
- Review Lesson Four. Reading: **Dē Lupō et Agnō.** 213
- 25 Reading: **Dē Cloeliā.** Nine irregular adjectives. 220  
 Declension of **ūllus, uter, alius, alter**. Cardinal numerals. Declension of **ūnus, duo, trēs**. Word study: *How the Months Got Their Names*.
- 26 Reading: **Dē Geminīs (Colloquium).** Fourth de- 228  
 clension nouns. Declension of **exercitus, cornū, domus**. Place expressions with names of towns and **domus**; locative case. Word study.

27	Reading: <b>Dē Aureō Mālō.</b> Passive voice. Perfect participle passive.	238
28	Reading: <b>Dē Aureō Mālō.</b> Fifth declension nouns. Declension of <b>diēs, rēs.</b> Ordinal numerals. Expressions of time. Roman calendar. Word study.	245
29	Reading: <b>Dē Aureō Mālō.</b> Perfect indicative passive. Ablative of agent.	254
30	Reading: <b>Dē Aureō Mālō.</b> Pluperfect and future perfect indicative passive. Word study.	260
31	Reading: <b>Dē Virginibus Sabīnīs.</b> Ablative absolute. Word study.	266
	Review Lesson Five. Reading: <b>Dē Cane Avidō.</b>	274
32	Reading: <b>Dē Liscō.</b> Present indicative passive.	280
33	Reading: <b>Dē Liscō.</b> Imperfect and future indicative passive. <i>The Roman House.</i>	287
34	Reading: <b>Dē Rēbus Gestīs Leōnidae.</b> Interrogative pronoun and adjective: <b>quis</b> and <b>quī.</b> Direct question. Word study.	296
35	<i>Legendary History of Rome.</i> Reading: <b>Dē Aenēā et Iūlō.</b> Irregular verb <b>eō.</b> Compounds of <b>eō.</b>	303
36	Reading: <b>Dē Aenēā et Iūlō.</b> Ablative of respect. Adjectives as nouns. <b>Summus,</b> etc. Word study.	310
37	Reading: <b>Dē Aenēā et Iūlō.</b> Cardinal numerals. Compound numerals. Extent of space. <b>Mille</b> and <b>mīlia.</b> Mileage.	317
	Review Lesson Six. Reading: <b>Dē Caprīs Barbātīs.</b>	325

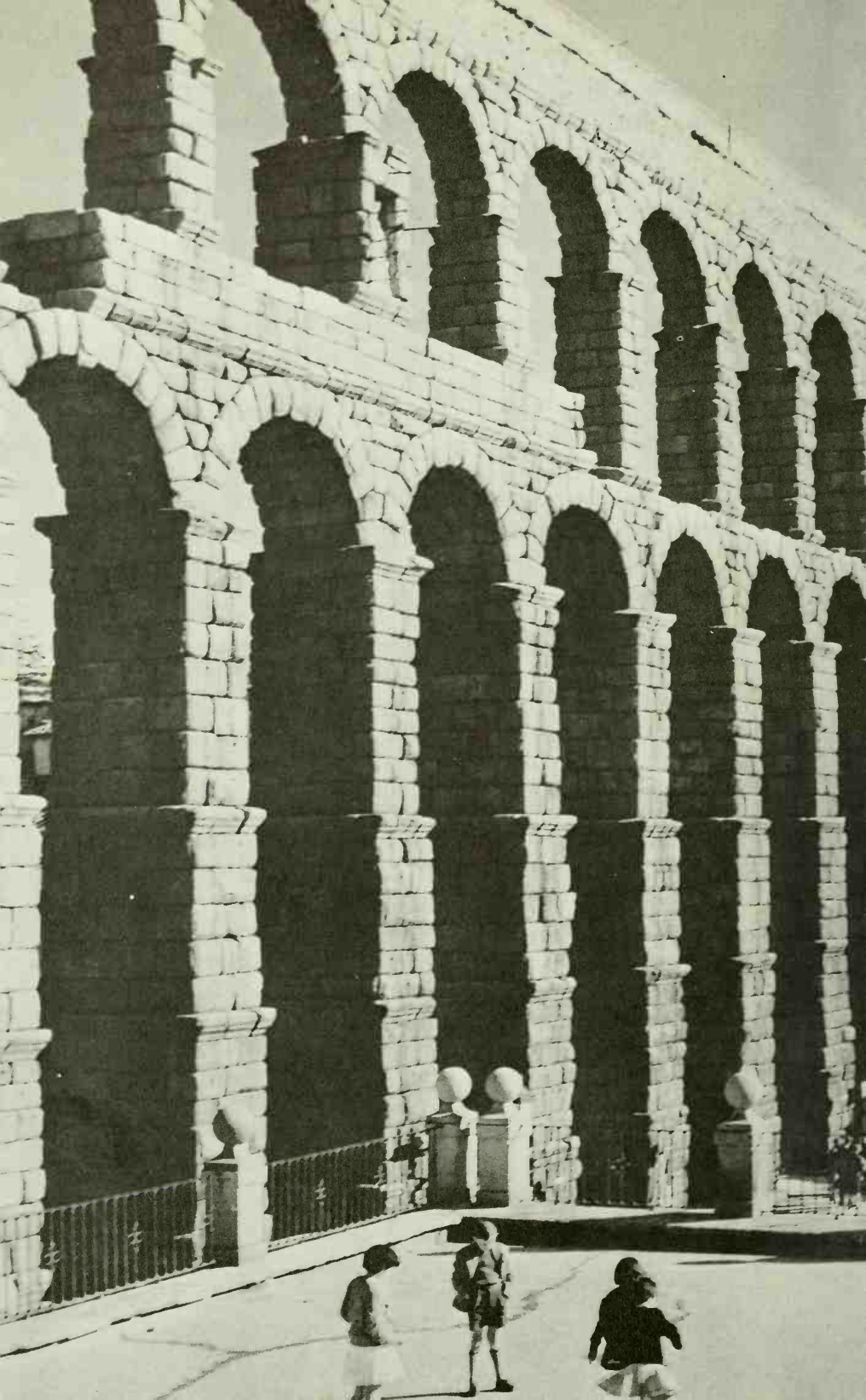
- 38 Reading: **Dē Cīvitāte Rōmānā.** Relative pronoun: **quī.** Word study. 329
- 39 Reading: **Xerxēs Graeciam Vincere Cōstituit.** Comparison of adjectives. Declension of comparative adjective. Comparison with **quam.** Ablative of comparison. 336
- 40 Reading: **Dē Amphissō.** Irregular comparison of adjectives. Declension of **minor, plūrēs.** Ablative of measure of difference. Word study. 343
- 41 Reading: **Dē Ōrātōribus Clārissimīs.** Formation and comparison of adverbs. **Quam** with superlative. 350
- 42 *The Struggle for Written Laws.* Reading: **Dē Decemvirīs; dē Verginiā.** Reflexive pronouns. 356
- 43 Reading: **Dē Decemvirīs; dē Verginiā.** **Ipse; idem.** Genitive of description. Word study. 364
- Review Lesson Seven. Reading: **Dē Cane Fidēli.** 370
- 44 Reading: **Dē Camillō et Magistrō Faliscōrum.** Present participle active. Ablative absolute. Word study. 374
- 45 Reading: **Dē Camillō et Magistrō Faliscōrum.** Future participle active. *The Daily Life of a Well-to-do Roman.* 382
- 46 *Pyrrhus.* Reading: **Dē Rēge Pyrrhō.** Dative with verbs. Dative of purpose. Dative of interest. 390
- 47 Reading: **Dē Rēge Pyrrhō.** Present infinitive active and passive. Indirect statement. 397

48	<i>Carthage.</i> Reading: <b>Dē Rēgulō.</b> Perfect and future infinitives. Time expressed by the infinitive. Hope, promise, swear.	404
49	Reading: <b>Dē Rēgulō.</b> Deponent and semi-deponent verbs: indicative and imperative. Word study. <i>Slaves and Freedmen in Ancient Rome.</i>	413
50	Reading: <b>Dē Librīs Sibyllinīs.</b> Deponent and semi-deponent verbs: participles and infinitives.	421
	Review Lesson Eight. Reading: <b>Dē Milvō et Columbīs.</b>	428
51	Reading: <b>Lūdus Scaenicus: Ignis.</b> The subjunctive mood. Present subjunctive. Hortatory and jussive subjunctive.	432
52	Reading: <b>Lūdus Scaenicus: Ignis.</b> Imperfect subjunctive. Deliberative questions. Subjunctive in wishes. Genitive with adjectives. Word study.	437
53	Reading: <b>Lūdus Scaenicus: Ignis.</b> Perfect and pluperfect subjunctive. Subjunctive in wishes. Partitive genitive.	443

#### APPENDIX

Essentials of English Grammar	450
Review of Syntax	459
Inflections	467
LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY	491
ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY	523
GLOSSARY-PROPER NAMES	554
INDEX	557





## LATIN AND MODERN LANGUAGES

Just as the British have spread the English language to all parts of their Empire, so the Romans carried their language, Latin, with them. Greek still remained the language of the eastern part of the Empire, but Latin was everywhere the language of the central and western parts. Through the following centuries Latin changed, as all spoken languages change, until today there are several distinct languages derived from Latin. These are called the Romance languages, and include Italian, French, Spanish, Portuguese, and Rumanian.

From a comparison of the numerals in Latin and in the Romance languages we can see how closely the members of this language group are related.

LATIN	ITALIAN	FRENCH	SPANISH	PORTUGUESE	RUMANIAN
ūnus	uno	un	uno	un	un
duo	due	deux	dos	dois	doi
trēs	tre	trois	tres	trez	trei
quattuor	quattro	quatre	cuatro	quatro	patru
quīnque	cinq̄ue	cinq̄	cinco	cince	cinci

English, though not a Romance language, does owe a debt to Latin, too. The majority of our words have a Latin origin. The Latin element was introduced in several ways. Some words survived from the time when Britain was a Roman province; a larger number were introduced through the Christian Church, which used the Latin language. The greatest number of Latin-derived words came into English from the Norman-French, which was brought in by William the Conqueror, and made the official language of England. In more recent times many words built up of Greek and Latin roots have been coined for new inventions and ideas: as *dirigible* and *radio*, which are based on Latin roots; *telegraph* and *telephone*, on Greek; *automobile*, on Latin and Greek. In fact, the greater part of the vocabulary of modern science is Greek or Latin in origin.

### 1

The Aqueduct of Trajan, Segovia, Spain. One of the finest of its kind in the world, the aqueduct was built of chiseled, interlocking stones without the aid of mortar.



Ruins in Pompeii, Italy

## PRONUNCIATION

You will most easily learn to pronounce Latin by imitating your teacher.

The letters of the Latin alphabet are the same as those of the English alphabet except that there is no *w* or *j*.

Each vowel has one long and one short sound which differ in pronunciation primarily in the length of time it takes to say them. They are pronounced nearly like the English sounds in the following words:

### LONG

*ā* as in *father*: *nāvigō*  
*ē* as in *they*: *pārēs*  
*ī* as in *machine*: *filia*  
*ō* as in *note*: *prōvincia*  
*ū* as in *rude*: *pīctūra*

### SHORT

*a* as the first *a* of *ahá*: *parō*  
*e* as in *get*: *terra*  
*i* as in *pit*: *via*  
*o* as in *renovate*: *prope*  
*u* as in *pull*: *puella*

A diphthong results from the rapid pronunciation of two vowel sounds blending them into one sound, pronounced nearly as in the following English words:

**ae** like *ai* in *aisle*: **praemium**

**au** like *ou* in *out*: **laudō**

**oe** like *oi* in *oil*: **proelium**

**ei** like *ei* in *rein*: **hei!**

**eu** like *e(h)oo* pronounced in

the same breath-impulse: **neuter**

**ui** like French *oui*: **huic**

Pronounce consonants as in English except in the case of those given below:

**c** like *c* in *can*: **camera**

**g** like *g* in *get*: **genus**

**s** like *s* in *set* or *hiss*: **servus**

**t** like *t* in *tin*: **timeō**

**v** like *w* in *wall*: **via**

**x** like *x (ks)* in *extra*: **ex**

**bs** and **bt** have the sound of *ps* and *pt*: **urbs, obtineō**

**ch, ph, th** are pronounced like *kh* (*deck-hand*), *ph* (*mop-handle*), *th* (*hot-house*): or drop the *h* altogether and pronounce like *c, p, t*: **pulcher, phalanx, theātrum**

**i** is consonantal (pronounced like *y*) when standing at the beginning of a word and followed by a vowel, and also in the interior of a word between two vowels: **iubeō, Trōia.**

In the case of double consonants, pronounce each consonant distinctly and in different syllables:

**sic-cus** as in *book-case*

**il-lud** as in *well-laid*

**mit-tō** as in *coat-tail*

## SYLLABLES

A Latin word contains as many syllables as it has vowels or diphthongs.

1. A single consonant goes with the following vowel, *e.g.*, **mā-ter, me-li-ō-ri-bus.**

*Diphthongs do not have long vowels over them*

2. In the case of two or more consonants the division falls before the last consonant, *e.g.*, **in-ter**, **fac-tus**, **op-ti-mus**.
3. In a combination of a mute and a liquid, like **br**, **cr**, **tr**, **bl**, the two elements are so close that they are pronounced in the same syllable, *e.g.*, **pa-tris**, **pu-bli-cus**, **cas-tra**.
4. Double consonants are divided, *e.g.*, **sic-cus**, **il-lud**.

## ACCENT

1. In a word of two syllables the accent falls on the first syllable: **ter'-ra**.
2. In a word of more than two syllables the accent falls on the syllable before the last if it has a long vowel or a diphthong or if its vowel is followed directly by two or more consonants: **Eu-rō'-pae**, **pu-el'-la**.
3. In a word of more than two syllables, if the vowel of the syllable before the last is short and is not followed directly by two or more consonants, the accent falls on the second syllable from the last: **a-gri'-co-la**.

## EXERCISES

Divide the following words into syllables and indicate the accent:

Britannus	fēmina	cōpiaē
Germānia	pīctūra	puella
rēgīna	mūrus	amāmus
laudātis	tenent	cotīdiē









Arch of Constantine,  
built in 315 A.D.,  
Rome

1

## First and Second Conjugations Present Indicative Active

Bis dat quī cito dat.

*He gives twice who gives quickly.*

1

### PRESENT INDICATIVE ACTIVE

#### FIRST CONJUGATION

##### SINGULAR

**portō**

I carry, do carry,  
am carrying

**portās**

you carry, do carry,  
are carrying

**portat**

he (she, it) carries, does  
carry, is carrying

##### PLURAL

**portāmus**

we carry, do carry,  
are carrying

**portātis**

you carry, do carry,  
are carrying

**portant**

they carry, do carry,  
are carrying

#### SECOND CONJUGATION

##### SINGULAR

**moveō**

I move, do move,  
am moving

**movēs**

you move, do move,  
are moving

**movet**

he (she, it) moves, does  
move, is moving

##### PLURAL

**movēmus**

we move, do move,  
are moving

**movētis**

you move, do move,  
are moving

**movent**

they move, do move,  
are moving

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1st person	-ō, I	-mus, we
2nd person	-s, you	-tis, you
3rd person	-t, he, she, it	-nt, they

3 The verb **portō** belongs to the first conjugation. The present infinitive active of all verbs of the first conjugation ends in **-āre**: **portāre**, to carry; **amāre**, to love; **vocāre**, to call. The present stem is found by dropping **-re** from the present infinitive active: **portā-**, **amā-**, **vocā-**. The present indicative active is formed by adding the active personal endings to the present stem of the verb.

We must note that in the first conjugation **āō** becomes **ō** and **ā** becomes **a** before the personal endings **-t** and **-nt**.

The verb **moveō** belongs to the second conjugation. The present infinitive active of all verbs of the second conjugation ends in **-ēre**: **movēre**, to move; **habēre**, to have. The present stem is found by dropping **-re** from the present infinitive active: **movē-**, **habē-**.

The vowel **ē** becomes short before the personal endings **-ō**, **-t**, and **-nt**.

#### 4 VERBS OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION

	active	
1ST PERSON	PRESENT INFINITIVE	PRESENT STEM
amō, I love, like	amāre, to love, like	amā-
arō, I plow	arāre, to plow	arā-
dō, I give	dare, <sup>1</sup> to give	da-
habitō, I dwell	habitāre, to dwell	habitā-
laudō, I praise	laudāre, to praise	laudā-
portō, I carry	portāre, to carry	portā-
vocō, I call	vocāre, to call	vocā-

<sup>1</sup> Note the short **a** in **dare** which is irregular. The present indicative is **dō**, **dās**, **dat**, **damus**, **datis**, **dant**.

## 5 VERBS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION

1ST PERSON	PRESENT INFINITIVE	PRESENT STEM
<b>habeō</b> , I have, hold	<b>habēre</b> , to have, hold	<b>habē-</b>
<b>moveō</b> , I move	<b>movēre</b> , to move	<b>movē-</b>
<b>pāreō</b> , I obey	<b>pārēre</b> , to obey	<b>pārē-</b>
<b>teneō</b> , I hold	<b>tenēre</b> , to hold	<b>tenē-</b>
<b>timeō</b> , I fear	<b>timēre</b> , to fear	<b>timē-</b>
<b>videō</b> , I see	<b>vidēre</b> , to see	<b>vidē-</b>

6 When one gives the forms of a verb for the different persons in order, first in the singular, then in the plural, in a given tense, mood and voice, one is said to *conjugate* the verb in that tense, mood and voice.

## 7 QUESTIONS IN LATIN

When a Latin question does **not** begin with an interrogative word, **-ne** is added to the important word in the question. We have no separate word to translate **-ne**; it is merely the sign of a question.

*Yes* and *no* are usually expressed by repeating the important parts of the question in the form of a statement.

*Question:* **Aratne agrum?**

*Answer:* **Arat, or Nōn arat.**

Translate:

- |                     |                   |                |                     |
|---------------------|-------------------|----------------|---------------------|
| 1. <i>Question.</i> | <b>Aratne?</b>    | <i>Answer.</i> | <b>Arat.</b>        |
| 2. <i>Question.</i> | <b>Vocantne?</b>  | <i>Answer.</i> | <b>Vocant.</b>      |
| 3. <i>Question.</i> | <b>Pāretne?</b>   | <i>Answer.</i> | <b>Nōn pāret.</b>   |
| 4. <i>Question.</i> | <b>Timentne?</b>  | <i>Answer.</i> | <b>Timent.</b>      |
| 5. <i>Question.</i> | <b>Vocāmusne?</b> | <i>Answer.</i> | <b>Nōn vocāmus.</b> |

## 8 EXERCISES

- A. Conjugate **vocō** and **videō** in the present indicative active. Write three different English translations for each Latin form.

B. *Translate each verb form in three ways:*

1. Portās, portō, movēmus, movent.
2. Amat, arātis, videō, habent.
3. Videt, habitō, tenet, amāmus.
4. Dō, laudāmus, movēs, vocātis.
5. Pārent, arat, vidētis, dās.

C. *Add the correct ending to the following stems:*

1. Da\_\_\_\_\_ (he), habē\_\_\_\_\_ (we), voca\_\_\_\_\_ (they), amā\_\_\_\_\_ (you, *pl.*).
2. Move\_\_\_\_\_ (they), laudā\_\_\_\_\_ (you, *s.*), habitā\_\_\_\_\_ (we), pāre\_\_\_\_\_ (she).
3. Portā\_\_\_\_\_ (we), time\_\_\_\_\_ (I), ara\_\_\_\_\_ (they), tenē\_\_\_\_\_ (you, *pl.*).
4. Dā\_\_\_\_\_ (you, *s.*), time\_\_\_\_\_ (he), pārē\_\_\_\_\_ (you, *pl.*), habe\_\_\_\_\_ (they).
5. Portā\_\_\_\_\_ (you, *s.*), move\_\_\_\_\_ (I), habita\_\_\_\_\_ (they), voca\_\_\_\_\_ (she).

D. *Give the Latin form:*

- |                                  |                                    |
|----------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. I do love.                    | 11. They are praising.             |
| 2. He is carrying.               | 12. I am plowing.                  |
| 3. We are holding.               | 13. He does hold.                  |
| 4. You ( <i>pl.</i> ) fear.      | 14. Are we carrying?               |
| 5. They call.                    | 15. You ( <i>pl.</i> ) fear.       |
| 6. You ( <i>s.</i> ) are giving. | 16. Do they give?                  |
| 7. I am obeying.                 | 17. I have.                        |
| 8. She has.                      | 18. She praises.                   |
| 9. Do we dwell?                  | 19. They see.                      |
| 10. You ( <i>s.</i> ) see.       | 20. You ( <i>s.</i> ) are plowing. |

E. **Respondē Latīnē** (*Reply in Latin*):

- |               |              |
|---------------|--------------|
| 1. Arantne?   | 4. Timetne?  |
| 2. Vocatne?   | 5. Vocantne? |
| 3. Pārēmusne? | 6. Moventne? |





*Roman bath, in Bath,  
England*

## 2

### First Declension Nouns: Nominative Case Agreement of Verb

*Experientia docet.*

*Experience is the best teacher.*

9

#### Īnsula Britannia

Britannia est ĭnsula. Estne Britannia parva ĭnsula? Britannia nōn est parva ĭnsula; est magna. Britannia est in Eurōpā. Sunt in ĭnsulā nautae. Agricolaе quoque in Britannīā habitant. In Britannīā habitat familia (*family*): nauta, fēmina, et puella. Fēmina et puella nōn nāvīgant cum (*with*) 5 nautā; timent. Cum agricolā arant.

#### Respondē Latīnē :

1. Estne Britannia parva ĭnsula?
2. Nāvīgantne fēmina et puella?
3. Quis nāvīgat?
4. Ubi est Britannia?
5. Habitatne agricolae in ĭnsulā?

## 10 FIRST DECLENSION NOUNS

The nouns used in the story belong to the first declension.  
In nouns of the first declension,

the nominative singular ends in **-a**  
the nominative plural ends in **-ae**.

11 The subject of a finite verb is in the nominative case.

<b>Nauta nāvigat.</b>	A sailor sails.
<b>Nautae nāvigant.</b>	Sailors sail.

Latin has no word for the definite article *the* or for the indefinite article *a* or *an*. **Nauta** may be translated *sailor*, *the sailor*, *a sailor*.

## 12 AGREEMENT OF VERB

The verb agrees with the subject in person and number.  
In Section 11, what is the number of **nāvigat**? of **nāvigant**?  
What is the person of each verb?

**Fēmina et puella timent.**

The woman and the girl are afraid (fear).

A plural verb may have two singular subjects.

## 13 PRESENT INDICATIVE OF SUM

### SINGULAR

**sum,** I am  
**es,** you are  
**est,** he (she, it) is  
*there*

### PLURAL

**sumus,** we are  
**estis,** you are  
**sunt,** *there* they are

**Sum agricola.** I am a farmer.

**Es nauta.** You (s.) are a sailor.

**Est fēmina.** She is a woman.

**Sumus nautae.** We are sailors.

**Estis fēminae.** You (pl.) are women.

**Sunt agricolae.** They are farmers.



Public baths provided one of the highlights of the Roman social day.

14

## PREDICATE NOMINATIVE

**Britannia est insula.**

Britain is an island.

**Sardinia et Corsica sunt insulae.** Sardinia and Corsica are islands.

In what case is the word **Britannia**? **insula**? **Sardinia**? **Corsica**? **insulae**? What relation exists between the case of the subject of the verb and the noun which follows **est** or **sunt**?

In English as well as in Latin a noun or pronoun which completes a form of the verb *to be* and describes the subject is called a *predicate* noun and must be in the same case as the subject.

A predicate noun corresponding to the subject is in the *nominative case*. This use of the nominative case is called the *Predicate Nominative*.

- 15 **Est puella in insulā.** There is a girl on the island.  
**Sunt nautae in Britannīā.** There are sailors in Britain.

Latin expresses *there is, there are* by **est, sunt** when the word *there* is unemphatic. When used in this way the verb usually begins the sentence. Notice that **puella** and **nautae** are in the nominative case.

16

## GENDER

In Latin, as in English, a noun denoting a male is in the masculine gender; a noun denoting a female is in the feminine gender. In English a noun denoting a sexless object is in the neuter gender: *hut, island*. But nouns that are neuter in English are not always neuter in Latin: their gender in Latin is determined chiefly by their endings.

Almost all the nouns of the first declension are *feminine*. A few nouns, like **agricola** and **nauta**, denoting males, are masculine.

17

## EXERCISES

A. Conjugate **sum** in the present indicative active.  
Conjugate **sum agricola**.

B. Translate:

1. Sumus, dant, movet, laudātis.
2. Amās, est, properat, videō.
3. Sum, portō, tenētis, arant.
4. Estis, pārent, es, habēs.
5. Amāmus, sunt, tenent, habitat.

C. Supply the Latin word, using correct case and number:

1. The farmer plows. \_\_\_\_\_arat.
2. There are farmers in Britain. Sunt\_\_\_\_\_in Britannīā.
3. The girls are afraid. \_\_\_\_\_timent.
4. The island is large. \_\_\_\_\_est magna.
5. There is a girl on the island. Est\_\_\_\_\_in insulā.
6. A sailor sails. \_\_\_\_\_nāvigat.
7. The girl is small. \_\_\_\_\_est parva.
8. The sailors are sailing. \_\_\_\_\_nāvigant.

9. Where is the sailor? Ubi est\_\_\_\_\_?
10. The island is small. \_\_\_\_\_est parva.
11. Britain is an island. Britannia est\_\_\_\_\_.
12. The farmers are plowing. \_\_\_\_\_arant.
13. Is the island small? Estne\_\_\_\_\_parva?
14. Both the woman and the girl are hurrying.  
Et\_\_\_\_\_ et\_\_\_\_\_properant.

D. Write in Latin:

1. Britain is an island.
2. The island is small.
3. The farmers are plowing.
4. There are girls on the island.
5. The woman and the girl are hurrying.
6. A sailor sails.
7. There is a farmer on the island.
8. The women do not plow.
9. The sailors are sailing.
10. They are farmers.

## SUPPLEMENTARY VERB DRILL

Give the Latin form:

1. We are, he loves, they are hurrying, we dwell.
2. You (s.) fear, I am sailing, they are, she is obeying.
3. I am, I am carrying, you (pl.) have, we do call.
4. They hold, you (pl.) are, he is, he is praising.
5. You (s.) are, you (s.) are giving, they see, we do like.

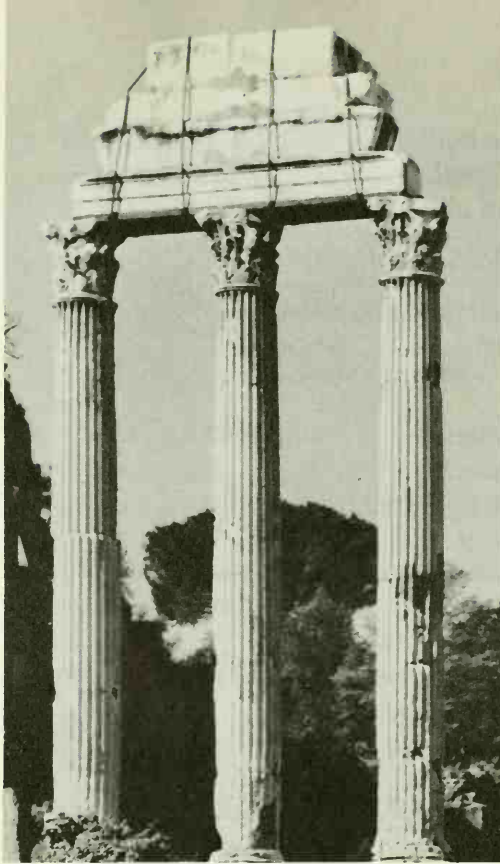
18

## VOCABULARY

agri'cola, *m.*, farmer  
 fē'mina, *f.*, woman  
 in'sula, *f.*, island  
 nau'ta, *m.*, sailor  
 puel'la, *f.*, girl  
 mag'na, *f.*, *adjective*, large  
 par'va, *f.*, *adjective*, small  
 nā'vigō, nāvigā're, sail  
 pro'perō, properā're, hurry,  
 hasten

et, *conjunction*, and; et . . . et,  
 both . . . and  
 nōn, *adverb*, not; the negative  
 nōn comes directly before the  
 word it modifies  
 quis, *who*  
 quoque, *adverb*, also, too  
 ubi, *where*

*in what place*



*Columns from the  
Temple of Castor and  
Pollux, Rome*

# 3

## Accusative Case

Dēscende ad terram.

*Come down to earth.*

19

## Īnsula Britannia

Britannia est ĩnsula. Ōlim (*Once*) erant (*there were*) in Britannĩā multae viae Rōmānae. Viae Rōmānae erant bonae. Īnsula Britannia habet multōs incolās. Incolae sunt et nautae et agricolae. Nautae ad Eurōpam et ad Americam saepe nāvigant. 5 Agricolae in Britannĩā manent et agrōs (*fields*) arant.

In Britannĩā est rēgīna. Rēgīna est fēmina bona. Incolae Britanniae (*of Britain*) rēgīnam bonam nōn timent; rēgīnam amant. Fīliam rēgīna habet. Fīlia rēgīnae (*of the queen*) quoque est bona.



### Respondē Latīnē :

1. Estne Britannia īnsula?
  2. Habetne Britannia multōs incolās?
  3. Quō nautae nāvīgant?
  4. Nāvīgantne agricolae?
  5. Quid agricolae faciunt (*do*)?
  6. Ubi agricolae manent?
  7. Quis est rēgīna?
  8. Amantne incolae Britanniae rēgīnam?
  9. Timentne incolae Britanniae rēgīnam?
  10. Estne filia rēgīnae bona?
- 20 **Agricola puellam vocat.** The farmer is calling the girl.  
**Agricola puellās vocat.** The farmer is calling the girls.

In Latin the direct object of a verb is in the accusative case.

In nouns of the first declension,

the accusative singular ends in **-am**

the accusative plural ends in **-ās**.

### 21

### WORD ORDER

Since the connection between words in Latin is shown by the endings, a greater variety of word order is possible in Latin than in English. The order — subject - direct object - verb (**Agricola puellam videt**) — is frequent in Latin, but is often varied (**Puellam agricola videt**).

### 22

### PREPOSITIONS

<b>ad īnsulam</b>	to the island	<b>per īnsulās</b>	through the islands
<b>in īnsulam</b>	into the island	<b>trāns īnsulās</b>	across the islands

The accusative case is used as the object of certain prepositions, such as **ad**, *to, towards*; **in**, *into*; **per**, *through*; **trāns**, *across*.

### 23

### WORD STUDY

Many Latin words are members of word families; that is, they have a common stem or parentage. Representatives of some of these word families are found in Lessons 2 and 3.

1. **Incola** and **agricola** are formed on a root **-cola** connected with the verb **colō** which means both *to dwell* (cf. **habitō**) and *to till the soil*.
2. **Nauta** and **nāvigō** derive from the word **nāvis** (**nāus**), *the ship*.
3. **Rēgīna** is a member of the family which includes also **rēx**, *the king*, **rēgnum**, *the rule*; and **rēgia**, *the palace*.

Explain the meaning of the italicized words by connecting them with Latin words which you have learned:

1. The river was *navigable* as far as Memphis.
2. *Nautical* affairs on both coasts were affected by the strike.
3. The children were impressed by her beauty and *regal* bearing.

## 24

## EXERCISES

- A. *Conjugate in full in the present indicative active: Nautam videō; Puellās laudō.*
- B. *Change all singular forms to plural:*
  1. Puella ad insulam nāvigat.
  2. Rēgīna filiam habet.
  3. Fēminam agricola timet.
  4. Nauta trāns viam puellam portat.
  5. Fīliam bonam fēmina laudat.
- C. *Change all plural forms to singular:*
  1. Fēminae bonae agricolās vocant.
  2. Puellae in viās properant.
  3. Nautae ad insulās nāvigant.
  4. Fīliās rēgīnae amant.
  5. Fēminae agricolās vident.
- D. *Supply the correct endings:*
  1. Sum puell\_\_.
  2. Fēminae fili\_\_ (pl.) amant.
  3. Sumus naut\_\_.
  4. Agricol\_\_ (sing.) fēmina laudat.
  5. Naut\_\_ nāvigant.
  6. Britannia est insul\_\_.
  7. Rēgīna est fēmin\_\_ bona.

E. *Write in Latin:*

1. The farmer is calling the girls.
2. The queen loves (her) daughter.
3. Is he hurrying across the street?
4. The farmers are plowing.
5. Where are they sailing?
6. They are sailing to the islands.
7. The girls fear the sailor.
8. Britain is an island.
9. The girl is carrying water across the road.
10. The farmers hasten toward the women.

SUPPLEMENTARY DRILL

A. *Translate:*

- |                             |                         |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. Puellās vocāmus.         | 6. Fīliam laudat.       |
| 2. Timentne nautam?         | 7. Agricolās timeō.     |
| 3. Rēgīna agricolam laudat. | 8. Fīlia nautam amat.   |
| 4. Fīliās nauta amat.       | 9. Aquam incola portat. |
| 5. Fēminae incolās vocant.  | 10. Laudatne puellās?   |

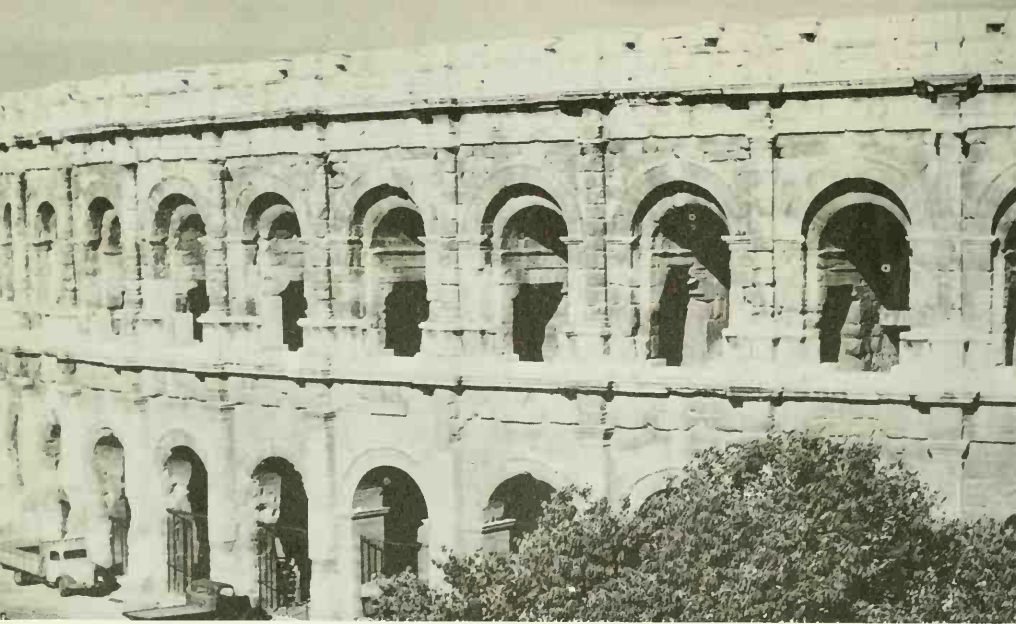
B. *Write in Latin:*

1. They remain; we do call; she does see; I am sailing.
2. You (s.) give; he holds; they are praising; we are obeying.
3. I fear; they do plow; you (pl.) are; he does like.
4. I am; we praise; you (s.) do obey; I dwell.
5. They have; he is; she is sailing; you (pl.) are carrying.

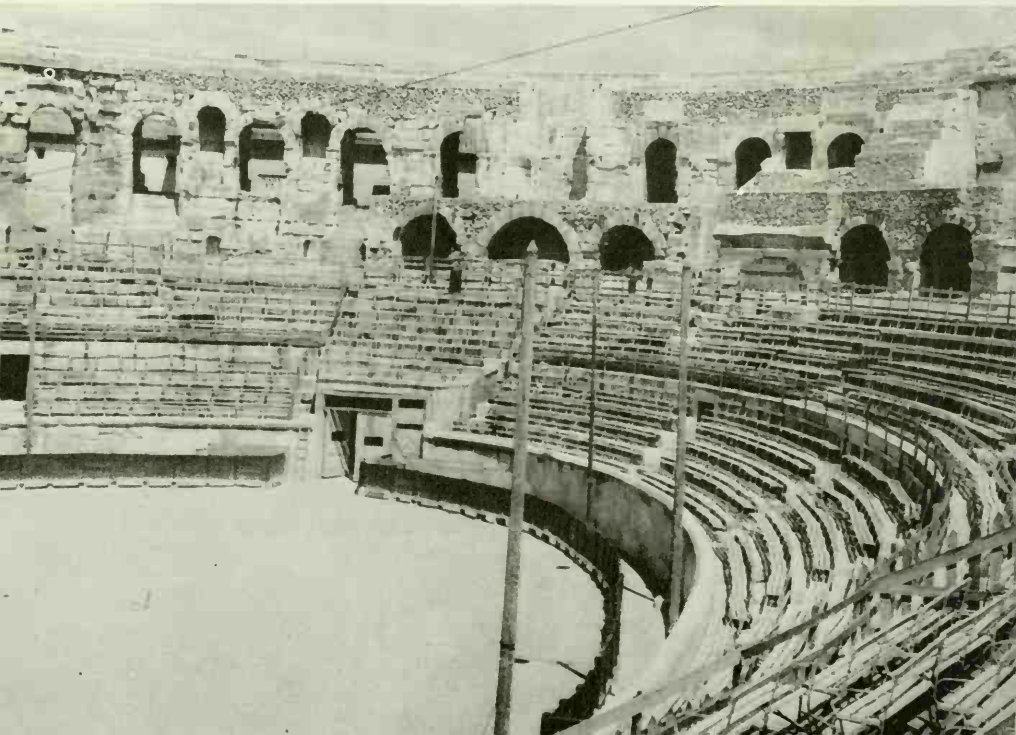
VOCABULARY

a'qua, f., water  
fi'lia, f., daughter  
in'cola, m., inhabitant  
rēgī'na, f., queen  
vi'a, f., way, road, street  
bo'na, f., adjective, good  
mul'tae, f. pl., adjective, many  
ma'neō, manē're, stay, remain,  
wait

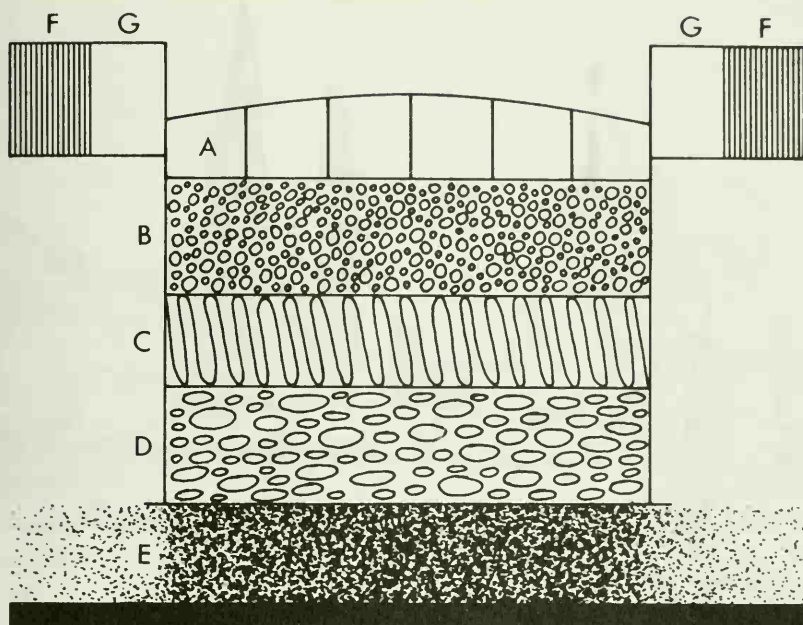
ad, preposition with acc., to,  
toward  
in, preposition with acc., into  
per, preposition with acc.,  
through  
trāns, preposition with acc.,  
across  
sae'pe, adverb, often  
quid, what  
quō, where, to what place



Exterior of the amphitheater in Nîmes, France. This amphitheater, the best preserved in France, was used as a fortress during the Middle Ages.



Interior of the amphitheater. Originally built for races, military spectacles, and gladiatorial combats, the amphitheater has been used for bullfights in past years.



A CROSS-SECTION OF A ROMAN ROAD

FF, footpaths; GG, curbstones; E, leveled earth; D, foundation stones; C, broken stones and lime; B, concrete and lime; A, the pavement, flat stones laid close together.

The finest roads in the ancient world were those built by the Romans. The first great road was planned in 312 B.C. From that time on, roads were constructed until they extended throughout all parts of the Empire. They were designed primarily for the movement of Roman armies, but quickly their use was extended; government officials, messengers, traders and travelers, citizens and foreigners, moved along these roads. During the greater part of the Middle Ages they remained the only roads of any account; even today long stretches of these roads may be seen in different parts of Europe. In fact, not until railroads were constructed was there a better system of land communication than the Roman *viae*.



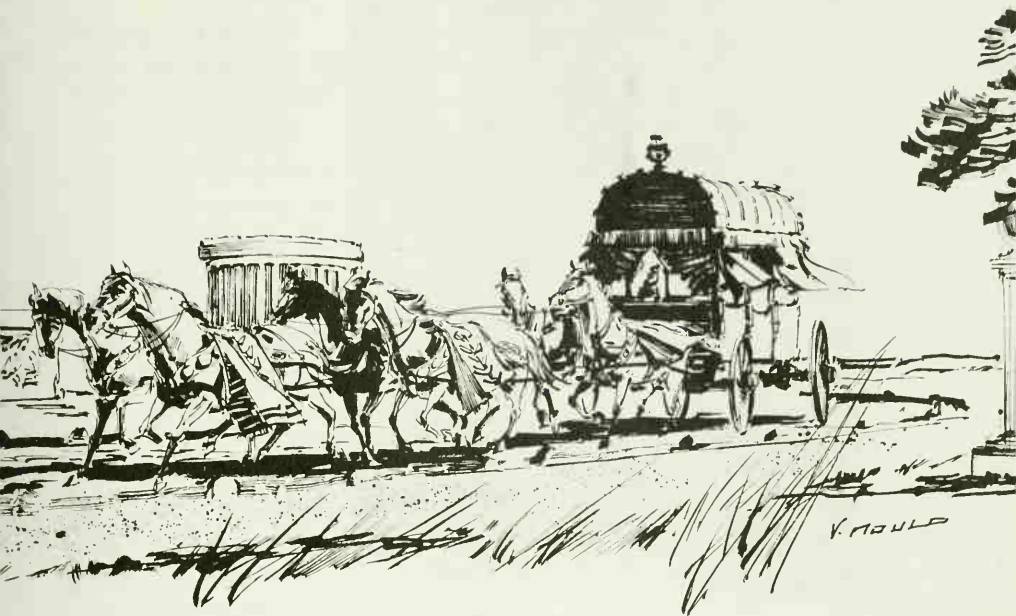


Sections of the Appian Way are still in existence today and are still in good condition. It was dotted along both sides with tombs and burial sites, which are also preserved to this day. Many ancient communities followed the practice of burying their dead in the fields outside their towns, beginning near the roadways and

As far as possible the Romans laid out their roads in straight lines, usually disregarding the nature of the ground through which they were to run. Engineers broke through mountains, and spanned rivers and valleys with bridges and viaducts.

The first of the great roads was the Via Appia, begun in 312 B.C. This began at the Porta Capena in the south-east of the city and ran as far as Capua; later it was extended to Brundisium, which was a port of embarkation on the south-eastern shore of Italy for traders going to Greece, Macedonia, and Asia Minor. The Roman poet Statius called the Via Appia "*regina viarum*." It was a stone causeway, wide enough to allow two broad wagons to pass each other. The surface was paved with flat blocks of hard stone laid close together. The middle of the road was higher than the sides,





extending some distance back from them. Well-preserved Roman roads may still be found in all parts of the former empire. In some areas, roads of comparable quality have not been built since, and in other places, Roman roads serve as a foundation for modern roads.

allowing rain-water to drain off.

The method of construction of a normal Roman road may be seen in the cross-section shown on page 21.

The Romans set up stone columns as milestones at intervals of one mile. These gave in numbers, usually preceded by the letters M.P. (*mīlia passuum*), the distance from the place from which the measurement was made.

The construction and upkeep of the roads in Italy were provided for at the expense of the State Treasury. In the provinces the cost was generally defrayed out of the provincial taxes.

Travel on the public roads was facilitated by the establishment of posting-houses, where horses were changed and vehicles could be obtained, and by resting-places, where a journey could be conveniently broken.



*Lighthouse at Dover,  
England, the earliest  
permanent work of  
the Romans in  
Britain*

4

## Ablative Case

Perīculum in morā

*There is danger in delay.*

27

### Prōvinciae Rōmānae

Sunt in Italiā magnae cōpiae Rōmānae. Cōpiae ex Italiā in Galliam, prōvinciam Rōmānam, properant. Rōmānī (*The Romans*) cōpiās multīs in prōvinciīs collocant. Gallī (*The Gauls*) prōvinciam Rōmānam hastīs oppugnant. Cōpiae  
5 Rōmānae in Galliā cum Gallīs pugnant. Cum Germānīs quoque pugnant. Rōmānī cōpiās ā prōvinciīs nōn revocant.

Nautae Rōmānī ad multās īnsulās nāvigant. Ad īnsulam Britanniam nāvigant. In Britannīā habitant multī agricolae. Agricolae cum fēminīs et puellīs in Britannīā habitant. Agri-  
10 colae agrōs (*the fields*) arant. Cum agricolīs cōpiae Rōmānae cotīdiē pugnant. Cōpiae Rōmānae hastīs et sagittīs agricolās oppugnant. Multōs agricolās Rōmānī necant. Cōpiae in Britannīā nōn manent. Post victōriam Rōmānī cōpiās ā Britannīā ad Italiam revocant.

### Respondē Latīnē :

1. Unde cōpiae Rōmānae properant?
2. Quō cōpiae Rōmānae properant?
3. Ubi Rōmānī cōpiās collocant?
4. Oppugnantne Gallī prōvinciam Rōmānam?
5. Quibuscum cōpiae Rōmānae pugnant?
6. Revocantne Rōmānī cōpiās ā prōvinciīs?
7. Quō nautae Rōmānī nāvigant?
8. Quibuscum agricolae in Britannīā pugnant?
9. Necantne Rōmānī multōs agricolās?
10. Manentne cōpiae Rōmānae in Britannīā?

28 The ablative case expresses ideas of separation (from), position (in), instrument/association (with). It answers the questions *from where* or *from whom*, **ā Britannīā**; *where*, **in Italiā**; *with what*, **hastis et sagittis**; *with whom*, **cum agricolis**; *when*, *how*, and *why*.

In nouns of the first declension,

the ablative singular ends in **-ā**

the ablative plural ends in **īs**.

29 <b>Ā Galliā properat.</b>	He hurries from Gaul.
<b>Ab insulā properat.</b>	He hurries from the island.
<b>Ē Galliā properat.</b>	He hurries out of Gaul.
<b>Ex Italiā properat.</b>	He hurries out of Italy.
<b>Dē portā properat.</b>	He hurries down from the gate.

Place *from* which is expressed by the ablative with the prepositions **ā**, **ab** (*away from*); **ē**, **ex** (*out of, out from*); **dē** (*down from*).

Before vowels or **h**, **ab** must be used; before consonants we find sometimes **ā**, sometimes **ab**. Before vowels or **h**, **ex** must be used; before consonants we find sometimes **ē**, sometimes **ex**.

30 <b>In viā manet.</b>	He is staying in the street.
<b>In insulis habitant.</b>	They live on islands.
<b>Sunt in Italiā magnae cōpiae.</b>	There are large forces in Italy.

Place *in* which or *on* which is expressed by the ablative with the preposition **in** (*in, on*).

31 **Hastā pugnat.**

He fights with a spear.

**Hastis et sagittis pugnant.** They fight with spears and arrows.

The means or instrument *by* which something is done is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.

32

**Cum nautā nāvigat.**

He is sailing with a sailor.

**Cum nautis ad Britanniam nāvigant.**

They are sailing to Britain with sailors.

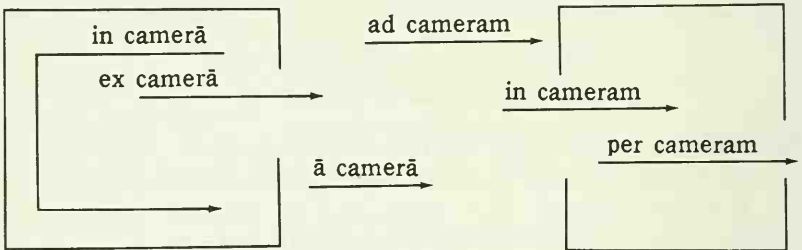
**Cum agricolis pugnant.**

They fight with the farmers.

In company *with* whom and in conflict *with* whom is expressed by the ablative with the preposition **cum**.

33

**Puella properat**



Study the illustrations. Tell just what is the meaning of the prepositions **ad**, **ex**, **ā**, **per** and what case is used with each preposition.

What is the difference between the meaning of **in** when used with the *ablative* case and when used with the *accusative* case?

34	<div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> <div style="font-size: 4em; vertical-align: middle; margin-right: 5px;">{</div> <div> in which from which out of which down from which into which to which through which </div> </div>	<div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> <div style="font-size: 4em; vertical-align: middle; margin-right: 5px;">{</div> <div> <b>in, in, on, upon</b> <b>ā, ab, from, away from</b> <b>ē, ex, out of</b> <b>dē, down from</b> <b>in, into</b> <b>ad, to, toward</b> <b>per, through</b> </div> </div>	<div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> <div style="font-size: 4em; vertical-align: middle; margin-right: 5px;">}</div> <div> <i>Ablative Case</i>       <i>Accusative Case</i> </div> </div>
----	---	--	--

A. *Translate:*

1. ab Italiā 2. in viam 3. in viā 4. post victōriam
5. trāns īnsulam 6. per cameram 7. cum rēgīnā
8. ad Galliam 9. ex Italiā 10. hastā 11. ā viīs 12. in īsulīs
13. in īsulās 14. cum puellīs 15. trāns viās
16. cum fēminā 17. per viās 18. ad nautās
19. ē viīs 20. hastīs

B. *Write in Latin:*

1. away from the island 2. out of Italy 3. through the room
4. with an arrow 5. with the queen 6. into the water
7. in the water 8. with water 9. toward Gaul
10. across the island 11. after a victory
12. through the islands 13. away from the inhabitants
14. with spears 15. with the women 16. in the streets
17. into the streets 18. out of the street
19. across the streets 20. toward the farmers

C. *Translate:*

1. Nauta incolarum necat.
2. Post victōriam rēgīna cōpiās revocat.
3. Cotīdiē fēminae filiās ā viā revocant.
4. Cōpiās ā Galliā in Germāniam movent.
5. Multae cōpiae Rōmānae in Britannīā manent.
6. Sunt et nautae et agricolae in īsulā.
7. Puellae hastīs et sagittīs nōn pugnant.
8. Quōcum fēmina ex camerā properat?
9. Ubi incolae cōpiās Rōmānās collocant?
10. Nautae cum agricolīs ad īnsulam nāvigant.

D. *Write in Latin:*

1. Is he hurrying across the street with a girl?
2. The troops hurry down from Gaul to Italy.
3. There is a street on the island.
4. They are attacking the inhabitants with spears and arrows.
5. After the victory they recall the troops.
6. To what place does the sailor sail daily?

7. The girl is carrying water to the sailor.
8. With whom are the women fighting?
9. The queen stations the troops on the island.
10. Is the farmer carrying the water to the road?

## SUPPLEMENTARY DRILL

*Write in Latin:*

1. into the street    2. across the island    3. with a woman
4. toward the island    5. away from Italy    6. through the road
7. with a spear    8. out of Gaul    9. after the victories
10. into a room    11. with arrows    12. across the road
13. toward Britain    14. with the inhabitants    15. with water

36

## VOCABULARY

<b>cō'pia</b> , <i>f.</i> , supply, plenty, abundance; <i>pl.</i> , troops, forces	<b>pug'nō</b> , <b>pugnā're</b> , fight
<b>has'ta</b> , <i>f.</i> , spear	<b>re'vocō</b> , <b>revocā're</b> , call back, recall
<b>prōvin'cia</b> , <i>f.</i> , province	<b>cum</b> , <i>preposition with abl.</i> , with
<b>sagit'ta</b> , <i>f.</i> , arrow	<b>post</b> , <i>preposition with acc.</i> , after, behind
<b>victō'ria</b> , <i>f.</i> , victory	<b>cotī'diē</b> , <i>adverb</i> , daily
<b>col'locō</b> , <b>collocā're</b> , place, station	<b>un'de</b> , <i>adverb</i> , from what place
<b>ne'cō</b> , <b>necā're</b> , kill	<b>quō'cum</b> , with whom ( <i>s.</i> )
<b>oppug'nō</b> , <b>oppugnā're</b> , attack	<b>quibus'cum</b> , with whom ( <i>pl.</i> )





*Segment of a Roman  
aqueduct in Segovia,  
Spain*

5

## Dative Case: Indirect Object

Glōria in excelsīs Deō

*Glory to God in the highest*

37

### Agricolae

Cotīdiē nautae ad Siciliam ab Italiā nāvigant. Agricolae cum nautīs nōn nāvigant; in Italiā manent. Fēminae et filiae cum nautīs nōn nāvigant. Fēminae cum agricolīs agrōs (*fields*) cotīdiē arant. Puellae parvae nōn arant; ad fēminās et agricolās aquam portant. Fēminīs et agricolīs aquam dant. 5 Agricola puellīs pecūniam saepe dat; ad puellās pecūniam portat. Agricolam puellae amant. Puellīs agricola imperat; bonae puellae agricolae pārent.

### Respondē Latinē :

1. Quō nautae nāvigant?
2. Quibuscum fēminae arant?
3. Arantne filiae?
4. Quid puellae portant?
5. Quibus puellae aquam dant?
6. Quis puellis pecūniam dat?
7. Quibus agricola imperat?
8. Cui puellae pārent?

38 The dative case (*dare, to give*) denotes the person who benefits, the one *for* whom something is done or *to* whom something is given, said, or shown (Indirect Object).

In nouns of the first declension,

the dative singular ends in **-ae**

the dative plural ends in **-is**.

<b>Puellae pecūniam dat.</b>	He gives the girl money.
<b>Rēgīnae respondet.</b>	He replies to (answers) the queen.
<b>Nautae victōriam nūntiat.</b>	He announces the victory to the sailor.

In Latin the indirect object is generally placed before the direct object.

39 **Rēgīna cōpiīs imperat.**

The queen orders (gives orders to) the troops.

**Cōpiae rēgīnae pārent.**

The troops obey (yield obedience to) the queen.

**Imperō** and **pāreō** are used with the dative of the indirect object.

40 Distinguish carefully, in English, between the use of a phrase with *to* denoting an indirect object and a phrase with *to* implying motion, direction, or destination.

<b>Puellae pecūniam dat.</b>	He gives the money to the girl.
<b>Ad silvam properat.</b>	He is hastening to the forest.
<b>Nautās ad insulam vocat.</b>	He calls the sailors to the island.

In early times the Romans paid their debts chiefly in cattle. Later, when it became impossible to pay in this way, rude blocks of copper were stamped with the figure of an ox. Before 300 B.C., under Greek influence, the Romans began to use copper coins in the form of circular discs.

The American Numismatic Society



Roman Coin

**Pecus**, the Latin word for *cattle*, gave to the Romans their word **pecūnia**, *money*, and to us the word *pecuniary*.

## EXERCISES

A. *Change all singular forms to plural:*

1. Puellae sagittam dat.
2. Rēgīnae victōriam nūntiat.
3. Nautae respondet.
4. Cui hastam dat?
5. Incolae rēgīna imperat.

B. *Change all plural forms to singular:*

1. Quibus incolae pārent?
2. Fēminīs pecūniam dant.
3. Incolīs victōriās nūntiant.
4. Agricolīs filiae respondent.
5. Rēgīnae puellīs imperant.

C. *Replace the blank in these sentences with the correct Latin word or phrase:*

1. Fēmina \_\_\_\_\_ pecūniam dat. to the girl
2. Agricolae \_\_\_\_\_ ambulat. to the forest
3. \_\_\_\_\_ respondēmus. to the sailor
4. Puella \_\_\_\_\_ aquam portat. to the inhabitants
5. Filiae \_\_\_\_\_ pārent. the queen
6. Nauta \_\_\_\_\_ victōriam  
nūntiat. to the inhabitants
7. Cōpiae \_\_\_\_\_ properant. to the province
8. Rēgīna \_\_\_\_\_ imperat. the troops
9. Agricola \_\_\_\_\_ respondet. the women
10. Puellae \_\_\_\_\_ aquam dant. to the farmers

D. *Translate:*

1. Rēgīnae victōriam nūntiāmus.
2. Agricolīs pecūniam dat.
3. Nauta agricolam hastā necat.
4. Prōvinciūs imperat.
5. Nautae trāns īnsulam cum cōpiīs properant.
6. Puellae pecūniam ad fēminam portant.
7. Puellae fēminae pecūniam dant.
8. Nautam incolae vident.
9. Filiae per silvam ambulant; fēminās nōn vident.
10. Cōpiae incolīs victōriam nūntiant.

E. *Write in Latin:*

1. The woman gives the girl money.
2. The woman carries water to the girl.
3. The farmers answer the inhabitants.
4. The troops announce a victory to the queen.
5. He is calling the woman to the room.
6. The queen gives orders to the troops; the troops obey the queen.
7. They are calling the sailors back to the province.
8. The inhabitants are fighting with spears and arrows.
9. The women love (their) native land; they do not like fighting.
10. Sailors sail from Italy to the island daily.

## SUPPLEMENTARY DRILL

Supply the correct endings:

1. He is giving money to the sailor. Naut ae  
pecūniam dat.
2. The troops obey the queen. Cōpiaē rēginae  
pārent.
3. We announce the victory to the inhabitants.  
Incolis victōriam nūntiāmus.
4. They are carrying spears to the sailors.  
Hastas ad nautas portant.
5. The queen orders the troops. Rēgīna cōpiis  
imperat.
6. The farmer gives the sailors money. Agricola  
nautis pecūniam dat.
7. We are replying to the girl.  
Puellae respondēmus.
8. You (*pl.*) are not obeying the farmer.  
Agricolae nōn pārētis.
9. The woman is calling (her) daughters to the room.  
Fēmina filias ad cameram vocat.
10. Are you (*s.*) giving the girl an arrow?  
Dāsne puellae sagittam?

43

## VOCABULARY

ca'mera, <i>f.</i> , room	nūn'tiō, nūntiā're, announce,
pa'tria, <i>f.</i> , native land, native country	report
pecū'nia, <i>f.</i> , money	remo'veō, removē're, remove, withdraw
pug'na, <i>f.</i> , fight, fighting, battle	respon'deō, respondē're, reply, answer
sil'va, <i>f.</i> , wood, forest	reti'neō, retinē're, hold back, detain, check
ter'ra, <i>f.</i> , earth, land, country	cui, to whom ( <i>s.</i> )
am'bulō, ambulā're, walk	qui'bus, to whom ( <i>pl.</i> )
im'perō, imperā're, <i>with dative</i> , give orders, command, order, govern	



*Statue of mother and  
child in Leptis  
Magna, Libya*

# 6

## Genitive Case

Maximum remedium irae mora est.

*The best remedy for anger is delay.*

44

### Incolae Italiae

Sunt in Italiā multī incolae; incolae sunt agricolae. Incolae Italiae patriam amant; pugnam nōn amant.

Nautae ab Āfricā ad Italiam nāvigant; praedam petunt  
(they are looking for). Cōpiam hastarum et sagittarum nautae  
5 comportant; pugnam parant. Incolās Italiae nautae terrent;  
terram vāstant. Hastīs et sagittīs cum cōpiīs Rōmānīs pug-  
nant. Multōs incolās necant. Fīliās agricolarum nautae ter-  
rent sed nōn necant quod fēminae et puellae nōn pugnant.

Fēminae circum portās stant. Incola eās (them) videt.  
10 Fēminās et fīliās agricolarum convocat; fēminīs imperat.  
Fēminae et puellae incolae pārent. Incola viam per silvam  
mōnstrat. Ad silvam fēminae et puellae properant. In silvā  
manent. Dēnique (Finally) incola fēminīs et puellīs victōriam  
cōpiarum Rōmānārum nūntiat.



**Respondē Latīnē :**

1. Amantne incolae Italiae pugnam?
2. Quid nautae ab Āfricā comportant?
3. Quibuscum pugnant nautae?
4. Quōrum filiās terrent nautae?
5. Cūr fēminās et puellās nōn necant nautae?
6. Ubi stant fēminae?
7. Quibus imperat incola?
8. Cui fēminae et puellae pārent?
9. Quō fēminae et puellae properant?
10. Quid incola fēminīs et puellīs nūntiat?

45 A noun in the genitive case describes or classifies another noun. The genitive is the equivalent of an English adjective phrase.

In nouns of the first declension,

the genitive singular ends in **-ae**  
the genitive plural ends in **-ārum**.

**Agricola cōpiam pecūniae habet.**  
The farmer has plenty of money.  
**Incolae Italiae sumus.**  
We are inhabitants of Italy.

The qualifying noun (genitive) often denotes the possessor.

**Filia agricolae aquam portat.**

The farmer's daughter (daughter of the farmer)  
is carrying the water.

**Filiae agricolārum aquam portant.**

The farmers' daughters (daughters of the farmers)  
are carrying the water.

46 The ending of the genitive singular of first declension nouns is **-ae**; the ending of the dative singular and of the nominative plural is likewise **-ae**. How would you decide on the case and number of a noun ending in **-ae** in a Latin sentence? Write a Latin sentence to illustrate the three uses.

47 The cases in Latin are usually given in the following order:

Nominative  
Genitive  
Dative  
Accusative  
Ablative

Two other cases, the Vocative and the Locative, are used less frequently and will be explained later in the book.

To decline a noun is to give all the cases in the singular and plural.

To find the base of a Latin noun, drop the ending of the genitive singular.

#### 48 DECLENSION OF *PUELLA* (girl)

Base, *puell-*

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>puel'la</i>	<b>-a</b>	<i>puel'lae</i>	<b>-ae</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>puel'lae</i>	<b>-ae</b>	<i>puellā'rum</i>	<b>-ārum</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>puel'lae</i>	<b>-ae</b>	<i>puel'lis</i>	<b>-is</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>puel'lam</i>	<b>-am</b>	<i>puel'lās</i>	<b>-ās</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>puel'lā</i>	<b>-ā</b>	<i>puel'lis</i>	<b>-is</b>

#### 49 WORD STUDY

By the addition of a prefix a Latin verb may take on a new meaning. Most of the common prefixes are formed from prepositions. Prepositions used as prefixes sometimes change their spelling for the sake of sound. For example, **cum**, *with, together*, becomes **com-**, **con-**, **col-**. **Ad** may have several different spellings. Some prefixes, such as **re-** (**red-**), *back, again*, have no corresponding prepositions.

Examine the following verbs which show how a simple verb may be compounded.

**portāre**, to carry

**apportāre**, to bring, to bring to

**comportāre**, to bring together

**dēportāre**, to carry down

**exportāre**, to carry out

**reportāre**, to bring back

**trānsportāre**, to bring across

Using the prefixes **ad-**, **con-**, **ē-**, **re-**, form similar compounds of the verb **vocāre** and give the meaning of the compounds.

Sometimes a prefix loses its prepositional meaning and merely intensifies the meaning of the original verb.

**movēre**, to move

**commovēre**, to move deeply, disturb

**terrēre**, to frighten

**perterrēre**, to frighten thoroughly

The prefixes that are most often used in an intensive sense are **com-** (**con-**, **col-**), **ex-** (**ē-**), and **per-**.

50

## EXERCISES

A. *Decline: nauta; porta.*

B. *Change singular forms to plural:*

1. Ad silvam ambulat.
2. Cum agricolā est filia.
3. Incola insulae est nauta.
4. Nauta puellae sagittam dat.
5. Puella est filia agricolae.

C. *Change plural forms to singular:*

1. Fēminīs viās mōnstrant.
2. Puellae sunt filiae rēgīnārū.
3. Nautae hastās portant.
4. Sunt viae in insulīs.
5. Fēminae cum puellīs ambulant.

D. *Fill in the blank with the correct ending:*

1. Parva puella est filia rēgīnae.
2. Cōpiae filiās nautarū (*pl.*) terrent.
3. Rēgīna cum filiā (*s.*) ambulat.
4. Nautis (*pl.*) pecūniam dātis.
5. Foss ae (*s.*) complēmus.
6. Port e est magna.
7. Incol ae (*pl.*) cōpiae terrent.
8. Nautae agricolās sagitt as (*pl.*) oppugnant.
9. Incol ae Britanniam amant.
10. Fēmin ae (*s.*) incola viam mōnstrat.

E. *Translate:*

1. Estne inopia pecūniae?
2. Cōpīam sagittārum et hastārum comportant.
3. In magnā insulā agricola habitat.
4. Ā portā ad silvam properāmus.
5. Fīlia nautae rēgīnae pāret.



The public library, with its reading rooms, could be found in cities throughout the length and breadth of the Empire. "Books" consisted of rolls of papyrus, glued end to end to make a roll many feet long. They were placed in cylindrical cases and stored in racks.

6. Cotīdiē fossam aquā complēmus.
7. Multōs incolās sagittīs et hastīs necant.
8. Incola fēminīs viam mōnstrat.
9. Incolae Italiae patriam amant.
10. Rēgīna puellās bonās laudat.

F. *Write in Latin:*

1. The inhabitants of Italy love (their) native land.
2. Why do you like the farmers' daughters?
3. He is announcing the victory of the troops to the girls.
4. They kill many (**multōs**) inhabitants with arrows and spears.
5. The farmer is carrying a supply of water to (his) daughters.
6. We often walk into the streets.

7. The inhabitants prepare for battle because they fear the troops.
8. The sailors sail down from Italy to Africa.
9. There are many (*multae*) women on the island.
10. The queen gives orders to the woman but the woman does not obey the queen.

## SUPPLEMENTARY NOUN DRILL

*Give the Latin equivalent:*

- |                                       |  |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| 1. with the women                     | 6. She obeys the sailors.                    |
| 2. across the street                  | 7. around the gates                          |
| 3. with water                         | 8. plenty ( <i>direct object</i> ) of spears |
| 4. toward the island                  | 9. They answer the queen.                    |
| 5. a lack ( <i>subject</i> ) of money | 10. in the woods ( <i>pl.</i> )              |

51

## VOCABULARY

*fos'sa, f., ditch, trench*  
*ino'pia, f., need, lack, scarcity*  
*por'ta, f., gate*  
*prae'da, f., loot, booty*  
*compor'tō, comportā're, bring together, collect*  
*con'vocō, convocā're, call together, summon*  
*mōns'trō, mōnstrā're, point out, show*  
*pa'rō, parā're, get ready, prepare, prepare for*

*stō, stā're, stand*  
*vās'tō, vāstā're, destroy, lay waste*  
*com'pleō, complē're, fill up*  
*ter'reō, terrē're, frighten*  
*cir'cum, preposition with acc., around*  
*cūr, adverb, why*  
*quod, conjunction, because*  
*sed, conjunction, but*

## REVIEW LESSON ONE

### I. Vocabulary

- A. *Give the genitive singular, gender and meaning of these nouns:*

agricola	hasta	pecūnia	rēgīna
aqua	incola	porta	sagitta
camera	inopia	praeda	silva
cōpia	īnsula	prōvincia	terra
fēmina	nauta	puella	via
filia	patria	pugna	victōria
fossa			

**Note.** Names of most countries are feminine nouns of the first declension. In lessons 1-6, you have met the following names of countries. All are feminine nouns of the first declension.

Āfrica	Corsica	Gallia	Sardinia
Britannia	Eurōpa	Germānia	Sicilia

- B. *Give the meaning of these verbs:*

ambulō	habitō	oppugnō	revocō
amō	imperō	pāreō	stō
arō	laudō	parō	sum
collocō	maneō	portō	teneō
compleō	mōnstrō	properō	terreō
comportō	moveō	pugnō	timeō
convocō	nāvigō	removeō	vāstō
dō	necō	respondeō	videō
habeō	nūntiō	retineō	vocō

- C. *Give the meaning of these adjectives:*

bona	magna	multae	parva
------	-------	--------	-------

- D. *Give the meaning of these prepositions. Also give the case which the preposition requires:*

ā, ab	cum	in (2)	post
ad	dē	per	trāns
circum	ē, ex		





Throughout the early history of the Roman Republic, agriculture was the chief occupation of the citizen. In fact, agriculture was the only source of livelihood regarded as honorable. Thus, it is little wonder that Ceres occupied such high rank among the gods of Rome. Agricultural methods remained quite primitive—even in the time of the Empire, when achievements were very impressive in other fields of endeavor.

E. Give the meaning of these words:

cūr	quōcum	cotīdiē	quod
quis	quibuscum	et	quoque
quid	quō	et . . . et	saepe
cui	ubi	nōn	sed
quibus	unde		

## II. Forms

A. Decline *agricola*.

B. Conjugate *laudō*, *moveō* and *sum* in the present tense. Give all possible translations.

C. Give the indicated form:

1. Nominative plural	icola
2. Ablative singular	hasta
3. 3rd person singular, present active	nūntiō
4. Dative singular	rēgina
5. Genitive plural	agricola
6. 1st person plural, present active	habeō
7. 2nd person singular, present active	parō
8. 2nd person singular, present active	pāreō
9. Accusative singular	terra
10. 3rd person plural, present active	terreō

D. *Translate the following Latin verbs:*

1. Ambulāmus.      2. Habitantne?      3. Removet.
4. Properat.      5. Nōn vidētis.      6. Sunt.      7. Timeō.
8. Necant.      9. Nāvigāsne?      10. Mōnstrat.

E. *Translate the following verbs into Latin:*

1. He sees.      2. They are carrying.      3. We obey.
4. You (*sing.*) hold.      5. Do they fight?      6. She is not preparing.
7. You (*pl.*) are.      8. I am plowing.
9. They give.      10. He remains.

### III.

### Syntax

A. *Complete the following by filling in the blanks:*

1. Nouns of the first declension are usually \_\_\_\_\_ in gender; a few are \_\_\_\_\_.
2. The subject of the sentence is in the \_\_\_\_\_ case.
3. The indirect object is in the \_\_\_\_\_ case.
4. The direct object is in the \_\_\_\_\_ case.
5. Place *from* which is expressed by the prepositions \_\_\_\_\_ or \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_ or \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_ with the \_\_\_\_\_ case.
6. The means or instrument *with* which something is done is expressed by the \_\_\_\_\_ case without a preposition.
7. The person *with* whom something is done is expressed by the preposition \_\_\_\_\_ with the \_\_\_\_\_ case.
8. The place *to* which is expressed by the preposition \_\_\_\_\_ with the \_\_\_\_\_ case.
9. The Latin preposition **in** meaning *in* or *on* is followed by the \_\_\_\_\_ case; **in** meaning *into* is followed by the \_\_\_\_\_ case.
10. The noun used to indicate the possessor is in the \_\_\_\_\_ case.
11. The noun which follows the verb in a sentence introduced by *there is* or *there are* is in the \_\_\_\_\_ case because it is used as the \_\_\_\_\_ of the sentence.

12. The particle **-ne** added to the first word in the sentence makes the sentence \_\_\_\_\_.
13. The verb in the sentence agrees with the \_\_\_\_\_ in person and number.

B. *Explain the use of the italicized Latin words in the following sentences. Give the case and number.*

1. Incolae praedam *nautīs* dant.
2. Multās *viās* in prōvinciā vidēmus.
3. Sunt magnae *silvae* in īnsulā.
4. Agricola ad *portam* ambulat.
5. Habentne puellae cōpiam *pecūniae*?
6. *Hastā* pugnat.
7. Quis cum parvā *puellā* ambulat?
8. In nostrā (*our*) patriā *rēgīnae* nōn pārēmus.
9. Nauta ex *aquā* properat.
10. Fēmina est *rēgīna* Siciliae.

#### IV. Latin Mottoes

*Match the following:*

- |   |                                   |
|---|-----------------------------------|
| _____ 1. an approaching deadline                        |                                   |
| _____ 2. the importance of drill in learning situations |                                   |
| _____ 3. Christmas carols                               |                                   |
| _____ 4. a slogan for a charity drive                   |                                   |
| _____ 5. the need to face reality                       |                                   |
| _____ 6. a prescription for a calm mind                 |                                   |
|   | A. Bis dat quī cito dat           |
|   | B. Experientia docet              |
|   | C. Dēscende ad terram             |
|   | D. Perīculum in morā              |
|   | E. Glōria in excelsīs Deō         |
|   | F. Maximum remedium irae mora est |

#### V. Word Study and Derivatives

*Explain the words italicized in these sentences:*

1. Because of *pecuniary* difficulties, they had to sell the family home.
2. My brother was criticized for his *pugnacious* attitude.

3. Take *copious* notes in your biology class.
4. She loves her brothers and sisters, and her *filial* attitude indicates great respect.
5. The house is poorly *insulated*.
6. Through these *portals* pass the most beautiful girls in the world.
7. He was born on December 2 and under the sign of *Sagittarius*.
8. During the infancy and childhood of the king, his mother served as *regent* of France.
9. In science we studied the natural *habitat* of all species.
10. Our dog, a toy Boston bull, is small but *tenacious*.
11. Is that field *arable*?
12. Are their business policies considered *laudable*?
13. A plague of grasshoppers brought *devastation* to the plains that year.
14. Why were his driving rights *revoked*?
15. *Ambulatory* patients are cared for in this wing of the hospital.

## VI.

### Roman History

1. What was the *rēgīna viārūm*? Where was it located?
2. Describe the Roman method of road building. What indications are there that these roads were built to last?
3. What would a sign reading **LXV MP** along the Appian Way mean?
4. How did the very early Romans take care of their debts? How did this practice change as civilization advanced?



*Relief of a Roman  
boy at school*

7

## Second Declension: Masculine Nouns

Modus agrī nōn ita magnus

*A bit of land*

HORACE

### 52 Dē Scholā Rōmānā: Colloquium (*Conversation*)

**Vir.** Quis es, puer?

**Puer.** Sum Lūcius, fīlius Publīi (*Publius*).

**Vir.** Esne, Lūcī, Gallus (*a Gaul*)?

**Puer.** Nōn sum Gallus; sum puer Rōmānus sed Cotus est Gallus. 5

**Vir.** Quis, Lūcī, est Cotus?

**Puer.** Cotus est servus et paedagōgus.

**Vir.** Quid facit (*does . . . do*) paedagōgus?

**Puer.** Paedagōgī puerōs ad scholam dūcunt (*take*); librōs puerōrum portant. 10

**Vir.** Ubi est schola?

**Puer.** Schola nostra (*our*) est prope mūrōs Rōmae. Cum amīcīs ad mūrōs cotīdiē ambulō.

**Vir.** Quis est magister?

15 **Puer.** Magister noster nōn est Rōmānus. Est servus sed est bonus vir.

**Vir.** Quid puerōs docet magister?

**Puer.** Magister puerōs linguam Latīnam docet; litterās (*literature*) Latīnās quoque docet.

20 **Vir.** Suntne scholae pūblicae?

**Puer.** Scholae Rōmae (*at Rome*) nōn sunt pūblicae. Puerī ad scholam pecūniam portant; magistrō pecūniam dant. Magister puerōs laudat; bonīs puerīs praemium (*a prize*) dat.

25 **Vir.** Suntne puellae in scholīs Rōmānīs?

**Puer.** Nōn saepe sunt puellae in scholīs Rōmānīs. Numquam (*never*) erant puellae in scholā nostrā. Puellae Rōmānae domī (*at home*) manent.

### Respondē Latīnē :

1. Cuius filius est Lūcius?
2. Estne Lūcius puer Rōmānus?
3. Quis est Cotus?
4. Quī puerōs ad scholam dūcunt?
5. Quid paedagōgus portat?
6. Quibuscum puer ad mūrōs ambulat?
7. Quis puerōs docet?
8. Quid puerōs docet?
9. Cui puerī pecūniam dant?
10. Suntne puellae in scholīs Rōmānīs?

53 There are five declensions of Latin nouns. It happens that no two of the declensions have the same ending in the genitive singular. Hereafter the genitive as well as the nominative of each noun will be indicated in the vocabularies, to show to which declension the noun belongs. Second declension nouns end in -ī in the genitive singular.

54 Second declension nouns ending in -us are masculine and are declined like **mūrus**, *wall*.



## DECLENSION OF *MŪRUS* (wall)

Base, *mūr-*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL	
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>mūrus</i>	<b>-us</b>	<i>mūrī</i>	<b>-ī</b>	
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>mūrī</i>	<b>-ī</b>	<i>mūrōrum</i>	<b>-ōrum</b>	
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>mūrō</i>	<b>-ō</b>	<i>mūrīs</i>	<b>-īs</b>	
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>mūrum</i>	<b>-um</b>	<i>mūrōs</i>	<b>-ōs</b>	
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>mūrō</i>	<b>-ō</b>	<i>mūrīs</i>	<b>-īs</b>	

55 Some masculine nouns of the second declension end in **-er** or **-ir** in the nominative singular. They have the same case endings as **mūrus** except in the nominative singular and the vocative singular.

In the declension of **puer** (*boy*), **e** is retained throughout. In that of **ager** (*field*), **liber** (*book*), and **magister** (*master*), **e** is found in the nominative and vocative singular only. The genitive singular, given in the vocabulary, will always show the base of the noun.

## 56 DECLENSION OF *PUER* (boy)

Base, *puer-*

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>puer</i>	<i>puerī</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>puerī</i>	<i>puerōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>puerō</i>	<i>puerīs</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>puerum</i>	<i>puerōs</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>puerō</i>	<i>puerīs</i>

## 57 DECLENSION OF

**AGER** (*field*)

**MAGISTER** (*teacher*)

Base, *agr-*

Base, *magistr-*

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>ager</i>	<i>agrī</i>	<i>magister</i>	<i>magistrī</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>agrī</i>	<i>agrōrum</i>	<i>magistrī</i>	<i>magistrōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>agrō</i>	<i>agrīs</i>	<i>magistrō</i>	<i>magistrīs</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>agrum</i>	<i>agrōs</i>	<i>magistrum</i>	<i>magistrōs</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>agrō</i>	<i>agrīs</i>	<i>magistrō</i>	<i>magistrīs</i>

	Base, <i>vir</i> -	
	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>vir</i>	<i>virī</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>virī</i>	<i>virōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>virō</i>	<i>virīs</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>virum</i>	<i>virōs</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>virō</i>	<i>virīs</i>

## VOCATIVE CASE

The vocative, like the nominative of address in English, is used in addressing someone. The vocative case has the same forms as the nominative in all declensions except in second declension singular nouns ending in *-us*.

*Ubi, Iūlia, est fēmina?* Where is the woman, Julia?

Second declension singular nouns ending in *-us* have the vocative ending in *-e*: *amīcus*, vocative singular *amīce*.

Proper names ending in *-ius* and *filius*, *son*, contract *-ie* of the vocative singular into *-ī*: *Lūcius*, vocative singular *Lūcī*; *filius*, vocative singular *fīlī*.

## EXERCISES

A. Fill in the blank with the correct ending:

1. *nom. pl.*    *agr* \_\_\_\_; *incol* \_\_\_\_; *mūr* \_\_\_\_
2. *gen. sing.*    *victōri* \_\_\_\_; *amīc* \_\_\_\_; *libr* \_\_\_\_
3. *dat. pl.*    *serv* \_\_\_\_; *rēgīn* \_\_\_\_; *magistr* \_\_\_\_
4. *dat. sing.*    *fēmin* \_\_\_\_; *puer* \_\_\_\_; *amīc* \_\_\_\_
5. *nom. sing.*    *agricol* \_\_\_\_; *mūr* \_\_\_\_; *naut* \_\_\_\_
6. *voc. sing.*    *amīc* \_\_\_\_; *rēgīn* \_\_\_\_; *fil* \_\_\_\_ (*son*)
7. *plural*    *ad silv* \_\_\_\_; *ad magistr* \_\_\_\_;  
                  *ad mūr* \_\_\_\_



A Roman boy, accompanied by a slave, often attended classes taught by a slave.

8. *singular*      cum vir \_\_\_\_\_; cum  
                              puell \_\_\_\_\_; cum amīc \_\_\_\_\_
9. *singular*      trāns vi \_\_\_\_\_; trāns  
                              īnsul \_\_\_\_\_; trāns agr \_\_\_\_\_
10. *plural*      inopia vir \_\_\_\_\_; inopia  
                              libr \_\_\_\_\_; inopia sagitt \_\_\_\_\_

B. *Change singular forms to plural:*

1. Puer magistrō librum dat.
2. Servus filiā portat.
3. Erat agricola in agrō.
4. Librum puella habet.
5. Ubi, fili, est hasta?

C. *Change plural forms to singular:*

1. Nautās servī timent.
2. Incolae īnsulārum magistrīs pārent.
3. Virī incolās sagittīs necant.
4. Ad mūrōs fēminae properant.
5. Quibuseum, amīcī, ambulātis?

D. *Translate:*

1. Magister puerōs linguam Latīnam docet.
2. Erant multī virī in agrīs.
3. Ambulantne puerī ad scholam?
4. Servī fossam aquā cotīdiē complent.
5. Per magnam silvam filiae properant, sed filiōs nōn vident.
6. Erat inopia virōrum in īnsulā.
7. Ad rēgīnam librōs saepe portāmus.
8. Servus magistrō victōriam nūntiat.
9. Estne cōpia librōrum in scholā?
10. Cum amīcō ad portam ambulō.

E. *Write in Latin:*

1. There were slaves in the province.
2. To whom (s.) do the boys give money?
3. The farmers plow (their) fields daily.
4. We are pointing out the road to the men.
5. There is a scarcity of books on the island.
6. Why do the inhabitants fear the sailor's sons?
7. The women are standing near the wall.
8. The good queen summons (her) son.
9. She is carrying a supply of water to the man.
10. The sons of the slave remain in the fields.

61

VOCABULARY

ager, agrī, <i>m.</i> , field, land, farm, territory	vir, virī, <i>m.</i> , man
amīcus, -ī, <i>m.</i> , friend	doceō, docēre, teach ( <i>with two accusatives</i> )
fīlius, fīlii, <i>m.</i> , son	erat, was, there was
liber, librī, <i>m.</i> , book	erant, were, there were
magister, magistrī, <i>m.</i> , teacher, master	contrā, <i>preposition with acc.</i> , against
mūrus, -ī, <i>m.</i> , wall	prope, <i>preposition with acc.</i> , near
puer, puerī, <i>m.</i> , boy	cuius, whose
servus, -ī, <i>m.</i> , slave	



*Relief from the  
column of the  
Emperor Trajan at  
Rome*

# 8

## Second Declension: Neuter Nouns in *-um* Apposition

Facta nōn verba  
*Deeds not words*

### 62 Puer Rōmānus et Puer Helvētius (Colloquium)

*Translate the following conversation (colloquium) between a boy from Switzerland (terra Helvētia) and a Roman boy.*

**Dīvicō.** Quis es?

**Mārcus.** Sum Mārcus, filius Rōmānī, et in parvō oppidō Italiae habitō.

**Dīvicō.** Sum Dīvicō, filius Moritasgī. In terrā Helvētiā habitō.

5

**Mārcus.** Ubi est terra Helvētia?

**Dīvicō.** Terra Helvētia est prope Galliam. Terra Helvētia Galliā et Germāniā et Italiā continētur (*is bounded*).  
Terra Helvētia est parva.

- 10 **Mārcus.** Habitantne multī incolae in terrā Helvētiā?  
**Dīvicō.** Certē. (*Oh, yes.*) Multī incolae ibi habitant et cum Germānīs saepe bellum gerunt (*wage*).
- Mārcus.** Ubi est Moritasgus?  
**Dīvicō.** Est in castrīs Rōmānīs cum Helvētiīs. Portam castrōrum videō. Quot (*How many*) portās castra Rōmāna habent?
- 15 **Mārcus.** Castra Rōmāna quattuor (*four*) portās habent. Castra fossam et vāllum quoque habent. Fossa est lāta (*wide*); vāllum est altum (*high*).
- 20 **Dīvicō.** Estne praesidium in castrīs?  
**Mārcus.** Est magnum praesidium in castrīs.  
**Dīvicō.** Pugnantne Gallī cum Rōmānīs?  
**Mārcus.** Gallī cum Rōmānīs saepe proeliō pugnant quod Gallī Rōmānōs nōn amant. Nunc (*Now*) Gallī bellum parant.
- 25 **Dīvicō.** Habēsne hastam?  
**Mārcus.** Hastam nōn habeo, sed sagittam habeo.  
**Dīvicō.** Hastam longam, dōnum (*the gift*) Moritasgī, habeo.  
**Mārcus.** Eāmus (*Let us go*) in castra Rōmāna.

### Respondē Latīnē :

1. Quis est Mārcus?
2. Ubi habitat Mārcus?
3. Ubi habitat Dīvicō?
4. Estne Dīvicō puer Rōmānus?
5. Ubi est terra Helvētia?
6. Quibuscum incolae terrae Helvētiae pugnant?
7. Quot (*How many*) portās castra Rōmāna habent?
8. Habentne castra fossam et vāllum?
9. Habetne Mārcus hastam?
10. Quid Mārcus habet?

63 Second declension nouns ending in **-um** are neuter, and are declined like **bellum**, *war*.

Neuter nouns of all declensions have the nominative and accusative cases alike in both singular and plural; in the plural these cases always end in **-a**.





The Claudian Aqueduct. The Romans received their water supply, the finest of any ancient city, from a system of eleven aqueducts carrying 200,000,000 gallons to the city daily. The arches testify to skill in engineering and ability to master practical problems. The aqueduct extended for forty-three miles, bringing to reservoirs water, which was then conveyed to private homes by lead conduits.

Base, bell-

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
<i>Nom.</i>	bellum	-um	bella	-a
<i>Gen.</i>	bellī	-ī	bellōrum	-ōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	bellō	-ō	bellīs	-īs
<i>Acc.</i>	bellum	-um	bella	-a
<i>Abl.</i>	bellō	-ō	bellīs	-īs

## APPOSITION

**Mārcus, puer Rōmānus, sagittam habet.**

Marcus, a Roman boy, has an arrow.

**Servus Mārcō, puerō Rōmānō, respondet.**

The slave answers Marcus, a Roman boy.

A noun used along with another noun or a pronoun for the purpose of explaining or defining its meaning is said to be a *noun in apposition*. In the first sentence **puer** is used along with **Mārcus** to explain who he is. In the second sentence **puerō** explains **Mārcō**.

A noun in apposition is in the same case as the noun which it explains, and generally follows it.

**In insulā Siciliā habitant.**

They dwell on the island (of) Sicily.

Notice that Latin says "the island Sicily" where English says "the island of Sicily."

66 **Hastās sagittāsque habēmus.**

We have spears and arrows.

The connective **-que**, *and*, is always suffixed to the second of the two words grouped together. When a word has **-que** attached to it, the accent is shifted to the syllable preceding **-que**: sagit'tās but sagittās'que.

67 **Castra**, a camp, is a plural noun with a singular meaning; it is declined like the plural of **bellum**: *Nom. castra, Gen. castrōrum, Dat. castrīs, Acc. castra, Abl. castrīs.*

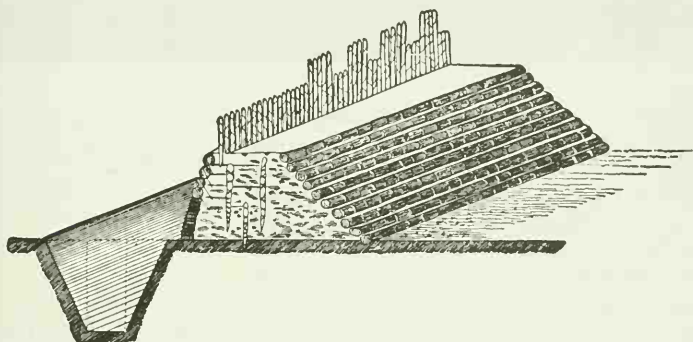
When **castra** is used as the subject of a sentence, the verb is in the plural.

**Castra portās habent.**

The camp has gates.

During their occupation of Britain, the Romans established camps in various parts of the country. Many of these camps became permanent towns, which retain a form of the Latin word **castra** in their names: Chester, Gloucester, Rochester, Dorchester, etc.

A Roman camp was regularly surrounded by a trench and by a wall with four gates.



Roman camps were carefully designed and constructed.

68

## WORD STUDY

Many English words are the Latin words unchanged or slightly changed in spelling.

(a) Latin and English identical

via

camera

(b) Ending dropped or changed to *e*

LATIN

ENGLISH

pictūra

picture

prōvincia

province

laudō

laud

moveō

move



Views of Sardis. This ancient city of Asia Minor and capital of the powerful kingdom of Lydia in the 8th century B.C. was still important in Roman and Byzantine times. Most of the visible ruins, especially one of an Ionic temple, show Greek and Roman influence. The city withstood invasions of Persians, Athenians and Antiochus the Great but succumbed to Tamerlaine, an Oriental conqueror, in 1402.





(c) Latin suffix **-ia** becomes English **-y**

Some nouns of the *first declension* have practically the same meaning in both Latin and English. The *form* of the English word is slightly altered by the change of ending or suffix **-ia** to **-y**. Thus the Latin **glōria** becomes the English *glory*.

Give the English equivalent of these nouns by changing **-ia** to **-y**:

Germānia  
iniūria

Italia  
lūxuria

Sicilia  
victōria

(d) Latin **-tia** and **-tium** become English **-ce**

Many Latin nouns ending in **-tia** or **-tium** become English nouns ending in **-ce**: **diligentia** becomes *diligence*; **iūstitia**, *justice*.

Give the English equivalent of these Latin nouns by changing **-tia** or **-tium** to **-ce**. Their meaning is almost unchanged.

grātia  
innocentia

silentium  
spatium

When you meet a Latin word ending in **-ia**, try to get the English meaning by changing **-ia** to **-y** before consulting your vocabulary. In the same way if a Latin word ends in **-tia** or **-tium** try to get the meaning by changing **-tia** or **-tium** to **-ce**.

A. Fill in the blank with the correct ending:

1. *acc. sing.*    rēgīn \_\_\_\_; puer \_\_\_\_; oppid \_\_\_\_
2. *nom. pl.*    vāll \_\_\_\_; mūr \_\_\_\_; camer \_\_\_\_
3. *dat. sing.*    vir \_\_\_\_; amīc \_\_\_\_; praesidi \_\_\_\_
4. *nom. sing.*    iniūri \_\_\_\_; proeli \_\_\_\_; serv \_\_\_\_
5. *gen. sing.*    fili \_\_\_\_; bell \_\_\_\_; agricol \_\_\_\_

B. *Fill in the blank with the correct ending:*

1. (*pl.*) ad oppid \_\_\_\_; ad vi \_\_\_\_; ad agr \_\_\_\_
2. (*sing.*) cum puer \_\_\_\_; cum naut \_\_\_\_;  
cum praesidi \_\_\_\_
3. (*pl.*) ex castr \_\_\_\_; ex camer \_\_\_\_; ex silv \_\_\_\_
4. (*sing.*) prope mūr \_\_\_\_; prope oppid \_\_\_\_;  
prope prōvinci \_\_\_\_
5. (*sing.*) cōpia frūment \_\_\_\_; porta oppid \_\_\_\_;  
filius agricol \_\_\_\_

C. *Change singular forms to plural:*

1. Praesidium in oppidō collocat.
2. Ā portā vir properat.
3. Magister amīcō librum mōnstrat.
4. In insulā hastā sagittāque pugnat.
5. Incola prōvinciae oppidum oppugnat.

D. *Change plural forms to singular:*

1. Pictūrās (*pictures*) rēgīnārum filiārumque vidēmus.
2. Oppida portās et vālla habent.
3. Quibuscum, amīcī, agrōs arātis?
4. Incolae īnsulārum proelia nōn amant.
5. Quibus magistrī imperant?

E. *Translate:*

1. Propter inopiam frūmentī in agrīs labōrāmus.
2. Puer, servus agricolae, frūmentum ad oppidum portat.
3. Cōpiae Gallōrum bellum parant.
4. Portam castrōrum Rōmānōrum vidēmus.
5. Cotīdiē rēgīna servīs imperat; rēgīnae servī pārent.
6. Post proelium virī praedam, magnam (*a large amount of*) pecūniam, comportant.
7. Castra Rōmāna sunt magna; est praesidium in castrīs.
8. Incolae Italiae patriam amant; pugnam nōn amant.
9. Prope vāllum cum filiā vir manet.
10. Et puerī et puellae magistrum laudant.



write out  
F.

Write in Latin:

1. The Romans are preparing for war.
2. The queen's troops are attacking the camp.
3. There was plenty of grain in the town.
4. After the battle they announce the victory to the inhabitants.
5. Do you (*sing.*) see the gates of the camp?
6. We are conquering the garrisons in the town.
7. The queen, a good woman, teaches (her) daughter.
8. They are wounding the inhabitants with spears and arrows.
9. The sailors lay waste the fields of the province.
10. On account of the Gauls we are afraid.

## SUPPLEMENTARY EXERCISE

Write the following phrases in Latin:

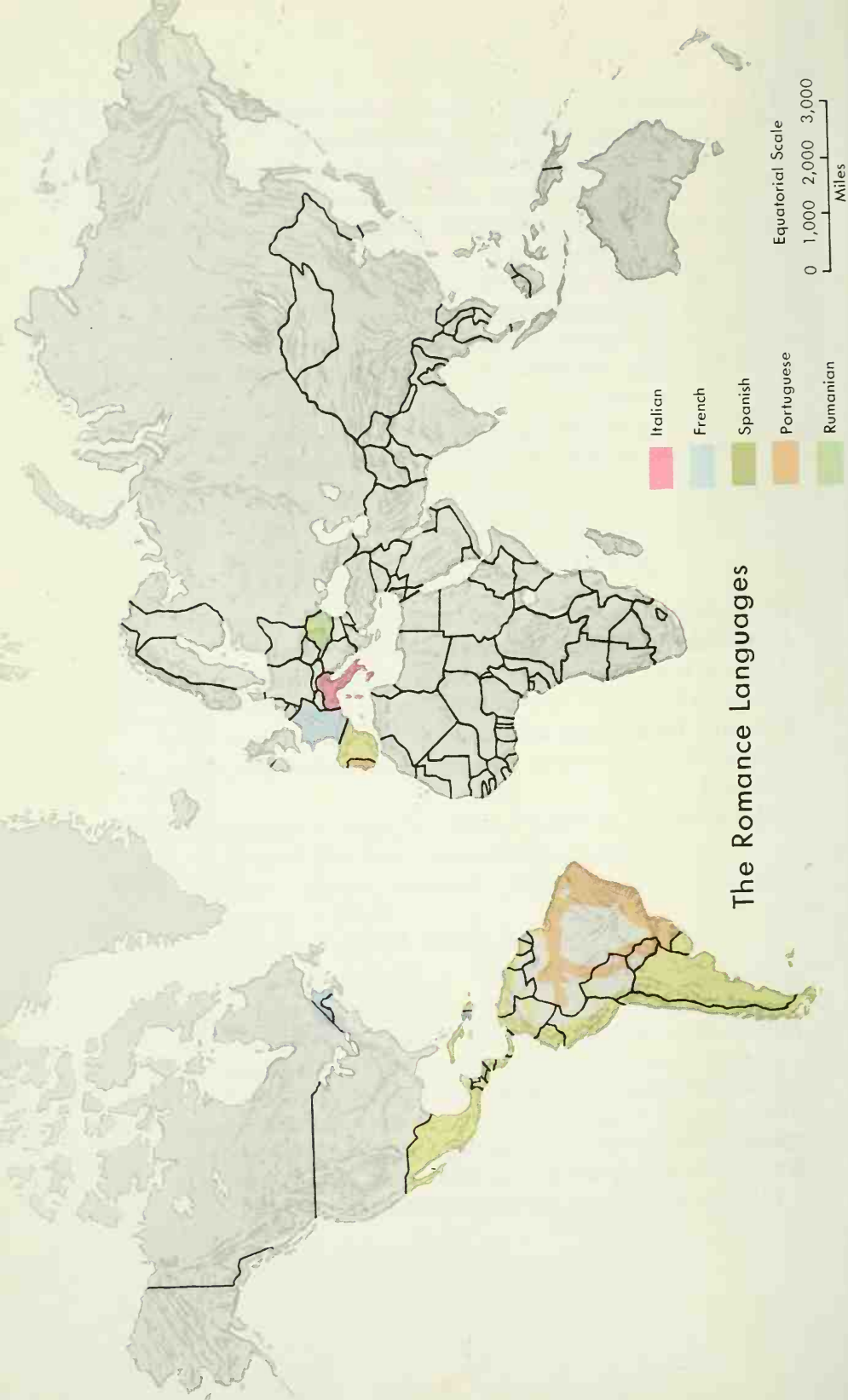
1. into the town; into the camp; into the street
2. down from the rampart; down from the gate; down from the wall
3. with a friend; with an arrow; with grain
4. away from the camp; away from the town; away from the island
5. a scarcity of water; a scarcity of grain; a scarcity of books

70

## VOCABULARY

**iniūria**, -ae, *f.*, wrong-doing, wrong, injury  
**bellum**, -i, *n.*, war; **bellum parāre**, to prepare for war  
**castra**, **castrōrum**, *n. pl.*, camp  
**frūmentum**, -i, *n.*, grain  
**oppidum**, -i, *n.*, town  
**praesidium**, **praesidiī**, *n.*, garrison, protection

**proelium**, **proeliī**, *n.*, battle  
**vāllum**, -i, *n.*, wall, rampart  
**labōrō**, **labōrāre**, toil, labor  
**superō**, **superāre**, conquer, surpass, excel  
**vulnerō**, **vulnerāre**, wound  
**propter**, *preposition with acc.*, on account of, because of  
**nunc**, *adverb*, now





*A good shepherd,  
from a sarcophagus*

# 9

## Adjectives of First and Second Declensions

Senātus populusque Rōmānus — SPQR

*The senate and people of Rome*

71                      Dē Servīs Rōmānīs (Colloquium)

Viātor, a traveler

Rōmānus, a Roman

V. Quis est ille (*that*) longus vir cum parvō puerō?

R. Est amīcus meus Mārcus.

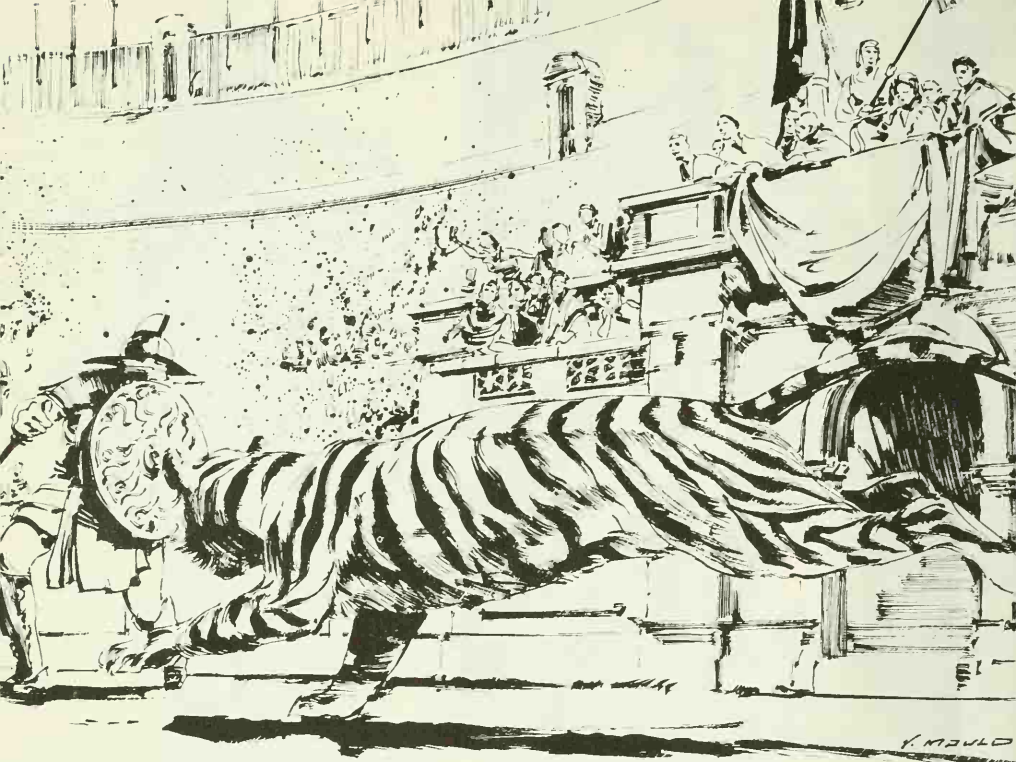
V. Et quis est parvus puer quī (*who*) ambulat cum amīcō tuō?

R. Est filiūs Britannī (*of a Briton*). Britannus est servus 5  
Mārcī et in agrīs labōrat.

V. Suntne Rōmae (*in Rome*) multī servī Britannicī?

R. Ita (*Yes*). Populus Rōmānus in Britannīā magna castra  
habet. Cōpiaē nostrae cum Britannīs pugnant; multī  
Britannī nunc sunt servī Rōmānōrum.

10



Every kind of fighting animal in the known world was imported.

- V. Habentne amīcī tuī multōs servōs?  
R. Amīcī meī habent agrōs lātōs et multōs servōs. Virī in agrīs labōrant; frūmentum ex agrīs in oppida portant.  
V. Suntne virī miserī?  
15 R. Servī amīcōrum nostrōrum nōn sunt miserī. Servī Mārcī nōn sunt miserī quod amīcus meus est bonus vir. Paucī servī autem (*however*) sunt miserī quod dominīs (*masters*) malīs pārent.  
V. Suntne liberae filiae Britannōrum?  
20 R. Fīliae Britannōrum nōn sunt liberae; fēminīs Rōmānīs pārent.  
V. Suntne puellae quoque miserae?  
R. Paucae puellae sunt miserae propter magnās iniūriās dominārum (*of their mistresses*).  
25 V. Suntne pulchrae puellae Britannicae?  
R. Sunt magnae et pulchrae sed puellae Rōmānae quoque sunt pulchrae.

## Respondē Latīnē :

1. Quis est longus vir cum parvō puerō?
2. Estne Māreus Rōmānus?
3. Estne servus Mārci Rōmānus?
4. Ubi populus Rōmānus magna castra habet?
5. Suntne multī Britannī servī Rōmānōrum?
6. Quid virī ex agrīs in oppida portant?
7. Cūr servī Mārci nōn sunt miserī?
8. Quibus servī miserī pārent?
9. Cūr sunt miserae paucae puellae?
10. Suntne pulchrae puellae Britannicae?

72	parvus puer	a small boy
	parva puella	a small girl
	parvum oppidum	a small town
	Puer est parvus.	The boy is small.
	Puellae sunt parvae.	The girls are small.
	in parvum oppidum	into a small town
	in parvō oppidō	in a small town
	filius noster	our son
	filia nostra	our daughter
	oppidum nostrum	our town
	oppida nostra	our towns
	in oppidum nostrum	into our town
	in oppida nostra	into our towns

Latin adjectives are declined like nouns. They have a masculine, a feminine and a neuter set of forms to agree with their nouns in gender.

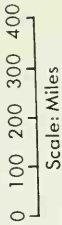
An adjective agrees with its noun in gender, number, and case. This rule applies whether the adjective is directly attached to the noun or is in the predicate.

Adjectives of the first and second declensions are declined

- (a) in the masculine gender like **mūrus**; **puer**; **ager**
- (b) in the feminine gender like **puella**
- (c) in the neuter gender like **bellum**



# The Roman Empire at Its Widest Extent







Wherever the Romans went, they built permanent roads, theaters, baths, and other public structures. This theater, with its elaborately carved proscenium frieze, is in the ancient Roman city of Sabratha, in Libya.

## 73      DECLENSION OF *BONUS* (good)

Base, *bon-*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	bonus	bona	bonum	bonī	bonae	bona
<i>Gen.</i>	bonī	bonae	bonī	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	bonō	bonae	bonō	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
<i>Acc.</i>	bonum	bonam	bonum	bonōs	bonās	bona
<i>Abl.</i>	bonō	bonā	bonō	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs

The vocative of a masculine adjective ending in *-us* ends in *-e*: **bone vir**, *good man*. Other adjectives have the same form in the vocative as in the nominative. Exception, the vocative of **meus** is **mī: mī fili**, *my son*.

74      **Servī sunt bonī.**  
           **Agricolae sunt bonī.**

The slaves are good.  
 The farmers are good.

Notice that the adjective does not always end like the noun. **Agricolae**, although of the first declension, is masculine from its meaning; **bonī** is masculine, nominative, plural, to agree with it.

75      In Latin the adjective frequently follows its noun: **puella pulchra** and **pulchra puella** are both found. Occasionally the position is fixed. Possessive and proper adjectives regularly follow, as in **servus meus**, *my slave*, and **populus Rōmānus**, *the Roman people*. Adjectives of size usually precede: **magnum oppidum**, *a large town*. (Possessive adjectives are usually omitted unless required for clarity or emphasis.)

76      First and second declension adjectives ending in **-er** differ in declension from **bonus** in the nominative and vocative masculine singular only.

## 77                      DECLENSION OF **LĪBER** (*free*)

Base, **liber-**

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	liber	libera	liberum	liberī	liberae	libera
<i>Gen.</i>	liberī	liberae	liberī	liberōrum	liberārum	liberōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	liberō	liberae	liberō	liberīs	liberīs	liberīs
<i>Acc.</i>	liberum	liberam	liberum	liberōs	liberās	libera
<i>Abl.</i>	liberō	liberā	liberō	liberīs	liberīs	liberīs

78      The masculine plural forms of **liber** may be used with the force of a noun, meaning *children*. The word literally means *the free ones*, as set apart from *the slaves*. **Liberī** is declined: **liberī**, **liberōrum**, **liberīs**, **liberōs**, **liberīs**.

## DECLENSION OF NOSTER (our)

Base, **nostr-**

## SINGULAR

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	noster	nostra	nostrum
<i>Gen.</i>	nostrī	nostrae	nostrī
<i>Dat.</i>	nostrō	nostrae	nostrō
<i>Acc.</i>	nostrum	nostram	nostrum
<i>Abl.</i>	nostrō	nostrā	nostrō

## PLURAL

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	nostrī	nostrae	nostra
<i>Gen.</i>	nostrōrum	nostrārum	nostrōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	nostrīs	nostrīs	nostrīs
<i>Acc.</i>	nostrōs	nostrās	nostra
<i>Abl.</i>	nostrīs	nostrīs	nostrīs

## WORD STUDY

1. The adjective suffix **-ānus** means *pertaining to* or *belonging to*. Thus from **Rōm-**, the stem of **Rōma**, is formed the adjective **Rōmānus**, **-a**, **-um**, *pertaining to Rome, belonging to Rome*. This adjective may then be used as a noun.

**Rōmānus**, **-ī**, *m.*, a Roman

**Rōmānī**, **-ōrum**, *m. pl.*, the Romans

Form a similar adjective and noun from the stem of **Āfrica**.

2. The adjective suffix **-icus** has the same meaning as the suffix **-ānus**. Adjectives formed with this suffix are often alternates for other forms and sometimes are the more common form. For example, **Gallicus**, **-a**, **-um** is a more common adjective form than **Gallus**, **-a**, **-um**, even though the noun remains **Gallus**, **-ī**.

Form a similar alternate form for the adjective **Italus**, **-a**, **-um**.

## A. Give the correct adjective ending:

1. vir mal \_\_\_\_; puella pulchr \_\_\_\_; magn \_\_\_\_ prae-sidium
2. per parv \_\_\_\_ portam; per mūrum lāt \_\_\_\_; per oppidum liber \_\_\_\_
3. cum amīcō me \_\_\_\_; cum populō Rōmān \_\_\_\_; cum virō liber \_\_\_\_
4. ē pau-c \_\_\_\_ camerīs; ex parv \_\_\_\_ castrīs; ex agrīs vestr \_\_\_\_
5. magn \_\_\_\_ oppida; prōvinciae nostr \_\_\_\_; agricolae miser \_\_\_\_ (nom.)

## B. Change singular forms to plural:

1. Servus miser agrum arat.
2. Agricola bonus puellae bonae librum dat.
3. Fīliam fēminae pulchrae in camerā tuā videō.
4. Per agrum longum lātumque properat.
5. Fīlius nautae in parvā īnsulā habitat.

## C. Change plural forms to singular:

1. Librōs meōs puerī malī habent.
2. Magistrīs bonīs viās mōnstrant.
3. Cum fēminīs ex agrīs parvīs incolae ambulant.
4. Magna proelia filiī vestrī amant.
5. Oppida nostra parvās portās et mūrōs longōs habent.

## D. Complete the sentences in Latin:

- |                         |                       |
|-------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. Videō _____.         | a bad woman           |
| _____.                  | my son                |
| _____.                  | much grain            |
| 2. Castra _____ habent. | many gates            |
| _____                   | wide roads            |
| _____                   | large ramparts        |
| 3. _____ respondēmus.   | to a good friend      |
| _____                   | to the pretty girl    |
| _____                   | to the Roman people   |
| 4. _____ ambulō.        | out of the large camp |
| _____                   | away from a tall man  |
| _____                   | with the good queen   |

- |                   |                 |
|-------------------|-----------------|
| 5. In oppidō erat |                 |
| inopia _____.     | of good men     |
| cōpia _____.      | of small spears |
| magister _____.   | of a few boys   |

6-10  
 (E) Write in Latin:

1. The women are obedient to the good man, not to the small boy.
2. Rome was a small town; the Romans were free.
3. On account of the wrongdoing of the farmers the slaves are unhappy.
4. He is announcing the victory of the forces to a few inhabitants.
5. They are laying waste our province, a small island.
6. The men and the boys collect much grain from (out of) the fields.
7. The good queen summons many slaves to (her) room.
8. Romans, the troops are attacking your town and laying waste your fields.
9. We fear the sailor's wicked son; he is fighting with our friend.
10. Marcus, where are your books?

### SUPPLEMENTARY EXERCISES

A. Complete each of the following sentences with the correct form of **tuus** or **vester**:

1. Fīliam tuam, fēmina, amās.  
Amīcōs tuos, fēmina, amās.
2. Amātisne, puerī, magistrōs \_\_\_\_\_?  
Amātisne, puerī, patriam \_\_\_\_\_?
3. Retinēsne, Rōmāne, cōpiās in prōvinciā \_\_\_\_\_?  
Retinēsne, Rōmāne, cōpiās in castrīs \_\_\_\_\_?
4. Arāsne, amīce, agrum \_\_\_\_\_?  
Arāsne, amīce, agrōs \_\_\_\_\_?
5. Rēgīnae \_\_\_\_\_, virī, nōn respondētis.  
Servīs \_\_\_\_\_, virī, nōn respondētis.

B. Write in Latin:

1. The spear is long; the wall is long; the rampart is long.
2. The towns are free; the provinces are free; the masters are free.
3. We see many friends; we see many arrows; we see many garrisons.
4. In my country; on the wide wall; in the small town.
5. With a few slaves; with the beautiful girls; with long spears.

82

VOCABULARY

**populus**, -ī, *m.*, a people,  
a nation

**bonus**, **bona**, **bonum**, good

**lātus**, **lāta**, **lātum**, wide, broad

**longus**, **longa**, **longum**, long, tall

**magnus**, **magna**, **magnum**, large

**malus**, **mala**, **malum**, bad, evil

**multus**, **multa**, **multum**, much;

*pl.*, many

**parvus**, **parva**, **parvum**, small

**paucī**, **paucae**, **pauca**, few, a few

(*in plural only*)

**liber**, **libera**, **liberum**, free

**miser**, **misera**, **miserum**,

wretched, unhappy

**pulcher**, **pulchra**, **pulchrum**,

beautiful, pretty, fine

**meus**, **mea**, **meum**, my, mine

**tuus**, **tua**, **tuum**, your, yours

**noster**, **nostra**, **nostrum**, our,

ours

**vester**, **vestra**, **vestrum**, your,

yours

In the phrase **populus Rōmānus**, *the Roman people*, **populus** is a collective noun denoting the nation; the phrase is singular and, when used as subject, has a singular verb. **Populus Rōmānus multās cōpiās habet**. The Romans have many troops.

**Tuus** means *your* if the sentence is addressed to one person; **vester** means *your* if the sentence is addressed to more than one person.

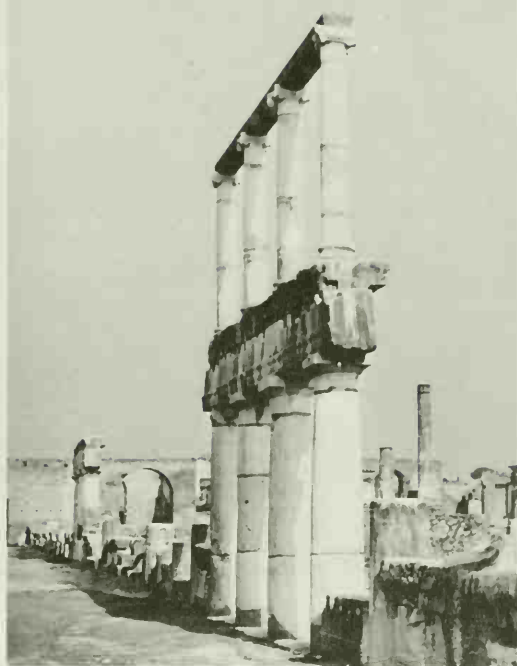
**Filiōs tuōs**, **Lūcī**, **videō**.

**Filiōs vestrōs**, **virī**, **videō**.

Lucius, I see your sons.

Men, I see your sons.





*Columns from the  
Basilica at Pompeii*

# 10

## Principal Parts: First and Second Conjugations Perfect Indicative Active

Vēnī, Vīdī, Vīcī.

*I came, I saw, I conquered.*

JULIUS CAESAR

83

### Dē Gallīs (Part 1) Puerī Rōmānī Gallum Vident

Ōlim (*Once*) Rōma erat parvum oppidum in rīpā Tiberis (*of the Tiber*). Circum Rōmam erat mūrus altus et longus. In agrīs prope Tiberim<sup>1</sup> erant multae fēminae et multī virī Rōmānī cum liberīs.

Gallī sunt liberī incolae Galliae. Virī magnī sunt et hastīs 5  
gladiīsque pugnant. Gallī Rōmānīs (*to the Romans*) nōn sunt  
amīcī.

In agrō Rōmānō sunt castra Gallōrum. Gallī in castra  
magnās cōpiās convocāvērunt et ibi (*there*) praesidium col-  
locāvērunt. Frūmentum ex agrīs in castra comportāvērunt. 10

<sup>1</sup> Acc. Sing.



The Romans used durable materials in their public structures throughout the length and breadth of the Empire. Even in Jerash, Jordan, they built their forum as if they expected it to remain till the end of time.

Filiī agricolae saepe errant in agrīs longē (*far*) ab oppidō. Equum nigrum prope silvam vīdērunt et in equō magnum Gallum. Quamquam puerī magnopere (*greatly*) timuērunt, ūnus ex eīs (*one of them*) clāmāvit, “Quis es? Cūr nōs (*us*)  
15 terruistī?” Gallus nōn respondit.

Puerī domum (*home*) properāvērunt. “Ubi fuistis?” inquit (*said*) pater (*their father*). Respondērunt, “In agrīs fuimus. Vīdimus equum nigrum in agrīs et in equō magnum Gallum. Gallus nōs terruit.”

### Respondē Latinē :

1. Quālis (*What kind of*) mūrus erat circum Rōmam?
2. Quibus (*With what*) Gallī pugnant?
3. Ubi sunt castra Gallōrum?
4. Quōs (*Whom, acc. pl.*) Gallī in castra convocāvērunt?
5. Quid Gallī in castrīs collocāvērunt?
6. Quem (*Whom, acc. sing.*) filiī agricolae vīdērunt?
7. Quid Gallus puerīs respondit?
8. Quō puerī properāvērunt?
9. Timuēruntne puerī?



This market place in the Roman city of Leptis Magna in North Africa is one of many such monuments to Roman architectural skill. Built nearly seventeen hundred years ago, it is remarkably well preserved.

#### 84 PRINCIPAL PARTS AND VERB STEMS

A regular Latin verb has four principal parts and three stems. The four principal parts are:

**portō**, *I carry*, present indicative active (1st pers. sing.)

**portāre**, *to carry*, present infinitive active

**portāvī**, *I have carried*, perfect indicative active (1st pers. sing.)

**portātum**, supine.

85 From the principal parts three stems are obtained:

1. the present stem, which is found by dropping **-re** from the present infinitive active: **portā-** from **portāre**.
2. the perfect stem, which is found by dropping **-ī** from the first person singular of the perfect indicative active: **portāv-** from **portāvī**.
3. the supine stem, which is found by dropping **-um** from the supine: **portāt-** from **portātum**.

Every form of a Latin verb is built on one of these three stems.

The four principal parts of all new verbs, beginning with this lesson, will be given in the vocabulary.

## PRINCIPAL PARTS

86

### FIRST CONJUGATION

The principal parts of the verbs of the first conjugation are formed, as a rule, like those of **portō**.

PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.	SUPINE	
amō	amāre	amāvī	amātum	love
nūntiō	nūntiāre	nūntiāvī	nūntiātum	announce

The principal parts of **dō** and **stō** are:

dō	dare	dedī	datum	give
stō	stāre	setī	statum	stand

87

### SECOND CONJUGATION

In the second conjugation many verbs, like **habeō** and **moneō**, have a perfect ending in **-uī** and a supine ending in **-itum**.

habeō	habēre	habuī	habitus	have, hold
moneō	monēre	monuī	monitus	warn, advise
pāreō	pārēre	pāruī	pāritum	obey
terreō	terrēre	terruī	territum	frighten

Some verbs lack a supine form:

teneō	tenēre	tenuī	<i>tentum</i>	hold
timeō	timēre	timuī	_____	fear

But no rule that covers all second conjugation verbs can be given. The principal parts of each verb must be carefully learned. Notice especially the perfect active and supine forms of these verbs.

compleō	complēre	complēvī	complētum	fill
doceō	docēre	docuī	doctum	teach
maneō	manēre	mānsī	mānsū	stay, remain

moveō	movēre	mōvī	mōtum	move
respondeō	respondēre	respondī	respōnsum	reply
retineō	retinēre	retinūī	retentum	hold back
videō	vidēre	vidī	vīsum	see

## 88 IRREGULAR VERB SUM

sum	esse	fuī	—————	be
-----	------	-----	-------	----

## 89 PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE

The perfect indicative active of *all* verbs is formed by adding the perfect personal endings to the perfect stem.

The perfect personal endings differ from those used in any other tense.

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1st person	-ī	-imus
2nd person	-istī	-istis
3rd person	-it	-ērunt <sup>2</sup>

## 90 PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF PORTŌ

	SINGULAR		PLURAL
portāvī,	I have carried, I carried, I did carry	portāvimus,	we have carried, we carried, we did carry
portāvistī,	you have carried, you carried, you did carry	portāvistis,	you have carried, you carried, you did carry
portāvit,	he has carried, he carried, he did carry	portāvērunt,	they have carried, they carried, they did carry

The perfect indicative represents an action as completed by the present time (*I have carried the water*) or merely as having taken place in the past (*I carried the water*).

<sup>2</sup> The third person plural of the perfect tense active has an alternate ending -ēre. Thus portāvērunt may be spelled portāvēre. The alternate spelling of the third person plural of the perfect is frequently seen in Latin poetry.







The Palace of the Flavians, built by Domitian, displays a basilica, a throne room, a room for the household gods.

## 91 PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF MOVEŌ

### SINGULAR

mōvī,	I have moved, I moved, I did move
mōvistī,	you have moved, you moved, you did move
mōvit,	he has moved, he moved, he did move

### PLURAL

mōvimus,	we have moved, we moved, we did move
mōvistis,	you have moved, you moved, you did move
mōvērunt,	they have moved, they moved, they did move

## 92 PERFECT INDICATIVE OF SUM

### SINGULAR

fuī,	I have been, was
fuistī,	you have been, were
fuit,	he has been, was

### PLURAL

fuiamus,	we have been, were
fuistis,	you have been, were
fuērunt,	they have been, were



A. *Change verbs from the present to the perfect tense:*

- |                            |                         |
|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. Agricola filium monet.  | 6. Cum amīcō manēs.     |
| 2. Fossam aquā complēmus.  | 7. Cūr castra movent?   |
| 3. Ad insulam nāvigās.     | 8. Rēgīnae respondēmus. |
| 4. Gallī cōpiās retinent.  | 9. Puerōs terrētis.     |
| 5. Magistrō pecūniam dant. | 10. Cūr, Mārce, clāmās? |

B. *Change singular forms to plural:*

1. Gladium lātum tenuī.
2. Agrum vāstāvit.
3. Nautam malum timuit.
4. Oppidum oppugnāvī.
5. Vidistīne vāllum altum?

C. *Change plural forms to singular:*

1. Ubi, puerī, fuistis?
2. Equōs nigrōs vīdimus.
3. In prōvinciīs mānsērunt.
4. Hastīs et gladiīs pugnāvistis.
5. Incolae servōs laudāvērunt.

D. *Translate:*

1. Incolae oppidī in mūrō altō fuērunt.
2. Virīs miserīs frūmentum dedī.
3. Propter iniūriam liberī nautās timuērunt.
4. Rēgīnae victōriam statim nūntiāvimus.
5. Praesidium in castrīs Rōmānīs collocat.
6. Gallī bellum longum parāvērunt.
7. Quō, amīce, properās?
8. Post proelium multam praedam comportāvimus.
9. Fīlia pulchra magistrī in rīpā lātā stetit.
10. Amīcus meus multōs puerōs docet.

E. *Write in Latin:*

1. The farmers worked in the fields.
2. The queen has given orders to (her) troops.
3. With whom (*pl.*) have you wandered into the camp?
4. Where have your little children hurried?

5. Although he is small, the Gaul has killed many men with (his) sword.
6. We announced the victory of the troops to the queen.
7. They brought grain from the fields to the camp.
8. You (s.) have frightened my little children.
9. We saw a black horse in the field.
10. The Roman people are friendly to the inhabitants of the islands.

## SUPPLEMENTARY EXERCISE

*Write in Latin:*

1. They call; they called.
2. We are praising; we have praised.
3. Does he move? Did he move?
4. I am; I have been.
5. You (s.) frighten; you (s.) frightened.
6. She gives; she gave.
7. We are obeying; we have obeyed.
8. They do not see; they did not see.
9. I am warning; I have warned.
10. You (pl.) plow; you (pl.) plowed.

## VOCABULARY

**rīpa**, -ae, *f.*, river bank  
**equus**, -ī, *m.*, horse  
**gladius**, **gladii**, *m.*, sword  
**altus**, -a, -um, high, deep  
**amicus**, -a, -um (*with dative*),  
 friendly<sup>3</sup>  
**niger**, -gra, -grum, black  
**clāmō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,  
 shout, cry out

**errō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, wander; err  
**moneō**, -ēre, monuī, monitum,  
 warn, advise  
**ōlim**, *adverb*, at that time, once,  
 long ago  
**statim**, *adverb*, at once,  
 immediately  
**quamquam**, *conjunction*, although

<sup>3</sup> Cf. noun *amicus*, Lesson 7.





*Egyptian obelisk  
before the Pantheon,  
Rome*

# 11

## Third and Fourth Conjugations Present and Perfect Indicative Active

Quō fās et glōria dūcunt  
*Where right and glory lead*

95 Dē Gallīs (Part 2)  
Agricolae Perīculum Effugiunt

Pater (*The father*) līberōs fēmināsque in aedificium dūcit. Animālīa (*the animals*) ex agrīs cōgit. Est irātus quod Gallī līberōs terruērunt.

Noctū (*At night*) pater et Mārcus, frāter (*the brother*) līberōrum, ad cēterōs (*the other*) agricolās veniunt; dē perīculō 5 monēre temptant (*they try*). Sed agricolae nōn audiunt quod dormiunt. Itaque (*Therefore*) nōn respondent.



Mārcus irātus fortiter clāmat. “Nōnne (*Don't*) audītis?  
Cūr dormītis? Dē magnō perīculō vōs (*you*) monēmus. Gallī  
10 ad agrōs nostrōs pervēnērunt. Līberōs nostrōs terruērunt.  
Aedificia vestra et familiae (*families*) vestrae sunt in magnō  
perīculō. Diūtius (*too long*) mānsistis.”

Tandem (*At length*) agricolae respondent. “Nōn dormīmus.  
Vōs audīmus.” Statim ex agrīs animālia cōgunt. Cum līberīs  
15 fēminisque Rōmam (*to Rome*) fugiunt. Sēcum (*with them*)  
bona (*their goods*) portant et servōs dūcunt. Intrā mūrōs  
Rōmae manent. Laetī (*happy*) sunt quod perīculum ef-  
fūgērunt.

### Respondē Latīnē :

1. Quōs (*Whom, acc. pl.*) in aedificium pater dūcit?
2. Cūr est irātus?
3. Quī (*nom. pl.*) veniunt ad cēterōs agricolās?
4. Cūr nōn respondent agricolae?
5. Quibuscum fugiunt agricolae?
6. Quid sēcum portant?
7. Ubi manent agricolae?
8. Cūr sunt laetī?

## 96 PRESENT INDICATIVE ACTIVE

Verbs with **-ere** in the present infinitive active belong to the third conjugation.

dūcō	present infinitive active, <b>dūcere</b>	present stem, <b>dūce-</b> <sup>1</sup>
capīō	present infinitive active, <b>capere</b>	present stem, <b>cape-</b>

Some verbs of the third conjugation end in **-ō** in the first person singular of the present indicative active, some in **-iō**.

### THIRD CONJUGATION

dūcō,	I lead
dūcis,	you lead
dūcit,	he leads
dūcimus,	we lead
dūcitis,	you lead
dūcunt,	they lead

### THIRD CONJUGATION (-iō)

capīō,	I take
capis,	you take
capit,	he takes
capimus,	we take
capitis,	you take
capiunt,	they take

<sup>1</sup> Notice that the stem vowel changes to **i** (*3rd pl. u*) in the present tense.

97 Verbs with **-īre** in the present infinitive active belong to the fourth conjugation.

**audiō** present infinitive active, **audire** present stem, **audī-**

#### FOURTH CONJUGATION

<b>audiō</b> , I hear	<b>audīmus</b> , we hear
<b>audīs</b> , you hear	<b>audītis</b> , you hear
<b>audit</b> , he hears	<b>audiunt</b> , they hear

98 Remember that the perfect indicative active is regularly formed by adding

<b>-ī</b>	<b>-imus</b>
<b>-istī</b>	<b>-istis</b>
<b>-it</b>	<b>-ērunt</b>

to the perfect stem.

<i>I have led,</i>	<i>I have taken,</i>	<i>I have heard,</i>
<i>I led,</i>	<i>I took,</i>	<i>I heard,</i>
<i>I did lead</i>	<i>I did take</i>	<i>I did hear</i>
<b>dūxī</b>	<b>cēpī</b>	<b>audīvī</b>
<b>dūxistī</b>	<b>cēpistī</b>	<b>audīvistī</b>
<b>dūxit</b>	<b>cēpit</b>	<b>audīvit</b>
<b>dūximus</b>	<b>cēpimus</b>	<b>audīvimus</b>
<b>dūxistis</b>	<b>cēpistis</b>	<b>audīvistis</b>
<b>dūxērunt</b>	<b>cēpērunt</b>	<b>audīvērunt</b>

#### 99

#### EXERCISES

A. *Change singular forms to plural:*

1. Vir perīculum effugit.
2. Agricolam irātum audiō.
3. Cūr, puer, clāmās?
4. Servum nostrum in aedificium dūcit.
5. Intrā agrum maneō.

B. *Change plural forms to singular:*

1. Vidētisne, amīcī, in agrīs Gallōs?
2. Ex oppidīs fugimus.
3. Equōs nigrōs dūcunt.
4. Cūr, puellae, dormītis?



C. *Change the verbs in the following sentences from the present to the perfect tense:*

1. Liberōs in aedificium dūcunt.
2. Ad agricolās veniunt.
3. Servōs in agrīs tenētis.
4. Dē magnō periculō virum monēmus.
5. Liberōs terreō.
6. Agricolaē nōn audiunt.
7. Periculum effugitis.
8. Animālia ex agrīs cōgit.
9. Ad oppidum pervenīmus.
10. Vidēsne puerōs?

D. *Change the verbs in the following sentences from the perfect to the present tense:*

1. Liberī Gallum vīdērunt.
2. Audīvēruntne agricolae Mārcum?
3. Cōpiās Gallī coēgērunt.
4. Puerō nōn respondistī.
5. Servōs in oppidum dūxit.
6. Noctū dormīvimus.
7. In agrum vēnit.
8. Cūr timuit?
9. Fortiter clāmāvimus.
10. Dē periculō fēminās monuistis.

E. *Translate:*

1. Agricola liberōs fēmināsque in aedificium dūcit.
2. Puer irātus servō nōn respondet.
3. Gallī ad portās oppidī pervēnērunt.
4. Quid, mī fili, audīvistī?
5. Nautae in rīpā cum servīs mānsērunt.
6. Quibuscum incolae īnsulae fugiunt?
7. Populus Rōmānus cōpiās coēgit.
8. Dē magnō periculō virōs monuimus.
9. Multās cōpiās contrā Rōmānōs dūxit.
10. Gallī multōs incolās capiunt, sed incolae nōn timent.

F. Write in Latin:

1. With whom (*pl.*) are the farmers fleeing?
2. We have come to the gates of the camp.
3. The girls have warned the inhabitants of (*dē*) the danger.
4. The angry farmer is leading the children into the building.
5. Where are the slaves sleeping?
6. Has the wicked man captured my friend?
7. Although I shouted loudly, they did not reply.
8. The inhabitants have stationed troops within the high walls.
9. Do you (*sing.*) hear your friends?
10. The master gave a book to the good boy.

### SUPPLEMENTARY EXERCISE

Give the tense of each verb and then translate:

- |              |            |             |           |
|--------------|------------|-------------|-----------|
| 1. movent    | 4. cēpī    | 7. capiunt  | 10. venit |
| 2. audīvimus | 5. audit   | 8. mānsistī | 11. vēnit |
| 3. terruit   | 6. fūgimus | 9. dūcitis  | 12. dūxī  |

100

### VOCABULARY

aedificium, aedificiī, *n.*,  
building

periculum, -ī, *n.*, danger, risk  
irātus, -a, -um, angry

capiō, capere, cēpī, captum,  
take, capture, catch

cōgō, cōgere, coēgī, coāctum,  
collect, compel

dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum,  
lead, take (*persons*)

redūcō, redūcere, redūxī,  
reductum, lead back

fugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitum,  
flee

effugiō, effugere, effūgī,  
———, escape

audiō, audire, audivī, auditum,  
hear, listen to

dormiō, dormire, dormivī,  
dormitum, sleep

veniō, venire, vēnī, ventum,  
come

perveniō, pervenire, pervēnī,  
perventum, reach, arrive  
(*with ad and accusative*)

dē, *preposition with the ablative*,  
of, concerning, about

fortiter, *adverb*, strongly,  
bravely, loudly

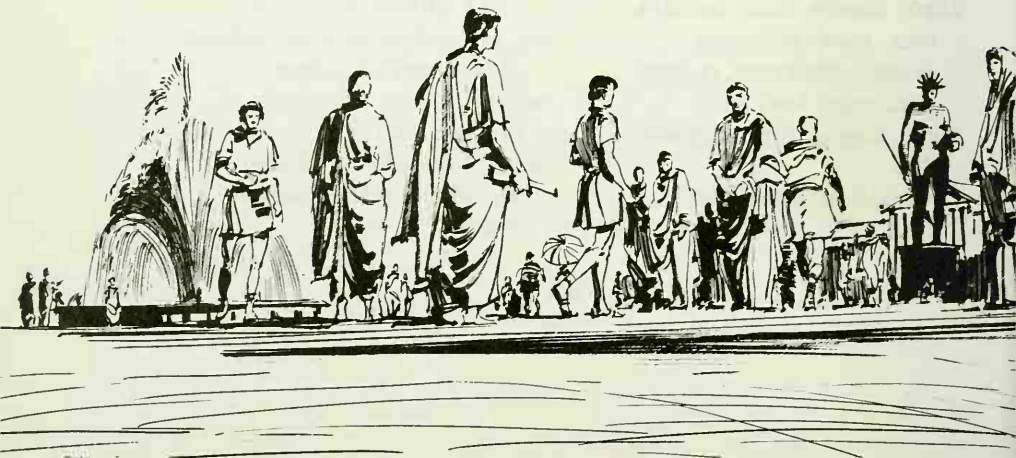
intrā, *preposition with the  
accusative*, within; *adverb*,  
inside

There was no system of public education in ancient Rome. The majority of Roman children received only an elementary education. Boys of the poorer classes usually left school as soon as they were old enough to help their fathers.

The sons of those who could afford to pay the fees went on to a higher school. Here a boy studied the Greek language and Greek and Latin literature. He read famous Greek works, especially the poems of Homer. In Latin he read, along with other writings, the comedies of Terence and Plautus, the poems of Vergil and Horace, and the historical books of Livy. In the lives of great Romans and in the stories of his nation's history he found notable examples of reverence for the gods, of patriotism and courage, of endurance and self-control, of proper behavior towards parents and elders.

Not all the education of a Roman boy was received in the classroom. There was so much more to learn, especially in the matter of politics and social affairs. There were many school holidays; these gave a boy a chance to accompany his father abroad to learn something of the work he himself would have to do as an adult citizen and of the duties that he would have to perform. He had many opportunities to broaden his

There were a great many activities which a Roman boy could observe or in which he could participate along with his father. Since formal schooling was limited, a father took his sons to his place of business and to civic events of all kinds. Not all of a boy's time was devoted to school and other learning experiences. He might attend the theater, chariot races at the Circus, or gladiatorial exhibitions at the Colosseum.

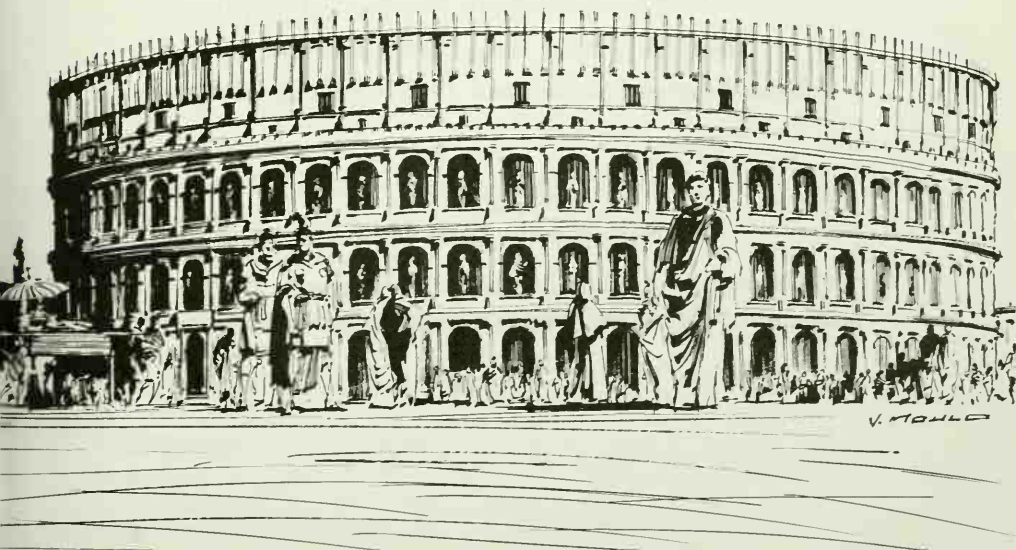


education: he could go with his father to the temples to learn about the religious practices of his people, to the Forum to hear outstanding speakers, to the law-courts to see how cases were tried, to the Senate-house to observe something of the conduct of public affairs. Sometimes, too, he might go with his father to a dinner party and, sitting in silence, hear generals tell of their experiences and statesmen discuss current affairs. In the streets he might see ambassadors and other visitors from many lands, from Gaul, Asia, and Africa, wearing the costumes of their countries and strange ornaments.

In his seventeenth year a Roman boy came of age. The father chose a day to celebrate this event, commonly the feast of Liberalia, which fell on the seventeenth of March. The whole family joined in making the occasion a happy one. The day began with a sacrifice. The boy took off his *bulla*,<sup>2</sup> which he had worn since infancy, and the purple-bordered toga of boyhood, and put on the *toga virilis*, the plain white toga of manhood. His name was formally entered on the list of Roman citizens with full rights. It was a thrilling day for the young citizen. Wider duties lay before him. At seventeen he became liable for military service.

<sup>2</sup> See photograph p. 102.

The Colosseum, a large portion of which still stands, was completed in 82 A.D. Even by modern standards, it is a vast amphitheater. Built to hold 50,000 people in sixty tiers of seats, on three levels, it forms a huge oval, 620 feet long, 513 feet wide, and 158 feet high. Concrete, a Roman discovery, was extensively used in its construction, but tremendous quantities of building stone were also used.





*Bronze of a youth, a member of the Julio-Claudian gens, said to have been found at Rhodes*

12

### Pluperfect Indicative Active

Nūper erat medicus, nunc est vespillo Diaulus:

Quod vespillo facit, fēcerat et medicus.

*Diaulus, former doctor, mortician now beside,  
Hasn't changed professions, for his patients always died.*

MARTIAL 1.47

102

Dē Gallīs (Part 3)

Ānserēs (Geese) Sacrī Rōmā Servant

Gallī cōpiās ē Galliā dūxerant et prope Tiberim castra posuerant. Agricolās terruerant; multa animālia cēperant aut

(or) interfēcerant; aedificia incenderant. Propter perīculum agricolae liberōs servōsque coēgerant; ex agrīs Rōmam (to Rome) fūgerant. Gallī nunc ad mūrōs Rōmae perveniunt. 5

Mox Rōmānī Gallōs circum mūrōs Rōmae audiunt. Quod Rōmae (in Rome) est magna inopia frūmentī, liberī sunt iēiūnī (hungry).

In arce (citadel) Rōmānā prope mūrōs est magna cavea (cage, coop). In caveā sunt sacrī ānserēs Iūnōnis (of Juno), 10 deae et rēgīnae deōrum. Quamquam est magna inopia frūmentī, Rōmānī cotīdiē ānseribus (to the geese) frūmentum dant quod ānserēs sunt sacrī.

Noctū (At night) Gallī in arcem ascendere parant; Rōmānī dormiunt. Ānserēs nōn dormiunt quod frūmentum edunt 15 (are eating). Gallī ad mūrōs fūrtim (stealthily) properant. Gallus super Gallum stat et mox prīmus (the first) Gallus ascendit mūrū. Ānserēs Gallōs audiunt; Rōmānōs excitant (arouse). Mārcus Mānlius, mīles (a soldier) Rōmānus, est prope mūrū. Mānlius ānserēs audit, et Gallum hastā inter- 20 ficit. Multī virī veniunt et cum Gallīs fortiter pugnant; Gallī fugiunt.

Ita (Thus) ānserēs Rōmam servāvērunt.

### Respondē Latīnē :

1. Quid Gallī prope Tiberim posuerant?
2. Quī (who, nom. pl.) agricolās terruerant?
3. Quid fēcerant agricolae?
4. Cūr sunt iēiūnī liberī?
5. Suntne ānserēs in caveā?
6. Quid dant Rōmānī ānseribus?
7. Ubi Gallī in arcem ascendere parant, quid faciunt Rōmānī?
8. Dormiuntne ānserēs?
9. Quis audit ānserēs?
10. Quid faciunt Gallī post pugnam?



103 From the perfect stem the perfect indicative active, the pluperfect indicative active and the future perfect indicative active<sup>1</sup> are formed by rules that hold good for all verbs.

<i>Perfect</i>	<b>portāvī</b>	perfect stem + <b>-ī</b>
<i>Pluperfect</i>	<b>portāveram</b>	perfect stem + <b>-eram</b>

## 104 PLUPERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE

The pluperfect indicative active is formed by adding

<b>-eram</b>	<b>-erāmus</b>
<b>-erās</b>	<b>-erātis</b>
<b>-erat</b>	<b>-erant</b>

to the perfect stem.

<i>I had carried</i>	<i>I had moved</i>	<i>I had led</i>
<b>portāveram</b>	<b>mōveram</b>	<b>dūxeram</b>
<b>portāverās</b>	<b>mōverās</b>	<b>dūxerās</b>
<b>portāverat</b>	<b>mōverat</b>	<b>dūxerat</b>
<b>portāverāmus</b>	<b>mōverāmus</b>	<b>dūxerāmus</b>
<b>portāverātis</b>	<b>mōverātis</b>	<b>dūxerātis</b>
<b>portāverant</b>	<b>mōverant</b>	<b>dūxerant</b>
<i>I had taken</i>	<i>I had heard</i>	<i>I had been</i>
<b>cēperam</b>	<b>audīveram</b>	<b>fueram</b>
<b>cēperās</b>	<b>audīverās</b>	<b>fuerās</b>
<b>cēperat</b>	<b>audīverat</b>	<b>fuerat</b>
<b>cēperāmus</b>	<b>audīverāmus</b>	<b>fuerāmus</b>
<b>cēperātis</b>	<b>audīverātis</b>	<b>fuerātis</b>
<b>cēperant</b>	<b>audīverant</b>	<b>fuerant</b>

## 105

## EXERCISES

A. Write the following verb forms in the same person and number in the perfect and pluperfect tenses. Translate each form.

1. Capit.
2. Clāmātis.
3. Dormiunt.
4. Dūcimus.
5. Tenet.
6. Portant.
7. Dō.
8. Venīmus.
9. Laudō.
10. Pōnis.

<sup>1</sup> The future perfect active will be studied later. It is formed by adding **-erō**, **-eris**, **-erit**, **-erīmus**, **-eritis**, **-erint** to the perfect stem.

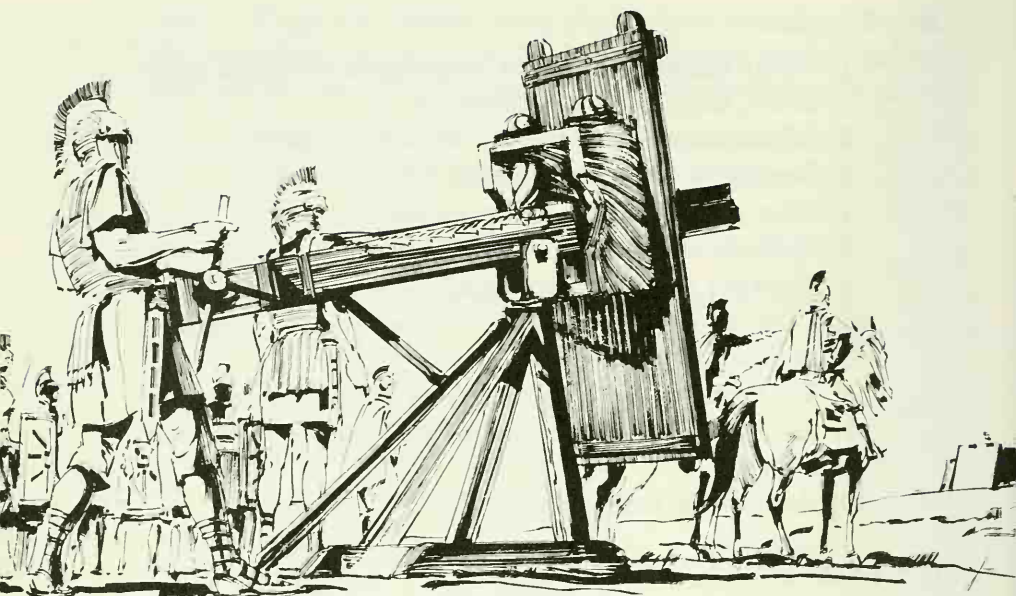
B. *Translate:*

1. Gallī,<sup>2</sup> quamquam castra prope agrōs Rōmānōs posuerant, incolās nōn interfēcerant.
2. Līberī nostrī librōs bonōs nōn habuērunt.
3. Nautae et filiī incolās oppidī terrent.
4. Puer parvus vāllum altum ascenderat.
5. Quō virī cum magnīs cōpiīs properant?
6. Habēsne magnam pecūniam?
7. Contrā Rōmānōs Gallī multa proelia fēcērunt; multōs incolās cēpērunt.
8. Vir malus gladiō longō servōs miserōs interfēcerat.
9. Agricola irātus magnō dē periculō puerōs puellāsque monuit.
10. Audīvistīne amīcum meum?

C. *Write in Latin:*

1. The Gauls had climbed the high wall.
2. The slaves and the farmers have worked in the fields.
3. Our friends had often been on the small island.
4. The beautiful woman hurried into the forest with the girls.
5. On account of the danger the farmers had collected the grain.
6. Because there is a scarcity of food (*grain*) the children are wretched.
7. We had pitched camp in the fields of the Romans.
8. The good queen shouted loudly; she frightened (her) daughter.
9. There had been a large gate on the river bank; the Gauls set the gate on fire.
10. The unhappy master did not answer the wicked man.
11. The Romans had placed garrisons near the walls of the camp.
12. Are the slaves sleeping?

<sup>2</sup> In Latin, a word serving as the common subject of the principal clause and the subordinate clause stands *before both*.



For efficiency in attacking, subduing, occupying, and administering conquered territory, the famed Roman legion has seldom been equalled. The Romans preferred to accomplish their objectives by strategy or by diplomacy, but their highly developed military organization and arsenal of weapons were always ready for action.

## 106

## VOCABULARY

dea, deae, *f.*, goddess  
 deus, deī, *m.*, god  
 sacer, sacra, sacrum, sacred,  
   holy  
 servō, servāre, servāvī,  
   servātum, save, guard  
 ascendō, ascendere, ascendī,  
   ascēsum, climb  
 faciō, facere, fēcī, factum,  
   make, do  
 interficiō, interficere, interfēcī,  
   interfectum, kill

incendō, incendere, incendi,  
   incēsum, set on fire, burn  
 pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positum,  
   put, place; castra pōnere, to  
   pitch camp  
 super, *preposition with*  
   *accusative*, above, on top of  
 ibi, *adverb*, there, in that place  
 mox, *adverb*, soon  
 nunc, *adverb*, now

When a Latin verb is compounded, phonetic changes often occur. For example, **ad** + **capiō** becomes **accipiō**, **accipere**, **accēpī**, **acceptum**, and **re-** + **teneō** becomes **retineō**, **retinēre**, **retinuī**, **retentum**. Among the most common of these changes are the following:

1. A short **a** or a short **e** weakens to **i** before a single consonant (except **r**). For example, **ad** + **capiō** becomes **accipiō**, **accipere** and **re-** + **teneō** becomes **retineō**, **retinēre**, **retinuī**.
2. Before two consonants a short **a** becomes **e** and a short **e** is retained. For example, **ad** + **captum** becomes **acceptum** and **re-** + **tentum** becomes **retentum**.
3. Long vowels resist weakening. For example, the **ē** of **cēpī** is retained in **accēpī**.
4. As prefixes, **ad** and **ex** may assimilate to the initial consonant of the root verb. For example, **ad** + **capiō** becomes **accipiō** and **ex** + **faciō** becomes **efficiō**.

Knowing these principles of phonetic change will enable you to recognize many new vocabulary words and to form compound verbs yourself from the prefixes and root verbs you already know.

Form compounds of the following prefixes and root verbs and give the principal parts of the compound verbs.

1. **ad** + **capiō**, **faciō**, **teneō**
2. **con-** + **capiō**, **faciō**, **teneō**
3. **ex** (**ē**) + **capiō**, **faciō**
4. **re-** + **capiō**, **faciō**, **teneō**

From the meaning of the original verb and the meaning of the prefix, try to derive the meaning of each compound verb. See Lesson Six, Section 49. Remember that **con-** and **ex** (**ē**) are often merely intensive. Check with a Latin dictionary to see how closely your derived meaning corresponds with the meaning of the compound as given in the dictionary.

## REVIEW LESSON TWO

### I. Vocabulary

A. *Give the genitive singular, gender and meaning of these nouns:*

aedificium	frūmentum	populus
ager	gladius	praesidium
amīcus	iniūria	proelium
bellum	liber	puer
castra (pl.)	liberī	rīpa
dea	magister	servus
deus	mūrus	vāllum
equus	oppidum	vir
fīlius	perīculum	

B. *Give the principal parts and meaning of these verbs:*

ascendō	effugiō	moneō
audiō	errō	pervenīō
capiō	faciō	pōnō
clāmō	fugiō	servō
cōgō	incendō	superō
doceō	interficiō	veniō
dormiō	labōrō	vulnerō
dūcō		

C. *Give the nominative singular feminine and neuter and also the meaning of these adjectives:*

altus	magnus	parvus
amīcus	malus	paucī (pl.)
bonus	meus	pulcher
īrātus	miser	Rōmānus
lātus	multus	sacer
liber	niger	tuus
longus	noster	vester

D. *Give the meaning and the case required by these prepositions:*

contrā	intrā	propter
dē	prope	super

E. Give the meaning of these words and phrases:

bellum parāre	fortiter	ōlim
castra pōnere	ibi	populus Rōmānus
cuius	inquit	quamquam
erat	mox	-que
erant	nunc	statim

## II. Forms

- A. Decline **magister meus; nauta bonus; magna castra.**
- B. Conjugate **dō, videō, faciō** and **dormiō** in the perfect active indicative.
- C. Conjugate **doceō** in the pluperfect active indicative.
- D. Give these verbs in the perfect and pluperfect indicative in the same person and number:

1. <b>venimus</b>	6. <b>vidēmus</b>
2. <b>dat</b>	7. <b>incendis</b>
3. <b>sunt</b>	8. <b>audit</b>
4. <b>capit</b>	9. <b>cōgimus</b>
5. <b>servō</b>	10. <b>interficitis</b>

- E. Give these verbs in the present active indicative in the same person and number.

**interfēcerant audīvistī servāverat docuī effūgimus**

- F. Translate the following verbs, giving all possible translations.

**errāvērunt movet mōvit vēnī Videratne?**

## III. Syntax

Complete the following:

1. The noun for the person addressed is in the \_\_\_\_\_ case.
2. Most Latin verbs have \_\_\_\_\_ principal parts.



3. The present stem of 1st conjugation verbs ends in \_\_\_\_\_, of 2nd conjugation verbs in \_\_\_\_\_, of 3rd conjugation verbs in \_\_\_\_\_ and of 4th conjugation verbs in \_\_\_\_\_.
4. The \_\_\_\_\_ tense has a special set of personal endings.
5. The case of a noun in apposition is determined by \_\_\_\_\_.
6. The vocative singular ending of second declension nouns ending in **-us** is **-\_\_\_\_\_**. The vocative singular ending of proper names ending in **-ius** and of **filius** is **-\_\_\_\_\_**. The vocative singular ending for all other nouns is the same as the ending of the \_\_\_\_\_ singular.
7. The vocative plural ending of all nouns is the same as the ending of the \_\_\_\_\_ plural.
8. The adjective agrees with the noun it modifies in \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_.
9. **Populus Rōmānus** used as the subject of a sentence requires a \_\_\_\_\_ verb.
10. In nouns of neuter gender the \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ cases always have the same ending which is **-\_\_\_\_\_** in the plural.

#### IV.

#### Translation

*Fill in the blank with the correct Latin form of the English word or phrase and translate:*

- |  |                |
|--|----------------|
| 1. Nauta est _____.                            | an unhappy man |
| 2. In viā puerum servumque,<br>_____, vīdimus. | our friends    |
| 3. Castra magnum<br>vāllum _____.              | has            |
| 4. Amāsne, _____,<br>patriam tuam?             | son            |
| 5. Gallī, virī liberī, _____<br>pugnāverant.   | with swords    |
| 6. Librī _____ in aedificiō sunt.              | the teacher's  |
| 7. Ex _____ effūgī.                            | great danger   |
| 8. In agrō est _____.                          | a black horse  |

9. Rōmānī \_\_\_\_\_ in Galliā  
incendērunt. many towns
10. Cum magistrīs \_\_\_\_\_, puerī,  
in viīs ambulāvistis. your

## V. Derivatives and Word Study

A. *Explain the italicized words in these sentences:*

1. Since he is now twenty-five years old, no one can understand his *puerile* pranks.
2. Are their relations *amicable*?
3. The *populous* cities near the coast are logical targets for the first attack.
4. Our son is specializing in *agriculture* at the university.
5. The students would not heed the *admonition* to stay in class.
6. Everyone knows that the *vulnerable* spot of Achilles was his heel.
7. Although the storm did not affect the *audio* reception of the television set, the *video* was noticeably affected.
8. The testimony of that witness was completely *erroneous*.
9. The insect is now in its *dormant* stage.
10. After Romulus was removed from the eyes of men, he was *deified* by the Romans.

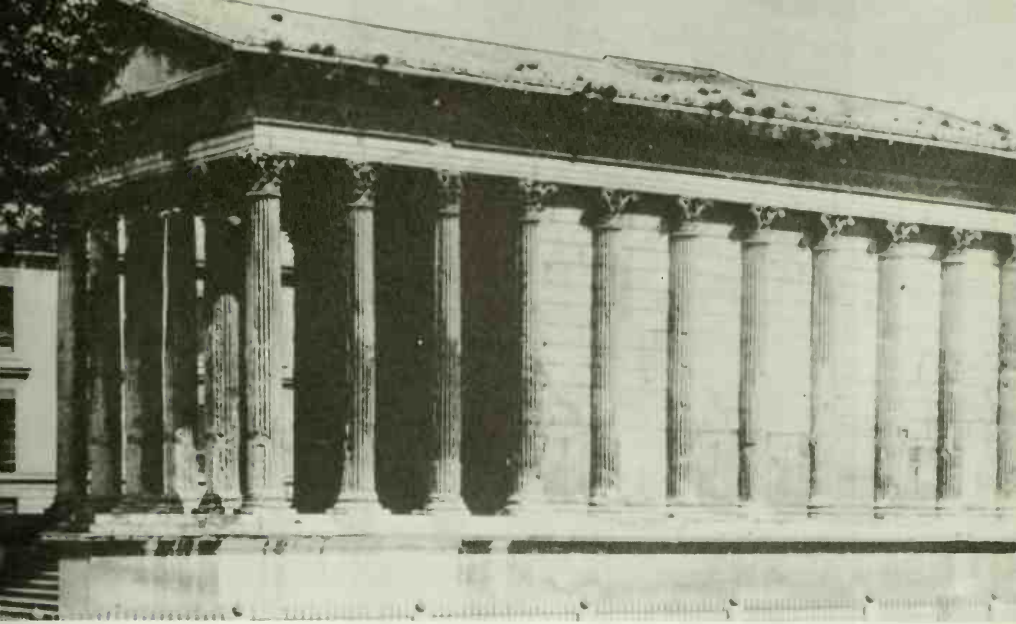
B. *Give English words derived from the following Latin words:*

Graecia    iniūria    pictūra    aedificium    patientia

## VI. Roman History and Roman Life

1. How was a Roman **castra** fortified?
2. What was the feast of the **Liberalia**?
3. In what ways was the education of a Roman boy like that of a twentieth century American youth? In what ways was it very different?
4. What traits of character were considered desirable for a Roman youth to develop?



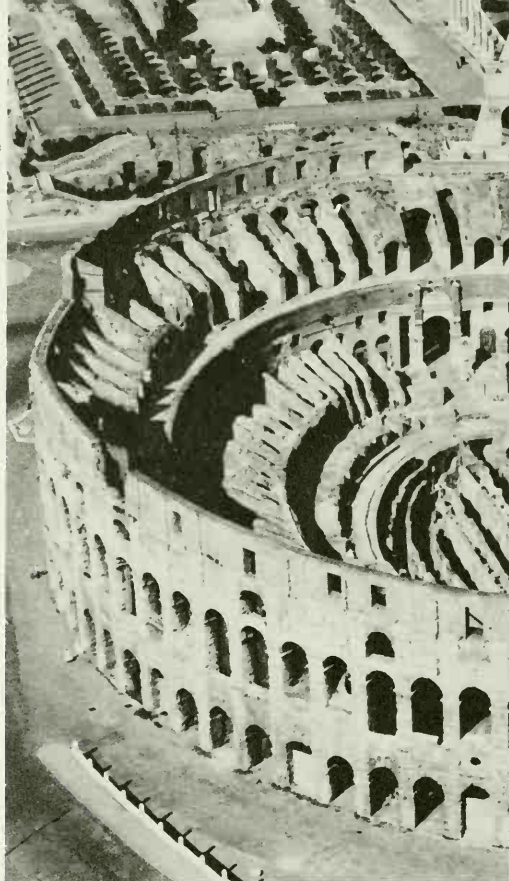


La Maison Carrée, Nîmes, France. This temple dates from the Christian era and is dedicated to two sons of Augustus Caesar.

The Temple of Vesta, Rome, Italy







*Portion of the  
Colosseum, Rome*

# 13

## Third Declension Nouns Consonant Stems: Masculine, Feminine, Neuter

Mēns sāna in corpore sālō  
*A sound mind in a sound body*

JUVENAL

108

### Dē Colossēō

Hodiē (*Today*) ad Colossēum conveniunt multī hominēs. Colossēum est magnum aedificium in quō (*which*) Rōmānī, et virī et fēminae, pugnās gladiātōrum spectant. Hominēs gladiātōrēs in arēnā (*the arena*) spectāre amant.

5 Gladiātōrēs nōn sunt Rōmānī sed miserī servī et captīvī. Ducēs Rōmānī in Galliam et Hispāniam (*Spain*) iter fēcērunt;

sēcum (*with them*) mīlitēs dūxērunt. In Galliā legiōnēs Rōmānae multa bella gessērunt. Multōs Gallōs interfēcērunt; multōs cēpērunt. Post victōriam imperātor Rōmānus captīvōs Rōmam (*to Rome*) dūxit. Gallī magna corpora habent et 10 hastīs gladiīsque in arēnā bene (*well*) pugnant. Nunc multī Gallī sunt gladiātōrēs.

Donnataurus est gladiātor. Ōlim erat liber Gallus. Dux mīlitum Rōmānōrum prope vīcum (*village*) Donnataurī castra posuit. Ibi duās (*two*) legiōnēs collocāvit. 15

Cōpiaē rēgis Gallōrum, quamquam nōn erant parātae (*ready*) ad bellum, cum rēge per silvam ad castra Rōmāna iter fēcērunt. Cum mīlitibus Rōmānīs bellum gessērunt. Mīlitēs et Rōmānī et Gallī multa vulnera dedērunt; multa accēpērunt (*received*). In corpore Donnataurī erant multa vulnera ubi (*when*) mīles 20 Rōmānus eum (*him*) cēpit. Imperātor Rōmānus Donnataurum captīvum Rōmam dūxit. Quod magnum corpus habet Gallus, gladiātor factus est (*he has become*). In arēnā saepe pugnat cum hominibus, saepe cum animālibus (*animals*). Hodīē Donnataurus in Colossēo pugnat. 25

### Respondē Latīnē :

1. Quō conveniunt multī hominēs? 2. Quid est Colossēum?
3. Suntne gladiātōrēs Rōmānī? 4. Quō ducēs Rōmānī iter fēcērunt? 5. Quandō (*When*) imperātor Rōmānus captīvōs Rōmam dūxit? 6. Quis est Donnataurus? 7. Quis prope vīcum Donnataurī castra posuit? 8. Quibuscum cōpiaē rēgis Gallōrum bellum gessērunt? 9. Quis Donnataurum cēpit? 10. Cūr Gallus gladiātor factus est? 11. Quibuscum pugnat?

## THIRD DECLENSION NOUNS CONSONANT STEMS

109 The third declension includes all nouns and adjectives-masculine, feminine and neuter- the genitive singular of which ends in **-is**. The nominative in this declension presents a great variety of forms. The vocabularies give the nominative and genitive cases and the gender of each noun. With this



information a noun may be fully declined by substituting, for the *-is* of the genitive, the other case endings. In the third declension the vocative has the same form as the nominative. Masculine and feminine nouns are declined alike.

Case endings of the third declension masculine and feminine nouns:

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	(to be learned)	-ēs
<i>Gen.</i>	-is	-um
<i>Dat.</i>	-ī	-ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	-em	-ēs
<i>Abl.</i>	-e	-ibus

### DECLENSION OF *MĪLES* (soldier) MASC.

Base, *milit-*

<i>Nom.</i>	miles	milit-ēs
<i>Gen.</i>	milit-is	milit-um
<i>Dat.</i>	milit-ī	milit-ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	milit-em	milit-ēs
<i>Abl.</i>	milit-e	milit-ibus

110 Compare the following case endings:

DECLENSION	1	2	3
<i>Acc. sing.</i>	-am	-um	-em
<i>Gen. pl.</i>	-ārum	-ōrum	-um
<i>Acc. pl.</i>	-ās	-ōs	-ēs

The *bullā* was given to an infant by his father at purification rites. He wore the gold box with a charm against the evil eye until he reached manhood.



Royal Ontario Museum, Canada

111 A neuter noun always has the same form in the nominative and accusative cases. These two cases in the plural always end in **-a**. In the genitive, dative and ablative singular and plural, neuter nouns of the third declension have the same ending as **mīles**.

## DECLENSION OF CORPUS (*body*)

	Base, <b>corpor-</b>	
	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	corpus	corpora
<i>Gen.</i>	corporis	corporum
<i>Dat.</i>	corporī	corporibus
<i>Acc.</i>	corpus	corpora
<i>Abl.</i>	corpore	corporibus

## 112 DECLENSION OF NOUN AND ADJECTIVE

We must remember that an adjective agrees with its noun in gender, number, and case.

### **rēx bonus**, a good king

<i>Nom.</i>	rēx	bonus	rēgēs	bonī
<i>Gen.</i>	rēgis	bonī	rēgum	bonōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	rēgī	bonō	rēgibus	bonīs
<i>Acc.</i>	rēgem	bonum	rēgēs	bonōs
<i>Abl.</i>	rēge	bonō	rēgibus	bonīs

### **legiō Rōmāna**, a Roman legion

<i>Nom.</i>	legiō	Rōmāna	legiōnēs	Rōmānae
<i>Gen.</i>	legiōnis	Rōmānae	legiōnum	Rōmānārum
<i>Dat.</i>	legiōnī	Rōmānae	legiōnibus	Rōmānīs
<i>Acc.</i>	legiōnem	Rōmānam	legiōnēs	Rōmānās
<i>Abl.</i>	legiōne	Rōmānā	legiōnibus	Rōmānīs

### **iter longum**, a long march

<i>Nom.</i>	iter	longum	itinera	longa
<i>Gen.</i>	itineris	longī	itinerum	longōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	itinerī	longō	itineribus	longīs
<i>Acc.</i>	iter	longum	itinera	longa
<i>Abl.</i>	itinere	longō	itineribus	longīs

A. Give the correct form of the Latin word for **soldier**:

1. Est miles (a soldier). 2. Erant militēs (soldiers). 3. Ubi est hasta militis (the soldier's)? 4. Ubi sunt sagittae militum (the soldiers')? 5. Miles (the soldier) hastam dō. 6. Militēs (the soldiers) sagittās dat. 7. Militēs (the soldiers) eōgit. 8. Militem (the soldier) vulnerant. 9. Ubi, miles (soldier), sunt castra? 10. Cum miles (with the soldier) sum.

## B. Give the correct Latin form of the word in parentheses:

1. vulnus (wound) tuum est magnum. 2. corpora (bodies) nostra sunt magna. 3. Magnum corpus (body) habet. 4. Multa vulnera (wounds) habent. 5. In corpore (the body) militis erant multa genera [kinds] vulnorum (of wounds).

## C. Give the correct endings:

1. Cum multīs captīvīs; cum multīs puellīs; cum multīs hominībūs.  
 2. Propter bellū longum; propter magnum vulnū; propter magnum proeliū.  
 3. Per itinerā longa; per magna proelia; per multa corpora.  
 4. Cum imperatōrē bonō; cum virō miserō; cum incolā liberō.  
 5. Fīlius rēgē (s.); fīlius agricolā (s.); fīlius magistrū (s.).  
 6. Fīliī incolōrum (pl.); fīliī ducū (pl.); fīliī virōrum (pl.).  
 7. Militī (s.) pecūniam dat; amīcō (s.) pecūniam dat; fēminae (s.) pecūniam dat.  
 8. Rōmānīs (pl.) pārui; rēgīnā (pl.) pārui; imperatōribūs (pl.) pārui.  
 9. Imperatōr noster; amīcus meus; puer malus.  
 10. Corpora magna; legiōes Rōmānae (pl.); captīvī miserī.



Etruscan statuette of a female dancer. Although Greek influence is revealed in many branches of the minor arts, the Etruscans were, to a great extent, independent in sculpture.

*Courtesy, Museum of Fine Arts, Boston*

D. *Translate:*

1. Hominēs malum deum timent, quod hominibus nōn est amīcus.
2. Corpora Germānōrum dē vāllō iēcērunt.
3. Dux cum mīlitibus iter per Galliam statim facit.
4. Quid Rōmānus dat liberīs?
5. Cūr ānserēs sacrī nōn dormiunt?
6. Gallus, vir magnus, equum nigrum ad castra dūxit.
7. Mīlitēs Rōmānī ducī bonō pāruērunt.
8. Ubi, Mārce, sunt filiae rēgis?
9. In Italiam longō itinere properat; in Italiā mīlitēs collocat.
10. In arēnā cum gladiātōribus saepe pugnāverat.

E. Write in Latin:

1. The troops of the king hastened to the forest.
2. On account of wounds the soldiers are in great danger.
3. The inhabitants of Britain are friendly to good leaders.
4. The Roman legions waged war with the British troops.
5. The little children of the soldiers are asleep.
6. Our leader, a good man, has many wounds.
7. Men feared the wicked god because he killed (their) horses.
8. Although many prisoners had marched, few generals walked to the camp.
9. Because of the danger the king is looking at the swords and spears; he is preparing for war.
10. We pitched camp near the town; we did not attack the inhabitants.

114

## VOCABULARY

**captivus, -i, m.,** captive, prisoner  
**corpus, corporis, n.,** body  
**dux, ducis, m.,** leader, guide  
**gladiātor, gladiātōris, m.,**  
 gladiator  
**homō, hominis, m.,** man, human  
 being; *pl.*, persons, people  
**imperātor, imperātōris, m.,**  
 general, commander-in-chief  
**iter, itineris, n.,** road, route,  
 march; **iter facere,** to march

**legiō, legiōnis, f.,** legion  
**miles, militis, m.,** soldier  
**rēx, rēgis, m.,** king  
**vulnus, vulneris, n.,** wound  
**spectō, spectāre, spectāvī,**  
**spectātum,** look at, watch  
**gerō, gerere, gessī, gestum,**  
 carry on, wage; wear; **bellum**  
**gerere,** to wage war  
**iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactum,** throw,  
 hurl

115

## WORD STUDY

Many English words derived from Latin end in *-tor*. This ending *-tor* indicates the doer of the action, *e.g.* *gladiator*, one who acts (fights) with a sword (*gladius*).

Explain in this way the meaning of:

navigator	spectator	auditor
liberator	captor	demonstrator



*Roman fish stalls in  
market place, Leptis  
Magna, Libya*

# 14

## Imperfect Indicative Active Simple Questions

Inter bellum et pācem dubitābant.

*They were wavering between war and peace.*

TACITUS

116

### Dē Prōserpinā (Part 1)

In this story we shall learn something more about the gods of the Romans. Jupiter (**Iuppiter, Iovis**) was king of the gods. His sister Ceres (**Cerēs, Ceresis**) was the goddess of agriculture. (From the adjective **cereālīs**, *relating to Ceres*, we get the English word *cereal*.) Proserpina was the daughter of Ceres. Pluto



(**Plūtō, Plūtōnis**), the brother of Jupiter and Ceres, was king of the underworld (**Orcus, Orcī**), the region inhabited by the spirits of the dead. Venus (**Venus, Veneris**) was the goddess of love and beauty. Her son was Cupid (**Cupīdō, Cupīdinis**), who with his arrows caused both gods and men to fall in love. Among the goddesses of lower rank were the nymphs, who inhabited the springs and the rivers.

Cerēs, soror deī Iovis, erat dea frūmentī. Cerēs ūnam (*one*) filiam, virginem pulchram, habēbat. Nōmen virginis erat Prōserpina. Cerēs, quamquam multās īnsulās amābat, cum filiā Prōserpinā in īnsulā Siciliā habitābat. Quod Cerēs erat  
5 amīca agricolīs, incolae Siciliae magnam cōpiam frūmentī habēbant.

Ōlim per agrōs Siciliae Prōserpina cum complūribus (*several*) virginibus ambulābat. Prope rīpam flūminis multa genera flōrum pulchrōrum virginēs legēbant et capitī (*for their heads*)  
10 corōnās (*garlands*) faciēbant. Prōserpina longē (*far*) ā puellīs errāvit.

In Orcō habitābat magnus deus, frāter Iovis, Plūtō nōmine. Plūtōnem, quod erat rēx Orcī, omnēs (*all*) hominēs timēbant. Illō diē (*On that day*) deus per Siciliam equōs nigrōs agēbat.  
15 Interim (*Meanwhile*) dea Venus cum filiō īnsulam spectābat.

Venus Plūtōnem et Prōserpinam vīdit et filiō “Mitte (*Shoot*) sagittam,” inquit, “Cupīdō, in corpus Plūtōnis.” Cupīdō Venerī pāruiť. Sagittam mīsit. Plūtō Prōserpinam vīdit et, propter vulnus, statim virginem amāvit et eam uxōrem (*her*)  
20 as his wife) habēre cupīvit (*desired*).

Statim deus Prōserpinam rapuit (*seized and carried off*). Virgō clāmāvit, “Quis es? Cūr mē (*me, acc.*) terruistī?” Neque deus virginī respondit; eam (*her, acc.*) in currū (*chariot*) posuit. Prōserpina clāmābat, “Ubi, puellae, estis?” Sed  
25 puellae, quod neque prope Prōserpinam erant neque audiēbant, virginem nōn servāvērunt. Itaque (*And so*) Plūtō puellam miseram ad Orcum portāvit.

## Respondē Latinē :

1. Quot (*How many*) filiās Cerēs habēbat? 2. Quid erat nōmen virginis? 3. Cūr incolae Siciliae habēbant magnam cōpiam frūmentī? 4. Quibuscum Prōserpina per agrōs ambulābat? 5. Quid virginēs legēbant? 6. Nōne omnēs hominēs Plūtōnem timēbant? 7. Num agēbat Plūtō equōs albōs (*white*)? 8. Nōne Plūtō statim virginem Prōserpinam amāvit? 9. Cūr puellae virginem nōn servāvērunt? 10. Quō portāvit Plūtō puellam miseram?

## 117 IMPERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE

The imperfect tense denotes an action or state as *continued* or *repeated* in past time.

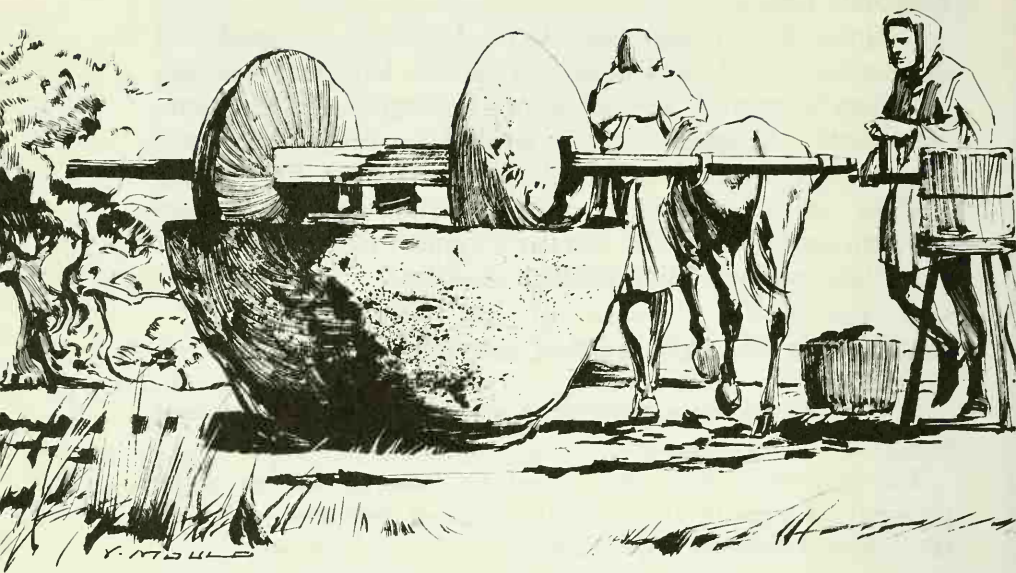
The imperfect tense is formed by adding **-bā-** and the personal endings to the present stem; **-ā** becomes **-a** before the personal endings **-m**, **-t** and **-nt**.

### Portāre : Stem portā-

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
portābam, I was carrying, I used to carry		portābāmus, we were carrying, we used to carry	
portābās, you were carrying, you used to carry		portābātis, you were carrying, you used to carry	
portābat, he was carrying, he used to carry		portābant, they were carrying, they used to carry	

<i>I was moving, used to move</i>	<i>I was leading, used to lead</i>	<i>I was taking, used to take</i>	<i>I was hearing, used to hear</i>
movēbam	dūcēbam	capiēbam	audiēbam
movēbās	dūcēbās	capiēbās	audiēbās
movēbat	dūcēbat	capiēbat	audiēbat
movēbāmus	dūcēbāmus	capiēbāmus	audiēbāmus
movēbātis	dūcēbātis	capiēbātis	audiēbātis
movēbant	dūcēbant	capiēbant	audiēbant

Notice that in **dūcō** the final **-e** of the stem is lengthened to **-ē**, in **capiō** the final **-e** of the stem becomes **-iē**, and in **audiō** the final **-i** of the stem is replaced by **-iē**. In all conjugations the tense sign **-ba-** is immediately preceded by a long vowel, **ā** or **ē**.



One of the most important agricultural products of Italy was the olive. Although the olive was prepared in many ways, its principal use was for oil. Donkey-powered stone presses rendered huge quantities of oil to be used as food, as fuel, and for many other purposes.

In the above paradigms two translations of the imperfect tense are given. Sometimes the imperfect is translated by the simple past form (*he carried, they led*) when the English form implies that the action was continued or repeated.

**Per silvam ambulābant.**

They walked (continued to walk, kept on walking)  
through the forest.

**Cotidiē per silvam ambulābant.**

Daily they walked (used to walk, were in the habit  
of walking) through the forest.

**Rēgina cōpiās nōn dūcēbat.**

The queen was not leading her troops. The queen  
did not lead her troops.

The imperfect may also express the idea of an attempted action in past time.

**Puellās capiēbat.**

He was trying to catch the girls.

## IMPERFECT INDICATIVE OF SUM

SINGULAR	PLURAL
eram, I was, I used to be	erāmus, we were
erās, you were	erātis, you were
erat, he was	erant, they were

118

### QUESTIONS

We have learned that in simple questions **-ne** is attached to the important word in the question (Section 7).

A speaker, in asking a question, may make it clear which answer, *yes* or *no*, he would like to receive. A question inviting the answer *yes* is introduced by **nōnne**; one inviting the answer *no*, by **num**.

<b>Dūcisne cōpiās?</b>	Are you leading the troops?
<b>Nōnne dūcis cōpiās?</b>	Aren't you leading the troops?
	You are leading the troops, aren't you?
<b>Num dūcis cōpiās?</b>	You are not leading the troops, are you?
	Surely you are not leading the troops?

We have learned that *yes* and *no* are usually expressed by repeating the important parts of the question in the form of a statement.

*Question.* **Aratne agrum?**      *Answer.* **Arat, or Nōn arat.**

*Yes* may be translated by **certē, sãnē, vērō, valdē**, *certainly, indeed, of course* or by **ita**, *thus, so*. *No* may be translated by **nōn**, *no* or by **minimē**, *by no means, not at all*.

119

### EXERCISES

A. Replace the blank by (a) the present indicative, (b) the imperfect indicative, (c) the perfect indicative.

- |                     |                           |
|---------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. <b>properāre</b> | Puellae in cameram _____. |
| 2. <b>dūcere</b>    | Mīles captīvōs _____.     |
| 3. <b>esse</b>      | In castrīs mīlitēs _____. |
| 4. <b>effugere</b>  | Gallī _____.              |

5. <b>pervenire</b>	Ad oppidum _____ (1st pl.).
6. <b>respondere</b>	Rēgīnae nōn _____ (2nd s.).
7. <b>nūntiāre</b>	Victōriam agricola _____.
8. <b>mittere</b>	Sagittās _____ (2nd pl.).
9. <b>dare</b>	Liberīs frūmentum _____ (1st s.).
10. <b>capere</b>	Rōmānī castra Gallōrum _____.

B. *Write in Latin:*

1. He is fighting; he kept on fighting; he has fought.
2. We remain; we continued to remain; we have remained.
3. They do hear; they tried to hear; they heard.
4. I am climbing; I was in the habit of climbing; I have climbed.
5. You (s.) make; you (s.) were making; you (s.) have made.

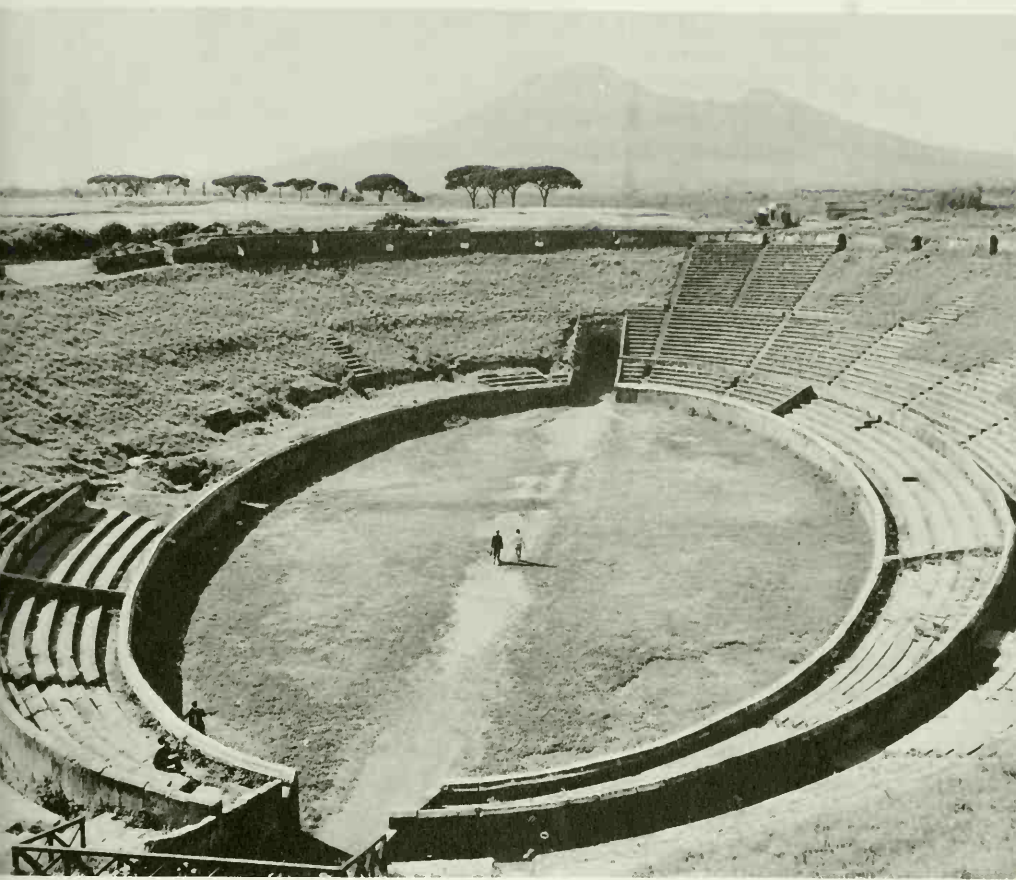
C. *Translate:*

1. Cum cēterīs virginibus Prōserpina per agrōs errābat.
2. Prope rīpam flūminis multa genera flōrum pulchrōrum virgīnēs legēbant.
3. Cerēs, dea frūmentī et soror deī Iovis, in Siciliā habitābat.
4. Neque frāter neque filius ex oppidō effūgit.
5. Num imperātor gladiātōrēs, captīvōs miserōs, spectābat? Minimē.
6. Et legiōnēs Rōmānae et cōpiae Gallōrum ad castra iter faciēbant.
7. Propter magnum perīculum mīlitēs Rōmānī bellum parāverant.
8. Nōnne hominēs cum hominibus pugnābant? Vērō.
9. Pauca flūmina Italiae sunt longa.
10. Gallus vulnus in corpore, Rōmānus in capite habet.

D. *Write in Latin:*

1. The commander of the Romans was marching into Germany, the native land of the Germans.
2. The garrison had many kinds of spears.
3. Where are the troops? Where are they marching? With whom (pl.) are they waging war?
4. The Roman legions were fleeing across the river, weren't they? Yes.





The amphitheater in Pompeii, Italy. Damaged by an earthquake in 63 A.D., Pompeii was buried after the eruption of Mt. Vesuvius in 79 A.D.

5. The soldiers were obedient to (their) leaders, but not to the king.
6. In the camp there was a small supply of grain.
7. The boy had lost the money near the river.
8. Surely the gladiators are not free men, are they? No, they are not.
9. The leader was giving orders to (his) soldiers.
10. Juno (**Iūnō**), the good goddess, guards the wives and children of the Romans.



## SUPPLEMENTARY EXERCISES

### A. *Translate:*

1. Ubi erant sagittae militis? 2. Puellae flōrēs pulchrōs legēbant. 3. Iūnō est et soror et uxor Iovis. 4. Multī Rōmānī tria (*three*) nōmina habēbant. 5. Cēterī incolae erant nautīs amīcī.

### B. *Write in Latin:*

1. We were collecting grain. 2. They kept on removing troops. 3. The master continued to teach the boys. 4. I used to live on an island. 5. Were you (*pl.*) in the habit of coming to town daily?

120

## VOCABULARY

caput, capitis, *n.*, head  
 flōs, flōris, *m.*, flower  
 flūmen, flūminis, *n.*, river  
 frāter, frātris, *m.*, brother  
 genus, generis, *n.*, kind, sort  
 nōmen, nōminis, *n.*, name  
 soror, sorōris, *f.*, sister  
 uxor, uxōris, *f.*, wife  
 virgō, virginis, *f.*, maiden, girl  
 cēterī, cēterae, cētera, *pl.*  
*adjective*, the other, the rest of

agō, agere, ēgī, āctum, drive; do  
 legō, legere, lēgī, lēctum, pick,  
 gather; choose; read  
 mittō, mittere, mīsī, missum, let  
 go, send; throw  
 āmittō, āmittere, āmīsī,  
 āmissum, lose  
 neque, *conjunction*, and not, nor,  
 but not; neque . . . neque,  
 neither . . . nor

121

## WORD STUDY

Following the rules for vowel change and for assimilation of the prefix, given in Lesson 12, form compounds of **agō**, using these prefixes: **ab** (**ā**); **ad**; **ex** (**ē**). Form compounds of **legō**, using these prefixes: **dē**; **dis-** (**dī-**), *apart*; **com-** (**con-**). Give the meaning of each compound; then check with a Latin dictionary to verify the spelling of the compound and its meaning.



*Relief of a wedding ceremony, from a sarcophagus*

# 15

## Personal Pronouns

Servā mē, servābō tē.  
*Guard me, I'll guard you.*

PETRONIUS

122

## Dē Prōserpinā (Part 2)

Statim Cerēs, māter Prōserpinae, ad Siciliam properāvit. Ubi cēterās virginēs vīdit, “Ubi, puellae,” rogāvit, “est fīlia mea? Vīdistisne eam (*her*)?” Puellae respondērunt, “Eam, priusquam longē (*far off*) errāvit, vīdimus. Nunc eam nōn vidēmus.”

5

Dea, irāta quod ibi filiam amiserat, incolās insulae pūnīre cōstituit (*decided to punish*). “In agrīs Siciliae,” inquit, “neque flōrēs neque cōpia frūmentī erit (*will be*).”

10 Per silvās et trāns flūmina Cerēs errābat; semper (*always*) rogābat, “Vīdistīne filiam meam?” Tandem (*At last*) zōnam (*belt, girdle*) virginis in aquā flūminis vīdit.

15 In flūmine habitābat nympha (*nymph*), Arethūsa nōmine. Cerēs, postquam zōnam filiae vīdit, nympham vocāvit. Arethūsa, simul atque deam vīdit, clāmāvit, “Ego sum misera, Ō magna dea, quod in Siciliā est inopia frūmentī. Nōs, quī (*who*) in Siciliā habitāmus, tē amāmus; prō (*for the sake of*) liberīs nostrīs dā (*give, imperative*) nōbīs frūmentum.”

20 Sed Cerēs, “Ego tē,” inquit, “amō; ego hominēs Siciliae amō. Nunc frūmentum nōn habent quod filia mea amissa est (*has been lost*). Ubi est filia mea? Vīdistīne Prōserpinam?”

“Filia tua,” inquit nympha, “nōn amissa est. Plūtō filiam tuam vīdit et rapuit. Nunc Prōserpina est rēgīna Orcī.”

25 Statim Cerēs ob iniūriam Plūtōnis irāta ad Graeciam ad Olympum (*Mount Olympus*) volāvit, et ante Iovem (*Jupiter*), patrem deōrum, stetit. “Filia mea,” inquit, “est cum Plūtōne in Orcō. Dā tū mihi, Ō magne pater, filiam meam. Dē salūte Prōserpinae dēspērō.”

30 Iuppiter, medius (*holding the balance between*) frātris miseraeque sorōris, annum ex aequō dīvidit (*divides into two equal parts*). Nunc Prōserpina partem (*a part*) annī cum mātē in terrā agit (*spends*), partem cum Plūtōne sub (*under*) terrā.

If Proserpina represents the seed corn, what is the significance of the last paragraph of the story?

### Respondē Latīnē :

1. Ubi puellās vīdit, quid rogāvit dea?
2. Quod filiam amiserat, quid cōstituit facere Cerēs?
3. Ubi habitābat Arethūsa?
4. Quid vīdit Cerēs in aquā?
5. Cūr nympha est misera?
6. Quō volāvit Cerēs?
7. Quis est frāter Iovis?
8. Estne Prōserpina semper (*always*) cum mātē?

You have already learned the possessive adjectives of the first and second persons (Lesson 9).<sup>1</sup>

**meus, mea, meum**, my, mine

**noster, nostra, nostrum**, our, ours

**tuus, tua, tuum**, your, yours

**vester, vestra, vestrum**, your, yours

The personal pronouns are **ego**, *I*, for the first person, and **tū**, *you*, for the second.

#### FIRST PERSON

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>ego</b> , I	<b>nōs</b> , we
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>meī</b>	<b>nostrum, nostrī</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>mihi</b>	<b>nōbīs</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>mē</b>	<b>nōs</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>mē</b>	<b>nōbīs</b>

#### SECOND PERSON

<i>Nom.</i>	<b>tū</b> , you ( <i>sing.</i> )	<b>vōs</b> , you ( <i>pl.</i> )
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>tuī</b>	<b>vestrum, vestrī</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>tibi</b>	<b>vōbīs</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>tē</b>	<b>vōs</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>tē</b>	<b>vōbīs</b>

The forms **nostrum** and **vestrum** are used with **multī** and **paucī**; for example, **multī nostrum**, *many of us* and **paucī vestrum**, (*a*) *few of you*.<sup>2</sup>

Latin usually expresses a pronoun subject by the personal endings of the verb. But to express emphasis or contrast, Latin uses the nominative of the personal pronoun.

**Ego sum rēgīna.**

*I am the queen. It is I who am the queen.*

**Ego imperō; tū pārēs.**

*I give orders; you obey.*

<sup>1</sup> Remember that possessive adjectives are usually omitted, unless needed for clarity or emphasis.

<sup>2</sup> But one must say **nōs omnēs**, *all of us (we all)*; **vōs omnēs**, *all of you (you all)*.

The preposition **cum**, *with*, is attached to the ablative of the first and second personal pronouns: **mēcum**, **tēcum**, **nōbiscum**, **vōbiscum**.<sup>3</sup>

**Mēcum ambulābat.**

He was walking with me.

**Pāx vōbiscum.**

(May) peace (be) with you.

124

EXERCISES

A. *Fill in the blank with the correct form of the personal pronoun or the possessive adjective:*

1. Equus meus (my) est niger. 2. Erāsne cum sorōre tua (your)?
3. Māter mea (my) nunc meum (with me) ambulat. 4. Amīcī nostri (our) statim nos (us) vīdērunt.
5. Ibi, mīlitēs, ducem vestrum (your) vīdimus. 6. mihi (To me) pecūniam dedit.
7. Nōne meum (with us) manētis? 8. Multī vestrum (of you) per Galliam iter fēcērunt.
9. Post proelium ad nos (to us) vērērunt. 10. Ego (I) sum bonus; tū (you) es malus.

B. *Change singular forms to plural:*

1. Ego tē laudō. 2. Tibi equum pulchrum dō. 3. Amīcus meus mē amat.
4. Mēcum soror tua ambulat. 5. Librum tuum habeo.

C. *Change plural forms to singular:*

1. Ducēs nostrī nōs laudāvērunt. 2. Pugnantne gladiātōrēs vōbiscum?
3. Nōbīs viās mōnstrāvērunt. 4. Fīliae vestrae longē (far off) errāvērunt. 5. Amīcī tuī nōs terrēbant.

D. *Translate:*

1. Nōs quī (who) in Siciliā habitāmus tē amāmus; nōbīs frūmentum dedistī.
2. Tibi imperāvī; pārē mihi.
3. Pugnābantne vōbiscum mīlitēs Rōmānī?
4. Dux noster, simul atque dē iniuriā Gallōrum audīvit, in Galliam statim properāvit.
5. Quid, puer, iaciēbās in flūmen?

<sup>3</sup> Cf. **quōcum**, **quibuscum**.

6. Dē salūte filiae pulchrae māter dēspērāvit.
7. Num nūntiāvit tibi victōriam cōpiārum rēgīnae?
8. Postquam cēterae puellae longē (*far off*) errāvērunt, Plūtō virginem rapuit.
9. Multī nostrum mūrōs altōs ascendērunt.
10. Militēs in castra convocat quod multa genera vulnerum habent.

E. *Write in Latin:*

1. I have not seen your horse; have you seen mine?
2. Where did we see you? Who was with you?
3. I have been with my father in the Roman camp; where have you been?
4. There we saw your soldiers with your commander.
5. My father has a great deal of (*large*) money; your father has many lands.
6. Many of us were standing before the gates with our mothers.
7. Because you have been good children, I am giving you the money.
8. On account of the scarcity of grain, the inhabitants of Sicily were unhappy.

### SUPPLEMENTARY EXERCISE

*Fill in the blanks in the following sentences:*

1. Plūtō, \_\_\_\_\_ puellam \_\_\_\_\_, Prōserpinam amāvit.  
*When . . . . . he saw (had seen)*
2. Imperātor, \_\_\_\_\_ Gallum \_\_\_\_\_, captīvum Rōmam  
(to Rome) dūxit.  
*As soon as . . . . . he captured (had captured)*
3. \_\_\_\_\_ Prōserpina longē \_\_\_\_\_, flōrēs puellae  
legēbant.  
*Before . . . . . wandered (had wandered)*
4. Cerēs, \_\_\_\_\_ ad flūmen \_\_\_\_\_, zōnam filiae in  
aquā vīdit.  
*After . . . . . she came (had come)*
5. Cerēs, \_\_\_\_\_ Arethūsam \_\_\_\_\_, nymphae respondit.  
*As soon as . . . . . she saw (had seen)*



annus, -ī, *m.*, year  
 māter, mātris, *f.*, mother  
 pater, patris, *m.*, father  
 salūs, salūtis, *f.*, safety  
 dēspērō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, lose  
   hope, despair; dēspērāre dē +  
   *ablative*, despair of  
 rogō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, ask  
 volō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, fly  
 rapiō, rapere, rapui, raptum,  
   seize, snatch

ante, *preposition with the acc.*,  
   before  
 ob, *preposition with the acc.*, on  
   account of  
 postquam, *conjunction*, after<sup>4</sup>  
 priusquam, *conjunction*, before<sup>4</sup>  
 simul atque, *conjunction*, as soon  
   as<sup>4</sup>  
 ubi, *conjunction*, when<sup>4</sup>

Following the rules for vowel change and for assimilation of the prefix, as given in Lesson 12, form compounds of **rapiō**, using these prefixes: **ab** (ā); **com-** (**con-**); **dē**; **dis-** (dī-), *apart*; **ex** (ē). Give the meaning of each compound, then check with a Latin dictionary to verify the spelling of the compound and its meaning.

In ancient Rome girls received a different education from that of boys. Girls were trained for marriage and home-making rather than for public affairs.

A baby girl received her name on the eighth day after birth. Girls commonly were given such names as Julia, Cornelia, Livia, and Claudia, which were simply the father's *nomen* in its feminine form. Occasionally they bore such names as Lucia and Gaia, the feminine form of the father's *praenomen*. A name such as Secunda indicated order of birth.

<sup>4</sup> Priusquam, postquam, simul atque and ubi, when referring to a single act in past time, are used with the perfect indicative.

never can take after them the  
 pluperfect or the imperfect tense

Marble portrait bust of a woman. Roman, 225-250 A.D.



*Royal Ontario Museum, Canada*

During the first six years of her life, a girl received much the same training as a boy. But after that she attended school for a shorter period. The greater part of her education was received at home and consisted of training in the management of a home. In close companionship with her mother, she learned to spin and weave, to sew, to arrange meals, and, in well-to-do homes, to superintend the slaves.

As a rule, Roman girls married early, often at fourteen or sixteen. The marriage was usually arranged by the parents. It was generally, but not necessarily, preceded by a formal engagement. June was considered a lucky month for weddings.

A Roman girl, like girls in many parts of Europe today, brought her husband a dowry of money or other possessions. It was considered a moral duty for the father to provide the dowry.

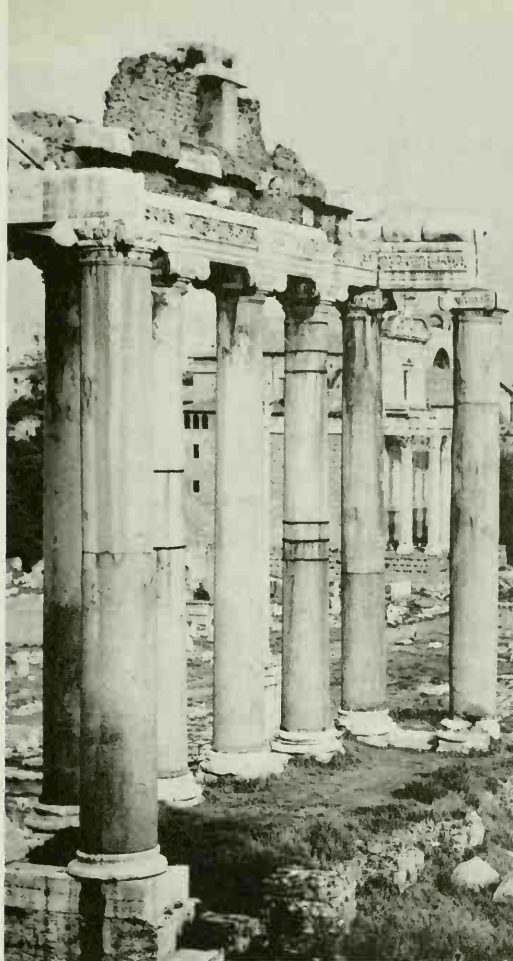
On the evening before her wedding, the bride dedicated to the gods of the home her *bullā*, toys, and girl's dress. Next morning she was arrayed in a long white robe. Her hair was parted with a spear point into six strands so that three curls might hang down each side of her face. Her veil, hair-net and shoes were of a bright saffron color.

After the bride had been dressed, the groom, escorted by his relatives and friends, came to her house. The couple entered into the main living-room (the *atrium*), where the simple wedding ceremony took place. This consisted of a clasping of right hands before at least ten witnesses. No priest or public official was necessary.

The wedding feast continued through the day. Then another important feature of the wedding ceremony began — the procession that escorted the bride to her new home. This was always a grand occasion. In front walked a boy bearing a torch; many of the guests, too, carried torches. Flute players and singers accompanied the party.

When the bride reached her new house she anointed the door with oil and prayed for a life of plenty. Then she was lifted over the threshold. In the *atrium* the bridegroom presented her with fire and water; these symbolized the home and their life together.

The next day the young wife offered her first sacrifice at the family shrine in her new home.



*A section of the  
Forum, Rome*

# 16

**Present Imperative Active  
Dum with the Present Indicative  
Prepositions**

Atque in perpetuum, frāter, avē atque valē.

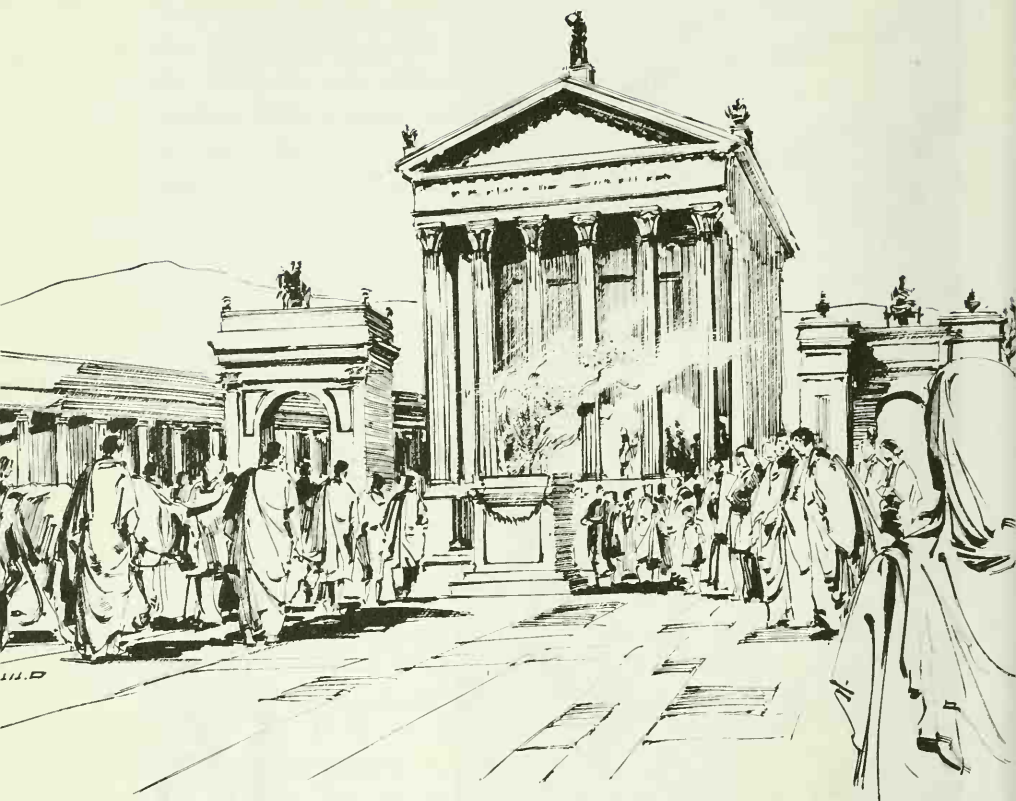
*Hail, brother, and forever, farewell.*

CATULLUS, 101

128

**Dē Maximō Bonō Populī Rōmānī**

According to the Roman historian, Livy, in 362 B.C. a great chasm or fissure (**vorāgō, vorāginis, f.**) opened up in the Roman Forum.



Roman religion, even though it occupied an important place in Roman civilization, had few moral implications for the people. It was almost entirely a contractual relationship between man and the gods, with man performing ceremonies and presenting gifts in return for divine protection and favor. Elaborate rituals before the temples of the gods could be seen throughout Rome daily. Such rituals were especially common in times of trouble.

Rōmānī, quamquam multa bella gesserant, numquam tantō in periculō fuerant. Nam (*For*) subitō mōtū (*sudden movement, abl. sing.*) terrae magna vorāgō in Forō Rōmānō appāruerat (*had appeared*). Rōmānī, simul atque vorāginem vīdērunt,  
5 multam terram in vorāginem iccērunt, neque eam (*it, acc.*) complēvērunt. Rōmānī, quod eam nōn complēverant, timēbant et dē salūte Rōmae dēspērābant.

Quod periculum erat maximum, populus Rōmānus auxilium ā vāte (*prophet*) petīvit. “Quid,” rogāvērunt Rōmānī, “faciāmus (*are we to do*)? Dā nōbīs auxilium. Dīc voluntātem deōrum.” Vātēs respondit, “Iacite in vorāginem maximum bonum (*treasure*) vestrum, sī vultis (*if you wish*) Rōmam servāre. Nōlīte dubitāre.” “Quid est maximum bonum nostrum?” rogāvērunt Rōmānī. 10

Dum Rōmānī dubitant, mīles Rōmānus, Curtius nōmine, 15  
 “Maximum bonum Rōmānum,” inquit, “est arma virtūsque mīlitum Rōmānōrum. Prō salūte patriae nostrae deīs mē armaque mea dīcābō (*I shall dedicate*). Sum laetus quod prō patriā meā vītā (*my life*) dō. Este, Rōmānī, vōs quoque laetī.” Dum ea (*this, these things*) dīcit, equum in vorāginem 20  
 incitāvit (*he spurred*). Multitūdō virōrum et mulierum frūgēs (*offerings of fruit*) super eum (*him*) iēcērunt.<sup>1</sup> Mox deī vorāginem complēvērunt.

### Respondē Latīnē :

1. Quid appāruerat in Forō Rōmānō? 2. Nōne Rōmānī multam terram in vorāginem iēcērunt? 3. Cūr dēspērābant Rōmānī? 4. Cūr auxilium ā vāte petīvērunt? 5. Quid rogāvērunt Rōmānī? 6. Quid respondit vātēs? 7. Quis erat Curtius? 8. Quō equum incitāvit? 9. Quī frūgēs in vorāginem iēcērunt? 10. Quid est maximum bonum Rōmānum?

129

### PRESENT IMPERATIVE ACTIVE

The imperative mood is used to give a direct command. The present imperative active has only two forms, the second person singular and plural. The second person singular of the present imperative active is the present stem. The second person plural of the first, second, and fourth conjugations is formed by adding **-te** to the present stem. In verbs of the third conjugation the **-e** of the present stem is changed to **-i** before **-te**.

<sup>1</sup> A noun denoting number often takes a plural verb.



	SINGULAR	PLURAL
I	<b>portā</b> , carry	<b>portāte</b> , carry
II	<b>movē</b> , move	<b>movēte</b> , move
III	<b>mitte</b> , send	<b>mittite</b> , send
III (-iō)	<b>cape</b> , take	<b>capite</b> , take
IV	<b>audī</b> , hear	<b>audīte</b> , hear

The second person singular of the present imperative active of **dīcō**, **dūcō** and **faciō** is irregular: **dīc**, say; **dūc**, lead; **fac**, do. The plural is regular: **dīcite**, **dūcite**, **facite**.

The present imperative of **sum** : **es**, **este**.

**Bonus** (*m.*), **bona** (*f.*) **es**. Be good (*singular*).

**Bonī** (*m.*), **bonae** (*f.*) **este**. Be good (*plural*).

**Nōlī esse puer malus**. Do not be a bad boy.

**Nōlite, puerī, pugnāre**. Do not fight, boys.

**Nōlī dubitāre** or **Nōlite dubitāre**. Don't hesitate.

A negative command is expressed by **nōlī** and **nōlite**, literally, *be unwilling*, plus the present infinitive.

## 130 DUM WITH PRESENT INDICATIVE

**Dum**, *while*, is generally used with the present indicative, even when referring to the past.

**Dum puellae per agrōs errant, Plūtō Prōserpinam videt.**

While the girls are wandering through the fields, Pluto sees Proserpina.

**Dum puellae per agrōs errant, Plūtō Prōserpinam vīdit.**

While the girls were wandering through the fields, Pluto saw Proserpina.

## 131 PREPOSITIONS

These commonly used prepositions should be memorized with the Latin case required:

# WITH ACCUSATIVE

<b>ad</b> , to, toward	<b>ob</b> , on account of
<b>ante</b> , before (of <i>time</i> more often than of <i>place</i> )	<b>per</b> , through
<b>apud</b> , among; near; at	<b>post</b> , after
<b>circum</b> , around, about	<b>praeter</b> , past; except
<b>contrā</b> , against	<b>prope</b> , near
<b>extrā</b> , outside of, beyond	<b>propter</b> , on account of
<b>in</b> , into	<b>sub</b> , under, close up to; (of <i>time</i> ) just before
<b>inter</b> , between, among	<b>super</b> , above, over
<b>intrā</b> , inside of, within	<b>trāns</b> , across

# WITH ABLATIVE

<b>ā</b> , <b>ab</b> , from	<b>in</b> , in, on, upon
<b>cum</b> , with	<b>prō</b> , for, in behalf of; in front of
<b>dē</b> , from, down from, off; about, concerning	<b>sine</b> , without
<b>ē</b> , <b>ex</b> , out of, from	<b>sub</b> , under, at the foot of

The accusative is used with **in** and **sub** to express the place to which something moves; the ablative, to express the place where something is or is done.

<b>In castra properābant.</b>	They were hurrying into camp.
<b>In castris labōrābant.</b>	They were working in the camp.
<b>Cōpiās sub mūrōs dūcit.</b>	He leads his forces close up to the walls.
<b>Plūtō sub terrā habitat.</b>	Pluto dwells beneath the earth.

132

# EXERCISES

A. *Translate, naming the case used with each preposition:*

ab agrō	ex aquā	post victōriam
ad Graeciam	extrā vāllum	praeter agricolās
ante aedificium	in silvā	prō fossā
apud deōs	in terram	prō liberīs
circum castra	trāns flūmen	prope portam oppidi
contrā Britannōs	inter vālla	propter praedam
cum sorōre nostrā	intrā mūrōs	sine māt্রে vestrā
nōbīscum	ob iniūriam	sub terrā
dē mūrō	per Sardiniam	sub vāllum
dē nōmine rēgis	per bella	super terram

B. *Complete by translating the English phrase:*

1. \_\_\_\_\_ properāvērunt.  
a. to the camp   b. to the ramparts of the camp  
c. into the camp
2. Frātre meum \_\_\_\_\_ dūcēbam.  
a. across the trench   b. through the gate  
c. between the rivers
3. Pater tuus \_\_\_\_\_ fuit.  
a. in Italy   b. near the water   c. with us
4. Soror nostra \_\_\_\_\_ errat.  
a. around the town   b. close up to the building  
c. across the river
5. \_\_\_\_\_ pugnābant.  
a. without spears   b. about the fields  
c. for (*on behalf of*) the women

C. *Change singular forms to plural:*

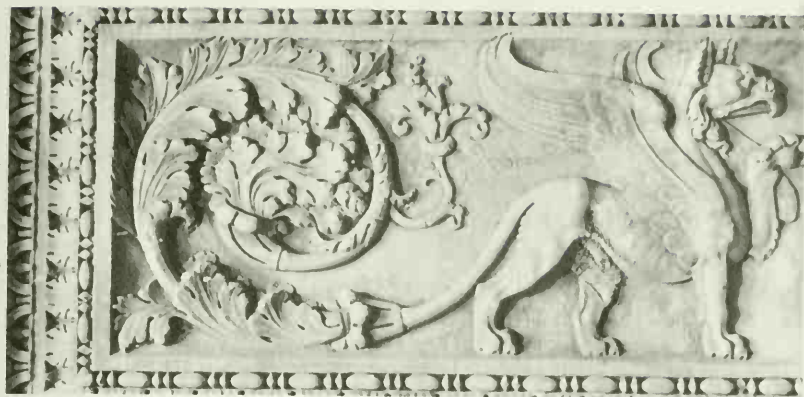
1. Es amīcus meus.   2. Iace flōrem in flūmen.   3. Nōlī dēspērāre.   4. Laudā, Rōmāne, deum.   5. Dic mihi nōmen tuum.

D. *Change plural forms to singular:*

1. Nōlīte esse miserī.   2. Dūcite, amīcī, ad oppida uxōrēs filiōsque.   3. Rēgibus vestris pārēte.   4. Este bonī militēs.   5. Agite equōs sub vālla.

E. *Translate:*

1. Simul atque mīles victōriam nūntiāvit, frātrēs ad rēgem vērunt.
2. Cōpiās trāns flūmen contrā Germānōs dūcēbās.
3. Sine legiōnibus per prōvinciam in Galliam properāvimus.
4. Oppugnāte, militēs, castra Gallōrum.
5. Nautae ā Graeciā ad Italiam nāvīgāvērunt.
6. Irātus erat quod dē iniuriā Germānōrum audīverat.
7. Pōne corōnam (*a garland*) in capite virginis.
8. Rōmānī dē salūte mulierum et liberōrum dēspērābant.
9. Ante proelium legiōnēs inter silvam et flūmen collocāvit.
10. Gallī ducem, dum militēs per silvam dūcit, necāvērunt.



Fragment of a frieze. The griffin, a fabled monster having the head and wings of an eagle and the body of a lion, was a favorite motif for decoration.

F. *Write in Latin:*

1. Our fathers used to have lands across the river in Gaul.
2. After he had led the legions out of the province, they sailed to the island of Britain.
3. Fathers always (**semper**) work for (their) sons and daughters.<sup>2</sup>
4. While my mother was standing with me near the gate, my father saw us.
5. General, lead your troops up to the foot of the wall.
6. Because you have been good children, I am giving you the money.
7. What is your greatest treasure (*good*)?
8. The women despaired of the safety of (their) children.
9. The Romans had never been in such great danger.
10. Tell us the will of the gods.

## SUPPLEMENTARY EXERCISE

*Complete with the correct form of the verb:*

1. Dum puellae flōrēs \_\_\_\_\_ (*are picking*), in agrīs Prōserpina errat.

<sup>2</sup> The dative and ablative plural of **fīlia** is **fīliābus**. This form distinguishes it from **fīliis**, the dative and ablative plural of **fīlius**.

2. Dum puellae flōrēs \_\_\_\_\_ (*were picking*), Prōserpina longē errāvit.
3. Dum mīlitēs in Galliā \_\_\_\_\_ (*were fighting*), dux Rōmam vēnit.
4. Dum Plūtō Prōserpinam \_\_\_\_\_ (*was watching*), Cupidō sagittam mīsit.
5. Dum Rōmānī in vorāginem frūgēs \_\_\_\_\_ (*were throwing*), deī eam (*it*) complēvērunt.

133

## VOCABULARY

arma, armōrum, *n. pl.*, arms  
 auxilium, auxiliī, *n.*, aid, help;  
     auxilia, *pl.*, auxiliaries,  
     reinforcements  
 forum, -ī, *n.*, market-place,  
     forum  
 mulier, mulieris, *f.*, woman  
 multitūdō, multitūdinis, *f.*, great  
     number  
 virtūs, virtūtis, *f.*, manliness,  
     bravery, courage  
 voluntās, voluntātis, *f.*, wish,  
     will, desire

laetus, -a, -um, glad, happy  
 maximus, -a, -um, greatest,  
     very great  
 tantus, -a, -um, so great, such  
     great  
 dubitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,  
     hesitate  
 dicō, dīcere, dixī, dictum, say,  
     speak, tell  
 petō, petere, petīvī, petītum, ask,  
     request, seek, beg  
 numquam, *adverb*, never  
 dum, *conjunction*, while

134

## WORD STUDY

You have already seen (Lesson 6) how a Latin verb may take on new meaning with the addition of a prefix. Many of the prepositions in Section 131 may be used as prefixes. By examining the meaning of the root verb and of the prefix, derive the meaning of the following verbs:

antepōnō    circummittō    impōnō    interpōnō    submittō  
 circumducō    circumveniō    interdicō    postpōnō    trāsmittō

Consult a Latin dictionary to see how your derived meaning accords with the dictionary meaning of the compound verb.



*The interior of the  
arena at Arles,  
France*

17

## Present Infinitive Active Infinitive as Subject and Object

Semper aut discere aut docēre aut scribere dulce habuī.

*I have always considered it a pleasure to learn or to teach or to write.*

THE VENERABLE BEDE

135

### Dē Rōmulō et Remō (Part I)

Ōlim Numitor erat rēx Albae Longae (*of Alba Longa*).  
Frāter Numitōris, Amūlius nōmine, rēx esse volēbat (*wished*).  
Itaque, ubi multōs amīcōs coēgit, Numitōrem expellere parāvit.  
Postquam frātrem expulit, rēgnum occupāvit; neque erat  
laetus, nam (*for*) Rōmulum et Remum, parvōs filiōs Rheae 5  
Silviae, filiae Numitōris, timēbat. Quamquam inīquum erat  
Amūlium puerōs necāre, servōs eōs (*them*) in flūmen Tiberim  
iacere iussit.



Servī puerōs in alveō (*cradle*) ad flūmen portāvērunt. Sed  
 10 bonī deī servōs puerōs in Tiberim iacere prohibuērunt, nam,  
 quod flūmen agrōs inundāverat (*had flooded*), servī ad rīpam  
 adīre (*to approach*) nōn potuērunt (*were not able*). Itaque  
 alveum in aquā prope rīpam relinquere cōstituērunt quod  
 rēx eōs puerōs redūcere vetuerat. Mox lupa (*a she-wolf*)  
 15 puerōs, dum dormiunt, vīdit; puerōs ad spēluncam (*den*)  
 portāvit; ibi eōs cum catulīs (*cubs*) cūrābat.

Tandem (*Finally*) pāstor, Faustus nōmine, liberōs prope  
 spēluncam lupae invēnit; puerōs sēcum (*with him*) ad uxōrem,  
 bonam mulierem, portāre cōstituit. Multōs per annōs  
 20 Faustus uxorque Rōmulum Remumque cūrābant.

### Respondē Latīnē :

1. Quid volēbat Amūlius? 2. Postquam frātrem expulit,  
 quid fēcit Amūlius? 3. Num erat aequum Amūlium puerōs  
 necāre? 4. Quō servī rēgis portāvērunt puerōs? 5. Quid  
 bonī deī prohibuērunt? 6. Cūr servī ad rīpam adīre nōn  
 potuērunt? 7. Quid rēx vetuerat? 8. Quis vīdit puerōs  
 dum dormiunt? 9. Quō cōstituerat pāstor portāre puerōs?  
 10. Nōne Faustus uxorque Rōmulum Remumque cūrā-  
 bant?

136

### PRESENT INFINITIVE ACTIVE

I	II	III	III (-iō)	IV	sum
portāre	movēre	dūcere	capere	audīre	esse
to carry	to move	to lead	to take	to hear	to be

137

**Bonum est labōrāre.**

To work is good. It is good to work.

**Agricola arāre parat.**

The farmer is preparing to plow.

The infinitive is a verbal noun. It may be used as subject (**labōrāre** is subject of **est**) or as direct object (**arāre** is direct object of **parat**).

**Errāre est hūmānum.**

To err is human.

It is human to err.

**Virginem rapere erat inīquum.**

To carry off the maiden was wrong.

It was wrong to carry off the maiden.<sup>1</sup>

The infinitive is a neuter noun and is modified by a neuter adjective: **hūmānum**, **inīquum**.

**138 Mīlitēs agrōs vāstāre nōn erat aequum.**

For the soldiers to destroy the fields was not right.

It was not right for the soldiers to destroy the fields.<sup>1</sup>

**Cōpiās oppidum oppugnāre iussit.**

He has ordered the forces to attack the town.

**Nōs bellum gerere coēgērunt.**

They have compelled us to wage war.

The subject of the infinitive, if separately expressed, is in the accusative case: **mīlitēs** (subject of **vāstāre**), **cōpiās** (subject of **oppugnāre**), **nōs** (subject of **gerere**).

**139 Mīlitēs iter facere prohibet.**

He prevents the soldiers from marching.

The verb **prohibeō**, *prevent, hold back, stop*, is completed by an object infinitive with subject accusative.

**140**

## EXERCISES

A. *Complete by translating the English:*

1. \_\_\_\_\_ pecūniam invenīre.

It is good

2. \_\_\_\_\_ liberōs relinquere.

It is bad

3. \_\_\_\_\_ patrī pārere.

It is right

4. \_\_\_\_\_ nōs esse laetōs.

It is good

5. \_\_\_\_\_ hominem necāre.

It is wrong

6. \_\_\_\_\_ amīcum āmittere.

It is bad

<sup>1</sup> Latin has no separate word for the representative subject *it* or for the preposition *for*, which often introduces the subject in English.

B. Complete by translating the English:

1. \_\_\_\_\_ cōstituerat. to wage war
2. \_\_\_\_\_ parāvērunt. to flee
3. Aequum est \_\_\_\_\_ to obey (one's) mother
4. Inīquum erat \_\_\_\_\_ to frighten the girls
5. Rōmānī \_\_\_\_\_ properābant. to fight

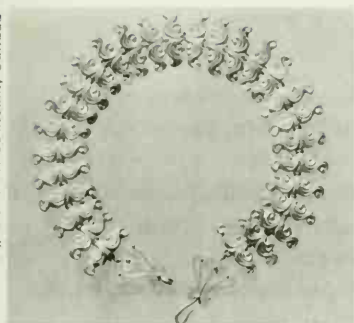
C. Complete each of these sentences in two ways:

1. Aequum est \_\_\_\_\_ to care for the children  
\_\_\_\_\_ for you (s.) to care for your children
2. Bonum est \_\_\_\_\_ to love one's country  
\_\_\_\_\_ for us to love our country
3. Malum erat \_\_\_\_\_ to destroy the fields  
\_\_\_\_\_ for the soldiers to destroy the fields
4. Inīquum est \_\_\_\_\_ to inflict (**facere**) injuries  
\_\_\_\_\_ for you (pl.) to inflict injuries
5. Bonum est \_\_\_\_\_ to reply at once  
\_\_\_\_\_ for the boys to reply at once

D. Complete each of these sentences in two ways:

1. \_\_\_\_\_ prohibuit.  
a. the prisoners from escaping b. us from escaping
2. \_\_\_\_\_ iubent.  
a. the boys to come b. me to come
3. \_\_\_\_\_ vetāmus.  
a. the girls to pick the flowers  
b. you (s.) to pick the flowers
4. \_\_\_\_\_ prohibuerātis.  
a. the slaves from seeking help  
b. the women from seeking help
5. Bonum est \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. for you (s.) to be happy<sup>2</sup>  
b. for your mother to be happy

<sup>2</sup> Notice that a predicate adjective modifying the subject of an infinitive is in the accusative case.



Complimentary  
Verbal noun  
objective

Gold necklace, c. 2nd century A.D. Roman women were fond of gold ornaments wrought with elaborateness and delicacy.

E. Identify the infinitive in each of the following clauses as a subject or an object infinitive. Translate the sentence.

1. Malum est nōs puerōs relinquere; puerōs relinquere nōn parāmus.
2. Frātre[m] meum expellere timeō; inīquum est mē frātre[m] expellere.
3. Militēs pugnāre cōgunt; nōne est aequum militēs pugnāre?
4. Bonum erat vōs auxilia mittere sed vōs auxilia mittere prohibuit.
5. Tē rēgnū[m] frātris occupāre vetuimus; inīquum erat tē rēgnū[m] occupāre.

F. Write in Latin:

1. He had decided to save the women.
2. The prisoners are preparing to escape from camp.
3. We are afraid to sleep on account of the danger.
4. The soldier hurried to report the victory.
5. The king compelled the slaves to carry the boys to the river.
6. The shepherd told the little boys not to wander far.<sup>3</sup>
7. Why had you decided to leave us there?
8. He had told me to take care of you (*acc.*).<sup>3</sup>
9. They do not fear to wage war with the Romans.
10. It was unjust for Amulius to drive out (his) brother from the kingdom.

<sup>3</sup> *Iubeō* means to tell someone to do something; *vetō* means to tell someone not to do something.

rēgnum, -ī, <i>n.</i> , royal power, kingdom	— prohibeō, prohibēre, prohibuī, prohibitum, prevent, hold back, stop
pāstor, pāstōris, <i>m.</i> , shepherd	— cōstituō, cōstituere, cōstituī cōstitūtum, decide, determine <i>complement</i>
— aequus, -a, -um, just, right	
— inīquus, -a, -um, unfair, unjust, wrong	
cūrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, take care of, look after	pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsum, drive, rout
occupō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, seize, lay hold of	expellō, expellere, expulī, expulsum, drive out
— vetō, vetāre, vetuī, vetitum, forbid, tell not (to do something)	relinquō, relinquere, relīquī, relictum, leave, leave behind, abandon
— iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussum, <sup>4</sup> order, tell (to do something)	inveniō, invenīre, invēnī, inventum, come upon, find
	itaque, <i>conjunction</i> , therefore, and so

Ad + pellō gives the compound **appellō, appellere, appulī, appulsum** which has the general meaning of *drive to* or *toward* and the special meaning of *bring a ship to land*.

Using the prefixes: **dis-**, **ex-**, **prō-** and **re-**, form other compounds of **pellō**. Derive the meanings of the compound verbs. Check the meanings with the Latin dictionary.

<sup>4</sup> Iubeō, not imperō, is to be used with the infinitive.



Bronze cooking ware and a wine pitcher. The Romans used nearly all the utensils we have today except forks.

## THE KINGS OF ROME

Once in the city of Alba Longa in Latium, so the story goes, there lived a good king whose throne was taken from him by a wicked brother. Romulus and Remus, the infant grandchildren of the rightful king, were placed in their cradle and set adrift where the Tiber River had overflowed. But they did not perish; the cradle, after floating a while, was left by the receding water on dry land. A she-wolf heard the cries of the children; she came to them and nursed them. Soon a shepherd found them and took them to his home, where he brought them up.

The two brothers, Romulus and Remus, when they came of age, drove the wicked king from Alba Longa and restored their grandfather to the throne. Then wishing to build a city of their own, they established a settlement on Mount Palatine, near the Tiber, close to the spot where their cradle had been cast up. The city was called Rome.

Many men came to the new city, but only a few women. So the Romans seized some of the women of the Sabines, their



neighbors, and carried them off to be their wives. This act led to war, but after a time the Sabines joined the Romans and came to Rome to live. The city grew under the leadership of Romulus. After a reign of thirty-seven years he was carried to heaven, so the tale goes, in the chariot of his father, Mars.

Romulus was succeeded by Numa, a Sabine. Numa was not interested in war. He made peace with Rome's enemies, organized the religious ceremonies of the city, and gave the people good laws.

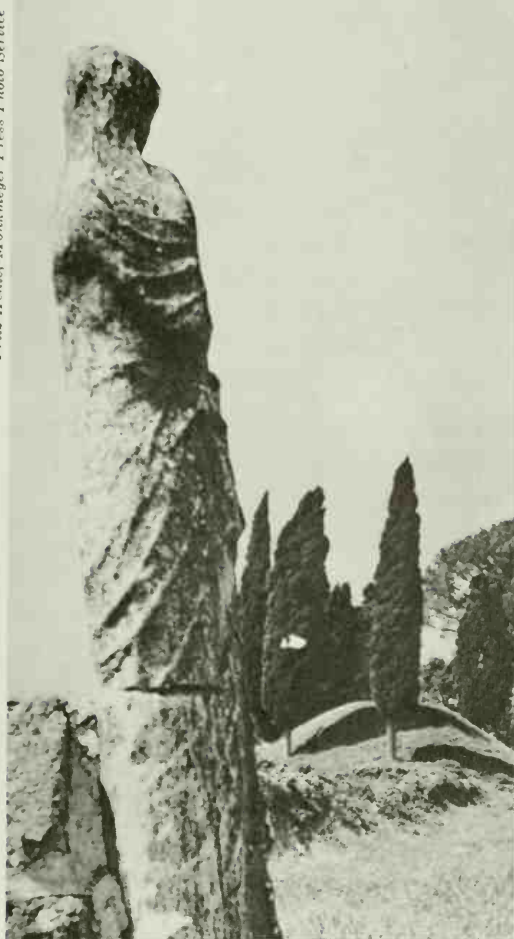
The third king, Tullus, was a warrior, like Romulus; the fourth, Ancus, a man of peace. Then came Tarquin, an Etruscan, one of the people living north of the Tiber. The sixth king, Servius Tullius, was a very efficient ruler who interested himself in reorganizing the government, the army, and the defenses of Rome.

The last king, Tarquin the Proud, a son of the fifth king, was a cruel ruler. He neglected the laws of his predecessors and, in addition, imposed hard tasks on the citizens. Because of his misdeeds and those of one of his sons, the people rebelled and drove Tarquin from Rome, in 510 B.C. Thereafter Rome had no kings. A republic was established. Each year two officials, called Consuls, were elected to guide the State.

Tarquin fled to Etruria and sought help from Lars Porsena of Clusium, a powerful Etruscan king. Lars Porsena with a large army marched against Rome, but failed in his first attempt on the city. He encamped in the neighborhood, and his men plundered Roman territory. It was during this period that the Romans performed such deeds of bravery and courage that Porsena abandoned the cause of Tarquin and withdrew from Roman territory.

Tarquin made another attempt to seize Rome. With a great force he marched against the city, but the Romans, aided, says the story, by Castor and Pollux, were victorious.

Incidents in the war with Porsena and Tarquin are told in the stories of Horatius (Sections 151, 156), Mucius (Sections 167, 172), Cloelia (Section 184), and Castor and Pollux (Section 193). You should read *Horatius* and *The Battle of Lake Regillus* in Macaulay's *Lays of Ancient Rome*.



*Ruins of a statue  
beside the Appian  
Way*

# 18

## Future of Sum; Conjugation of Possum Complementary Infinitive

Nōn amo tē, Sabidī, nec possum dīcere quārē.

Hoc tantum possum dīcere — nōn amo tē.

MARTIAL 1.32

*I do not love thee, Dr. Fell.*

*The reason why, I cannot tell.*

*But this I know and know full well,*

*I do not love thee, Dr. Fell.*

THOMAS BROWN (1663-1704)

Post multōs annōs Faustulus Rōmulum Remumque ad sē  
 (him) vocāvit. “Vōs,” inquit, “nōn estis filiī meī sed filiī  
 Rheae Silviae, filiae Numitōris.” Tum Rōmulus Remusque,  
 irātī quod Amūlius Numitōrem Albā<sup>1</sup> expulerat, cum multīs  
 5 virīs Albam<sup>1</sup> properāvērunt et Amūlium petīvērunt. Rēgem  
 malum interfēcērunt et Numitōrem ad rēgnum redūxērunt.

Tum frātrēs novam urbem (*city*) condere cōstituērunt.  
 Itaque multitūdinem pāstōrum ad rīpam Tiberis dūxērunt et  
 mūrōs mūnīre (*to build*) parābant.

10 Novae urbī nōmen dare quoque cōstituērunt. Uterque  
 (*Each*) frāter urbem appellāre dē nōmine suō (*his own*) volēbat  
 (*wished*). Diū (*For a long time*) dubitāvērunt. Tandem per  
 augurium (*augury, the art of discovering the will of the gods by*  
*watching the flight of birds*) cōsiliū deōrum petīvērunt.  
 15 Remus in Aventīnō (*Aventine*), Romulus in monte Palātīnō  
 (*Mount Palatine*) stetit. Prius (*First*) Remus sex volturēs  
 (*six vultures*), Rōmulus postea (*afterwards*) duodecim (*twelve*)  
 vīdit.

Itaque Rōmulus victor (*as victor*) urbem Rōmam appellāre  
 20 potuit.

Dum Rōmulus et amīcī labōrant, Remus mūrōs irrīdēre  
 (*to mock at*) audēbat, quod nōn erant altī. Mox pugna fuit;  
 ibi Rōmulus irātus Remum interfēcīt. Ita (*Thus*) Rōmulus  
 cīvitātem Rōmānam condidit et sōlus (*alone*) rēgnum habuit.

25 Ōlim (*One day*) Rōmulus cīvēs (*the citizens*) convocāverat;  
 subitō (*suddenly*) est magna tempestās; niger nimbus (*rain*  
*cloud*) rēgem cēlat (*hides*); nec deinde (*after that*) Rōmulus  
 vidērī (*to be seen*) potest.

### Respondē Latīnē :

1. Quid dīxit Faustulus puerīs? 2. Cuius filiī erant Rōmu-  
 lus Remusque? 3. Quō properāvērunt Rōmulus Remusque?

<sup>1</sup> With names of cities, towns and small islands the preposition is omitted with verbs of motion.



The Roman temple known as the Temple of Diana, Evora, Portugal

4. Quem (*Whom*) interfēcērunt? Quem ad rēgnum redūxērunt? 5. Quid frātrēs facere cōstituērunt? 6. Cūr dubitāvērunt dare novae urbī nōmen? 7. Quōrum (*Whose*) cōnsilium petīvērunt? 8. Quis novae urbī nōmen dare potuit? 9. Quod Remus mūrōs irrīdēre audēbat, quid fēcit Rōmulus? 10. Quod (*What, adj.*) nōmen dedit Rōmulus novae urbī?

145 The future indicative of **sum** is

SINGULAR

**erō**, I shall be  
**eris**, you will be  
**erit**, he will be

PLURAL

**erimus**, we shall be  
**eritis**, you will be  
**erunt**, they will be

146 **Possum** is a compound verb formed from **potis** (*able*) and **sum** (*I am*). **Potis-sum** was shortened to **potsum** and then changed to **possum**.

Note that likewise in the first and third persons plural **pot** before **s** changes to **pos**. Compare the conjugations of **sum** and **possum**.

## IRREGULAR VERB SUM<sup>2</sup>

**sum, esse, fuī, —, be**

PRESENT		IMPERFECT		FUTURE	
<i>I am</i>		<i>I was</i>		<i>I shall be</i>	
<b>sum</b>	<b>sumus</b>	<b>eram</b>	<b>erāmus</b>	<b>erō</b>	<b>erimus</b>
<b>es</b>	<b>estis</b>	<b>erās</b>	<b>erātis</b>	<b>eris</b>	<b>eritis</b>
<b>est</b>	<b>sunt</b>	<b>erat</b>	<b>erant</b>	<b>erit</b>	<b>erunt</b>
PERFECT		PLUPERFECT			
<i>I have been</i>		<i>I had been</i>			
<b>fuī</b>	<b>fuimus</b>	<b>fueram</b>	<b>fuerāmus</b>		
<b>fuistī</b>	<b>fuistis</b>	<b>fuerās</b>	<b>fuerātis</b>		
<b>fuit</b>	<b>fuērunt</b>	<b>fuerat</b>	<b>fuerant</b>		

## IRREGULAR VERB POSSUM<sup>2</sup>

**possum, posse, potuī, —, be able**

PRESENT		IMPERFECT		FUTURE	
<i>I am able, I can</i>		<i>I was able, I could</i>		<i>I shall be able</i>	
<b>possum</b>	<b>possumus</b>	<b>poteram</b>	<b>poterāmus</b>	<b>poterō</b>	<b>poterimus</b>
<b>potes</b>	<b>potestis</b>	<b>poterās</b>	<b>poterātis</b>	<b>poteris</b>	<b>poteritis</b>
<b>potest</b>	<b>possunt</b>	<b>poterat</b>	<b>poterant</b>	<b>poterit</b>	<b>poterunt</b>
PERFECT		PLUPERFECT			
<i>I have been able</i>		<i>I had been able</i>			
<b>potuī</b>	<b>potuimus</b>	<b>potueram</b>	<b>potuerāmus</b>		
<b>potuistī</b>	<b>potuistis</b>	<b>potuerās</b>	<b>potuerātis</b>		
<b>potuit</b>	<b>potuērunt</b>	<b>potuerat</b>	<b>potuerant</b>		

<sup>2</sup> The Future Perfect of **sum** is **fuerō**; the Future Perfect of **possum** is **potuerō**.

**Mīles fossae appropinquāre potest.**

The soldier can approach the trench.

**Victōriam nūtiāre poterit.**

He will be able to announce the victory.

**Frūmentum comportāre nōn potuerant.**

They had not been able to collect the grain.

The verb **possum**, *I am able, I can*, when used alone does not express a complete thought, but when the verb is used with an infinitive, (**venīre possum**, *I am able to come*), the thought is complete. The infinitive is used to complete an intransitive verb in the same way that an infinitive is used as object of a transitive verb. When used to fill out the meaning of a verb, the infinitive is called a Complementary Infinitive (**complēre**, *to fill*).

A. *Complete by translating the English:*

1. Nōne dēbēmus \_\_\_\_\_? to fight bravely
2. \_\_\_\_\_ dubitāvit. to be unjust
3. \_\_\_\_\_ audēbant. to approach the forum
4. \_\_\_\_\_ poteris. to find the money
5. Nōlīte dubitāre \_\_\_\_\_. to destroy the fields
6. \_\_\_\_\_ possunt. to be free
7. Dēbeō \_\_\_\_\_. to obey my mother
8. Audēsne \_\_\_\_\_? to be happy
9. \_\_\_\_\_ dubitāverāmus. to abandon our children
10. \_\_\_\_\_ poterant. to see the heads of the  
horses

B. *Supply the form of **sum** or **possum** required in the following sentences:*

1. Līber \_\_\_\_; līber esse \_\_\_\_\_. I am; I am able
2. Amīcus meus \_\_\_\_; amīcum vidēre \_\_\_\_\_. you will be;  
you will be able
3. Rēx \_\_\_\_; rēgem expellere \_\_\_\_\_. he has been; he has  
been able



4. Bonī pāstōrēs \_\_\_\_; pāstōribus appropinquāre \_\_\_\_.  
we were; we were able
5. Equus \_\_\_\_ niger; frāter meus equum nigrum agere \_\_\_\_.  
was; was able
6. Ducēs \_\_\_\_; mīlitēs dūcere \_\_\_\_.  
they are; they are able
7. In maximō perīculō \_\_\_\_; propter perīculum dormīre \_\_\_\_.  
they had been; they had not been able
8. Servī \_\_\_\_ docēre; servī \_\_\_\_ magistrī.  
were able; were
9. Bonī \_\_\_\_; praemia (rewards) habēre \_\_\_\_.  
you have been; you will be able
10. Mātrē vidēre \_\_\_\_; \_\_\_\_ laetus.  
he was able; he will be

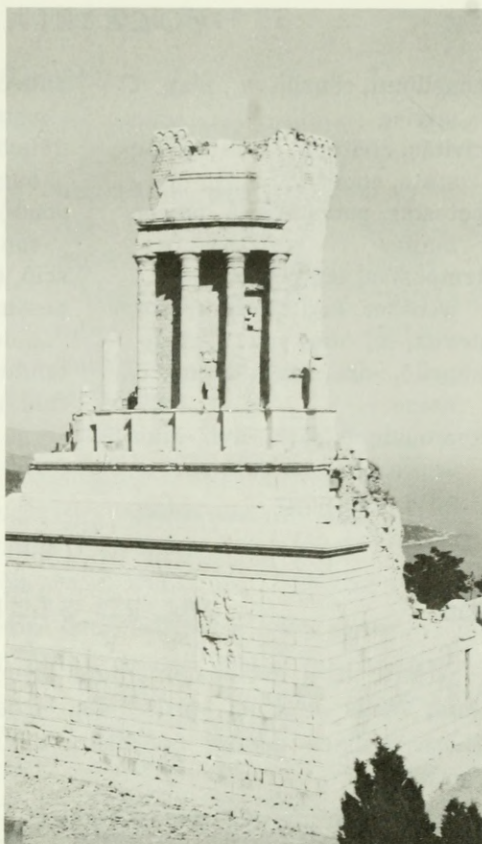
C. *Translate:*

1. Bonus Rōmānus prō patriā pugnāre dēbet.
2. Nōs castra in rīpā flūminis pōnere prohibuerātis.
3. Sorōrī meae amīcus esse dēbēs.
4. Cum gladiātōribus quoque pugnāre audēbat.
5. Tandem Rōmulus urbem condere potuit.
6. Dum Rōmānī dormiunt, Gallī mūrōs ascendere audēbant.
7. Imperātor captīvōs effugere prohibēre dēbet.
8. Nōlī dubitāre dīcere nōmina amīcōrum tuōrum.
9. Māter dē salūte liberōrum dēspērābat.
10. Nōnne liberī mox erimus? Nōnne cīvitatē liberam habēre poterimus?

D. *Write in Latin:*

1. Although the power of the Etruscans is very great, we ought to defend our state.
2. Be our friends. Do not hesitate to ask for help.
3. The brothers had decided to establish a new state.
4. After they had killed Amulius, they brought Numitor back to his kingdom.
5. The Romans dared to seek the advice of the gods.
6. Romulus kept Remus from giving a name to the city.
7. I had ordered the woman to care for the children.
8. You (pl.) will not be able to know the will of the gods.
9. Do not fear the storm, friends.
10. The gods can protect us.

Monument to Augustus, first Roman emperor, at La Turbie, France.



French Embassy Press and Information Division

## SUPPLEMENTARY EXERCISES

### A. *Translate:*

- |             |             |              |
|-------------|-------------|--------------|
| 1. Potest   | 5. Poterit  | 8. Fuērunt   |
| 2. Posse    | 6. Potuit   | 9. Potestne  |
| 3. Erat     | 7. Poterunt | 10. Potestis |
| 4. Potuerat |             |              |

### B. *Give the Latin for:*

- |                |                 |                      |
|----------------|-----------------|----------------------|
| 1. They can    | 5. He could     | 8. They will be able |
| 2. We are      | 6. To be able   | 9. We could          |
| 3. We are able | 7. They will be | 10. We can           |
| 4. He was able |                 |                      |

<b>cōnsilium, cōnsiliī, n.,</b> plan; advice	<b>audeō, audēre,</b> <sup>4</sup> dare, venture
<b>cīvitās, cīvitātis, f.,</b> citizenship; state, country	<b>dēbeō, dēbere, dēbuī, dēbitum,</b> ought
<b>potestās, potestātis, f.,</b> power, ability	<b>condō, condere, condidī,</b> conditum, found, establish
<b>tempestās, tempestātis, f.,</b> weather; bad weather, storm	<b>sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītum,</b> know
<b>novus, -a, -um,</b> new, strange	<b>possum, posse, potuī, —,</b> be able
<b>appellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,</b> <sup>3</sup> call, name	<b>tandem, adverb,</b> finally, at last
<b>appropinquō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,</b> approach, <i>with dative</i> or <i>ad + accusative</i>	<b>tum, adverb,</b> then

Many third declension nouns are formed with the suffixes **-tās, -tātis** or **-tūs, -tūtis** (**-ūs, -ūtis**). Nouns formed with these suffixes denote condition or state and are regularly feminine.

You have already met several of these nouns: **cīvitās, cīvitātis**, *state or citizenship (condition of being a citizen)*; **potestās, potestātis**, *power, ability (condition of being able)*; **salūs, salūtis**, *safety (condition of being safe)*; **tempestās, tempestātis**, *weather, storm (condition of time or season)*; **virtūs, virtūtis**, *manliness (state of being a man), courage*; **voluntās, voluntātis**, *willingness (state of being willing), wish*.

Derive the meaning of the following nouns: **aequitās, bonitās, inīquitās, libertās, servitūs, virginitās**.

Nouns ending in **-tās** often give English derivatives ending in *-ty*. Sometimes there is a spelling change in the base of the noun. Give an English derivative of **aequitās, cīvitās, inīquitās, libertās, virginitās**.

<sup>3</sup> Distinguish carefully between this verb and **appellō, appellere**.

<sup>4</sup> Only the present system of **audeō** will be used at this time.

## REVIEW LESSON THREE

### I.

### Vocabulary

- A. *Give the genitive singular, gender and meaning of these nouns:*

annus	dux	imperātor	pāstor	uxor
arma ( <i>pl.</i> )	flōs	iter	pater	virgō
auxilium	flūmen	legiō	potestās	virtūs
captīvus	forum	māter	rēgnum	voluntās
caput	frāter	mīles	rēx	vulnus
cīvitās	genus	mulier	salūs	
cōnsilium	gladiātor	multitūdō	soror	
corpus	homō	nōmen	tempestās	

- B. *Give the adjective corresponding to these proper nouns:*

<b>Rōma, -ae, Rome</b>		<b>Rōmānus, -a, -um</b>	
Britannia	Germānia	Āfrica	Italia
Gallia	Graecia	Hispania	Sicilia

- C. *Give the principal parts and meaning of these verbs:*

agō	cōstituō	expellō	mittō	relinquō
āmittō	cūrō	gerō	occupō	rogō
appellō	dēbeō	iaciō	pellō	sciō
appropinquō	dēspērō	inveniō	petō	spectō
audeō	dīcō	iubeō	possum	vetō
condō	dubitō	legō	prohibeō	volō

- D. *Give the nominative singular feminine and neuter and also the meaning of these adjectives:*

aequus	inīquus	maximus	tantus
cētērī ( <i>pl.</i> )	laetus	novus	

- E. *Give the meaning of and the case required by each preposition:*

ante	extrā	ob	prō	sub (2)
apud	inter	praeter	sine	

- F. *Give the meaning of these words and phrases:*

bellum gerere	iter facere	postquam	tandem
dēspērāre dē	neque	priusquam	tum
dum	neque . . . neque	quoque	ubi
itaque	numquam	simul atque	

## II.

## Forms and Syntax

### A. Complete by filling in the blanks:

1. The Latin verb **possum** requires the infinitive form of another verb to complete its meaning.
2. Repeated or continued action in past time is expressed in Latin by the imperfect tense.
3. When a question does not begin with an interrogative word, -ne is added to the important word of the question. A question anticipating an affirmative answer is introduced by nonne; a negative answer, by num.
4. The verb in a clause introduced by **dum** (*while*) is regularly in the present tense.
5. The imperative mood indicates a command; the form is regularly the same as the present stem in the singular. In verbs of 1st, 2nd and 4th conjugations -te is added to the present stem for the imperative plural. Verbs of the 3rd conjugation change the stem vowel e to i before the plural ending.
6. A negative command is expressed by using **Nōlī** and **Nōlīte** with the infinitive form of the verb.
7. Third declension nouns are distinguished by the ending of the genitive singular which is -is.
8. In the third declension, the vocative has the same form as the nominative case.
9. The accusative case is used as the subject of an infinitive.
10. The possessive adjective *your* is tuus when one person is addressed but vester when more than one is addressed.
11. The accusative singular masculine and feminine endings for the first three declensions are -um, -am, -em; the genitive plural endings are -um, -um, -um; the accusative plural masculine and feminine endings are -as, -as, -es.
12. **Postquam** and **ubi** introducing verbs to indicate a single act in the past require the perfect tense.

B. Give the indicated form:

1. *Gen. sing.* caput, cōnsilium, multitudō
2. *Acc. pl.* flūmen, arma, rēx
3. *Dat. sing.* captīvus, ego, tū
4. *Nom. pl.* dux noster, maximum corpus, māter laeta
5. *Imperfect, 1st sing.* audeō, sciō, rogō
6. *Imperative sing.* mittō, dūcō, iaciō
7. *Imperative pl.* cūrō, sum, iubeō
8. *Future, 3rd pl.* sum, possum
9. *Perfect, 2nd sing.* cōstituō, gerō, sum
10. *Imperfect, 3rd sing.* rapiō, vetō, possum

III. Translation

A. Translate the Latin sentence:

1. Dum virginēs flōrēs legunt, rēx filiā deae vidit et amāvit.
2. Rēx imperātōrem milītēs in Galliam sine auxiliīs mittere prohibuit.
3. Dē salūte legiōnum nostrārum dēspērāre numquam dēbēmus.
4. Fuge mēcum ex agrīs, Mārce; agricolae multōs parvōs puerōs capiunt.
5. Rōmulus irātus frātre interfecit; tum cīvitātem novam condidit.
6. Parvī puerī inter aedificia oppidī errābant, sed ad portam pervenīre nōn poterant.
7. Ego uxor virī bonī eram et tū soror erās. Nōbīscum in viīs Rōmae saepe ambulābat.
8. Bonum nōn est gladiātōrēs miserōs spectāre, mulierēs, nam (*for*) vulnera multōrum hominum vidētis.
9. Populus Rōmānus rēgem inīquum propter iniūriās expulit. Cum multīs militibus rēx Rōmam iter fēcit.
10. Post tempestātem multae mātres liberōs prope flūmen invēnerunt. Nōne erant laetae? Certē.



B. Complete by translating the English:

- |  |                           |
|--|---------------------------|
| 1. Animālia _____ habent.  | small heads               |
| 2. Servus _____ ad Forum<br>ambulābat.   | with you ( <i>sing.</i> ) |
| 3. Venus filium sagittam in corpus<br>rēgis _____ iussit.                      | to shoot (send)           |
| 4. _____ lēgātōs auxilium ab<br>cīvitāte Rōmānā petere.                        | It is right               |
| 5. _____ nōn possumus.   | escape                    |
| 6. Simul atque castra _____,<br>mīlitēs convocāvit.                            | he had pitched            |
| 7. Nōlī, fili, pecūniam _____.   | lose                      |
| 8. Magister rogāvit, "Amātisne,<br>puerī, patriam _____?"                      | your                      |
| 9. Auxilium ab amīcīs _____.   | they used to seek         |
| 10. Cēterī pāstōrēs ad _____<br>vērērunt et puerōs malōs in<br>_____ vīdērunt. | the river<br>the bank     |

#### IV. Derivatives and Word Study

A. Using your Latin vocabulary, explain the meaning of the italicized word:

1. He found no public office to be a *sinecure*.
2. After retirement the industrialist offered his services to a rival company for a *nominal* sum.
3. Much is required of the sisters in that order during their *novitiate*.
4. Explain the distinction between *corporal* and *capital* punishment.
5. With his latest act, the criminal *relinquished* his rights of citizenship.
6. The treatment had a *salutary* effect; both doctor and patient were happy.
7. Did the player resent the *appellation* given him by the press?
8. During his *pastorate* many *innovations* were introduced and the church grew spiritually.
9. How many signatures did the *petition* have?
10. The committee planned the *itinerary* in minute detail.

B. Explain the meaning of the following nouns formed by using the suffix *-tor*:

spectator curator actor malefactor conductor

- C. *Examine the meaning of the root and the prefix. Then give the meaning of the compound verb:*

transport postpone circumvent induct contradict

## V. Roman History and Mythology

- A. *Match the following columns:*

- |                     |  |
|---------------------|--|
| ( ) Cerēs           | 1. nōmen novae urbī dedit.   |
| ( ) Colossēum       | 2. erat pāstor rēgis.  |
| ( ) Cupīdō          | 3. erat arēna ubi erant pugnae gladiātōrum.                              |
| ( ) Mettius Curtius | 4. erat dea frūmentī.  |
| ( ) Faustulus       | 5. erat uxor Plūtōnis.   |
| ( ) Iuppiter        | 6. erat rēx Orcī.  |
| ( ) Juvenal         | 7. erat dea amōris et pulchritūdinis.                                    |
| ( ) Plūtō           | 8. sagittās portābat.  |
| ( ) Prōserpina      | 9. erat rēx deōrum et pater hominum.                                     |
| ( ) Rhea Silvia     | 10. inquit "Maximum bonum Rōmānum est arma virtūsque mīlitum Rōmānōrum." |
| ( ) Rōmulus         | 11. erat māter Rōmulī Remīque.   |
| ( ) Venus           | 12. inquit "Mēns sāna in corpore sānō."                                  |

- B. *Answer in English:*

1. How were Roman girls named? 2. Show similarities and differences between Roman and modern marriage customs. 3. How did the early Romans once secure wives when there was a scarcity of women? 4. What was the earliest form of government in Rome?

## VI. Sight Reading

The Greeks and the Romans were very fond of stories in which some wise lesson was taught. In many of these the "dumb" animals talk and act like human beings. These tales, often most amusing, were ascribed generally to Aesop, who



The Pont du Gard, near Nîmes, France, is an ingenious combination of bridge and aqueduct. The bottom section is a bridge, and the top is part of an aqueduct, which brought in water from the mountains.

lived in the sixth century before Christ. The Romans all knew these stories and not only the boys and girls delighted in them, but also the grown-up people, who of course were specially interested in the moral.

The following fable is for rapid reading. The vocabulary will help you; it is not necessary to learn the new words at this time.

#### Dē Rānā et Vaccā

In prātō quondam ambulābat rāna; vacca quoque ambulābat. Rāna vīdit vaccam, et tācta (*touched*) invidiā tantae magnitudinis (*of such size*), sē (*herself*) multum īnflāvit. Fīliōs rogāvit: “Sumne tam (*as*) lāta quam (*as*) vacca?” Illī (*They*) negāvērunt. Rūrsus sē īnflāvit et rūrsus rogāvit: “Sumne



Interior of the Colosseum. In the arena gladiator fought with gladiator and with wild animals, for the entertainment of Roman spectators. The floor was sometimes flooded for mock naval battles.

tam alta quam vacca?" "Nōn, nōn," respondent rānae parvae. Et dum (*while*) sē rūrsus īnflat, rāna invidiōsa sē rumpit (*bursts*) et iacet mortua.

Moral, When the poor ape the rich, they court disaster.

PHAEDRUS 1.24 (*Adapted*)

prātum, -ī, *n.*, meadow  
quondam, *adverb*, once upon  
a time

rāna, -ae, *f.*, frog  
vacca, -ae, *f.*, cow  
invidia, -ae, *f.*, envy  
multum, much

īnflō, īnflāre, īnflāvī, īnflātum,  
blow up, inflate  
negō, negāre, negāvī, negātum,  
deny, say no  
rūrsus, *adverb*, again  
īnvidiōsus, -ā, -um, envious  
iaceō, iacēre, iacuī, —, lie  
mortuus, -a, -um, dead

## Rome, Queen of Cities

In central Italy the Apennines sweep towards the east coast. To the west of the mountains lies a wide plain, through which flows the Tiber River. For much of its course the Tiber runs in a south-easterly direction, then it turns to the south-west; halfway down the western coast of Italy it empties its waters into the great inland sea, the Mediterranean.

In ancient times, especially in dry seasons, the river could be crossed by a ford about fifteen miles up from its mouth. South of the ford lay a group of seven hills, rising fairly steeply from the river and forming an excellent means of defense. The level ground between the hills gradually became a regular trading center, to which came traders from the north with their wares and farmers from the foothills of the Apennines with wine and grain.

To the north and west of the Tiber lived the Etruscans, a powerful people differing in race and language from the other peoples of Italy. On the south-eastern side of the river is a plain, which in ancient times was known as Latium and occupied by tribes called the Latins. For purposes of defense, chiefly against the Etruscans, the towns of the Latins combined to form a Latin League. For some time the chief city of the League was Alba Longa (the Long White Town), situated on Mount Alba, some distance away from the river.

Later a new settlement was founded in the district of the seven hills on a site more easily defended; this settlement was Rome. Beginning simply as a village of rude shepherds and peasants, Rome grew into a prosperous city-state, which gradually developed into the mistress of Italy and finally into the queen-city of all the lands bordering on the Mediterranean. The traditional date of the founding of Rome is April 21, 754 B.C. At first Rome was just one of many small towns situated in the plain of Latium. To the north lay the Etruscans; to the south-east and north-east respectively, the Samnites and the Umbrians, hardy mountaineers akin to the



Latins. About 600 B.C. Rome destroyed Alba Longa, and transferred some of her inhabitants to Rome.

Some time after this the Etruscans captured Rome, and for years Etruscan kings reigned in the city. Under the Etruscan rulers Rome advanced in power and civilization; its territory increased; but Rome remained a Latin city with agriculture as its chief industry. The last of the foreign kings, Tarquinius Superbus (Tarquin the Proud), was expelled in 510 B.C. Despite the efforts of the Etruscans to restore him, the monarchy was abolished. Thereafter no king ruled in ancient Rome.

The Romans now set up a republic. Two annually elected magistrates, called consuls, were placed in charge of the state. The consuls were equal in authority and acted as a check on each other. They ruled the city in peace and commanded the army in war. The consuls were assisted by a senate, which was a council of elderly men experienced in public affairs. The citizens met in an assembly, where they could express their wishes on many matters.

At the beginning of the Republic, Rome was only one of the cities of Latium, already growing in importance but not much stronger than the others. The next century saw a series of struggles as neighboring tribes pressed on the plain of Latium. Gradually the Romans and their allies were able to take the offensive and prevail.

In 390 B.C. a horde of Gauls moved south through Etruria, defeated a Roman army, and sacked Rome, although a small garrison still held the citadel on top of the Capitoline Hill. One night the Gauls quietly ascended the hill and almost surprised the garrison, but some geese, kept for religious purposes, heard the Gauls and with their cackling woke the Romans; the attack failed. Finally the Gauls withdrew on payment of a large ransom.

As Roman power was extended over the whole of Latium and Roman interests began to spread to other parts of central





Arretium

Clusium

Tarquinii

Ostia

Asculum

Falerii

Veii

Roma

Antium

Cumae

Misenum

Beneventum

Neapolis

Pompeii

Paestum

Brundisium

Tarentum

Messana

Syracusa

Carthago

MARE ADRIATICUM

MARE TYRRHENUM

Corsica

Sardinia

Sicilia

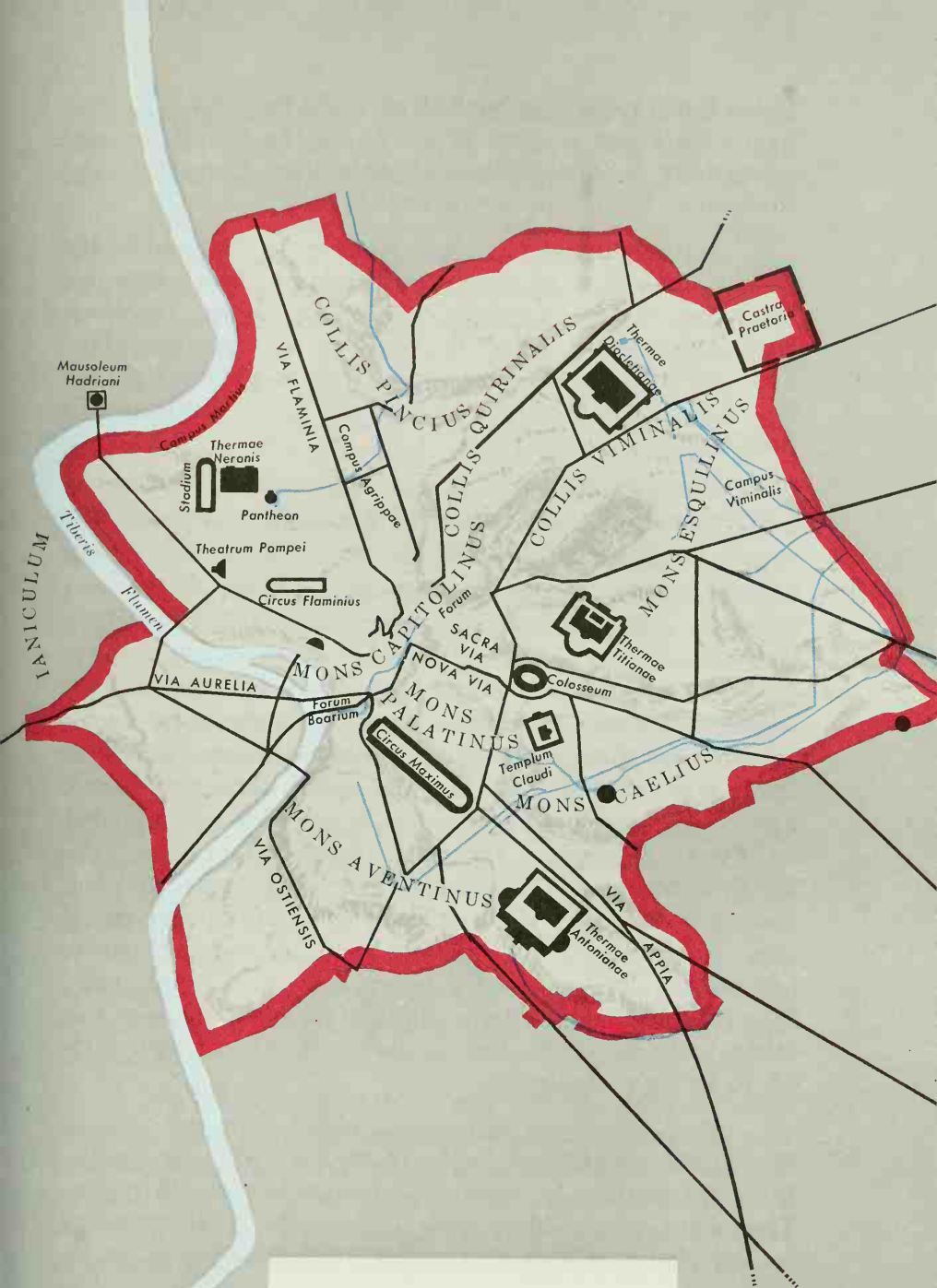
AFRICA

0 40 80 100

Scale: Miles

Italia

- Rome
- Greek Colonies
- Carthage



Scale Yards: 0 200 400 600 800 1,000

Aqueducts —————

Roma

Italy, Rome came into conflict with the Samnite hill-tribes. Again there was a series of wars. In the end Rome met successfully a combination of Samnites, Umbrians, and Etruscans. Rome was now in control of central Italy.

In the south of Italy were many cities colonized by the Greeks. The chief of these was Tarentum, which regarded the region as its own sphere of influence. When, therefore, Rome sought to help one of the Greek cities, Tarentum picked a quarrel with Rome. Once more Rome was successful. By 270 B.C. Rome was mistress of all Italy south of the Apennines.

Up to this point Rome's interests were centered in Italy. Now came a new phase in her history as Rome became a Mediterranean power. At the north-east end of the Bay of Tunis in Northern Africa lay Carthage, a rich and important city. Founded by Phoenicians about 850 B.C., it became the capital of one of the most important empires of ancient times. For centuries Carthage and Rome had been friendly, but commercial expansion and the desire for more territory brought the two powers into conflict. The First Punic War (264-241 B.C.) saw the rise of Rome as a naval power. As a result of her victories, Rome added the island of Sicily to her territories. During the Second Punic War (218-201 B.C.) the great Carthaginian general Hannibal invaded Italy, but his many victories failed to break Rome's resistance. Eventually Rome was again victorious, adding Spain to her empire. Half a century later came the Third Punic War (149-146 B.C.); after a stubborn defense Carthage was taken and destroyed. Her territories in Africa were added to Rome's dominions.

Rome was now undisputed mistress of the western Mediterranean and had begun to form an overseas empire. With the increase in territory came an increase in power. The empire continued to grow until all the lands bordering on the Mediterranean were under its dominion and its in-

fluence extended as far as Britain on the west and the Euphrates in the east. At the height of its power the Roman Empire comprised 1,600,000 square miles.

Rome's military successes were followed by an expansion of business and an increase in wealth; Rome became the chief financial center of the Mediterranean. Unfortunately her successes also brought many difficulties and problems. Victorious generals carried to Italy thousands of slaves, who did the work that citizen farmers and laborers had done before. Meanwhile, too, the soil of many of the farms had been exhausted. Efforts were made to open up new lands, but not enough were available. Crowds of farmers left the country districts and drifted to the cities, especially to Rome where there was little employment for them.

Two brothers of a noble family, Tiberius and Gaius Gracchus, tried to remedy matters. Among other reforms, Tiberius proposed to divide public lands among the poor, but the rich, who had enjoyed the use of the lands, contrived to have a riot started during which Tiberius was killed. Gaius Gracchus, too, met a violent death later (123 B.C.) when he tried to carry on his brother's work.

The qualities which had enabled the Romans to become so strong were: manliness, endurance, self-sacrifice, love of country, and the ability to organize and govern. With the increase of wealth and luxury, there began a sad decline in Roman morals and politics. Successful generals, backed by armies ready to do their bidding, had more power than the government, and sometimes used their power to secure election to office.

The period 110-44 B.C. saw the rise of a series of generals. First Marius, then Sulla waged successful wars and returned to Rome to dominate the political scene. Sulla was followed by a still more famous general, Pompey. The latter's successes, chiefly in the East, made him for a time the foremost man in the Roman world. Unfortunately for him it was



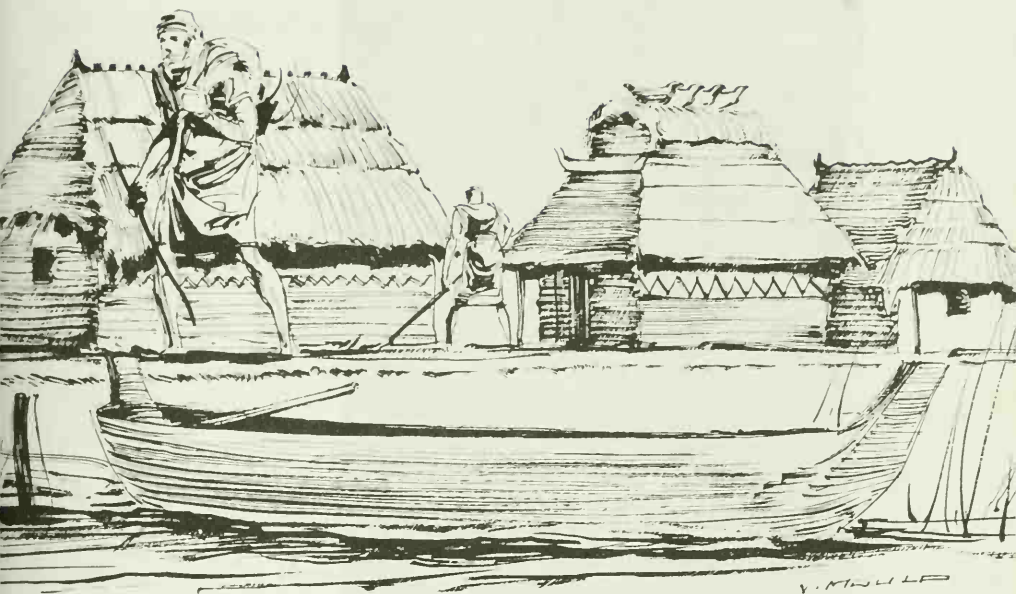
The Latins, "people of the plain," lived south of the Tiber in the area called Latium. From artifacts discovered in their burial grounds, we know that they were an agri-

his lot to live in the same age as a man who surpassed him, Julius Caesar. Caesar had been fighting in Gaul (ancient France) and had advanced the frontiers of the Roman Empire to the Rhine and the English Channel. Soon Pompey and Caesar drifted into open conflict. A civil war broke out; Caesar was victorious and Pompey was murdered. Caesar now had no rival. As dictator he used his power well, instituting many reforms and planning safeguards for the Empire; but his career was cut short. He was assassinated by a group of conspirators led by Brutus and Cassius (44 B.C.).

A second civil war ensued in which Mark Antony and Octavian (Caesar's grandnephew and heir) crushed the conspirators. This was followed by a third struggle in which Antony and Cleopatra, the queen of Egypt, were defeated by Octavian at the Battle of Actium (31 B.C.).

The Republican constitution had collapsed, but on its foundation a new system of government was constructed.





cultural people who lived in communities near bodies of water. As early as 1000 B.C., gold, silver, and bronze were being worked for weapons and implements.

In 27 B.C. Octavian took the title Princeps (the leading citizen of the state); this marked the beginning of the Empire. The Senate bestowed upon Octavian the title Augustus (consecrated). Augustus was a good administrator; much of the system he created endured for centuries.

The second century A.D. was the golden age of the Empire. The ideal of Augustus, universal peace, prevailed for many years. Travel and trade were protected; schools and orphanages were founded; justice was fairly administered.

As time passed the Empire declined. About 400 A.D. hordes of barbarians from the north and east began to invade the provinces. In 455 A.D. a hostile army even plundered Rome. The barbarians founded kingdoms in Italy, Gaul, and Spain. When the German Odoacer deposed the Emperor Romulus Augustulus in 476 A.D. the rule of Rome in the West ended.





*Bronze statue of an  
unknown Roman  
citizen*

# 19

## I-Stem Nouns of the Third Declension Masculine, Feminine, Neuter

Ā marī usque ad mare  
*From sea to sea*

151

### Dē Horātiō (Part 1)

Tarquinius Superbus (*Tarquin the Proud*), ultimus (*last*) rēx Rōmānōrum, erat vir inīquus. Propter magnam iniūriam rēgis populus Rōmānus eum (*him*) ab urbe expulit. Tum Tarquinius auxilium ā Larte Porsenā (*Lars Porsena*), rēge 5 Etrūscōrum (*of the Etruscans*), petīvit. Tarquinius, ubi ad Porsenam vēnit, “Tū, Ō Porsena,” inquit, “es Etrūscōrum

maximus; finēs tuī ā marī ad montēs pertinent (*extends*). Scīs mē quoque esse Etrūscum. Rōmānī mē ex urbe meā expulērunt. Tū mē ad rēgnum meum redūcere dēbēs. Magnum numerum (*number*) mīlitum cōge et Rōmam dūc. Nōlī dubitāre. Hoc (*this*) statim fac.” 10

Potestās Etrūscōrum magna erat magnumque Porsenae nōmen. Itaque Porsena magnās cōpiās contrā urbem dūxit, et finēs Rōmānōrum ignī ferrōque (*ferrum, iron*) vāstābat. Rōmae (*At Rome*) erat magnum praesidium. Rōmānī, dum Etrūscī portīs Rōmae appropinquant, arma in multās partēs urbis portāvērunt et portās clausērunt (*closed*). Flūmen Tiberis partem urbis mūniēbat (*protected*), sed in Tiberī erat pōns. Mox Etrūscī pontī appropinquābant. 15

Tum ūnus (*one*) vir urbem servāvit, nam Horātius elāmāvit, “Etrūscī multōs vestrum terrent; nōlīte, cīvēs, hostēs timēre. Ego pontem dēfendam (*shall defend*); interim (*meanwhile*) vōs pontem rumpite (*break down*).” Neque Horātius sōlus (*alone*) contrā hostēs vēnit, sed duo sociī (*two comrades*), Spurius Lartius et Titus Herminius, cum Horātiō vērērunt. 20 25

### Respondē Latīnē :

1. Ā quō Tarquinius Superbus auxilium petīvit? 2. Quī (*Who, nom. pl.*) Tarquinius Superbum expulērunt? 3. Appropinquantne Etrūscī portīs Rōmae? 4. Quō Rōmānī arma portāvērunt? 5. Quid mūniēbat partem urbis? 6. Quis urbem servāvit? 7. Quid cōnsiliī (*What advice*) cīvibus dedit?

## 152 I-STEMS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

I-stems of the third declension differ from the consonant stems in having **-ium** in the genitive plural. They sometimes have **-im** instead of **-em** in the accusative singular, and quite commonly **-ī** instead of **-e** in the ablative singular.<sup>1</sup> Masculine and feminine **i**-stems may have **-ēs** or **-īs** in the accusative plural. Neuter nouns have **-ī** in ablative singular and **-ia** in nominative and accusative plural. There are three classes of **i**-stem nouns:

<sup>1</sup> Cf. *Tiberim*, *acc.* and *Tiberī*, *abl.*



The Arch of Titus was erected in 70 A.D. to celebrate the fall of Jerusalem. Its simple majestic proportions represent the best in Roman art.

(a) Masculine and feminine nouns ending in **-is** and **-ēs**, with the genitive ending in **-is**, and having the same number of syllables in the genitive as in the nominative: **hostis**, *hostis*, *enemy*; **caedēs**, *caedis*, *slaughter*.

(b) Masculine and feminine nouns ending in **-s** or **-x** in which the **-is** of the genitive is preceded by two consonants: **mōns**, *montis*, *mountain*; **nox**, *noctis*, *night*; **urbs**, *urbis*, *city*.

(c) Neuter nouns ending in **-e**, **-al**, **-ar**: **mare**, *maris*, *sea*; **animal**, *animālis*, *animal*; **exemplar**, *exemplāris*, *copy*; *pattern*, *example*.



The Temple of Saturn, one of the most venerable monuments in Rome. Here the state treasure was kept; here the Saturnalia were held each December.

#### MASCULINE

##### *hostis* (enemy)<sup>2</sup>

##### *mōns* (mountain)

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>hostis</i>	<i>hostēs</i>	<i>mōns</i>	<i>montēs</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>hostis</i>	<i>hostium</i>	<i>montis</i>	<i>montium</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>hostī</i>	<i>hostibus</i>	<i>montī</i>	<i>montibus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>hostem</i>	<i>hostēs (-īs)</i>	<i>montem</i>	<i>montēs (-īs)</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>hoste</i>	<i>hostibus</i>	<i>monte</i>	<i>montibus</i>

<sup>2</sup> *Hostis* is used in the plural when referring to a number of enemies. English frequently says *the enemy* with this meaning; for example, *The enemy attacked.*

FEMININE  
**nāvis** (*ship*)

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>nāvis</b>	<b>nāvēs</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>nāvis</b>	<b>nāvium</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>nāvī</b>	<b>nāvibus</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>nāvem</b>	<b>nāvēs (-īs)</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>nāvī (-e)<sup>3</sup></b>	<b>nāvibus</b>

NEUTER

	<b>mare</b> ( <i>sea</i> )		<b>animal</b> ( <i>animal</i> )	
	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>mare</b>	<b>maria</b>	<b>animal</b>	<b>animālia</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>maris</b>	———— <sup>4</sup>	<b>animālis</b>	<b>animālium</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>marī</b>	<b>maribus</b>	<b>animālī</b>	<b>animālibus</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>mare</b>	<b>maria</b>	<b>animal</b>	<b>animālia</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>marī</b>	<b>maribus</b>	<b>animālī</b>	<b>animālibus</b>

153

EXERCISES

A. *Supply the correct ending for each of the unfinished words:*

1. Cīvis bonus mort\_\_\_\_\_ nōn timet.
2. Cum host\_\_\_\_\_ pugnāverāmus.
3. Multa animāl\_\_\_\_\_ vīdī.
4. Host\_\_\_\_\_ praedam nōn dedimus.
5. Inter mont\_\_\_\_\_ altōs imperātor cōpiās dūxit.
6. Cōpiae host\_\_\_\_\_ (*pl.*) effūgērunt.
7. Ā flūmin\_\_\_\_\_ ad mar\_\_\_\_\_ silva pertinet (*extends*).
8. Cīv\_\_\_\_\_ malus urb\_\_\_\_\_ nōn cūrat.
9. Multitūdō<sup>5</sup> cīv\_\_\_\_\_ Rōmam veniēbant.
10. In mar\_\_\_\_\_ altō sunt multī piscēs (*fish*).

B. *Give the correct form in the indicated case and number:*

1. *Acc. s.*                **rīpa, gladius, periculum, pāstor, mare**
2. *Abl. s.*                **prōvincia, rēgnum, vir, collis, animal**
3. *Nom. pl.*              **equus, corpus, dux, animal, pars**
4. *Gen. s.*                **incola, annus, vulnus, virtūs, mēns**

<sup>3</sup> **Nāvis, nāvis, ship**, and **ignis, ignis, fire**, have **-ī** or **-e** in the ablative singular.

<sup>4</sup> The genitive plural of **mare** is lacking.

<sup>5</sup> Nouns denoting number often take a plural verb.



5. <i>Acc. pl.</i>	auxilium, vulnus, mare, nōmen, gēnus
6. <i>Acc. pl.</i>	sagitta, ager, mulier, pater, iter
7. <i>Gen. pl.</i>	agricola, captivus, cīvis, mīles, animal
8. <i>Dat. s.</i>	magister, māter, soror, flōs, nōmen
9. <i>Abl. pl.</i>	servus, aedificium, legiō, flūmen, hostis
10. <i>Dat. pl.</i>	rēgīna, servus, corpus, homō, cīvis

C. *Translate:*

1. Cīvis Rōmānus prō patriā pugnāre dēbet.
2. Nōs castra in altō monte pōnere prohibuerat.
3. Agrōs hostium ignī vāstābāmus.
4. Num nautae timēbant perīcula maris?
5. Multī nostrum urbem dēfendērunt.
6. Aequum est nōs malum rēgem expellere.
7. Nāvēs longās ē prōvinciīs cōēgit.
8. Mīlitēs Rōmānī cum hostibus pugnāvērunt et caedēs fuit magna.
9. Paucōs nostrum mūrīs appropinquāre vetuerat.
10. Quamquam potestās hostium est maxima, nōlīte, cīvēs, dē salūte dēspērāre.

D. *Write in Latin:*

1. The enemy had captured the citadel.
2. Do not despair of safety, citizens.
3. After the storm they made a large fire on the hill.
4. The mind is not part of the body.
5. Kill the animal and throw the body into the sea.
6. Few of us are afraid of the sea (*fear the sea*).
7. Be our friends.
8. He told the citizens not to seek the advice of the gods.
9. We had marched from the enemy's territories to the mountains.
10. Sailors do not fear the dangers of the sea.

## SUPPLEMENTARY EXERCISES

A. *Translate:*

1. Arx vālla alta habēbat, et multī mīlitēs erant in arce.
2. Nōn aequum est prōvinciās cōgere vōbīs nāvēs longās dare.





The Arch of Constantine celebrated victory over Max-entius. Elaborate ornamentation makes an impos-  
ing monument to this first Christian emperor.

3. Quid timent parva animālia?
4. Pōnite, mīlitēs, prope Tiberim castra.
5. Silva magna ā flūmine Tiberī ad mare pertinet.

B. *Write in Latin:*

1. When the soldiers had approached the sea, they pitched camp.
2. It was not right to prevent us from coming with reinforcements.
3. Roman soldiers ought not to fear death.
4. On account of the scarcity of ships he ordered the citizens to build (*faciō*) a bridge.
5. After the slaughter and death of many citizens they had come into the citadel.



Here was the magnificently colonnaded Forum of Rome. Ravaged by wars, the ruins remain an impressive testament to "the grandeur that was Rome."

154

## VOCABULARY

### MASCULINE

cīvis, cīvis, citizen  
 collis, collis, hill  
 finis, finis, end; *pl.*, borders,  
 territory  
 hostis, hostis, enemy  
 ignis, ignis, fire  
 mōns, montis, mountain  
 pōns, pontis, bridge

### NEUTER

animal, animālis, animal  
 mare, maris, sea

### FEMININE

nāvis, nāvis, ship; nāvis longa,  
 warship  
 caedēs, caedis, slaughter  
 mēns, mentis, mind  
 mors, mortis, death  
 pars, partis, part  
 nox, noctis, night  
 arx, arcis, citadel  
 urbs, urbis, city



The toga, one of the most famous garments in history, was perhaps the most complicated and imposing one ever created from a single piece of fabric. It changed slightly from period to period in Roman history; the most familiar form was that in use during the time of Julius Caesar.

## 155 THE DRESS OF A ROMAN CITIZEN

Because the climate of Rome is warm and sunny, the Roman required fewer warm clothes than we do in most parts of our country.

Next to his body he wore a garment like a pair of shorts or trunks. Over that he wore a *tunica*, a loose shirt of woolen material; this had either no sleeves or just short ones. Ordinarily the tunic reached to the knees only. This was the usual dress of a gentleman at home; but it was the dress of workers both at home and on the job.

The toga was the distinctive dress of the Roman citizen. In the *Aeneid*, a poem by Vergil, appear the words *Iūnō . . . fovēbit Rōmānōs, rērum dominōs, gentemque togātā*; *Juno shall cherish the Romans, lords of earth, the nation of the toga*. The use of the toga was forbidden to exiles and to foreigners. The citizen wore the toga whenever he appeared on the street or attended a public function. The toga consisted of a woolen cloth, in its natural white color, of semi-circular cut, about five yards long by four wide. This cloth was doubled lengthwise, not down the center, but so that one fold was deeper than the other. It was next thrown over the left shoulder in such a way that the end in front reached to the ground, and the part behind was about twice a man's height in length. This end was then brought around under the right arm, and again thrown over the left shoulder so as to cover the whole of the right side from the arm-pit to the calf. The broad folds in which it hung over were gathered together on the left shoulder. The part which crossed the breast was deep enough to serve as a pocket for small articles.

The toga of a boy under sixteen had a purple stripe along the edge. The togas of the consuls and other high officials also usually had a purple border. An emperor, or a general celebrating a triumph, wore a toga of purple embroidered with gold.

When the weather required it, a man wore a short, light, sleeveless cloak. He rarely wore a hat; in bad weather he drew his cloak or even his toga over his head. There were head-coverings for those who really needed them: pointed felt caps for workers in sun and rain, and broad-brimmed hats for travelers.

The Roman did not wear stockings. When at home he wore sandals; for outdoor wear he had stronger shoes.

Little jewelry was worn by men. The most common item was a ring, usually of iron, which bore a seal for use on letters and documents. Some men wore gold rings.

In early days the Roman wore shaggy hair and a long beard. Later new styles came in; heads were carefully barbered and faces shaven clean.





## Vicina Romana

0 25  
Scale: Miles



*Statue of Artemis,  
Greek goddess of the  
hunt and moon*

# 20

## Third Declension Adjectives Adjectives with Dative Case

Nōn omnia<sup>1</sup> possumus omnēs.

*We cannot all do everything.*

VERGIL: EC. 8.63

156

### Dē Horātiō (Part 2)

Horātius, cum fortibus sociīs (*comrades*), cōpiās hostium spectābat; primum perīculum (*first attempt*) sustinuērunt; multōs militēs potentis rēgis vulnerābant, multōs quoque interficiēbant.

<sup>1</sup> Plural adjectives are used freely as nouns.



5 Ubi Rōmānī pontem paene (*almost*) rūpērunt, Horātius  
duōs amīcōs audācēs trāns pontem in urbem fugere iussit.

“Ego sōlus (*alone*),” inquit, “pontem nunc dēfendam (*I shall defend*); fugite in urbem; mē hīc (*here*) relinquite.” Grave erat perīculum Horātiī; in parte pontis hostibus proximā  
10 stābat, sōlusque sine auxiliō mīlitēs āerēs hostium diū sustinēbat.

Tandem Rōmānī omnēs partēs pontis rūperant. Horātius flūmen spectāvit, hostēs spectāvit. Tum clāmāvit, “Ō Tiberīne pater (*Father Tiber*), cape mē et arma mea.” Armīs  
15 gravibus impedītus (*burdened*) in flūmen dēsilit (*jumped down*) et per multa tēla Etruscōrum incolumis (*unharmmed*) ad rīpam ad amīcōs trānāvit (*swam across*).

Sic (*Thus*) Etruscī ob virtūtem Horātiī urbem Rōmam nōn cēpērunt. Cīvēs Rōmānī statuam (*statue*) Horātiī in Forō  
20 posuērunt, quod urbem tam (*so*) fortiter dēfenderat.

### Respondē Latīnē :

1. Quibuscum Horātius cōpiās hostium spectābat? 2. Quōs (*Whom, acc. pl.*) vulnerābant; quōs interficiēbant? 3. Ubi Rōmānī pontem paene rūpērunt, quid iussit Horātius? 4. Eratne perīculum Horātiī grave? 5. Ubi stābat Horātius? 6. Sōlus quid faciēbat? 7. Quid clāmāvit Horātius? 8. Quō trānāvit Horātius incolumis? 9. Cūr Etruscī Rōmam nōn cēpērunt? 10. Ubi Rōmānī statuam Horātiī posuērunt?

## 157 ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

Adjectives of the third declension ending in **-er** have a different form in the nominative singular for each gender: **ācer, ācris, ācre**. Those ending in **-is** have the masculine and feminine alike in the nominative singular: **fortis, fortis, forte**. Some have the same form in the nominative singular for all genders: **audāx, audāx, audāx; pār, pār, pār**.

# Third declension adjectives

in the ablative singular of all genders end in **-ī**;  
in the genitive plural of all genders end in **-ium**;  
in the nominative and accusative plural neuter  
end in **-ia**.

## SINGULAR

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	ācer	ācris	ācre
<i>Gen.</i>	ācris	ācris	ācris
<i>Dat.</i>	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī
<i>Acc.</i>	ācrem	ācrem	ācre
<i>Abl.</i>	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī

## PLURAL

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
<i>Gen.</i>	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
<i>Dat.</i>	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
<i>Acc.</i>	ācrēs (-īs)	ācrēs (-īs)	ācria
<i>Abl.</i>	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

## SINGULAR

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	fortis	fortis	forte
<i>Gen.</i>	fortis	fortis	fortis
<i>Dat.</i>	fortī	fortī	fortī
<i>Acc.</i>	fortem	fortem	forte
<i>Abl.</i>	fortī	fortī	fortī

## PLURAL

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	fortēs	fortēs	fortia
<i>Gen.</i>	fortium	fortium	fortium
<i>Dat.</i>	fortibus	fortibus	fortibus
<i>Acc.</i>	fortēs (-īs)	fortēs (-īs)	fortia
<i>Abl.</i>	fortibus	fortibus	fortibus

## SINGULAR

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	audāx	audāx	audāx
<i>Gen.</i>	audācis	audācis	audācis
<i>Dat.</i>	audācī	audācī	audācī
<i>Acc.</i>	audācem	audācem	audāx
<i>Abl.</i>	audācī	audācī	audācī

## PLURAL

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	audācēs	audācēs	audācia
<i>Gen.</i>	audācium	audācium	audācium
<i>Dat.</i>	audācibus	audācibus	audācibus
<i>Acc.</i>	audācēs (-īs)	audācēs (-īs)	audācia
<i>Abl.</i>	audācibus	audācibus	audācibus

Although Pompeii was not a remarkable city, it is better known than other ancient Italian towns because its ruins were preserved under volcanic rock for centuries. It was a popular site for beautiful villas, and with the archaeological excavations of modern times, the story of life in ancient Pompeii is complete. Two views shown here are part of the Pompeian landscape, the Arch of Nero below and the amphitheater on the opposite page.





**Gallī sunt proximī Germānīs.**

The Gauls are nearest to the Germans.

**Cōnsilium fuit ūtile nōbīs.**

The plan has been useful to us.

**Hostēs nōn erant parēs Rōmānīs.**

The enemy were not equal to the Romans (a match for the Romans).

**Italia Britanniae dissimilis est.**

Italy is unlike Britain.

The dative is used to complete the meaning of many adjectives, such as:

<b>amīcus, -a, -um,</b> friendly	<b>periculōsus, -a, -um,</b> dangerous
<b>inimīcus, -a, -um,</b> unfriendly,	<b>proximus, -a, -um,</b> next, nearest
hostile	<b>similis,</b> like
<b>fīnitimus, -a, -um,</b> neighboring,	<b>dissimilis,</b> unlike
adjacent	<b>ūtilis,</b> useful
<b>nōtus, -a, -um,</b> known	<b>pār, (gen. paris),</b> equal

## 159

## EXERCISES

A. *Supply the correct ending for the Latin adjective:*

1. Perīculum grave; captīvum forte; vulnus grave; mīlitem forte.
2. Rēgīnārum potentior; deōrum ācrior; cīvium ācrior; ducum potentior.
3. (nom. pl.) Omnes puerī; omnia aedificia; omnes mulierēs; omnia genera.
4. Cōnsilium ūtile; iter ūtile; nōmen ūtile; animal ūtile.
5. Puellā audāci; cōnsiliō audāci; cīve audāci; gladiātore audāci.

B. *Change all singular words to plural:*

1. Iace, mīles, sagittam ūtilem.
2. Imperātor proelium ācre parāvit.
3. Cīvis audāx nōn fugit.
4. Gladiātōr vulnus grave habet.
5. Servō fortī gladium novum dedī.



C. *Change all plural words to singular:*

1. Ducēs nostrī virōs fortēs laudant.
2. Vōbīs gravia tēla damus.
3. Cīvēs audācēs perīcula nōn timent.
4. Cum mīlitibus ācribus pugnāvērunt.
5. Rumpite pontēs lātōs.

D. *Complete by translating the English:*

1. Rōmānī \_\_\_\_\_ (to us) nōn sunt amīcī.
2. Hastae nōn sunt similēs \_\_\_\_\_ (swords).
3. Urbēs \_\_\_\_\_ (to the borders) proximās oppugnāvimus.
4. Estne, Mārce, pāstor \_\_\_\_\_ (to you) nōtus?
5. Ignis \_\_\_\_\_ (to all men) est ūtilis.

E. *Translate:*

1. Portās urbis fīnitimae rumpere nōn possumus.
2. Sciō tē esse virum fortem.
3. Cōnsilium tuum populō Rōmānō perīculōsum erit.
4. Omnēs cōpiās in arce collocāvit.
5. Ante proelium ācre auxilia ab imperātōre petīvit.
6. Nōlīte dubitāre cīvēs malōs expellere.
7. Multī nostrum fīnēs nostrōs diū dēfendērunt.
8. Num nautae fortēs timēbant perīcula maris?
9. Dum dux nāvēs longās ē prōvinciīs cōgit, hostēs castra nostra oppugnāvērunt.
10. Gladiātor audāx, captīvus miser, multa vulnera sustinuit.

F. *Write in Latin:*

1. He had led many keen soldiers into all parts of the province.
2. Brave men love bold plans.
3. The citadel has been useful to us all.
4. The powerful king was hostile to the Roman people.
5. Defend your native country, Horatius.
6. Do not march into the territories of a friendly people.
7. A farmer is not like a sailor, and sailors are not like shepherds.
8. After the death of the maiden we decided to seek safety.
9. A crowd of daring citizens was climbing the walls of the citadel.
10. Because of (their) serious wounds the soldiers remained for a long time within the camp.





tēlum, -ī, <i>n.</i> , weapon, missile, dart	potēns, potēns, potēns ( <i>gen.</i> potentis), powerful
ācer, ācris, ācre, sharp, keen, fierce	sustineō, sustinēre, sustinui, sustentum, withstand,
fortis, fortis, forte, brave, strong	sustain, endure
gravis, gravis, grave, heavy, severe, serious	dēfendō, dēfendere, dēfendi, dēfēsum, defend, protect
omnis, omnis, omne, all, every	rumpō, rumpere, rūpī, ruptum, break; break down
audāx, audāx, audāx ( <i>gen.</i> audācis), bold, daring	diū, <i>adverb</i> , long, for a long time

You have already learned the 1st and 2nd declension adjective suffixes, *-ānus*, *-icus*, *pertaining to, belonging to*. The suffix *-ālis*, a 3rd declension adjective suffix, also means *pertaining to, belonging to*.

LATIN	LATIN	FRENCH	ENGLISH
ROOT WORD	ADJECTIVE	ADJECTIVE	ADJECTIVE
mors, mortis	mortālis	mortel	mortal
nāvis, nāvis	nāvālis	naval	naval
liber, liberi	liberālis	libéral	liberal
filius, filii	filialis	filial	filial

The following is a list of English adjectives derived from Latin adjectives ending in *-ālis*, formed from Latin nouns which you know. Can you give the Latin nouns from which they were formed and the literal meaning of the adjectives? Use each adjective correctly in an English sentence.

regal	capital	paternal	mental
floral	fraternal	corporal	ducal
mural	maternal	nominal	provincial



*Landscape along the  
Appian Way in  
Rome*

# 21

## Demonstrative Pronoun *Is*

*Ferē libenter hominēs id quod volunt crēdunt.*

*Men usually believe willingly what they wish to.*

CAESAR: DE BELL. GALL. III. 18

162

## Dē Achillī (Colloquium)

The goddess Thetis knew that her son, Achilles, was fated to have either a long and inglorious life or a short and glorious one. Therefore, when the Greek leaders were recruiting the heroes for the war against Troy, Thetis sent her son for protection to Lycomedes, king of the island of Seyros. Lycomedes gave Achilles women's clothing and hid him among the princesses. However, Ulysses, the cleverest of the Greeks, tricked Achilles into revealing himself, and the young hero went off to the war in which he was destined to come to glory and to death.

- Magister.** Audīvistisne dē eō adulēscēte quī (*who*) erat maximus mīlitum Graecōrum (*Greek*)?
- Puerī.** Nōbīs, magister, is adulēscēns nōn est nōtus. Dic nōbīs dē eō.
- Magister.** Ōlim erat in Graeciā adulēscēns, Achillēs nōmine. 5  
Māter eius, dea Thetis, eum contrā Trōiānōs (*the Trojans*) pugnāre vetuit.
- Mārcus.** Cūr Thetis nōn cupiēbat eum cum Trōiānīs bellum gerere?
- Magister.** Quod ea filiō suō timēbat (*feared for*). 10
- Lūcius.** Quod (*What*) cōnsilium cēpit dea?
- Magister.** In īnsulam Graeciae finitimam ad rēgem Lycomēdem filiū mīsīt.
- Mārcus.** Quōmodo (*How*) rēx Achillem servāre potuit?
- Magister.** Rēx id cōnsilium cēpit. Achillī (*dative*) vestem 15  
muliebrem (*a woman's dress*) dedit et eum inter filiās suās servābat.
- Lūcius.** Manēbatne Achillēs diū cum eō rēge?
- Magister.** Minimē. Classis Graeca ad bellum conveniēbat et Agamemnon, prīmus Graecōrum, lēgātōs 20  
(*envoys*) ad Lycomēdem mīsīt. Ā rēge Achillem petīvērunt.
- Mārcus.** Trādiditne eīs Lycomēdēs Achillem?
- Magister.** Rēx prīmō (*adverb*) negābat (*kept denying*) Achillem esse in īnsulā. Interim, tamen, Ulixēs 25  
(*Ulysses*), quī (*who*) erat inter eōs lēgātōs, cōnsilium callidum (*clever*) cēperat.
- Lūcius.** Quod erat eius cōnsilium?
- Magister.** Ulixēs mōnstrābat omnibus filiābus rēgis multa quae (*many things which*) ad mulierēs pertinent. 30  
Inter ea, tamen, hastam clipeumque (*shield*) posuerat.
- Lūcius.** Ubi ea tēla vīdit, quid fēcīt Achillēs?
- Magister.** Achillēs, simul atque ea vīdit, clipeum et hastam rapuit. Statim cum classe Graecā Trōiam nāvigāre parāvit. Cum sociīs contrā Trōiānōs for- 35  
titer pugnāvit.

## Respondē Latīnē :

1. Quis erat māter Achillis? 2. Quod cōnsilium cēpit māter eius adulēscēntis? 3. Ubi rēx servābat Achillem? 4. Quis erat Agamemnon? 5. Trādiditne Lycomēdēs Achillem lēgātīs Graecīs? 6. Quibus mōnstrābat Ulixēs multa quae ad muliērēs pertinent? 7. Quae tēla inter ea posuerat? 8. Quid fēcit Achillēs ubi vīdit ea tēla? 9. Nōne Achillēs contrā Trōiānōs fortiter pugnāvit?

163

IS, EA, ID

The demonstrative (*dēmōnstrāre*, to point out) pronoun is declined as follows:

SINGULAR				PLURAL			
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.		MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	is	ea	id	<i>Nom.</i>	eī, iī	eae	ea
<i>Gen.</i>	eius	eius	eius	<i>Gen.</i>	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	eī	eī	eī	<i>Dat.</i>	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs
<i>Acc.</i>	eum	eam	id	<i>Acc.</i>	eōs	eās	ea
<i>Abl.</i>	eō	eā	eō	<i>Abl.</i>	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs

(a) **Is** is used as the personal pronoun of the third person: *he, she, it; plural, they.*

**Nōs eam servāvimus, vōs eum servāvistis.**

We saved her, you saved him.

**Militēs eī pārēbant.**

The soldiers were obeying him.

**Rōmam cum eīs vēnī.**

I came to Rome with them.

(b) **Is** is used to refer without emphasis to some person or thing already mentioned.

**Rōmulus erat prīmus rēx Rōmānōrum. Is erat miles audāx.**

Romulus was the first king of the Romans. He was a bold soldier.

(c) **Cum**, *with*, is attached to the ablative of the first and second personal pronouns: **mēcum**, **tēcum**, **nōbiscum**, **vōbiscum**; but not to the ablative of the third: **cum eō**, **cum eā**, **cum eō**, **cum eīs**.

(d) The pronoun **is** has the gender, number, and case of the noun for which it stands.

**Rēgīna est bona.**  
The queen is good.

**Ea est bona.**  
She is good.

**Cōpiaē rēgīnaē sunt magnaē.**  
The queen's forces are large.

**Cōpiaē eius sunt magnaē.**  
Her forces are large.

**Rēgīnaē cōnsilium dat.**  
He gives advice to the queen.

**Eī cōnsilium dat.**  
He gives advice to her.

**Rēgīnam vidēmus.**  
We see the queen.

**Eam vidēmus.**  
We see her.

**Cum rēgīnā ambulant.**  
They are walking with the queen.

**Cum eā ambulant.**  
They are walking with her.

**Gladium habet.**  
He has the sword.

**Eum habet.**  
He has it.

**Īnsulam videt.**  
He sees the island.

**Eam videt.**  
He sees it.

**Animal vulnerat.**  
He wounds the animal.

**Id vulnerat.**  
He wounds it.

**Castra pōnunt.**  
They pitch the camp.

**Ea pōnunt.**  
They pitch it.

(e) **Is** may be used as an adjective, a weak *this* or *that*, sometimes best translated by *the*.

**Id mare quoque timēbant.**  
They feared this (that) sea also.

**Māter eius adulēscētis erat dea.**  
The mother of this young man was a goddess.



(a) When the possessive adjectives *his, her, its, their* occur in the predicate of the sentence and refer to the subject, they are translated by **suus, sua, suum**.

**Rēx cōpiās suās dūcit.**                      **Captivī ad urbem suam fūgērunt.**  
The king leads his own troops.      The captives fled to their city.

(b) If they do not refer to the subject, *his, her, its* are expressed by the genitive form **eius** (*of him, of her, of it*); *their* is expressed by the genitive forms **eōrum** (*of them, masculine and neuter*) and **eārum** (*of them, feminine*).

**Adulēscēns equum suum habet.**

The young man has his (own) horse.

**Adulēscēns equum eius habet.**

The young man has his (some other young man's) horse.

**Puella cum māt̄re suā ambulat.**

The girl is walking with her (own) mother.

**Puella cum māt̄re eius ambulat.**

The girl is walking with her (some other girl's) mother.

**Puerī librōs suōs habent.**

The boys have their (own) books.

**Puerī librōs eōrum habent.**

The boys have their (other boys') books.

**Puerī librōs eārum habent.**

The boys have their (the girls') books.

A. Complete with the correct form of **is, ea, id** and translate:

1. \_\_\_\_\_ (*That*) puer est malus.      2. \_\_\_\_\_ (*He*) librum nōn habet.
3. Magister \_\_\_\_\_ (*that*) puellam nōn amat quod \_\_\_\_\_ (*she*) nōn labōrat.
4. Magister \_\_\_\_\_ (*these*) servīs pecūniam dat quod \_\_\_\_\_ (*they*) sunt bonī.
5. Ego ad oppidum cum \_\_\_\_\_ (*him*) ambulābam.
6. Ego cum \_\_\_\_\_ (*that*) virō nōn ambulābam.
7. Nōs in oppidō \_\_\_\_\_ (*them*) vidēbāmus.

8. Ego \_\_\_\_\_ (*those*) arma sociō meō dō. 9. Cōpiae \_\_\_\_\_ (*their*) sunt maximae. 10. \_\_\_\_\_ (*This*) miles est fortis. Dux \_\_\_\_\_ (*him*) laudat.

B. *Substitute the correct form of the personal pronoun for the corresponding form of puer :*

1. Puer canem (**canis, canis, m., dog**) habet.
2. Canis puerī est magnus.
3. Pater puerō canem dedit.
4. Canis puerum amat.
5. Canis cum puerō currit (*runs*).
6. Puerī canem habent.
7. Canis puerōrum est magnus.
8. Pater puerīs canem dedit.
9. Canis puerōs amat.
10. Canis cum puerīs currit.

C. *Complete each group of sentences with the correct form of the adjective suus, or with eius or eōrum :*

1. Cupit esse cum amīcīs suīs (*his*). Cupiō esse cum amīcīs suīs (*his*).
2. Cupiunt esse cum amīcīs \_\_\_\_\_ (*their*). Cupimus esse cum amīcīs \_\_\_\_\_ (*their*).
3. Sociō \_\_\_\_\_ (*his*) auxilium dat. Sociō \_\_\_\_\_ (*his*) auxilium dās.
4. Māter liberōs \_\_\_\_\_ (*her*) cūrat. Liberōs \_\_\_\_\_ (*her*) cūrō.
5. Bellum gessērunt cum hostibus \_\_\_\_\_ (*their*). Bellum gessimus cum hostibus \_\_\_\_\_ (*their*).
6. Caput \_\_\_\_\_ (*his*) vulnerāvit. Caput \_\_\_\_\_ (*his*) vulnerāvī.
7. Flōrēs \_\_\_\_\_ (*their*) legēbant. Flōrēs \_\_\_\_\_ (*their*) legēbātis.
8. Captīvōs \_\_\_\_\_ (*their*) nōn trādidērunt. Captīvōs \_\_\_\_\_ (*their*) nōn trādidimus.
9. Uxōrem \_\_\_\_\_ (*his*) amat. Uxōrem \_\_\_\_\_ (*his*) amāmus.
10. Patrī \_\_\_\_\_ (*their*) pārūērunt. Patrī \_\_\_\_\_ (*their*) pārūistī.



In one night, Vulcan fabricated a magnificent suit of armor and a shield for Achilles with master craftsmanship.

D. *Translate:*

1. This king; this kingdom; of this king; of this kingdom.
2. I see that king; they come with that king; he obeys that king.
3. The soldiers of these legions; toward these legions; he leads those legions; (*nom.*) these legions.
4. That camp; the walls of this camp; this building; the walls of that building.
5. In that fleet; of those plans; among these citizens; on behalf of that friend.

E. *Translate:*

1. Tū eī ūtilis saepe fuistī.
2. Ab eō dē periculō Graecōrum audit.
3. Cōnsilium eius eīs nōtum erit.
4. Is mīles audāx Trōiam cum classe nāvigāvit.
5. Rēgnum eius erat īnsulae fīnitimum.
6. Fortēs sumus sed eīs nōn parēs.
7. Interim eī captīvōs trādiderāmus.
8. Prōvincia eōrum ā montibus ad mare pertinet.
9. Audīte eum; cupit vōbīs dīcere dē salūte cīvium.
10. Sociī nostrī multa vulnera sustinuērunt.

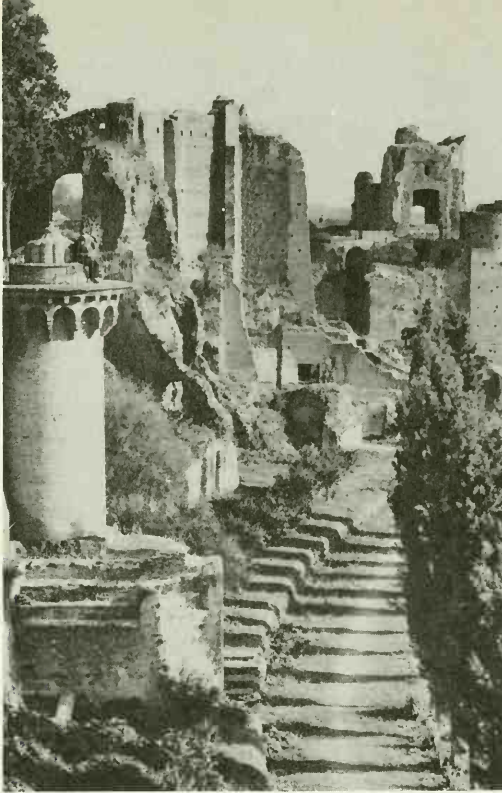
F. *Write in Latin:*

1. He is walking with his daughter.
2. They are walking with her friends.
3. His mother formed a daring plan.
4. Achilles will not be able to remain with that powerful king.
5. Do you know the names of all our allies?
6. This fleet was not like the fleet of the Romans.
7. The king's troops were assembling in that city.
8. While we were making a fire, the enemy approached the citadel.
9. Have you heard about the death of the brave soldier?
10. These heavy weapons are not useful.

socius, sociī, *m.*, ally, comrade  
adulēscēns, adulēscētis,  
(-ium), *m.*, young man  
classis, classis, (-ium), *f.*, fleet  
fīnitimus, -a, -um, neighboring,  
adjacent; fīnitimī, -ōrum,  
*m. pl.*, neighbors  
nōtus, -a, -um, known  
prīmus, -a, -um, first; prīmō,  
adverb, at first  
pertineō, pertinēre, pertinui,  
\_\_\_\_\_, extend, reach, pertain  
(to) with ad + accusative

cupiō, cupere, cupīvī, cupītum,  
wish, desire  
trādō, trādere, trādidī, trāditum,  
hand over, surrender  
conveniō, convenīre, convēnī,  
conventum, come together,  
assemble, with ad or in  
+ accusative  
cōnsilium capere, to form or  
adopt a plan  
interim, adverb, meanwhile  
tamen, adverb, however,  
nevertheless, still

*dative*



Palatine Hill, Rome

# 22

## Future Indicative Active All Conjugations

Dōnec eris fēlīx, multōs numerābis amīcōs;  
Tempora sī fuerint nūbila, sōlus eris.

*As long as you are lucky, you will count many friends;  
When hard times come, you will be alone.*

OVID: TRISTIA 1.9 5-6

167

### Dē Mūciō (Part 1)

Simul atque Lars Porsena iter ad urbem facere coepit,  
Rōmānī arma cēperant. Porsena, postquam Rōmānī pontem  
rūpērunt, castra prope flūmen Tiberim posuit et cum sociīs  
Rōmam obsidēre coepit. Tamen Rōmānī arma nōn dēposuē-  
5 runt. Mox in urbe erat magna inopia frūmentī, et Rōmānī  
maximō in periculō erant.

Tum Gāius Mūcius, adulēscēns audāx, ad patrēs (*senators*) vēnit. “Cupiō, patrēs,” magnā vōce inquit, “castra hostium inīre (*to enter*). In mente cōsilium magnum habeo, sī (*if*) deī mihi auxilium dabunt. Porsenam rēgem numquam vīdī 10 sed eum inveniam, et eum interficiam. Parātus sum ad id perīculum (*attempt*).”

Ubi patrēs veniam (*permission*) dedērunt, Mūcius ad castra hostium statim accēdit. Rēx in mediīs<sup>1</sup> castrīs sedēbat et prope eum scrība (*secretary*) sedēbat. Quod vestīs (*the robe*) 15 scrībae erat similis vestī rēgis, Mūcius scrībam esse rēgem putāvit;<sup>2</sup> is scrībam gladiō necāvit, quamquam rēgem necāre cupīverat.

### Respondē Latīnē :

1. Quandō Rōmānī arma cēperant? 2. Quis Rōmam ob-  
sidēre coepit? 3. Cūr erant Rōmānī maximō in perīculō?
4. Quid fēcit Gāius Mūcius, adulēscēns audāx? 5. Quid  
magnā vōce dīxit? 6. Quod (*What, adj.*) magnum cōsilium  
in mente Mūcius habēbat? 7. Quis in mediīs castrīs sedēbat?
- Quis prope eum sedēbat? 8. Cūr putāvit Mūcius scrībam  
esse rēgem? 9. Quem (*Whom, acc. s.*) necāvit Mūcius?

## 168 FUTURE INDICATIVE ACTIVE<sup>3</sup>

The future indicative active of regular verbs is formed in two ways. The future indicative active of the first and second conjugations is formed by adding to the present stem (*portā-*, *movē-*) :

-bō	-bimus
-bis	-bitis
-bit	-bunt

<sup>1</sup> **Medius** is an adjective agreeing with its noun.

**Mediam in silvam properant.**

They hasten into the middle of the forest (into mid-forest).

<sup>2</sup> The infinitive with a subject coming after a verb of speech or mental activity is translated by a clause introduced by *that*.

Scrībam esse rēgem putāvit. He thought that the secretary was the king.

<sup>3</sup> Review Future Indicative of **sum** and **possum**, Section 146.



## SINGULAR

portābō, I shall carry	movēbō, I shall move
portābis, you will carry	movēbis, you will move
portābit, he will carry	movēbit, he will move

## PLURAL

portābimus, we shall carry	movēbimus, we shall move
portābitis, you will carry	movēbitis, you will move
portābunt, they will carry	movēbunt, they will move

In the third and fourth conjugations the future may be formed by dropping the -ō of the present tense (leaving dūc-, capi-, audi-) and then adding

-am	-ēmus
-ēs	-ētis
-et	-ent

## SINGULAR

I shall lead	I shall take	I shall hear
dūcam	capiam	audiam
dūcēs	capiēs	audiēs
dūcet	capiet	audiet

## PLURAL

dūcēmus	capiēmus	audiēmus
dūcētis	capiētis	audiētis
dūcent	capiant	audient

169

## EXERCISES

A. *Translate:*

1. Iubent; iubēbant; iubēbunt.
2. Petit; petet; petīvit.
3. Erat; erit; poterit.
4. Dīcitis; dīcētis; dīxistis.
5. Rumpet; rumpit; rūpit.
6. Dēfendam; dēfenderam; dēfendēbam.
7. Expellimus; expulimus; expellēmus.
8. Inveniunt; invenient; invēnērunt.
9. Reliquērunt; relinquunt; relinquent.
10. Dubitābās; dubitās; dubitābīs.

B. *Write the following verb forms:*

1. I shall seek; you (s.) will seek; we shall seek.
2. He will hesitate; you (pl.) will hesitate; they will hesitate.
3. We shall defend; they will defend; he will defend.
4. He is sending; he was sending; he will send.
5. They are climbing; they were climbing; they will climb.
6. They are shouting; they were shouting; they will shout.
7. They are fleeing; they were fleeing; they will flee.
8. I am; I am able; I am breaking.
9. He was; he was able; he was finding.
10. We shall be; we shall be able; we shall know.

C. *Write the following verbs in the present, imperfect and future indicative active in the same person and number:*

Misit.	Dēspērāvimus.
Ēgērunt.	Rapuērunt.
Cūrāvit.	Cōstituistī.
Scīvī.	Iussērunt.
Dēbuit.	Dixistis.

D. *Translate:*

1. Hostēs in mediīs silvīs vīdērunt; itaque arma capere coepērunt.
2. Nōlīte urbem eōrum obsidēre; urbem suam fortiter dēfendent.
3. Putō tē esse pulchram; sedē, Iūlia, mēcum, nōn cum eō.
4. Magnam partem cōpiārum mēcum mediam in prōvinciam dūcam.
5. Rōmānī ad id perīculum erunt parātī neque arma dēpōnent.
6. Pōnite, mīlitēs, ea arma in mediīs castrīs; ibi ea relinquite.
7. Putō cōnsilium eius esse bonum; cōnsilium suum nōn dēpōnet.
8. Oppidum eōrum occupāmus; oppidum nostrum occupābunt.
9. Est prīmus Graecōrum; eōs ad victōriam dūcere poterit.
10. Hostēs ad castra accēdunt; magnā vōce clāmant.

E. Write in Latin:

1. We shall make peace with them.
2. He is ready for this attempt (**periculum**).
3. Take up arms, citizens; do not lay them down.
4. We shall be friendly not (**neque**) hostile to them.
5. They will leave their arms in the middle of the camp.
6. The ships have begun to blockade the province.
7. We shall be able to take the city by siege; we shall not hesitate.
8. There is an island in the middle of the river; it is not large.
9. He is shouting in a loud voice; I do not dare to approach him.
10. As soon as Porsena had approached the camp, the Romans took up arms.

170

VOCABULARY

pāx, pācis, *f.*, peace; pācem

facere, to make peace

vōx, vōcis, *f.*, voice; magnā

vōce, in a loud voice

medius, media, medium, middle  
of, mid

parātus, -a, -um, ready, *with*  
ad, ready for

putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, think

sedeō, sedēre, sēdī, sessum,  
be seated, sit

obsideō, obsidēre, obsēdī,

obsessum, besiege,  
blockade

accēdō, accēdere, accessī,

accessum, come to, draw near,  
approach *with ad + accusative*

dēpōnō, dēpōnere, dēposuī,

dēpositum, lay down, put  
down; arma dēpōnere, to lay  
down arms

arma capere, to take up arms

coepī, *used in perfect tenses only*,  
began

171

WORD STUDY

Many Latin nouns of the third declension are formed by adding **-iō** (*gen. -iōnis*) to the stem of verbs.

**-iō, -iōnis** = *act or result of act*

Most often such nouns are formed on the supine stem:

LATIN VERB	LATIN NOUN	ENGLISH NOUN
mittō (missum)	missiō, missiōnis	mission
nāvigō (nāvigātum)	nāvigātiō, nāvigātiōnis	navigation
sedeō (sessum)	sessiō, sessiōnis	session
stō (statum)	statiō, statiōnis	station

The English noun ends in *-sion* when the supine of the Latin verb ends in **-sum**. The English noun ends in *-tion* when the supine of the Latin verb ends in **-tum**.

Form English derivatives from the supine stem of the following verbs and give the meaning of the derivatives:

ascendō	compleō	dicō	habitō	retineō
audiō	dēspērō	expellō	petō	videō

Sometimes such nouns are formed on the present stem:

legō	legiō, legiōnis	legion
------	-----------------	--------

**Legiō** originally meant *a choosing*. A legion was the largest unit of a Roman army.

Sometimes two Latin nouns are formed on the same verb, one on the supine stem and one on the present stem:

obsideō	obsidiō, obsidiōnis	
obsessum	obsessiō, obsessiōnis <sup>4</sup>	obsession

Nouns ending in **-iō, -iōnis**, are regularly feminine.

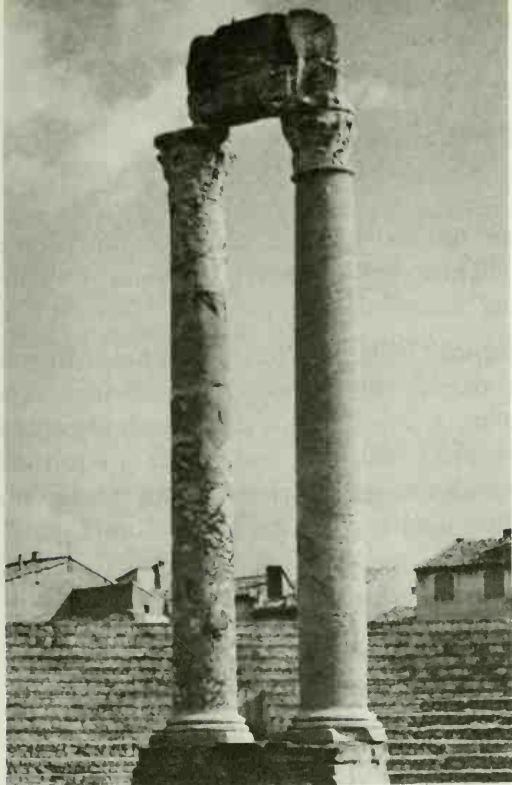
<sup>4</sup> **obsidiō** and **obsessiō** have practically the same meaning. **Obsidiō** is the more common form.



The Pantheon is one of the most perfect and best preserved monuments of Roman antiquity.

Mt. Vesuvius in the background looms high above the ruins of the Civil Forum in Pompeii, Italy.





*Columns in the  
Roman theater,  
Arles, France*

# 23

## Future Perfect Indicative Active Subordinate Clauses with *sī, nisi, cum*

Cēnābis bene, mī Fabulle, apud mē  
paucīs, si tibi dī favent, diēbus,  
sī tēcum attuleris bonam atque magnam  
cēnam, nōn sine candidā puellā  
et vīnō et sale et omnibus cachinnīs.

CATULLUS 13

*You will dine well, Fabullus mine,  
At my house in a few days' time,  
If the gods are favoring  
And if you don't forget to bring  
The food, a pretty girl and wine and wit  
And laughter gay, all kinds of it.*



Post mortem scribae militēs Etrūscī Mūcium ad rēgem trāxērunt (*dragged*). “Quis es?” rogāvit Porsena. “Cūr scribam meum necāvisti?”

- “Rōmānus sum,” inquit Mūcius, “cīvis, Gāius Mūcius  
 5 nōmine. Ego hostem patriae meae necāre cupiēbam. Tū audī mē. Ego nōn sōlus (*alone*) sum. Multī adulēscentēs Rōmānī tē necāre temptābunt (*will try*), nisi cōpiās et equitum et peditum ab urbe remōveris et patriam meam obsidiōne liberāveris. Sī ex fīnibus nostrīs discesseris, incolumis eris.”  
 10 “Militēs meī,” inquit rēx, “tē vīvum (*alive*) incendēt, nisi mihi nōmina adulēscentium nārrāveris.”

“Nōn facile est Rōmānum terrēre,” respondit Mūcius. “Nōmina tibi nōn nārrābō. Rōmānī corpora sua nōn amant. Spectā!”

- 15 Prope rēgem in ārā erat ignis. Mūcius statim dextram manum (*right hand*) ignī iniēcit (*thrust into the fire*). Rēx virtūte Rōmānī attonitus (*thunder-struck*) erat. “Tū es,” inquit, “vir fortis; tē incolumem domum (*home*) dīmittam.”

- Postquam Mūcius discessit, Porsena lēgātōs Rōmam dē  
 20 pāce (*to treat for peace*) mīsīt. Rōmānī rēgī magnum numerum obsidum dedērunt, et rēx cum Rōmānīs pācem fēcīt.

Posteā (*Thereafter*) Rōmānī Mūcium Scaevolam (*Lefty*) appellābant quod manum dextram amīserat.

### Respondē Latīnē :

1. Cūr necāvit Mūcius scribam rēgis? 2. Estne Mūcius sōlus? 3. Quōmodo (*How*) erit incolumis Porsena? 4. Incendentne Mūcium militēs rēgis? 5. Num est facile Rōmānum terrēre? 6. Ubi erat ignis? 7. Quid fēcīt Mūcius? 8. Quid dīxit rēx dē Mūciō? 9. Quōs dedērunt rēgī Rōmānī? 10. Cūr appellābant Mūcium Scaevolam?

173 From the perfect stem the perfect indicative active, the pluperfect indicative active and the future perfect indicative active are formed by rules that hold good for all verbs.

<i>Perfect</i>	perfect stem + <i>ī</i>	<i>portāvī</i>
<i>Pluperfect</i>	perfect stem + <i>eram</i>	<i>portāveram</i>
<i>Future Perfect</i>	perfect stem + <i>erō</i>	<i>portāverō</i>

## 174 FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE

### SINGULAR

*portāverō*, I shall have carried  
*portāveris*, you will have carried  
*portāverit*, he will have carried

### PLURAL

*portāverimus*, we shall have carried  
*portāveritis*, you will have carried  
*portāverint*, they will have carried

### SINGULAR

I shall	I shall	I shall	I shall
have moved	have led	have taken	have heard
<i>mōverō</i>	<i>dūxerō</i>	<i>cēperō</i>	<i>audīverō</i>
<i>mōveris</i>	<i>dūxeris</i>	<i>cēperis</i>	<i>audīveris</i>
<i>mōverit</i>	<i>dūxerit</i>	<i>cēperit</i>	<i>audīverit</i>

### PLURAL

<i>mōverimus</i>	<i>dūxerimus</i>	<i>cēperimus</i>	<i>audīverimus</i>
<i>mōveritis</i>	<i>dūxeritis</i>	<i>cēperitis</i>	<i>audīveritis</i>
<i>mōverint</i>	<i>dūxerint</i>	<i>cēperint</i>	<i>audīverint</i>

I shall have been

*fuerō*  
*fueris*  
*fuerit*

*fuerimus*  
*fueritis*  
*fuerint*

I shall have been able

*potuerō*  
*potueris*  
*potuerit*

*potuerimus*  
*potueritis*  
*potuerint*

WITH SĪ (IF), NISI (UNLESS), CUM (WHEN)

**Sī mihi pecūniam dederis, ad urbem properābō.**

If (in the future) you give me the money,  
 I (in the future) shall hasten to the city.

In this sentence, the act of giving is future, and the act of hastening is future; the act of giving is completed before the act of hastening. In a complex sentence in which both acts refer to the future, if the act of the subordinate clause is completed before the act of the principal clause, the future perfect is used in the subordinate clause and the future in the principal clause.

**Tē, sī in urbe eris, vidēbō.**

I shall see you (in the future),  
 if you are in the city (in the future).

In this sentence, the act of being in the city is future, and the act of seeing is future; but here the two acts go on at the same time. In a complex sentence in which both acts refer to the future, if the two acts go on at the same time, the future is used in both clauses.

A. *Give the tense of each verb and translate:*

- |                |               |              |
|----------------|---------------|--------------|
| 1. Portāverit. | 4. Movēbat.   | 7. Dūximus.  |
| 2. Portāvit.   | 5. Movet.     | 8. Capiēmus. |
| 3. Movēbit.    | 6. Dūxerāmus. | 9. Capimus.  |

B. *Give the Latin:*

- |                        |                             |
|------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. They will give.     | 6. You (s.) will have sent. |
| 2. They were giving.   | 7. I shall make.            |
| 3. We had had.         | 8. I have made.             |
| 4. We have.            | 9. He is coming.            |
| 5. You (s.) will send. | 10. He will come.           |

C. *Examine each of the following sentences with regard to the time relationship between the subordinate and the main clause. Give the missing verb in the future or future perfect tense as required:*

1. Sī mēcum \_\_\_\_\_ (you [s.] are), lactus erō.
2. Cum ambulāre \_\_\_\_\_ (you [s.] are able), mediam in silvam ambulābimus.
3. Nisi prope arēnam \_\_\_\_\_ (we sit), pugnās gladiātōrum spectāre nōn poterimus.
4. Sī pācem \_\_\_\_\_ (they make), Porsena obsidēs liberābit.
5. Cum arma \_\_\_\_\_ (they have laid aside), rēx cōpiās reducet.
6. Cum \_\_\_\_\_ (we are) Rōmae [in Rome], flūmen Tiberim vidēbimus.
7. Nisi nōmina adulēscentium \_\_\_\_\_ (he tells), milītēs Mūcium interficient.
8. Cum rēgem \_\_\_\_\_ (he sees), sciet eum esse Porsenam.
9. Sī \_\_\_\_\_ (he comes), novum cōsiliū capiēmus.
10. Sī pontem \_\_\_\_\_ (I break down), equī equitēs trāsportāre nōn poterunt.



D. *Translate:*

1. Incendite castra hostium.
2. Eritne ignis in ārā?
3. Nōn est facile Rōmānōs terrēre.
4. Num nārrābit nōmina adulēscēntium? Minimē.
5. Vōs incolumēs dīmīttam sī mihi pārueritis.
6. Nōlī Rōmā discēdere nisi tē iusserimus.
7. Sī vōs eritis laetī, nōs quoque erimus laetī.
8. Nisi cīvēs obsidēs dederint, Porsena mūrōs urbis oppugnābit.
9. Sī rēx lēgātōs dē pāce mīserit, Rōmānī pācem facient.
10. Peditēs quī (*who*) Rōmam properant urbem obsidiōne et perīculō liberābunt.

E. *Write in Latin:*

1. Free our city from blockade.
2. We shall let them all go.
3. If you leave our territories, you will be safe.
4. Do not abandon us; do not burn our towns.
5. If you are with us, we shall be happy.
6. When Porsena sends envoys to Rome, we shall make peace.
7. Will you tell me the names of the young men?
8. He will move his camp when we order<sup>1</sup> him to depart.
9. I shall place a fire on the altar unless you forbid me.
10. This king was freeing a great number of hostages.

## SUPPLEMENTARY EXERCISE

Synopsis in the indicative active, third person plural of:  
**interficiō, interficere, interfēcī, interfectum**

<i>Present</i>	<b>interficiunt</b>
<i>Imperfect</i>	<b>interficiēbant</b>
<i>Future</i>	<b>interficiēnt</b>
<i>Perfect</i>	<b>interfēcērunt</b>
<i>Pluperfect</i>	<b>interfēcērant</b>
<i>Future Perfect</i>	<b>interfēcērint</b>

<sup>1</sup> Remember that **iubeō**, *order*, is used with the infinitive.

When one gives all tenses of a verb in one person and number, he is said to give a synopsis (a résumé or summary) of the verb. The tenses of the indicative in synopsis are given in the order above.

*Including the principal parts, write a synopsis, with translations, of the indicative active of:*

**capiō** in the first person singular.

**expellō** in the third person singular.

<b>āra</b> , -ae, <i>f.</i> , altar	<b>incolumis</b> , <b>incolumis</b> , <b>incolume</b> , safe, unharmed
<b>lēgātus</b> , -ī, <i>m.</i> , envoy, ambassador; staff-officer	<b>liberō</b> , -āre, -āvi, -ātum, set free; with ablative, free from
<b>numerus</b> , -ī, <i>m.</i> , number	<b>nārrō</b> , -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tell, relate
<b>eques</b> , <b>equitis</b> , <i>m.</i> , horseman, knight; <i>pl.</i> , cavalry	<b>dīmittō</b> , <b>dīmittere</b> , <b>dīmīsī</b> , <b>dīmissum</b> , send away, dismiss, let go
<b>obses</b> , <b>obsidis</b> , <i>m.</i> and <i>f.</i> , hostage	<b>discēdō</b> , <b>discēdere</b> , <b>discessī</b> , <b>discessum</b> , depart, withdraw; with <b>ab</b> or <b>ex</b> + ablative, withdraw from
<b>obsidiō</b> , <b>obsidiōnis</b> , <i>f.</i> , siege, blockade	
<b>pedes</b> , <b>peditis</b> , <i>m.</i> , foot soldier; <i>pl.</i> , infantry	
<b>facilis</b> , <b>facilis</b> , <b>facile</b> , easy	

A hostage is a person surrendered by one party to another party as a pledge or guarantee.

To leave a place in the sense of to go away from a place is expressed by **discēdere** with **ab** or **ex** and the ablative. To leave a thing behind is expressed by **relinquere**: **Arma in castris reliquērunt**, They left their arms in the camp.

With **liberāre**, to free, the ablative without a preposition is the usual construction: **Urbem periculō liberat**, He frees the city from danger.





## 178 THE DRESS OF A ROMAN WOMAN

In ancient Rome men and women dressed more nearly alike than they do today.

The clothing of a young Roman girl differed little from that of her young brother. She wore a short garment under a tunic, and sandals or shoes; her long hair fell to her shoulders.

A Roman lady had three types of garments, a *tunica*, a *stola*, and a *palla*. Indoors she wore an undergarment and a tunic, very much like that of a man. Her formal dress, corresponding to the toga of a man, was the *stola*. This resembled the tunic, but was fuller and more elaborate. At her waist she wore a *zona* or belt. From the top to the belt the *stola* was open at the sides; the front and back pieces were fastened at the shoulders with clasps. The *stola* was bloused at the waist and made to overhang enough to allow the

bottom of the dress just to clear the ground. The garment often had borders at top and bottom, and might have sleeves.

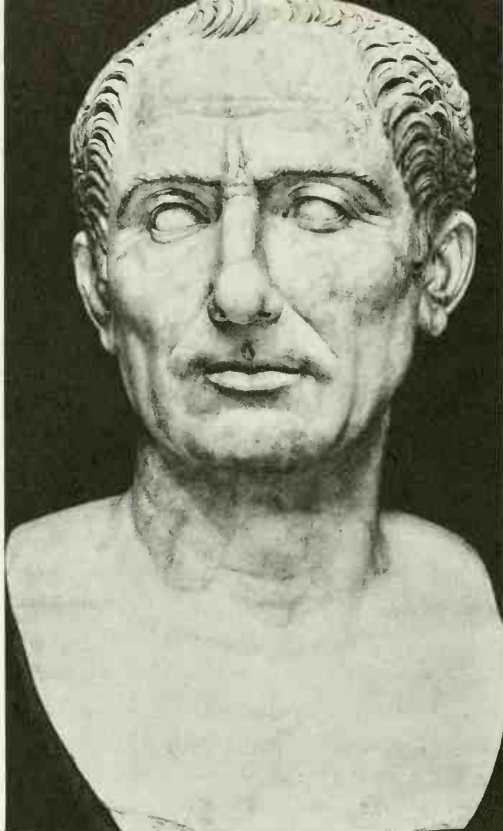
When going out of doors the Roman lady wore a *palla*, which was a square piece of cloth, over the *stola*. The *palla* "was worn over the left shoulder, drawn across the back, then brought over or under the right shoulder and round the body" (Treble and King, *Everyday Life in Rome*). The *palla* could also be drawn over the head, just like the toga.

Materials for costumes varied with the times and the ability of the customer to buy. Wool in plenty was produced in Italy, linen was home-grown or brought from Egypt, cotton came from the East, and silk, a rare luxury, from China.

White was the most common color, but many bright hues were available. Crimson and violet dyes were obtained from an Italian shellfish, and from the eastern end of the Mediterranean was imported the most famous of dyes, Tyrian purple.

Women normally did not wear hats, but they paid special attention to their hair, which they wore long. They could do up their hair in countless styles, dye it, and pile it high with artificial hair.

Women wore sandals and shoes like those of men; the material was usually finer and color helped to brighten them. Women were fond of many kinds of accessories, jewels of many types, handkerchiefs, gloves, fans, and parasols.



*Bust of Julius  
Caesar, Museo  
Nazionale, Naples*

# 24

## Demonstrative Pronouns; Ablative of Manner

Thāis habet nigrōs, niveōs Laecānia dentēs.  
Quae ratiō est? Ēmptōs haec habet, illa suōs.

MARTIAL 5.43

*Thais' teeth are sooty black,  
Laecania's white as snow;  
You ask me what the reason is;  
I'll gladly let you know.  
The former's teeth grew in her head  
And that's the reason why.  
As for the latter's snowy teeth,  
Well, they're the kind you buy.*

- Viātor. Quis in hāc domō (*house*)<sup>1</sup> habitat?
- Cīvis. Pompeius, dux magnus, hieme in hāc domō magnā habitat et Caesar in illā domō habitat.
- Viātor. Ubi sunt hī virī, Pompeius et Caesar?
- Cīvis. Hic est in Galliā; ille est Rōmae (*in Rome*). 5
- Viātor. Habetne Caesar filiōs et filiās?
- Cīvis. Caesar filium nōn habet sed filiam, Iūliam nōmine. Illa est uxor Pompeiī.
- Viātor. Spectā illōs duōs (*two*) puerōs parvōs. Eī lacrimant (*are crying*). 10
- Cīvis. Venī mēcum et eīs auxilium dabimus. Cūr, puerī, lacrimātis?
- Puer magnus. Nōs, vir bone, viam nōn scīmus.
- Cīvis. Nōlīte, puerī, lacrimāre. Ego viam vōbīs mōnstrābō. Ubi habitātis? 15
- Puer magnus. Nōs cum avō nostrō habitāmus. Avus noster est mercātor et prope Forum habitat.
- Cīvis. Veniēsne, viātor, nōbīscum? Ego hunc puerum dūcam, sed illum puerum portābō, quod ille est parvus et dēfessus. 20
- Viātor. Ego tēcum laetē (*gladly*) veniam, quod ego quoque viās Rōmae nōn sciō. Domus mea in Siciliā est.
- Cīvis. Quandō in urbem vēnistī?
- Viātor. Autumnō ā Siciliā nāvigāvī; magnam partem 25 hiemis in clārīs urbibus Graeciae eram; prīmō vēre mare ad Italiam trānsīī (*I crossed*). Ante aestātem Rōmā discēdam et Viā Appiā ad villam (*country-house*) patris mei properābō. Ibi tōtam aestātem manēbō. Ante autumnum 30 ad Siciliam cum celeritāte nāvigābō.
- Cīvis. Haec est domus mea. Duōs puerōs servō dabō. Servus eōs ad avum dūcet. Inī (*Enter*), viātor, domum meam.

<sup>1</sup> Domus is a feminine noun.



As the frontiers of the Roman Empire expanded, its extensive boundaries became increasingly open to possible attack. In some cases walls were constructed and permanently patrolled by troops; Hadrian's wall across the middle of Great Britain is an example. More commonly, strategically located forts, called *castella*, were built. These were permanent installations built of stone, with cisterns and granaries and even baths. Communications roads between forts and major bases of operation and supply were kept constantly open and in good repair.

### Respondē Latīnē :

1. Quis habitat in hāc domō? Quis in illā?
2. Ubi est Pompeius?
3. Cuius uxor est filia Caesaris?
4. Cūr magnā vōce lacrimant puerī?
5. Ubi habitant puerī?
6. Quem (*acc. s.*) dūcet cīvis?
7. Cūr portābit cīvis illum puerum?
8. Ubi est domus viātōris?
9. Quandō vēnit viātor ad Italiam?
10. Quandō Rōmā discēdet? Quandō nāvigābit ad Siciliam?

The most common Latin demonstrative pronouns are:

**hic, haec, hoc,** this  
**ille, illa, illud,** that  
**is, ea, id,** this, that, the

**Hic** and **ille** are declined as follows:

**Hic, this**

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>hic</b>	<b>haec</b>	<b>hoc</b>	<b>hī</b>	<b>hae</b>	<b>haec</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>huius</b>	<b>huius</b>	<b>huius</b>	<b>hōrum</b>	<b>hārum</b>	<b>hōrum</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>huic</b>	<b>huic</b>	<b>huic</b>	<b>hīs</b>	<b>hīs</b>	<b>hīs</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>hunc</b>	<b>hanc</b>	<b>hoc</b>	<b>hōs</b>	<b>hās</b>	<b>haec</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>hōc</b>	<b>hāc</b>	<b>hōc</b>	<b>hīs</b>	<b>hīs</b>	<b>hīs</b>

**Ille, that**

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>ille</b>	<b>illa</b>	<b>illud</b>	<b>illī</b>	<b>illae</b>	<b>illa</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>illius</b>	<b>illius</b>	<b>illius</b>	<b>illōrum</b>	<b>illārum</b>	<b>illōrum</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>illī</b>	<b>illī</b>	<b>illī</b>	<b>illis</b>	<b>illis</b>	<b>illis</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>illum</b>	<b>illam</b>	<b>illud</b>	<b>illōs</b>	<b>illās</b>	<b>illa</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>illō</b>	<b>illā</b>	<b>illō</b>	<b>illis</b>	<b>illis</b>	<b>illis</b>

**Hic** means *this*; **ille** means *that*. **Is** means *this* or *that* but is unemphatic. Sometimes it may be translated by the English definite article *the*. It is often used as the antecedent of a relative pronoun.

**Hic, ille,** and **is** may be used either as pronouns or adjectives.

**Hic est liber meus.**

This is my book.

**Hic liber est meus.**

This book is mine.

**Illud erat proelium grave.**

That was a severe battle.

**Illud proelium erat grave.**

That battle was severe.

**Eum vidī.**

I have seen him.

**Eum ducem vidī.**

I have seen this (*or that*) leader.



*This meaning these things is usually expressed by the neuter plural haec. Haec is used thus in the nominative and accusative only.*

**Haec audiunt.** They hear this (these things).  
**Nōnne haec scit?** He knows this (these things), doesn't he?

**Hic . . . ille** may express *the latter . . . the former*.

**Pompeius et Caesar erant clārī imperātōrēs; hic in Galliā bellum gessit, ille in Asiā.**

Pompey and Caesar were famous generals; the latter waged war in Gaul, the former in Asia.

**Horātius et Mūcius erant fortēs; ille sōlus pontem dēfendēbat, hic scribam rēgis interfēcit.**

Both Horatius and Mucius were brave; the former defended a bridge alone, the latter killed a king's secretary.

**Ille** may mark a change of subject.

**Bonus vir parvum puerum portābit; ille est dēfessus.**

A good man will carry the little boy; he (*the little boy*) is tired.

## 181

## ABLATIVE OF MANNER

The manner in which an action is performed is expressed by a noun in the ablative case preceded by the preposition **cum**. If the noun is modified by an adjective, **cum** is usually omitted.

**Ad Siciliam cum celeritāte nāvigābō.**

I shall sail to Sicily swiftly (with speed).

**Magnā vōce clāmāvit.**

He cried out in a loud voice.

**Peditēs magnā (cum) virtūte pugnābant.**

The infantry fought with great valor.

A. Complete with the correct form of **hic**, **ille**, or **is** as indicated:

1. (**hic**) \_\_\_\_\_ avum; \_\_\_\_\_ avō (*dat.*); \_\_\_\_\_ avōs
2. (**ille**) \_\_\_\_\_ mercātōris; \_\_\_\_\_ mercātōrēs (*nom.*);  
\_\_\_\_\_ mercātōribus
3. (**hic**) \_\_\_\_\_ vēre; \_\_\_\_\_ vēr; \_\_\_\_\_ vēris
4. (**is**) \_\_\_\_\_ equitum; \_\_\_\_\_ puerīs; \_\_\_\_\_ mulierem
5. (**ille**) \_\_\_\_\_ pāstor; \_\_\_\_\_ rēgnum; \_\_\_\_\_ frātrēs (*acc.*)
6. (**hic**) \_\_\_\_\_ virginis; \_\_\_\_\_ flūminis; \_\_\_\_\_ militem
7. (**is**) \_\_\_\_\_ rīpae (*pl.*); \_\_\_\_\_ aedificia; \_\_\_\_\_ populō (*dat.*)
8. (**ille**) \_\_\_\_\_ magistrī (*pl.*); \_\_\_\_\_ castrōrum;  
\_\_\_\_\_ mūrō (*abl.*)
9. (**hic**) \_\_\_\_\_ avus; \_\_\_\_\_ īnsulam; \_\_\_\_\_ peditī
10. (**hic**) \_\_\_\_\_ legiō; \_\_\_\_\_ legiōnī; \_\_\_\_\_ legiōnem

## B. Change all singular forms to plural:

1. Hoc oppidum vidēbis.    2. Huic puerō librum dedī.
3. Rīpa huius flūminis est alta.    4. Hanc classem coēgit.
5. Hunc peditem mīseram.

## C. Change all plural forms to singular:

1. Viātōrēs viās sciunt.    2. Mittite ad nōs illōs lēgātōs.
3. Illōs puerōs portāre nōn possumus.    4. Fīliae illārum  
mulierum sunt pulchrae.    5. Illa perīcula nōn timēbunt.

## D. Translate:

1. Hic viātor est miser; ille est laetus.
2. Illud proelium erat ācre.
3. Huic milītī pecūniam dedit.
4. Hae erant causae (*the reasons*) illīus bellī gravis.
5. Prīmō vēre ad illam īnsulam nāvigābimus.
6. Avus eius milītēs ad oppidum accēdere iussit; illī nōn  
dubitāvērunt.
7. Hī milites arma dēpōnere coepērunt.
8. Hieme hae cōpiae bellum nōn gessērunt.
9. Magnum numerum nāvium aestāte cōgēmus.
10. Prohibēbimus illōs viātōrēs ad montem pervenīre.

E. *Write in Latin:*

1. Those ships will carry grain to our allies.
2. These buildings are like the buildings of the Gauls.
3. In this part of the river are many bridges.
4. Brave soldiers will defend that bridge.
5. At the beginning of spring I shall see my grandfather.
6. You will not prevent me from seeing him.
7. The officer will announce the victory to that general.
8. The little boys sought help from the good citizen; he gave them help.
9. If this little boy is unhappy, I shall take (*lead*) him to his mother.
10. We saw a cavalryman and an infantryman; the latter was a Roman, the former a Gaul.

**autumnus**, -ī, *m.*, autumn;

**autumnō**, in autumn

**avus**, avī, *m.*, grandfather

**aestās**, aestātis, *f.*, summer;

**aestāte**, in summer

**celeritās**, celeritātis, *f.*,

swiftness, speed

**hiems**, hiemis, *f.*, winter;

**hieme**, in winter

**mercātor**, mercātōris, *m.*, trader,  
merchant

**vēr**, vēris, *n.*, spring; **prīmum**

**vēr**, **prīmī vēris**, the beginning

of spring; **prīmō vēre**, at the

beginning of spring, in early  
spring

**viātor**, viātōris, *m.*, traveler

**clārus**, -a, -um, clear, bright;  
famous

**dēfessus**, -a, -um, weary, tired

**quandō**, *interrogative adverb*, ?  
when, at what time

The mural represents a Pompeian dinner party in the garden of a wealthy citizen of the 1st century A.D., the details based on archaeological evidence.



## REVIEW LESSON FOUR

### I.

### Vocabulary

- A. *Give the genitive singular, gender and meaning of these nouns:*

adulēscēns	celeritās	hostis	nāvis	pōns
aestās	cīvis	ignis	nox	socius
animal	classis	lēgātus	numerus	tēlum
āra	collis	mare	obses	urbs
arx	eques	mēns	obsidiō	vēr
autumnus	fīnis	mercātor	pars	viātor
avus	fīnitimī (pl.)	mōns	pāx	vōx
caedēs	hiems	mors	pedes	

- B. *Give the principal parts and meaning of these verbs:*

accēdō	dēpōnō	nārrō	rumpō
conveniō	dīmīttō	observeō	sedeō
cupiō	discēdō	pertineō	sustineō
dēfendō	liberō	putō	trādō

- C. *Give the nominative singular feminine and neuter and also the meaning of these adjectives:*

ācer	facilis	medius	potēns
amīcus	fīnitimus	nōtus	prīmus
audāx	fortis	omnis	proximus
clārus	gravis	pār	similis
dēfessus	incolumis	parātus	ūtilis
dissimilis	inimīcus	periculōsus	

- D. *Give the meaning of these words and phrases:*

aestāte	diū	prīmō
arma capere	hieme	prīmō vĕre
arma dēpōnere	interim	prīmum vĕr
autumnō	magnā vōce	quandō
coepī	nāvis longa	tamen
cōnsilium capere	pācem facere	

- E. *Give a Latin word with opposite meaning:*

**magnus . . . parvus    ā, ab . . . ad.**

aestās	cōpia	frāter	multī	salūs
aequus	cum	inveniō	pāx	similis
amīcus	eques	miser	rogō	stō

## II.

## Forms and Syntax

- A. *Decline is puer, haec nox, illud animal.*
- B. *Conjugate in the future tense nārrō, sedeō, iaciō.*
- C. *Conjugate in the future perfect tense dēfendō, liberō, sum.*
- D. *Give synopses of these verbs with translations: rumpō, 3rd person singular; obsideō, 2nd person plural; possum, 3rd person plural.*
- E. *Give the indicated form:*
- |                                   |   |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| 1. <i>Dat. sing.</i>              | hic lēgātus, fortis mīles,<br>audāx nauta           |
| 2. <i>Abl. sing.</i>              | inimīca soror, parvum<br>animal, classis nostra     |
| 3. <i>Nom. pl.</i>                | ille mōns altus, id grave<br>tēlum, hic magnus pōns |
| 4. <i>Gen. pl.</i>                | ācre proelium, eques<br>potēns, haec urbs pulchra   |
| 5. <i>Acc. pl.</i>                | socius incolumis, civis<br>nōtus, viātor dēfessus   |
| 6. <i>Present, 1st pl.</i>        | putō, iubeō, trādō                                  |
| 7. <i>Perfect, 2nd pl.</i>        | sum, dīmittō, dēpōnō                                |
| 8. <i>Future Perfect, 2nd pl.</i> | cupiō, capiō, conveniō                              |
- F. *Complete these sentences by filling in the blanks:*
1. Certain adjectives such as amīcus, similis, pār require the \_\_\_\_\_ case to complete their meanings.
  2. I-stem neuter nouns of the third declension are those which end in \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_, and \_\_\_\_\_.
  3. The genitive plural ending for all i-stem nouns is \_\_\_\_\_.
  4. The accusative plural ending of masculine and feminine i-stem nouns may be \_\_\_\_\_ or \_\_\_\_\_.
  5. The ablative singular ending of i-stem neuter nouns is \_\_\_\_\_; the nominative and accusative plural ending is \_\_\_\_\_.
  6. The Latin first person pronoun is \_\_\_\_\_, the second person pronoun is \_\_\_\_\_ and the third person pronoun is \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_.

7. When the possessive adjectives *his, her, its, their* occur in the predicate and refer to the subject of the sentence, they are translated by the adjective suus, sua, suum. When they do not refer to the subject, *his, her, its* are expressed by the pronoun is and *their* by the pronouns ei (*masculine*) and ea (*feminine*).
8. The present stem is found by dropping re from the verba. On this stem, with some changes in the stem vowel, three tenses are formed: present, imperfect, and future.
9. The perfect stem is found by dropping re from the verba. On this stem three tenses of the active voice are formed: perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect.
10. If the act of the principal clause is future and the act of the subordinate clause is future and has preceded the act of the principal clause in time, the verb of the subordinate clause is expressed by the pluperfect tense.

### III.

#### Translation

##### A. Translate the Latin sentences:

1. In mediā ārā ignis erat; cīvēs servōs animal parvum in ignī pōnere iusserant.
2. Prīmō vĕre agricolae arābunt et autumnō frūmentum ad urbem mittent.
3. Nāvēs longae sunt dissimilēs nāvibus parvīs quae sunt in flūmine nostrō.
4. Horātius mīlitēs pontem rumpere iussit et sōlus in hostēs tēla gravia iēcit.
5. "Cīvis Rōmānus sum," magnā vōce Mūcius rēgī inquit, "neque mortem timeō!"
6. Manē mēcum hāc aestāte; nōlī discēdere ab urbe cum eō.
7. Ille pedes nōbīs haec nārrāvit; irātī erāmus neque eī respondimus.
8. Rōmānī fīnitimīs suīs nōtī erant; fīnitimī propter magnam virtūtem eōrum timēbant.





Bronze sculpture of the Imperial period. Statue of a boy who assisted at religious ceremonies, a *Camillus*.

9. Sī obsidēs nostrōs liberāveritis, pācem vōbīscum faciēmus. Num ācre proelium cupitis?
  10. Dux et lēgātus virīs suīs dicēbant. Hic dē periculō bellī monēbat et ille virtūtem virōrum fortium laudābat.
- B. *Complete the following sentences by translating the English word or phrase:*
1. Potestās \_\_\_\_\_ (*of the enemy*) est magna sed fortiter pugnābimus.
  2. \_\_\_\_\_ (*With a fierce battle*) Rōmānī fīnitimōs suōs superāverant.
  3. Obsidēs \_\_\_\_\_ (*with great speed*) ad flūmen ambulāvērunt.
  4. Puer \_\_\_\_\_ (*to his brother*) inimīcus erat. Cum mātrem suā manēre cupiēbat.

5. Dedēruntnē \_\_\_\_\_ (*him*) Rōmānī magnum numerum obsidum?
6. In \_\_\_\_\_ (*the warship*) et equitēs et peditēs vīdimus.
7. Haec sagitta est gravis neque parvus puer \_\_\_\_\_ (*it*) portāre potest.
8. Obsidēte castra \_\_\_\_\_ (*their*) magnā cum virtūte.
9. \_\_\_\_\_ (*That weary traveler*) prope mūrū sedēbat.
10. Nisi auxilium ad sociōs suōs \_\_\_\_\_ (*they send*), oppida dēfendere nōn poterunt.
11. Nōmen \_\_\_\_\_ (*of that young man*) est Lūcius.
12. Pontem \_\_\_\_\_ (*with fire and sword*) oppugnant.
13. Haec animālia sunt amīca \_\_\_\_\_ (*to all women and girls*).
14. \_\_\_\_\_ (*an easy victory*) nōn habēbimus.
15. Servus in \_\_\_\_\_ (*the middle of the field*) labōrābat.

#### IV. Derivatives and Word Study

A. *Using your Latin vocabulary, explain the italicized words in these sentences:*

1. A meeting was called, and the citizens openly protested the *acrid* odor as a public nuisance. 2. We all regret the *inimical* relations between those two branches of our family. 3. Ability to read rapidly *facilitates* progress in college courses. 4. Both Greeks and Romans considered their gods *omnipotent* and *immortal*. 5. Its *proximity* to the superhighway has increased the value of that property considerably. 6. Few of your acquaintances will understand your registering as a *pacifist*. 7. The members will *convene* before noon. 8. His *cupidity* has alienated his former friends. 9. The *urban* population of that section of the country has doubled in twenty years. 10. The doctor criticized her *sedentary* habits and prescribed a program of regular exercise.

B. *Indicate the prefix, root and suffix in these words. Use the word in a sentence.*

convocation      invisible      remission      inaccessible

## V. Roman History and Mythology

- A. Explain “*Rōmānōs . . . gentem togātam.*” What were the privileges of the *toga*?
- B. Describe these articles of dress: *tunica, palla, stola.*
- C. What head coverings did the Romans wear? What kinds of footwear?
- D. Did Roman women like simple or elaborate hair styles? Did they use makeup as beauty aids?
- E. *Match the following columns:*

( ) Achillēs	1. erat māter Achillis.
( ) Agamemnon	2. sōlus pontem dēfendit.
( ) Etrūscī	3. erat rēx Etrūscōrum.
( ) Horātius	4. erat prīmus Graecōrum.
( ) Lars Porsena	5. filiam Caesaris in mātirimōnium dūxit.
( ) Mūcius	6. scrībam rēgis necāvit.
( ) Pompeius	7. erat maximus mīlitum Graecōrum.
( ) Tarquinius Superbus	8. Prope rīpās huius flūminis Rōmulus urbem condidit.
( ) Thetis	9. erat ultimus rēx Rōmānōrum.
( ) Tiberis	10. erant finitimī Rōmānīs.

## VI. Sight Reading

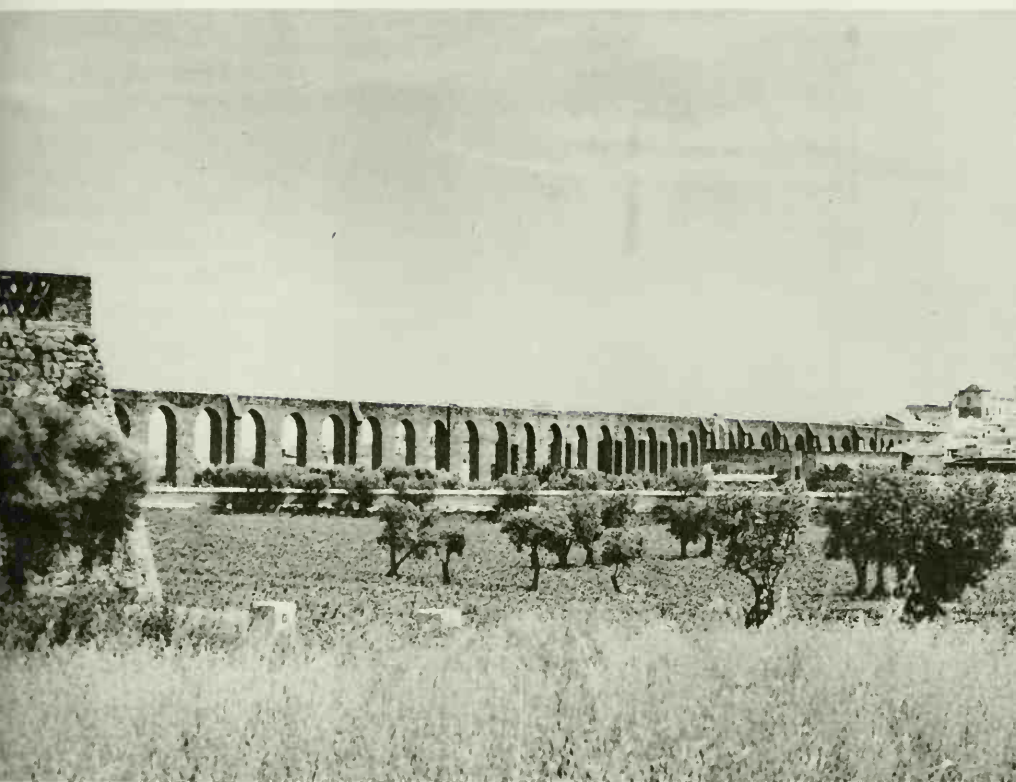
*The following fable is for rapid reading. The vocabulary will help you but it is not necessary to learn the new words at this time. After you have finished the reading, answer the questions in English:*

### Dē Lupō et Agnō

Ad rīvum lupus et agnus vēnerant. Et lupus et agnus aquae cupidī erant. Superior stābat lupus, inferior agnus. “Cūr mihi,” inquit lupus, “turbulentam fēcistī aquam?” Agnus respondet: “Quōmodo hoc faciō? Ā tē ad mē aqua dēcurrit.” “Abhinc duōs annōs (*Two years ago*) mihi male dīxistī.” “Nōn duōs annōs nātus sum (*I have been born*).” “Fīlius es agnī quī hoc fēcīt,” respondet lupus et agnum necat.

*Moral:* Ill-natured people can always find an excuse.

PHAEDRUS 1.1 (*Adapted*)



Aqueduct, Evora, Portugal. This aqueduct, known as the Aqueduct of Sertorius, was actually built c. 1550 A.D. on the site of an ancient Roman aqueduct.

*rīvus, -ī, m.*, stream

*lupus, -ī, m.*, wolf

*agnus, -ī, m.*, lamb

*cupidus, -a, -um*, desirous (of)

*superior*, higher

*inferior*, lower

*turbulentus, -a, -um*, muddy

*quōmodo*, how

*hoc*, this

*dēcurrō, dēcurrere*, run down

*male*, badly

*quī*, who

1. What did both animals want? 2. Where were they standing? 3. What accusations did the wolf make? 4. With what arguments did the lamb defend himself? 5. Did the wolf accept the defense?



*Head of Antonia,  
Museo Nazionale  
delle Terme, Rome*

# 25

## Nine Irregular Adjectives Cardinal Numerals; Declension of *Ūnus*, *Duo*, *Trēs*

*Sī duōbus praefurniīs coquēs, lacūnā nihil opus erit.  
Cum cinere ērutō opus erit, alterō praefurniō ērutō,  
in alterō ignis erit.*

CATO R. R. 38.9

*If you'll cook with two stoves, there'll be no need of delay.  
When you have to take the ashes out, even though one stove has  
been cleaned out, there'll be fire in the other.*

Porsena, postquam multa proelia cum Rōmānīs fēcit, castra prope Tiberim posuit. Ex arce Rōmānī castra equitum ped-  
 tumque quae (*which*) rēx posuerat vidēre poterant. In castrīs  
 Porsena obsidēs (*as hostages*) multās puellās, filiās cīvium  
 Rōmānōrum, tenēbat. Diū puellae frūstrā auxilium expectā- 5  
 bant; post multōs diēs (*days*) dē salūte dēspērāre coepērunt.  
 “Quid facere possumus?” rogāvērunt. “Poterimusne ex eīs  
 castrīs effugere et Rōmam pervenīre?” Tandem ūna ex puellīs,  
 Cloelia nōmine, hoc cōsiliū cēpit; ex castrīs effugere reli-  
 quāsque puellās sēcum (*with her*) dūcere cōstituit. Ea inter 10  
 tēla hostium cum cēterīs puellīs ad alteram rīpam Tiberis  
 trānāvit (*swam across*). Ita omnēs puellae incolumēs ad  
 urbem pervenīre potuērunt.

Ubi custōs fugam puellārum nūntiāvit, Porsena irātus  
 Rōmam nūntiū mīsīt, et Rōmānōs Cloeliam ūnam ad 15  
 Etrūscōs remittere iussit. Posteā tamen Cloeliam laudāvit.  
 “Nēmō,” inquit, “est fortior quam (*braver than*) illa puella.  
 Sī Rōmānī eam remiserint, ego puellam incolumem reddam.”  
 Itaque Rōmānī Cloeliam ad Porsenam mīsērunt. Porsena, ob  
 virtūtem magnam eius, magnō in honōre puellam habuit et 20  
 cum celeritāte incolumem Rōmānīs reddidit.

Postquam Rōmānī et Etrūscī pācem fēcērunt, in Sacrā Viā  
 prope templa deōrum populus Rōmānus statuam Cloeliae  
 posuit.

### Respondē Latīnē :

1. Quid Rōmānī ex arce vidēre poterant?
  2. Quōs in castrīs tenēbat Porsena?
  3. Post multōs diēs dēspērābantne puellae?
  4. Quid cōstituit facere Cloelia?
  5. Eratne irātus Porsena?
  6. Quid Rōmānōs facere iussit?
  7. Num Rōmānī omnēs puellās ad Porsenam remīsērunt?
  8. Quibus reddidit rēx Cloeliam?
  9. Nōne erat puella incolumis?
  10. Quid Rōmānī posteā in Forō posuērunt?
10. Quōmodo pervēnerat Cloelia ad alteram rīpam Tiberis?



Nine adjectives of the first and second declension are irregular in that the genitive singular for all genders ends in **-ius** and the dative singular for all genders ends in **-ī**. These adjectives are regular in the plural.

**alius, alia, aliud**,<sup>1</sup> another, other  
**alter, altera, alterum**, the other  
 (of two)  
**ūllus, ūlla, ūllum**, any  
**nūllus, nūlla, nūllum**, not any, no

**ūnus, ūna, ūnum**, one, only  
**sōlus, sōla, sōlum**, alone, only  
**tōtus, tōta, tōtum**, whole, all  
**uter, utra, utrum**, which (of two)?  
**neuter, neutra, neutrum**, neither (of two)?

ūllus, ūlla, ūllum any			uter, utra, utrum which (of two)?		
MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i> ūllus	ūlla	ūllum	uter	utra	utrum
<i>Gen.</i> ūllius	ūllius	ūllius	utrius	utrius	utrius
<i>Dat.</i> ūllī	ūllī	ūllī	utrī	utrī	utrī
<i>Acc.</i> ūllum	ūllam	ūllum	utrum	utram	utrum
<i>Abl.</i> ūllō	ūllā	ūllō	utrō	utrā	utrō

alius, alia, aliud another			alter, altera, alterum the other (of two)		
MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i> alius	alia	aliud	alter	altera	alterum
<i>Gen.</i> alius	alius	alius <sup>2</sup>	alterius	alterius	alterius
<i>Dat.</i> aliī	aliī	aliī	alterī	alterī	alterī
<i>Acc.</i> alium	aliam	aliud	alterum	alteram	alterum
<i>Abl.</i> aliō	aliā	aliō	alterō	alterā	alterō

**Nūllus, sōlus, tōtus** are declined like **ūllus**; **neuter** is declined like **uter**. The nine irregular adjectives usually precede their nouns.

<sup>1</sup> Cf. *illud*.

<sup>2</sup> In the genitive *alterius* usually replaces *alius*.

186 Note the following special uses:

1. **Alii . . . alii**, *some . . . others*.

**Aliās legiōnēs mittet, aliās retinēbit.**

He will send some legions, (and) will hold back others.

2. **Alter . . . alter**, *the one . . . the other (of two only)*.

**Alter cōsul est cum cōpiīs, alter (est) Rōmae.**

The one consul is with the troops, the other is in Rome.

3. **Reliquus, -a, -um**, *remaining*, is generally translated by *the rest of*. It is used in the singular with a singular noun.

**Reliqua legiō oppidum capere poterit.**

The rest of the legion will be able to capture the town.

4. *The other, the others* (plural), in the sense of *the remainder, the rest of*, is translated by **cēterī, -ae, -a**, or **reliquī, -ae, -a**.

**Horātius in ponte stābat. Cēterī (reliquī) milītēs pontem rumpēbant.**

Horatius stood on the bridge. The other soldiers were breaking down the bridge.

5. **Tōtus**, *the whole of*, is an adjective in agreement with its noun.

**Tōta Gallia erat libera. Rōmānī tōtam Galliam superāvērunt.**

The whole of Gaul used to be free. The Romans conquered the whole of Gaul.

187

## CARDINAL NUMERALS

I.	ūnus, ūna, ūnum	one
II.	duo, duae, duo	two
III.	trēs, tria	three
IV.	quattuor	four
V.	quīque	five
VI.	sex	six
VII.	septem	seven
VIII.	octō	eight
IX.	novem	nine
X.	decem	ten

## SINGULAR

	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>ŭnus</i>	<i>ŭna</i>	<i>ŭnum</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>ŭnŭs</i>	<i>ŭnŭs</i>	<i>ŭnŭs</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>ŭnŭ</i>	<i>ŭnŭ</i>	<i>ŭnŭ</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>ŭnum</i>	<i>ŭnam</i>	<i>ŭnum</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>ŭnŭ</i>	<i>ŭnā</i>	<i>ŭnŭ</i>

## PLURAL

	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>duo</i>	<i>duae</i>	<i>duo</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>duŕum</i>	<i>duārum</i>	<i>duŕum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>duŏbus</i>	<i>duābus</i>	<i>duŏbus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>duŏs, duo</i>	<i>duās</i>	<i>duo</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>duŏbus</i>	<i>duābus</i>	<i>duŏbus</i>

*Trēs*, *tria* is declined like the plural of *fortis*.

	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUTER
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>trēs</i>	<i>tria</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>trium</i>	<i>trium</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>tribus</i>	<i>tribus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>trēs</i>	<i>tria</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>tribus</i>	<i>tribus</i>

189 All the cardinals from 4 to 10 are indeclinable.

## 190

## EXERCISES

A. Complete each of the following sentences in three ways:

1. Cum duo (one) *amīcŏ*; cum duae (two) *fēminŭs*;  
cum quatuor (four) *puerŭs ambulābam*.
2. Est mātēr una (one) *puerŭ*; duae (one) *puellae*;  
trium (three) *liberŕum*.
3. unus (One) *virŏ*; duo (two) *mercātŏribus*;  
tribus (three) *mulieribus pecūniam dabant*.

<sup>3</sup> The plural of *ŭnus* is used occasionally in the sense of *alone*. It is declined like the plural of *altus*, -a, -um.

4. quinque (Five) hominēs; tres (three) ārae; tria (three) genera statuārum in templō sunt.  
 5. duo (Two) animālia; decem (ten) custōdēs; tres (three) agricolās in mediā silvā vīdimus.

B. Complete by translating the English:

1. Puellae sine ulla (any) periculō flūmen trānāvērunt.  
nemo (Nobody) eas vīdit. Fuga puellārum multi (no) custōdī erat nōta.  
 2. Etrūscī alii (some) obsidēs reddent; alii (others) retinēbunt.  
 3. illuc (To which) puerō magister illum librum dedit?  
neutri (To neither).  
 4. alii (Some) mīlitēs arma dēpōnere, alii (others) proclium facere cupīvērunt.  
 5. Rōmānī totam (the whole) urbem prīmō vĕre occupābunt; totam (the whole of) Galliam aestāte superābunt.  
 6. Soror alterius (of the one) imperātōris est, alterius (of the other) uxor.  
 7. Puella sola (alone) ex castrīs nōn effūgit; ceteras (the other) puellās dūxit.  
 8. una (One) legiō in Galliā est; caeterae (the others) in caeteris (the rest of) prōvinciis sunt.  
 9. alteri (To the one) virō auxilium, alteri (to the other) cōsiliū solum (only) deus dabit.

C. Translate:

1. In reliquā parte huius silvae sunt multa animālia.  
 2. Aliud iter habēmus nūllum.  
 3. Rōmānī iusserant alterum nūntium cum celeritāte ad castra accēdere.  
 4. Nēminī fugam cēterārum puellārum nūntiāverat.  
 5. Uter tōtī Galliae imperāre poterit?  
 6. Etrūscī aliīs amīcī sunt, aliīs inimīcī.  
 7. Neuter dux ad urbem incolumis pervēnit.  
 8. Postea sine ūllō periculō Rōmam pervenīre potuērunt.  
 9. Cum sōlā primā legiōne bellum gerere poteram.  
 10. Alteram partem praedae equitibus dabō, alteram peditibus.



Sculpture of Augustus Caesar now in the Vatican Museum at Rome. The emperor is represented as the conqueror of the world. Cupid, at his feet, symbolizes the kinship between Augustus and Venus.

D. *Write in Latin:*

1. There are no temples on the rest of the hill.
2. Horatius single-handed (*alone*) fought a battle with the enemy.
3. The plan is useful to neither state.
4. Porsena is like no other king.
5. This state is friendly to us; the other states are hostile.
6. The Gauls had not been able to conquer the whole of Italy.
7. We shall announce the flight of the cavalry to the consul only.
8. Which daughter is the mother calling? She is calling neither.
9. The king has restored the rest of the hostages to the Romans.
10. Some captives have been able to escape, others do not dare to approach the gates of the camp.

fuga, -ae, *f.*, flight; escape  
 nūntius, nūntiī, *m.*, messenger;  
 message  
 templum, -ī, *n.*, temple  
 custōs, custōdis, *m.*, guardian,  
 watchman  
 nēmō; *dat.*, nēmini; *acc.*,  
 nēminem,<sup>4</sup> *m.*, no one, nobody  
 reliquus, -a, -um, remaining,  
 rest of  
 exspectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, await,  
 wait for

reddō, reddere, reddidī,  
 redditum, give back, return,  
 restore  
 remittō, remittere, remisī,  
 remissum, send back  
 proelium facere, to fight a battle  
 frūstrā, *adverb*, in vain  
 ita, *adverb*, so, thus  
 posteā, *adverb*, afterwards  
 quōmodo, *adverb*, how, in what  
 manner

Do you know that all the months have Latin names? January (**Iānuārius**) is named from Janus, the god of beginnings. February (**Februārius**) is from **februa**, a purification ceremony which took place in this month. March (**Mārtius**) is from Mars, the god of war. April (**Aprīlis**) is perhaps connected with **aperire**, *to open*, or perhaps with a root meaning "second" for this was the second month of the Roman year. May (**Maius**) means the month of growth, when things become greater (**maior**, **maius**). June (**Iūnius**) may be connected with the goddess Juno, the patroness of marriage, and this is still a favorite month for weddings. July (**Iūlius**) was given its name to honor Julius Caesar, a member of the Julian family. August (**Augustus**) bears the name of Augustus, the first Roman emperor.

September, October, November, and December are spelled as in Latin. In the ancient Roman calendar (prior to 153 B.C.) the year began with March. You can see the relation between **septem** and **September**, **octō** and **Octōber**, **novem** and **November**, **decem** and **December**.

<sup>4</sup> The genitive and ablative of **nēmō** are supplied from **nūllus**: *genitive*, **nūllius**, *of no one*; *ablative*, **ā nūllō**, *by no one*. (**Nūllī** is an alternate form for the dative **nēmini**, *to no one*.)





*Restoration of the  
Temple of Castor and  
Pollux, Agrigento,  
Sicily*

# 26

## Fourth Declension Expressions of Place; Locative

Tū mihi sōla domus, tū, Cynthia, sōla parentēs,  
omnia tū nostrae tempora laetitiae.

Seu trīstis veniam seu contrā laetus amīcīs,  
quicquid erō, dīcam, 'Cynthia causa fuit.'

PROPERTIUS, 1.11.23-26

*You alone are home to me, Cynthia,  
You alone are father and mother,  
You alone are all the times of my gladness.  
Whether I shall appear sad to my friends,  
Or if, on the contrary, I shall seem happy,  
Whatever I am, I shall say,  
"Cynthia was the reason."*

“Here, hard by Vesta’s temple,  
Build we a stately dome  
Unto the Great Twin Brethren  
Who fought so well for Rome.”

- Mārcus.** Hodiē (*Today*) vidēbimus pulchrum templum Castoris et Pollūcis quod (*which, nom.*) est in Forō.
- Lūcius.** Quī sunt Castor et Pollūx?
- Mārcus.** Ōlim in Graeciā erant duo frātrēs, Castor et Pollūx; māter duōrum frātrum erat Lēda et pater erat deus 5 Iuppiter.
- Lūcius.** Cūr Rōmānī fēcērunt magnum templum duōbus Graecīs?
- Mārcus.** Quod frātrēs prō Rōmā pugnāvērunt. Nōne dē frātribus audīvistī? 10
- Lūcius.** Nōn audīvī.
- Mārcus.** Visne (*Do you wish*) audīre?
- Lūcius.** Certē.
- Mārcus.** Tū audī mē. Porsena, postquam pācem cum senātū populōque Rōmānō fēcit, Tarquiniōs (*the Tarquini*) 15 reliquit, et cum equitātū peditātūque ex finibus Rōmānōrum discessit.
- Lūcius.** Quid fēcērunt Tarquiniī?
- Mārcus.** Post discessum Etrūscōrum, Tarquiniī ad Mamiliū, rēgem Latīnōrum, cum celeritāte vērunt et auxiliū petīvērunt. Mox Mamilius cum rēgibus trīgintā 20 (*thirty*) urbium Latīnārum ad bellum erat parātus; is ad Lacum Rēgillum cum cōpiīs suis sociōrumque iter fēcit. Rōmānī quoque bellum parāvērunt. Aulus Postumius, dictātor,<sup>1</sup> et Titus Aebutius, magister 25 equitum, cum magnīs cōpiīs equitātūs peditātūsque ad Lacum Rēgillum properāvērunt. In dextrō

<sup>1</sup> Often in dangerous wars a dictator was appointed. He placed the state under martial law and ruled with absolute power. He appointed a master of horse (*magister equitum*) to command the cavalry. The dictator’s term was limited to six months; it was to his honor to bring the state safely through the crisis and to resign his command at the earliest possible date.

cornū et in sinistrō cornū omnem equitātum collocāvērunt.

30 **Lūcius.** Fēcēruntne duo exercitūs proelium?

**Mārcus.** Atrōx (*fierce*) erat proelium. Quod Tarquiniī erant in exercitū Latīnōrum, magna erat ira (*anger*) Rōmānōrum. Saepe ācrem impetum in hostēs faciēbant; saepe hostēs in Rōmānōs. Tandem duo  
35 equitēs, albīs (*white*) equīs vectī (*riding*), appāruērunt (*appeared, were seen*).

**Lūcius.** Erantne equitēs Pollūx et Castor?

**Mārcus.** Vērō. Eī subitō appāruērunt et cum Rōmānīs impetum in equitātum Latīnōrum fēcērunt. Latīnī  
40 ōrdinēs servāre (*to keep ranks*) nōn potuērunt et sē (*themselves*) in fugam dedērunt.

**Lūcius.** Et ita Rōmānī superāvērunt. Quid fēcērunt duo equitēs post proelium?

**Mārcus.** Interim in urbe Rōmā senēs (*old men*) mulierēsque adventum cōpiārum exspectābant. Sed antequam  
45 (*before*) exercitus Rōmānus ad urbem pervenīre potuit, duo frātrēs Rōmam properāvērunt; equōs armaque in fonte (*spring*) Vestae lāvērunt (*washed*), et victōriam nūntiāvērunt. Postea nēmō eōs vidēre  
50 potuit.

**Lūcius.** Nōne Rōmānī amant duōs frātrēs?

**Mārcus.** Amant. Et, quod urbem periculō maximō liberāvērunt, magnum templum Castoris et Pollūcis in Forō prope templum Vestae fēcērunt.

### Respondē Latīnē :

1. Quōrum est templum in Forō Rōmānō? 2. Quis erat māter duōrum frātrum? Quis erat pater? 3. Cūr duōbus Graecīs Rōmānī magnum templum fēcērunt? 4. Quandō Porsena Tarquiniōs reliquit? 5. Quī Latīnus iter fēcit ad Lacum Rēgillum? 6. Eratne proelium magnum? 7. Mediō in proeliō quī subitō appāruērunt? 8. Quī erant duo equitēs? 9. Quid fēcērunt frātrēs post proelium? 10. Nōne Rōmānī amant Castorem Pollūcemque?



Ruins of the Parthenon, a celebrated temple of Athens, on the heights of the city, 5th century B.C.

Model of the Pantheon, restored, Roman Architectural Models, Casts, second century A.D.



Nouns of the fourth declension end in **-ūs** in the genitive singular. Those ending in **-us** in the nominative singular are generally masculine, those ending in **-ū** are neuter. But **manus**, *hand*, and **domus**, *house, home*, are feminine.

SINGULAR				
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>exercitus</b>	<b>-us</b>	<b>cornū</b>	<b>-ū</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>exercitūs</b>	<b>-ūs</b>	<b>cornūs</b>	<b>-ūs</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>exercituī</b>	<b>-uī</b>	<b>cornū</b>	<b>-ū</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>exercitum</b>	<b>-um</b>	<b>cornū</b>	<b>-ū</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>exercitū</b>	<b>-ū</b>	<b>cornū</b>	<b>-ū</b>
PLURAL				
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>exercitūs</b>	<b>-ūs</b>	<b>cornua</b>	<b>-ua</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>exercituum</b>	<b>-uum</b>	<b>cornuum</b>	<b>-uum</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>exercitibus</b>	<b>-ibus</b>	<b>cornibus</b>	<b>-ibus</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>exercitūs</b>	<b>-ūs</b>	<b>cornua</b>	<b>-ua</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>exercitibus</b>	<b>-ibus</b>	<b>cornibus</b>	<b>-ibus</b>

195 Compare the following case endings:

DECLENSION	1	2	3	4
<i>Acc. sing.</i>	<b>-am</b>	<b>-um</b>	<b>-em</b>	<b>-um</b>
<i>Gen. pl.</i>	<b>-ārum</b>	<b>-ōrum</b>	<b>-um (-ium)</b>	<b>-uum</b>
<i>Acc. pl.</i>	<b>-ās</b>	<b>-ōs</b>	<b>-ēs</b>	<b>-ūs</b>

**Domus** sometimes has the endings of the second declension in the dative and ablative singular, and in the genitive and accusative plural.

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>domus</b>	<b>domūs</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>domūs</b>	<b>domuum, domōrum</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>domuī, domō</b>	<b>domibus</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>domum</b>	<b>domōs, domūs</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>domō (domū, rarely)</b>	<b>domibus</b>

**Frumentum Rōmam portant.**  
They carry the grain to Rome.

**Pecūniam domum apportant.**  
They bring the money home.

With names of cities, towns, and small islands, and with **domus** (*home*), place to which is expressed by the accusative case without a preposition.<sup>2</sup>

**Rōmā properant.**  
They hasten from Rome.

**Domō properant.**  
They hasten from home.

With names of cities, towns, and small islands, and with **domus** (*home*), place from which is expressed by the ablative case without a preposition.

**Rōmae est.**  
He is in Rome.

**Cornēlia domī est.**  
Cornelia is at home.

With names of cities, towns, and small islands, and with **domus** (*home*), place in which is expressed by a special case called the locative. The locative endings are:

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1st declension	-ae	-īs
2nd declension	-ī	-īs
3rd declension	(-ī), -e	-ibus

197

## EXERCISES

A. Complete the sentence in five ways by translating the English:

- \_\_\_\_\_ pervēnērunt. a) to the Forum b) to Britain c) to the city d) to Rome e) home
- \_\_\_\_\_ veniet. a) from Rome b) from the town c) from home d) from Sicily e) from the fields
- Puerī sunt \_\_\_\_\_. a) in the room b) in the town c) in Rome d) on the sea e) at home
- \_\_\_\_\_ errābāmus. a) in the woods b) in the city c) on the island d) toward Rome e) from Rome

<sup>2</sup> This and the following rules apply also to *rūs*, *rūris*, *n.*, the country.



B. *Change all singular forms to plural:*

1. Impetum sustinēre poteris.
2. Domum huius ducis incenderat.
3. Exercituū imperāvī; exercitus mihi pārui.
4. Cupisne audīre dē impetū exercitūs?
5. Nōne est nāvis in illō lacū?

C. *Change all plural forms to singular:*

1. Custōdēs domōs servāvērunt.
2. Ducēs exercituum audācēs sunt.
3. Sunt magnī lacūs in hīs terrīs.
4. In manibus nostrīs tēla habēmus.
5. Exercitūs rēgum exercitibus Rōmānīs nōn sunt parēs.

D. *Give the correct endings:*

1. In dextr\_\_\_\_\_ corn\_\_\_\_\_ erāmus.
2. Mult\_\_\_\_\_ exercit\_\_\_\_\_ habētis.
3. Haec animālia corn\_\_\_\_\_ nōn habent.
4. Dictātor in sinistr\_\_\_\_\_ corn\_\_\_\_\_ erat.
5. Hominēs du\_\_\_\_\_ man\_\_\_\_\_ habent.
6. Ā lac\_\_\_\_\_ ad lac\_\_\_\_\_ errāvērunt.
7. Advent\_\_\_\_\_ exercit\_\_\_\_\_ (pl.) nostr\_\_\_\_\_ expectāmus.
8. In senāt\_\_\_\_\_ erant multī clārī Rōmānī.
9. Bonum est nōs dom\_\_\_\_\_ venīre.
10. Dā mihi man\_\_\_\_\_ tu\_\_\_\_\_.

E. *Translate:*

1. Lēgātōs ab omnibus exercitibus convenīre iubēbimus.
2. Dictātor in sinistrō cornū omnem equitātum collocābat.
3. Ā lacū ad montem properāvērunt.
4. Cum omnibus cōpiīs peditātūs equitātūsque Rōmam pervēnī.
5. Putant duōs frātrēs esse deōs.
6. Post discessum exercitūs nūntium ad senātum mīsīt.
7. Cūr impetum fēcistī in nōs?
8. Aebutius dextrum cornū dūcet.
9. Cūr cīvēs stant prope templum Vestae? Adventum legiōnum expectant.
10. Quid tenēs in manū tuā?

F. *Write in Latin:*

1. With his two daughters he hurried home.
2. After we had seen the temple, we hurried home.
3. In summer we shall come from home to the lake.
4. My two sisters are now at home and are awaiting the arrival of our three brothers.



Hadrian's Wall, built in 122-126 A.D. to defend Roman Britain from the Picts and the Scots, the Northumberland Hills, England

5. With the rest of the infantry, the dictator had reached the right wing.
6. We had determined to send five envoys to the senate.
7. He has heard about the departure of the three Latin armies.
8. He will order one legion to charge (*make an attack on*) the enemy.
9. Neither wing will be able to reach us.
10. The one brother is at home; the other is coming home.

### SUPPLEMENTARY EXERCISES

- A. *Decline in the singular:*    **adventus noster**    **cornū dextrum**  
 B. *Decline in the plural:*    **lacūs lātī**    **manūs meae**  
**omnēs mercātōrēs**

<b>adventus, adventūs, m.</b> , arrival, approach	<b>impetus, impetūs, m.</b> , attack; <b>impetum facere</b> <i>with in +</i> <i>acc.</i> , to make an attack on
<b>cornū, cornūs, n.</b> , horn; wing ( <i>of an army</i> )	<b>lacus, lacūs, m.</b> , lake
<b>discessus, discessūs, m.</b> , departure, withdrawal	<b>manus, manūs, f.</b> , hand
<b>domus, domūs, f.</b> , house, home	<b>peditātus, peditātūs, m.</b> , infantry
<b>equitātus, equitātūs, m.</b> , cavalry	<b>senātus, senātūs, m.</b> , senate
<b>exercitus, exercitūs, m.</b> , army	<b>dexter, dextra, dextrum</b> , right
	<b>sinister, sinistra, sinistrum</b> , left
	<b>subitō, adverb</b> , suddenly

**Equitātus** and **peditātus** are collective nouns, used in the singular with the same meaning as the plurals **equitēs** and **peditēs**.

A fourth declension masculine noun, indicating action or result of action, may be formed on the supine stem of a Latin verb; for example, **adventus, adventūs, m.**, *arrival*, is formed on **adventum**, the supine of **adveniō**.

Form similar nouns based on the supine stem of the following verbs: **accēdō, agō, ascendō, conveniō, respondeō**. Derive the meaning of the noun from the meaning of the verb and then check the meaning of the noun in a Latin dictionary.





*Ruins of the Forum,  
Rome*

# 27

## Perfect Participle Passive

Semper Parātus

*Always prepared*

200

Dē Aureō Mālō (Part 1)

The last king of ancient Troy was Priam (**Priamus**, -ī). His wife was Hecuba (**Hecuba**, -ae). One of their sons was Paris (**Paris**, **Paridis**).

Peleus and Thetis were the parents of the famous hero Achilles.



Ōlim in monte Īdā prope Trōiam habitābat pulcher adulēscēns, Paris appellātus. Paris erat secundus (*second*) fīlius Priamī, rēgis Trōiae, et uxōris Hecubae. Propter ōrāculum (*oracle*) Priamus Paridem timēbat, et puerum, īnscium (*ignorant of*) parentium, in monte Īdā reliquerat. 5

Pāstōrēs puerum parvum inventum cūrāverant. Paris inter pāstōrēs habitābat et ovēs (*sheep*) servābat. In monte habitābat Oenōnē, nympha pulchra. Eam vīsam Paris amāvit (*fell in love*) et in mātirimōnium dūxit. Post multōs annōs Paris nōmina parentium cognōvit, sed in monte cum uxōre amātā manēbat. 10

Deī et deae in monte Olympō in Graeciā habitābant. Omnēs sub imperiō Iovis erant. Iovem rēgem deōrum et patrem hominum appellābant.

Dum Paris in monte Īdā habitat, in monte Olympō erat mātirimōnium. Pēleus nympham Thetidem (*Thetis*) in mātirimōnium dūxit, et omnēs deōs deāsque, praeter sōlam deam Discordiam, ad dapēs (*feast*) convocāvit. Discordia tamen, nōn vocāta, ad dapēs vēnit et manū suā aureum mālum (*apple*) mediōs in deōs et deās iēcit. In mālō erat verbum 'Pulcher- 20  
rimae' (*for the fairest*).

### Respondē Lātinē :

1. Ubi habitābat Paris, pulcher adulēscēns? 2. Cuius fīlius erat Paris? 3. Cūr Priamus timēbat? 4. Quid igitur (*therefore*) fēcerat? 5. Quī puerum parvum inventum cūrāverant? 6. Quandō Paris cognōvit nōmina parentium? 7. Ubi habitābant deī et deae? 8. Sub cuius imperiō erant omnēs? 9. Quem Pēleus in mātirimōnium dūxit? 10. Quid iēcit Discordia in mediōs deōs et deās?

All the verb forms that we have used in previous lessons have been in the active voice; we have used them to tell what somebody or something is doing, has done, or will do. But frequently we wish to tell what is done to a person by someone else, as *he is being called, we shall be seen, having been wounded*. The verb form is now in the passive voice.



A participle is a verbal adjective. It is called a participle (*pars* + *capiō*) because it partakes or shares the nature of adjective and verb. For instance, in the sentences *I saw the broken bridge* and *They helped the wounded soldier*, the words *broken* and *wounded* are both adjectives, but they are formed from the verbs *break* and *wound*.

As a verb, a participle has voice and tense, may be modified by an adverb, and may govern an object in the same case as the verb of which it is a part.

As an adjective, a participle is declined, and agrees in gender, number, and case with the noun or pronoun which it modifies.

A regular Latin verb has three participles; we shall begin with the study of the perfect participle passive.

The perfect participle passive is formed by adding **-us** to the supine stem.

SUPINE	SUPINE STEM	PERF. PART. PASS.
portātum	portāt-	portātus
mōtum	mōt-	mōtus
ductum	duct-	ductus
captum	capt-	captus
audītum	audīt-	audītus

It is declined like **altus**.

Examine carefully the following:

**Cōpiae parātae impetum fēcērunt.**

The troops {  $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{having been prepared} \\ \text{being prepared} \\ \text{on being prepared} \\ \text{after being prepared} \end{array} \right\}$  made an attack.

The perfect participle passive is passive in meaning. It denotes time prior to that of the main verb. In the above sentence, the troops were (had been) prepared before the attack was made.

The English equivalent of the perfect participle passive often takes the form of a phrase.

**Servus captus poenās dabit.**

The slave	{	if caught	}	will suffer punishment.
		when caught		
		on being caught		
		after being caught		
		having been caught		

In every instance the slave must be caught before he can be punished.

Often the English equivalent takes the form of an adverbial clause.

**Servus captus poenās dabit.**

The slave	{	if he is caught	}	will suffer punishment.
		when he is caught		
		after he is caught		
		since he has been caught		

The perfect participle passive may be equivalent to an English relative clause.

**Miles vulnerātus pugnāre nōn poterat.**

The soldier who had been wounded was unable to fight.

**Urbem captam incendunt.**

They burn the city which they have captured.

The perfect participle passive may be equivalent to an English principal clause.

**Miles vulnerātus pugnāre nōn poterat.**

The soldier had been wounded and could not fight.

**Urbem captam incendunt.**

They capture the city and burn it.

Sometimes the participle is best translated by an English verbal adjective: **miles vulnerātus**, the wounded soldier; **urbs capta**, the captured city.

In Latin, the participle is usually put at the end of its phrase.

**Tarquinii, Rōmā expulsī, ad Mamiliū vērunt.**

The Tarquinii, after being driven from Rome,  
came to Mamilius.

203

## EXERCISES

### A. *Translate:*

- |                                     |                           |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. pōns ruptus                      | 6. incolae urbis captae   |
| 2. corpora mīlitum<br>interfectōrum | 7. ad mīlitem vulnerātum  |
| 3. nōmina cognita                   | 8. trāns agrōs vāstātōs   |
| 4. oppidum obsessum                 | 9. cum uxōre amātā        |
| 5. puer relictus                    | 10. prō rēge Rōmā expulsō |

### B. *Translate:*

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. the lost boy ( <i>nom.</i> )                | 2. into the conquered city                |
| 3. behind the captured camp                    | 4. to ( <i>dat.</i> ) the wounded sailors |
| 5. the bodies ( <i>acc.</i> ) of the slain men | 6. near the broken bridge                 |
| 7. with the abandoned hostages                 | 8. in the plowed fields                   |
| 9. out of the devastated town                  | 10. of a beloved mother                   |

### C. *Complete by translating the English:*

- Hic est pater puerī \_\_\_\_\_.  
who has been lost
- Urbī \_\_\_\_\_ appropinquābāmus.  
that had been captured
- Ubi frūmentum \_\_\_\_\_ pōnētis?  
that has been collected
- Scīsne nōmina puellārum \_\_\_\_\_?  
who have been abandoned
- Mīles \_\_\_\_\_ pugnāre nōn poterit.  
if wounded
- Mīles in proeliō \_\_\_\_\_ fortiter pugnāt.  
although wounded
- Obsidēs \_\_\_\_\_ incolumēs servābimus.  
who have been returned

8. Incolās ex urbe \_\_\_\_\_ petit.  
who were driven out
9. Puer \_\_\_\_\_ ad collem fugit.  
on being seen
10. Animal \_\_\_\_\_ necāvit.  
he caught and
11. Arcem \_\_\_\_\_ incendērunt.  
they captured and
12. Rōmulus urbī \_\_\_\_\_ nōmen dedit.  
that he had founded
13. Quis erat nūntius ā Iove \_\_\_\_\_?  
who was sent
14. Tibi mōnstrābō agrōs \_\_\_\_\_.  
that were destroyed
15. \_\_\_\_\_ erimus laetī.  
If we are freed

D. *Translate:*

1. Agricolae agrōs vāstātōs arābant.
2. Pecūniam mihi datam habeo.
3. Graeci arcem Trōiae oppugnātam cēpērunt.
4. Rēgīna corōnam (*crown*) auream habet.
5. Ex servīs dē morte magistrī cognōvit.
6. Parentibus puerum inventum reddēmus.
7. Gallī sagittīs vulnerātī ad castra ambulāre nōn possunt.
8. Hostēs praesidium in īnsulā collocātum necāvērunt.
9. Illae cīvitatēs contrā imperium populī Rōmānī fortiter pugnābant.
10. Hī virī malī ob iniūriās cognitās poenās dabunt.

E. *Write in Latin:*

1. After being wounded he fought bravely.
2. If the slave is captured he will suffer punishment.
3. The Greeks were terrified and laid down their arms.
4. Have you (s.) heard the words of the leader of the conquered army? Take (*Lead*) us to him.
5. On account of the scarcity of water, the terrified slaves hurried to the river.
6. We shall send back to the army the supply of spears sent to us.
7. The bridge, if it is broken by the storm,

will not be useful to us. 8. If Priam marries Hecuba, the new queen will live (*dwelt*) in Troy. 9. The other gods had given the rule to Jupiter. 10. We had not learned of the battle fought before the walls of the city.

## SUPPLEMENTARY EXERCISES

A. Give in the masculine singular nominative the perfect participle passive of: **expectō, remittō, reddō, liberō, incendō, obsecrō, dēponō, rumpō.**

B. State the gender, number, and case of each participle and translate. The number in parentheses indicates the number of possibilities: **arātus, comportāta (3), monitae (3), vocātī (3), nūntiātum (3), iussus, datae (3), vīsum (3), mōnstrātā, complētus, mōtae (3), retentōs.**

204

## VOCABULARY

**poena, -ae, f.,** penalty,  
punishment; **poenās dare,** to  
pay a penalty, to be  
punished, to suffer punishment  
**Trōia, Trōiae, f.,** Troy (i in  
Trōia is a consonant)  
**imperium, -ī, n.,** command,  
control, rule; empire,  
dominion  
**mātrimōnium, -ī, n.,** marriage;  
**in mātrimōnium dūcere,** to  
marry

**verbum, -ī, n.,** word  
**Iuppiter, Iovis, m.,** Jupiter  
**parēns, parentis (gen. pl.**  
**parentum and parentium),**  
**m. and f.,** parent  
**aureus, aurea, aureum,** golden,  
of gold  
**cognōscō, cognōscere, cognōvī,**  
**cognitum,** find out, learn,  
ascertain; *in perfect,* know



Minerva mosaic

## 28

Fifth Declension Nouns  
Ordinal Numerals  
Expressions of Time

*Diem perdidī.*

*I have lost a day.*

(So the Emperor Titus exclaimed when he had failed to perform a good deed during the day.)



Minerva was a daughter of Jupiter, from whose head she was said to have sprung. She was the goddess of wisdom but at times she was also a goddess of war.

Vulcan was the god of fire and the blacksmith of the gods. He made armor for the heroes Achilles and Aeneas and forged the thunderbolts of Jupiter, the sky god. His wife was Venus.

Ante dapēs (*feast*) omnēs deae fuerant amīcae; sed nunc, postquam Discordia aureum mālum iēcit, erat in monte Olympō iūrgium (*strife, altercation*), nam trēs deae mālum postulāvērunt. Magna erat spēs Iūnōnis, prīmae deae, quae  
 5 (*who, nom. sing.*) erat uxor Iovis et rēgīna deōrum. Secunda dea erat Minerva, dea sapientiae, quae sōla omnium deōrum et deārum fulmina (*thunderbolts*) Iovis iacere poterat. Tertia erat Venus, dea pulchritūdinis (*beauty*); ea erat uxor Vulcānī, deī ignis; omnēs deī eam ob pulchritūdinem amābant, sed  
 10 Iuppiter eam Vulcānō uxōrem (*as wife*) dederat, quod Vulcānus fulmina faciēbat.

Multōs diēs Iuppiter erat trīstis, nam trēs deae mālum postulābant neque rem dēcernere (*decide*) poterat. Itaque decimō diē trēs deās cum Mercuriō, nūntiō deōrum, ad montem  
 15 Īdam ad Paridem mīsīt. Paris in saxō ingentī sedēbat, cum (*when*) subitō Iūnō et Minerva et Venus cum Mercuriō ante eum stetērunt.

### Respondē Latīnē :

1. Quandō erat iūrgium in monte Olympō? 2. Quae (*Who, nom. pl. f.*) mālum postulāvērunt? 3. Quis erat prīma dea?
4. Quis erat secunda dea? 5. Quis erat tertia dea? 6. Cūr dederat Iuppiter Venerem (*acc. s.*) Vulcānō uxōrem? 7. Cūr erat Iuppiter trīstis? 8. Quid fēcīt Iuppiter decimō diē?

## FIFTH DECLENSION

Fifth declension nouns end in **-ēs** in the nominative singular, **-ēī** in the genitive singular (**-ēī** after a consonant).

Nouns of the fifth declension are feminine with the exception of **diēs**, which is usually masculine, and **merīdiēs**, which is always masculine.

SINGULAR

<i>Nom.</i>	diēs	rēs	-ēs
<i>Gen.</i>	diēi	reī	-ēi (eī)
<i>Dat.</i>	diēi	reī	-ēi (eī)
<i>Acc.</i>	diem	rem	-em
<i>Abl.</i>	diē	rē	-ē

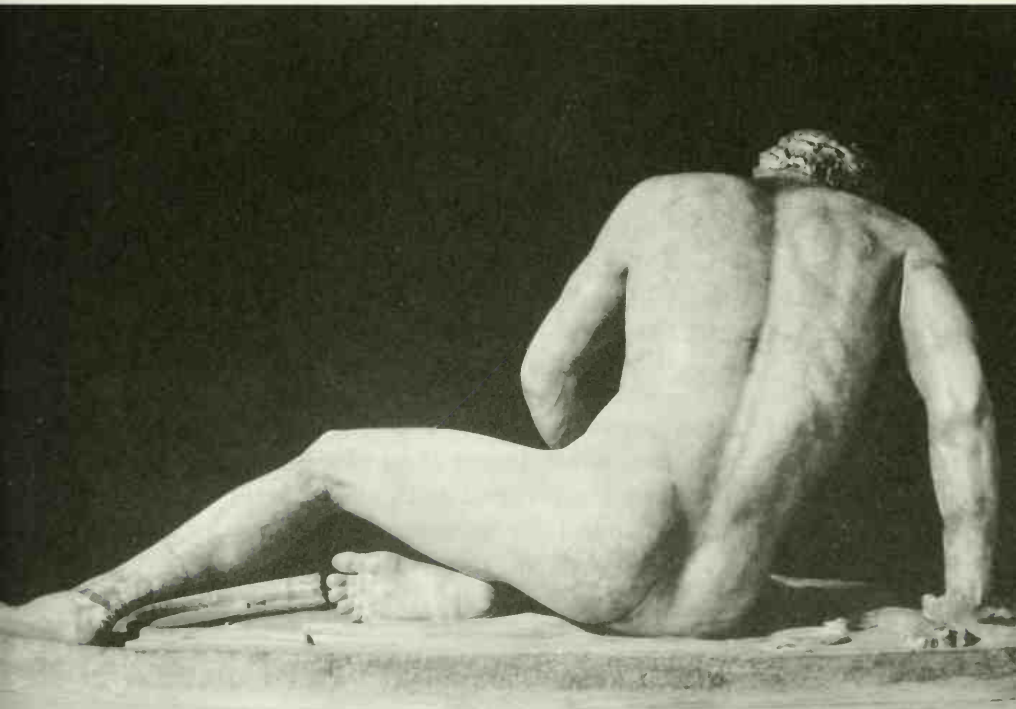
PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	diēs	rēs	-ēs
<i>Gen.</i>	diērum	rērum	-ērum
<i>Dat.</i>	diēbus	rēbus	-ēbus
<i>Acc.</i>	diēs	rēs	-ēs
<i>Abl.</i>	diēbus	rēbus	-ēbus

207 Compare the following case endings:

DECLENSION	1	2	3	4	5
<i>Acc. sing.</i>	-am	-um	-em	-um	-em
<i>Gen. pl.</i>	-ārum	-ōrum	-um (-ium)	-uum	-ērum
<i>Acc. pl.</i>	-ās	-ōs	-ēs	-ūs	-ēs

Sculpture of a fallen Gallic gladiator. Sometimes five hundred pairs of gladiators fought in the arena at one time for the amusement of the spectators.



Ordinal Numerals are declined like **altus**.

<i>prīmus, first</i>	<i>sextus, sixth</i>
<i>secundus, second</i>	<i>septimus, seventh</i>
<i>tertius, third</i>	<i>octāvus, eighth</i>
<i>quārtus, fourth</i>	<i>nōnus, ninth</i>
<i>quīntus, fifth</i>	<i>decimus, tenth</i>

There are three kinds of expressions of time. One tells us how long something goes on. A second tells us when something happens. ~~A third~~ tells us within what period something happens. For convenience, we speak of *time how long*, *time when*, and *time within which*.

1. Time how long is expressed by the accusative case.

**Diēs septem manēbunt.**

They will remain for a week.

**Duōs annōs urbem obsidēbant.**

For two years they besieged the city.

2. Time when is expressed by the ablative case.

**Secundā hōrā castra oppugnāvērunt.**

At the second hour they attacked the camp.

**Primā hieme pervēnit.**

He arrived at the beginning of (in early) winter.

3. Time within which is expressed by the ablative case.

**Tertiā vigiliā Mānlius Gallōs vīdit.**

During the third watch Manlius saw the Gauls.

**Sex diēbus perveniet.**

He will arrive within six days.

**210** The Roman day (**diēs**) was divided into twelve hours (**duodecim hōrae**) which began at sunrise and ended at sunset. The length of an hour varied with the time of the year. It was longer than our hour in summer and shorter in winter. The night was divided into four watches (**vigiliae**).



211 Part of the inscription<sup>1</sup> on the calendar above, which is a farmer's almanac, may be translated as follows:

<i>Month</i>	<i>Month</i>	<i>Month</i>
JANUARY	FEBRUARY	MARCH
<i>days 31</i>	<i>days 28</i>	<i>days 31</i>
nones on fifth	nones on fifth	nones on seventh
hours in a day 9½	hours in a day 10½	hours in a day 12
hours in a night 14½	hours in a night 13½	hours in a night 12
sun in capricornus	sun in aquarius	time of equinox 8 days
under guardianship	under guardianship	before kalends of April
of Juno	of Neptune	sun in pisces
marshes are under	crops are planted	under guardianship of
water	vineyards are hoed	Minerva
rushes are cut	rushes are burned	vine props are cut in
		the trenched ground

<sup>1</sup> In this inscription, a 24-hour system, like our own, is used to compute the hours of the day and night.

1. We frequently use the abbreviations A.M. and P.M. to denote time. What do these abbreviations stand for? What time would M. alone indicate?
2. Explain the meaning of **per diem**; **sine diē**; **rē** (*in correspondence*); **dē diē in diem**; **per annum**; **annō Domini** (A.D.); **verb. sap.**
3. By relating the italicized words to words we have used in this lesson, tell what we mean by each of the following: an *annual* report; a *biennial* plant; a *triennial* conference; a *perennial* joke; a *decimal* fraction; a *secondary* school; a *vigilant* guard; *diurnal* motion; a *diary*.

- A. Give the correct singular endings. Then translate the sentence.
1. Aci\_\_\_\_\_ vidēmus. 2. Omn\_\_\_\_\_ sp\_\_\_\_\_ salūtis in fugā posuistis. 3. Terti\_\_\_\_\_ di\_\_\_\_\_ nautae ad Sicili\_\_\_\_\_ pervēnērunt. 4. Quārt\_\_\_\_\_ hōr\_\_\_\_\_ di\_\_\_\_\_ veniet. 5. Merīdi\_\_\_\_\_ cōpiās dīmīttēmus. 6. Ūn\_\_\_\_\_ di\_\_\_\_\_ adventum lēgātī exspectāvit. 7. Magn\_\_\_\_\_ erat sp\_\_\_\_\_ Iūnōnis. 8. Equitēs in prīm\_\_\_\_\_ aci\_\_\_\_\_ collocāvit. 9. Magn\_\_\_\_\_ sp\_\_\_\_\_ victōriae habent. 10. Secund\_\_\_\_\_ vigili\_\_\_\_\_ exercitus discessit.
- B. Give the correct plural endings. Then translate the sentence.
1. Omn\_\_\_\_\_ r\_\_\_\_\_ parāmus. 2. Mult\_\_\_\_\_ ann\_\_\_\_\_ Rōmae habitābat. 3. In magn\_\_\_\_\_ r\_\_\_\_\_ este audāc\_\_\_\_\_. 4. Du\_\_\_\_\_ di\_\_\_\_\_ in templō mānsit. 5. Mult\_\_\_\_\_ r\_\_\_\_\_ sunt vōbīs nōt\_\_\_\_\_. 6. Tr\_\_\_\_\_ hōr\_\_\_\_\_ saxa in flūmen puer iaciēbat. 7. Tr\_\_\_\_\_ di\_\_\_\_\_ perveniet. 8. Mult\_\_\_\_\_ hōr\_\_\_\_\_ liberōs invenīre nōn poterāmus. 9. Post pauc\_\_\_\_\_ di\_\_\_\_\_ ad lacum ingentem pervēnimus. 10. Dē magn\_\_\_\_\_ r\_\_\_\_\_ mihi dīxerat.

C. Give these nouns in the indicated case:

1. *Gen. sing.* avus; virtūs; corpus; adventus
2. *Acc. pl.* caedēs; diēs; miles; pedes
3. *Gen. pl.* manus; rēs; vōx; nox
4. *Dat. sing.* pāstor; magister; puer; pater
5. *Abl. pl.* saxum; diēs; impetus; socius
6. *Acc. sing.* populus; tempus; exercitus; salūs
7. *Abl. sing.* vēr; iter; ager; māter
8. *Acc. sing.* virgō; merīdiēs; proelium; pōns
9. *Nom. pl.* rēx; obses; caput; annus
10. *Dat. pl.* vigilia; eques; equus; cīvīs

D. Translate:

1. Vidistīne ante pugnam aciem hostium?
2. Priusquam hostēs primum impetum in nōs fēcērunt, magnam spem victōriae habēbāmus.
3. Multās hōrās hostēs collem occupāre prohibēre poterāmus, nam fortiter pugnābāmus.
4. Ā secundā hōrā diēi ad merīdiem fortiter pugnābant.
5. Duābus hōrīs tristis dea ab Olympō trāns mare ad Siciliam volāvit.
6. Post paucōs diēs reliquī nautae ad Hispāniam nāvigāvērunt.
7. Tertiā vigiliā ad nōs vēnērunt et multum frūmentum postulāvērunt.
8. Num reliquerās tōtam hiemem cēterās rēs in aedificiō?
9. Prīmā aestāte arma cēpimus quod nōbīs periculōsum erat esse sine armīs.
10. Paucīs diēbus vōbīs rēs cognitās dīcēmus.

E. Write in Latin:

1. In important (**magnus**) matters you ought to be brave and wise. 2. They were hurling huge stones down from the citadel. 3. Surely these sorrowful people did not have great hope of victory? 4. In Rome there was a huge temple of Minerva, the goddess of wisdom. 5. For many years they gave their friends money and many other useful things. 6. On the fourth day he decided to lead back his army at noon. 7. When driven out of their territories, the Germans demanded lands from us. 8. It



is right, Gauls, for the messenger to speak these words to your wise leader. 9. Although there are many kinds of animals in this vast forest, we see few of them. 10. At the tenth hour he led his line of battle towards the gate of the camp, for they were tired.

## SUPPLEMENTARY EXERCISES

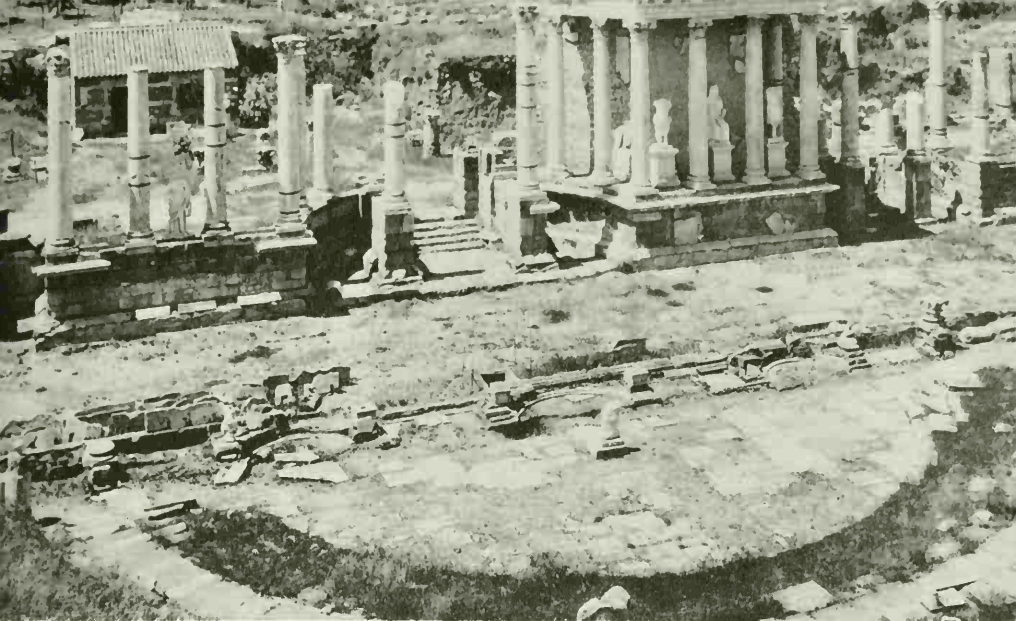
- A. *Decline in the singular:* omnis spēs, magna rēs, prima aciēs; *in the plural:* rēs malae, trēs diēs.  
 B. *Give in the masculine singular nominative the perfect participle passive of:* pellō, reducō, cōgō, rapiō, revocō.

214

## VOCABULARY

hōra, -ae, *f.*, hour  
 sapientia, -ae, *f.*, wisdom  
 vigilia, -ae, *f.*, watch  
 saxum, -ī, *n.*, stone, rock  
 aciēs, aciēī, *f.*, line of battle,  
 battle array  
 diēs, diēī, *m.*, day  
 merīdiēs, merīdiēī, *m.*, noon  
 rēs, rei, *f.*, thing, matter, affair,  
 circumstance, fact; property

spēs, speī, *f.*, hope  
 ingēns (*gen.* ingentis), ingēns,  
 ingēns, huge, vast  
 sapiēns (*gen.* sapientis),  
 sapiēns, sapiēns, wise  
 trīstis (*gen.* trīstis), trīstis,  
 trīste, sad, sorrowful  
 postulō, postulāre, postulāvī,  
 postulātum, ask for, demand  
 nam, *conjunction*, for



The Roman theater in Merida, Spain. Founded by Augustus c. 23 B.C., the city later became a Visigothic See.



The amphitheater in Italica, near Seville, Spain. Wild beasts were kept beneath ground level in the area shown in the foreground. Italica, founded c. 210 by Scipio Africanus, was the birthplace of the Emperor Hadrian.



*Relief of Helen  
and Venus, Museo  
Nazionale, Naples*

# 29

## Perfect Indicative Passive Ablative of Agent

Virtūtum amicitia adiūtrīx ā nātūrā data  
est, nōn vitiōrum comes.

*Friendship has been granted by nature as  
an aid to virtue, not as a companion to vice.*

CICERO: DE AM. 22.83

“Salvē (*Hail*), Paris,” inquit Mercurius, “nōs ad tē ā Iove, patre hominum et rēge deōrum, missī sumus. Spectā aureum mālum quod (*that, nom. sing.*) inter deās ā deā Discordiā iactum est. In mālō scrīptum est verbum ‘Pulcherrimae.’ Quod trēs deae mālum cupiunt, ad tē vēnimus, nam tū eris iūdex (*judge*). Nōlī dubitāre imperiō Iovis pārēre. Dā mālum, Paris, pulcherrimae.” 5

Ubi mālum Paridī ā Mercuriō datum est, trēs deae verba fēcērunt (*spoke*).

Verba Iūnōnis erant: “Sī mihi mālum dederis, Paris, rēgnum Asiae tibi dabō. Potēns eris et diū rēgnābis.” 10

Verba Minervae: “Glōriam bellī tibi dabō, sī mihi mālum dederis. Omnēs hostēs tuōs vincēs.”

Verba Veneris: “Tibi pulcherrimam fēminam orbis terrārum (*the world*) uxōrem dabō, Helenam, puellam Graecam. Nunc ea est uxor Menelāi (*Menelaus*), rēgis Spartae (*Sparta*), sed eam tibi dabō, sī mihi mālum dederis.” 15

Paris, quod pulcherrimam fēminam esse uxōrem suam volēbat (*wished*), Venerī mālum dedit. Postquam auxiliō Veneris nāvis facta est, Paris cum paucīs sociīs ad patriam Menelāi vēnit. Ibi Paris et sociī ā Menelāō acceptī sunt; multōs diēs in rēgiā Menelāi manēbant. Quod Venus erat Paridī amīca, mox Helena Trōiānum amāvit. Noctū ad nāvem fūgērunt et ad urbem Trōiānam nāvigāvērunt. In rēgiā Priamī Paris et Helena laetī habitābant. 20 25

### Respondē Latīnē :

1. Quid scrīptum est in mālō?
2. Cūr ad Paridem vēnērunt Mercurius et deae?
3. Quid Iūnō dabit?
4. Quid Minerva dabit?
5. Cui mālum dedit Paris?
6. Cūr id dedit?
7. Quō Paris vēnit?
8. Ā quō Paris et sociī acceptī sunt?
9. Cūr Helena Trōiānum (Paridem) amāvit?
10. Quō nāvigāvērunt Paris et Helena?

When the subject is the doer (actor) of the action of a verb, the verb is said to be in the Active Voice.

*Iuppiter Mercurium ad Paridem mīsit.*

Jupiter sent Mercury to Paris.

When the subject of the verb is acted upon, the verb is said to be in the Passive Voice.

*Mercurius ad Paridem missus est.*

Mercury was sent to Paris.

When an active verb is made passive, the object of the active verb becomes the subject of the passive verb and accusative modifiers of the object become nominative modifiers of the subject.

*Paris Venerem pulcherrimam appellāvit.*

Paris named Venus the most beautiful.

*Venus pulcherrima appellāta est.*

Venus was named the most beautiful.

The perfect indicative passive is formed by combining the perfect participle passive with the present tense of the verb **sum**.

portātus sum	I have been carried, I was carried
portātus es	you have been carried, you were carried
portātus est	he has been carried, he was carried she, it
portātī sumus	we have been carried, we were carried
portātī estis	you have been carried, you were carried
portātī sunt	they have been carried, they were carried

vīsus sum	I have been seen, I was seen
vīsus es	you have been seen, you were seen
vīsus est	he has been seen, he was seen
vīsi sumus	we have been seen, we were seen
vīsi estis	you have been seen, you were seen
vīsi sunt	they have been seen, they were seen

In this construction the perfect participle passive agrees with the subject of the sentence in gender, number, and case.

**Puer vīsus est.**

**Puerī vīsi sunt.**



Puella visa est.  
Templum visum est.

Puellae visae sunt.  
Templa visa sunt.

217

### ABLATIVE OF AGENT

Urbs ā rēge capta est.

The city was taken by the king.

Oppidum ā militibus captum est.

The town was taken by the soldiers.

Castra ab exercitū capta sunt.

The camp was taken by the army.

In these sentences we are told by whom the city, the town, and the camp were taken. The person, or group of persons, by whom an act is performed is called the agent. Note that *army* is a group of persons. In Latin the agent is expressed by the ablative case with **ab**.

It is important to distinguish between means (ablative) which tells *by* or *with what* something is done and agent (ablative with **ab**) which tells *by whom* it is done.

**Agri ignī** (means) **ab hostibus** (agent) **vāstātī sunt**.

The fields have been wasted with fire by the enemy.

218

### EXERCISES

A. Give the tense and voice of each verb and translate:

- |                |                   |                 |
|----------------|-------------------|-----------------|
| 1. Missus est. | 5. Mittent.       | 9. Portātus es. |
| 2. Mīsit.      | 6. Portātī estis. | 10. Movēbat.    |
| 3. Missī sunt. | 7. Portāvistis.   | 11. Mōtae sunt. |
| 4. Mittunt.    | 8. Portābitis.    | 12. Iussus sum. |

B. Give the tense and voice of each verb and translate:

- |                        |                        |
|------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. She has been loved. | 6. He had warned.      |
| 2. She has loved.      | 7. They are capturing. |
| 3. He was warning.     | 8. They were captured. |
| 4. He will warn.       | 9. They have captured. |
| 5. He has been warned. | 10. They will capture. |



C. *Fill in the blank with the correct verb form:*

1. Puer ā magistrō \_\_\_\_\_. has been praised
2. Rōmānī ā sociīs \_\_\_\_\_. were welcomed
3. Cōpiae tēlīs \_\_\_\_\_. were wounded
4. Effugere \_\_\_\_\_. you (*pl.*) have been prevented
5. Ab equitibus \_\_\_\_\_. we have been defeated
6. Ā nōbīs, Mārce, \_\_\_\_\_. you have been loved
7. Ā nōbīs, Cornēlia, \_\_\_\_\_. you have been loved
8. Mālum Venerī \_\_\_\_\_. was given
9. Hoc cōsilium  
ā duce \_\_\_\_\_. was formed
10. Nōs ab amīcīs \_\_\_\_\_. have been abandoned

D. *Complete by translating the English:*

1. Magna glōria \_\_\_\_\_ petīta est. by the soldier
2. Multa verba \_\_\_\_\_ dicta sunt. by the teacher
3. Plūtō \_\_\_\_\_ vulnerātus est. by an arrow
4. Serība \_\_\_\_\_ necātus est. by a sword
5. Nōs \_\_\_\_\_ servātī sumus. by you (*pl.*)
6. Patria nostra \_\_\_\_\_ vāstāta est. by the enemy
7. Captīvī \_\_\_\_\_ effugere prohibītī sunt. by us
8. Hic pōns \_\_\_\_\_ ruptus est. by a strong  
young man
9. Animālia \_\_\_\_\_ interfecta sunt. by missiles
10. Illa urbs \_\_\_\_\_ obsessa est. by the army

E. *Translate:*

1. Multa verba in eō librō scrīpta sunt.
2. Nōlī dubitāre imperiō huius ducis pārēre.
3. Cēterae cōpiae ab rēgibus Asiae coāctae sunt.
4. Magna glōria bellī Paridī ā Minervā dabitur.
5. Multī et Trōiānī et Graeci prope flūmen interfectī sunt.
6. Aciēs hostium ā mīlitibus nostrīs vīsa est; ea rēgiae est proxima.
7. Multae urbēs ignī ab exercitū Rōmānō vāstātae sunt.
8. Cīvēs Rōmānī, periculō ā peditibus liberātī, cōsilium cēpērunt.
9. Paris, postquam Trōiam pervēnit, ā patre acceptus est.
10. Cīvēs, adventū adulēscēntium malōrum terrītī, ad illam arcem fūgērunt.

F. *Write in Latin:*

1. One word was written on the golden apple. 2. For many years Priam reigned at Troy. 3. They were captured at dawn by the Trojans. 4. At daybreak we shall await the arrival of the infantry. 5. The rest of the garrison remained in the camp from noon until midnight. 6. After the children had been saved by the shepherd, they were carried home. 7. Having been recalled by our friends, we shall hasten to the island by night. 8. At midnight a large number of troops approached the wall but were not able to capture the city. 9. Although the boys have been summoned by their mother, they hesitate to come into the room. 10. After a ship had been built with the help of the goddess, Paris sailed to Greece with a few comrades.

SUPPLEMENTARY EXERCISES

A. *Write in the third person plural the perfect indicative active and passive of these verbs: accipiō, laudō, removeō, cōgō, mittō, audiō.*

B. *Translate:*

1. They were walking. 2. We have been defeated. 3. He will depart. 4. I had announced. 5. They have assembled. 6. You (s.) do demand. 7. Don't (s.) write. 8. She has been welcomed. 9. It has been burned. 10. He continued to reign.

VOCABULARY

glōria, glōriae, *f.*, fame, glory,  
renown

rēgia, rēgiae, *f.*, palace

lūx, lūcis, *f.*, light

rēgnō, rēgnāre, rēgnāvī,

rēgnātum, rule, reign

accipiō, accipere, accēpī,

acceptum, receive, welcome

scribō, scribere, scripsī,

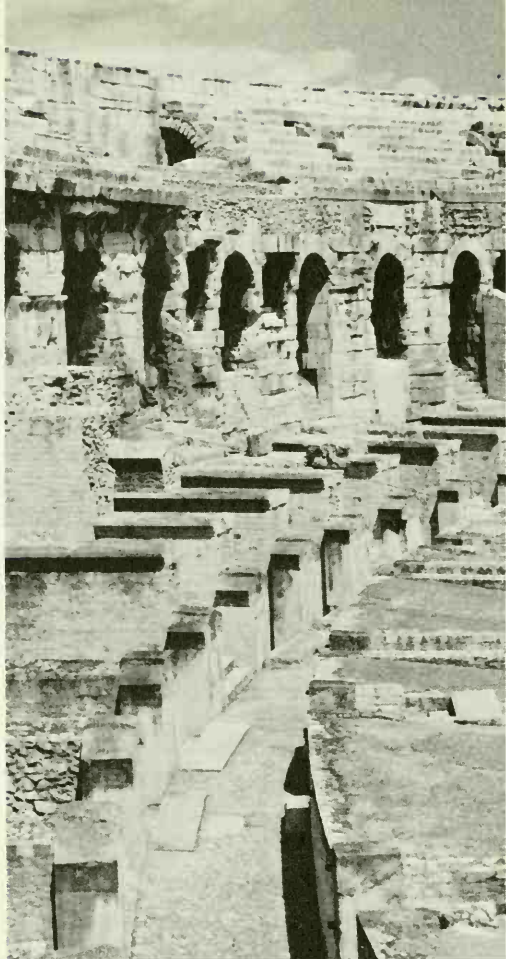
scriptum, write

vincō, vincere, vicī, victum,  
defeat, conquer

media nox, mediae noctis, *f.*,  
midnight; mediā nocte, at  
midnight

prīma lūx, prīmae lūcis, *f.*,  
daybreak, dawn; prīmā lūce,  
at dawn

noctū, *adverb*, by night



*Interior of the  
amphitheater at  
Nîmes, France*

30

### Pluperfect and Future Perfect Indicative Passive

Quī omnēs īnsidiās timet in nūllās incidit.

*He who fears every ambush falls into none.*

PUBLILIUS SYRUS

220

#### Dē Aureō Mālō (Part 4)

Brevī tempore tamen Paris et nova uxor nōn laetī sed miserī erant, quod trāns mare Menelāus cum prīncipibus Graecīs Trōiam vēnerat. Novem annōs prīncipēs Graecī cum

prīcipibus Trōiānīs pugnābant. Multī fortēs virī in campō  
Trōiae necātī sunt. Hector, fortissimus (*bravest*) filiōrum 5  
Priamī, in proeliō interfectus est. Achillēs, clārus dux Grae-  
cōrum, Hectorem interfēcit et corpus eius in pulvere (*dust*)  
post currum trāxit (*dragged*).

Posteā Paris Achillem interfēcit. Paris venēnātā (*poisoned*)  
vulnerātus sagittā ad Oenōnē nympham fūgit et ab eā 10  
auxilium petīvit. Oenōnē tamen īrāta quod memoriam  
amīcitiāe et amōris (*their friendship and love*) Paris dēposuerat  
eī auxilium nōn dedit. Itaque Paris mortuus est.<sup>1</sup>

Tandem Graeci per īnsidiās Trōiam cēpērunt. Equus  
magnus ā Graecīs aedificātus erat. Aliī mīlitēs in equum 15  
abditī erant; aliī ad īnsulam Tenedum nāvigāverunt. Trōiānī  
equum magnum invēnērunt et eum in urbem Trōiam cum  
celeritatē dūxērunt. Noctū dum Trōiānī dormiunt, Graeci  
ex equō dēsiliērunt (*jumped down*) et urbem incendērunt.  
Cēterī Graeci ab īsulā Tenedō vērērunt. Graeci multōs 20  
Trōiānōs interfēcērunt et multōs virōs fēmināsque ad Graeciam  
portāvērunt. Menelāus Helenam sēcum (*with him*) reportāvit.  
Memoriam iniūriarum uxōris dēposuit et cum eā in Graeciā  
multōs annōs rēgnābat.

## Respondē Latīnē :

1. Cūr Paris et nova uxor nōn laetī erant?
2. Quot (*How many*) annōs prīcipēs Graeci cum prīcipibus Trōiānīs pugnābant?
3. Quis erat Hector? Quid eī accidit (*happened*)?
4. Quis interfēcit Achillem?
5. Cūr Oenōnē Paridī auxilium nōn dedit?
6. Quōmodo Graeci Trōiam cēpērunt?
7. Invēnēruntne Trōiānī equum magnum? Quid fēcērunt?
8. Noctū quid accidit?
9. Quō portāvērunt multōs virōs fēmināsque Graeci?
10. Quem (*Whom, acc. s.*) reportāvit Menelāus sēcum?

<sup>1</sup> **mortuus est, died.** There are a few verbs in Latin which have a passive form but an active meaning. These verbs are called deponents.

## 221 PLUPERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE

The pluperfect indicative passive is formed by combining the perfect participle passive with the imperfect tense of the verb **sum**.

<b>portātus eram</b>	I had been carried
<b>portātus erās</b>	you had been carried
<b>portātus erat</b>	he had been carried
<b>portātī erāmus</b>	we had been carried
<b>portātī erātis</b>	you had been carried
<b>portātī erant</b>	they had been carried
<b>vīsus eram</b>	I had been seen
<b>vīsus erās</b>	you had been seen
<b>vīsus erat</b>	he had been seen
<b>vīsī erāmus</b>	we had been seen
<b>vīsī erātis</b>	you had been seen
<b>vīsī erant</b>	they had been seen

## 222 FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE

The future perfect indicative passive is formed by combining the perfect participle passive with the future tense of the verb **sum**.

<b>ductus erō</b>	I shall have been led
<b>ductus eris</b>	you will have been led
<b>ductus erit</b>	he will have been led
<b>ductī erimus</b>	we shall have been led
<b>ductī eritis</b>	you will have been led
<b>ductī erunt</b>	they will have been led
<b>audītus erō</b>	I shall have been heard
<b>audītus eris</b>	you will have been heard
<b>audītus erit</b>	he will have been heard
<b>audītī erimus</b>	we shall have been heard
<b>audītī eritis</b>	you will have been heard
<b>audītī erunt</b>	they will have been heard

**223** In these constructions, as in the perfect indicative passive, the perfect participle passive agrees with the subject of the sentence in gender, number, and case. The agent is expressed by the ablative case with **ab**.

**Aqua ā servō portāta erat.**

The water had been carried by the slave.

**Gladii in castris ā militibus relictī erunt.**

The swords will have been left in the camp by the soldiers.

224

EXERCISES

A. *Give the tense and voice of each verb and translate:*

Missum erat.      Missus erō.      Mittit.      Miserāmus.  
Mittēbam.      Miserimus.      Mīsistī.      Missī erimus.

B. *Give the tense and voice of each verb and translate:*

1. They used to lead.    2. She will lead.    3. I have led.  
4. He had led.    5. They (*masc.*) will have been led.  
6. You (*s.*) had been led.    7. They (*fem.*) have been led.  
8. He will have led.    9. We are leading.    10. We shall lead.

C. *Rewrite using the passive voice:*

1. Graeci Trōiam cēpērunt.    2. Principēs cōpiās coēgerant.  
3. Multōs virōs in equum<sup>2</sup> abdiderint.    4. Altum templum aedificāvimus.  
5. Magnam pecūniam reportāverātis.    6. Trōiānī equum magnum invēnerint.  
7. Nōs monuerit.    8. Quō eōs mīsistī?    9. Quandō urbem incendērunt?  
10. Tē vīderam.

D. *Translate these sentences:*

1. Eī clārō ducī ūnī imperium datum erit.
2. Tōta Gallia ab eīs prīncipibus superāta erat.
3. Bellum ab hostibus vestrīs parātum erit.
4. Alii in urbe relictī erant, alii in agrōs ductī erant.
5. Memoriam bellī nōn dēpōnēmus.
6. Quod silva longē (*far*) pertinet, insidiās timēbunt.
7. Eō tempore audāx cōsiliū ā Graecīs captum erat.
8. Quid alter exercitus faciet cum ex campō discesserimus?
9. Brevī tempore omnia templa sacra urbis captae incēnsa erant.
10. Sī cōpiae inter collēs abditae erunt, impetum hostium sustinēre poterimus.

<sup>2</sup> Accusative because of the idea of motion implied in **abdidērunt**.



E. *Write in Latin:*

1. The towns have been burned by a huge army.
2. The camp had been moved from that plain.
3. Our leader had been wounded by an arrow and a long spear.
4. The citizens had been freed from danger by this famous king.
5. If he fears an ambush, he will send his chariots into the plain before noon.
6. If the right wing is stationed there before the fifth hour, the enemy will withdraw from the hills.
7. The Greeks had fought many battles with these chiefs but had never been conquered.
8. If the chiefs are hidden in the horse, in a short time we shall be able to capture Troy.

### SUPPLEMENTARY EXERCISES

- A. *Write in the third person singular with English translations, the perfect, pluperfect and future perfect indicative active and passive of:* **dīmittō, rapiō, terreō, vocō.**
- B. *Write in Latin:*
1. He had forgotten his wife.
  2. They had remembered his arrival.
  3. We had been led to Rome.
  4. Unless you (s.) come soon, your children will forget you.
  5. If the messenger is captured, we shall make an attack on the king's troops.

225

### VOCABULARY

**cūra, cūrae, f.,** care, anxiety  
**īnsīdiae, īnsīdiārum, f. pl.,**  
ambush, trap, treachery  
**memoria, memoriae, f.,**  
memory; **memoriam**  
**dēpōnere,** to forget, *with*  
*genitive*; **memoriam retinēre,**  
to remember, *with genitive*  
**campus, -i, m.,** plain  
**prīnceps, prīncipis, m.,** leading  
man, chief man, chief

**tempus, temporis, n.,** time  
**currus, currūs, m.,** chariot  
**brevis, brevis, breve,** short  
**aedificō, aedificāre, aedificāvī,**  
**aedificātum,** build  
**reportō, reportāre, reportāvī,**  
**reportātum,** carry back  
**abdō, abdere, abdidī, abditum,**  
hide; *with in + acc.,* hide in  
**quot indeclinable interrogative**  
**adjective,** how many

The suffix **-bilis** means *able to be, capable of being*. It is added to the present stem of the verb.

1. If the verb belongs to the first conjugation, the stem vowel **ā** remains, the Latin adjective ends in **-ābilis**, and the English adjective ends in *-able*.

Latin verb:	<b>cūrō, cūrāre, cūrāvī, cūrātum</b> , care for, treat, cure
Present stem:	<b>cūrā-</b>
Latin adjective:	<b>curābilis</b> , able to be cured, capable of being cured.
English adjective:	<i>curable</i>

Form English derivatives as above from the following verbs: **portō, nāvīgō, laudō, arō**.

2. If the verb belongs to the second, third, or fourth conjugation, the stem vowel is **i** or changes to **i**, the Latin adjective ends in **-ibilis** (**ībilis**), and the English adjective ends in *-ible*.

Latin verb:	<b>audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītum</b> , hear
Present stem:	<b>audī-</b>
Latin adjective:	<b>audībilis</b> , able to be heard
English adjective:	<i>audible</i>

Form English derivatives as above from: **crēdō, redūcō**.

3. Words with the suffix **-bilis** sometimes have the prefix **in-** or **im-**. What effect does the prefix have on the meaning?

Using the prefix **in-** or **im-** and the suffix **-bilis** form English derivatives from: **habitō, dubitō, vincō, vulnerō**.

Use each of the English derivatives formed in 1, 2 and 3 correctly in a sentence so as to show its meaning.

4. Exceptions. The suffix *-able*, instead of *-ible*, is occasionally added to verbs of the second, third, and fourth conjugations: *tenable, movable*, and sometimes to verbs that have no Latin origin: *likeable, lovable*.



*Wedding scene from  
a sarcophagus,  
Museo Nazionale  
delle Terme, Rome*

# 31

## Ablative Absolute

Quid rīdēs? Mūtātō nōmine dē tē fābula narrātur.

*Why do you laugh? Just change the name,  
and the tale is told of you.*

HORACE: SATIRES 1.1, 69-70

227

## Dē Virginibus Sabīnīs

Romulus' band was composed largely of highwaymen and cattle rustlers. They were feared and distrusted by neighboring tribes.

The Sabines were an ancient Italian people who lived next to Latium, the district where Rome was founded.

Urbs Rōma ā Rōmulō, rēge prīmō Rōmānōrum, condita est. In oppidō nūper (*recently*) in ūnō ex septem collibus aedificātō virī multī erant, paucae fēminae. Incolae autem (*however*) urbium finitimārum multīs dē causīs filiās in mātirimōnium

Rōmānīs dare nōlēbant (*did not wish*). Itaque Rōmulus hoc 5  
(*the following*) cōnsilium cēpit, quod Rōmānōs uxōrēs habēre  
volēbat (*he wished*).

Omnēs fīnitimī, in primīs (*especially*) fēminae, aedificia in  
monte Palātīnō aedificāta vidēre volēbant. Itaque, omnibus  
rēbus parātīs, Rōmulus ad spectāculum magnum, quod (*which*) 10  
magnā cum cūrā parāverat, fīnitimōs convocāvit. Primā lūce  
aderant multī ex oppidīs fīnitimīs: Sabīnī quoque, quī (*who*)  
erant proximī, cum mulieribus liberisque convēnerant. Tan-  
dem tempus spectāculī vēnit. Dum Sabīnī spectāculum  
spectant, signō datō, adulēscētēs Rōmānī incurrērunt (*rushed* 15  
*in*), virginēsque rapuērunt. Virginibus raptīs maestī parentēs  
fūgērunt. “Deī,” inquit (*they said*), “vōs Rōmānōs prō hīs  
magnīs iniūriīs pūnient.” Deinde (*Then*) domum properāvē-  
runt et bellum parāre cōstituērunt.

Posteā virginēs Rōmānīs ignōvērunt, et laetae cum virīs 20  
Rōmae habitābant. Hīs rēbus audītīs, parentēs bellō dēstitē-  
runt. Pāce factā, paulātīm numerus incolārum augēbātur  
(*imperfect passive, increased*), et post paucōs annōs erant  
Rōmae multa mīlia (*thousands, with gen.*) hominum.

### Respondē Latīnē :

1. Ā quō urbs Rōma condita est?
2. Nōne erant in oppidō nūper aedificātō paucae fēminae?
3. Quī (*nom. pl.*) filiās in mātīmōnium Rōmānīs dare nōlēbant (*did not wish*)?
4. Cūr nōlēbant?
5. Cūr cēpit Rōmulus hoc cōnsilium?
6. Quandō Rōmulus ad spectāculum magnum fīnitimōs convocāvit?
7. Convēnerantne Sabīnī cum mulieribus liberisque?
8. Quandō adulēscētēs Rōmānī incurrērunt virginēsque rapuērunt?
9. Cūr fūgērunt maestī parentēs?

Compare:

- (a) The troops, having been collected, fought a battle, *and*
- (b) The troops having been collected, the leader fought a battle.

In (a) *troops* is the subject of the verb and is in the nominative case; *having been collected* is a perfect participle passive in agreement with *troops*. Cōpiae coāctae proelium fēcērunt.

In (b) *the leader* is the subject of the verb, and *battle* is the object. *Troops* is neither the subject nor the object of the verb; *troops* with its participle, *having been collected*, forms a phrase grammatically independent of the rest of the sentence. In English grammar *troops* is said to be in the nominative absolute. In Latin such an independent phrase is put in the ablative absolute. The noun is in the ablative, and the participle is in agreement with it. **Cōpiūs coāctīs dux proelium fēcit.**

An ablative absolute phrase expresses or implies some idea of time, cause, condition or concession connected with the main idea.

**Oppidō incēnsō hostēs discēdent.**

(*Time*) When the town has been burned, the enemy will withdraw.

(*Cause*) The enemy will withdraw because the town has been burned.

(*Condition*) If the town is burned, the enemy will withdraw.

(*Concession*) Though the town has been burned, the enemy will withdraw.

Sometimes the ablative absolute is best translated by a principal clause.

The enemy will burn the town and withdraw.

Examine the following sentences:

**Ponte ruptō pontem novum facient.**

Since (as) the bridge has been broken down, they will build a new bridge.

If the bridge is broken down, they will build a new bridge.

**Armīs dēpositīs pācem fēcērunt.**

When (after) they had laid down their arms, they made peace. They laid down their arms and made peace.

**Rēge vulnerātō mīlitēs pugnābant.**

Although the king had been wounded, the soldiers kept on fighting.

Sometimes the ablative absolute is best translated by a prepositional phrase.

**Urbe conditā, Rōmānī uxōrēs petēbant.**

After the founding of the city, the Romans  
began to look for wives.

The context will usually assist us in determining the best English equivalent.

**229** The perfect participle of a regular verb in Latin is passive in meaning: **factus**, *having been made*. In the sentence

The envoys, having made peace, departed from Rome,

English uses a perfect participle active. Before translating this sentence into Latin, we must reword it so that the perfect participle passive can be used:

Peace having been made, the envoys departed from Rome.

*Peace having been made* is a grammatically independent phrase, and is translated by the ablative absolute.

**Pāce factā lēgātī Rōmā discessērunt.**

**230** A noun that is connected as subject or object with the main verb of the sentence cannot be put in the ablative.

**Cōpiīs in silvās abditīs Rōmānī Etrūscōs exspectābant.**

After hiding their troops in the woods, the Romans awaited the Etruscans.

**BUT Cōpiae in silvās abditae Etrūscōs exspectābant.**

The troops, after being hidden in the woods, awaited the Etruscans.

**Virō vulnerātō discessērunt.**

They wounded the man and went away.

**BUT Virum vulnerātum reliquērunt.**

They wounded the man and left him.



A. *Translate. From the context try to select the best (most likely) English equivalent for the ablative absolute.*

1. Hostibus victis, Rōmānī discesserunt.
2. Pāce factā, arma dēpōnēmus.
3. Omnibus aedificiis incēnsis, mercātōrēs fūgērunt.
4. Gladiō āmissō, mīles sine tēlō fortiter pugnābat.
5. Obsidibus remissis, pācem faciēmus.
6. Hectore interfectō, Paris Achillem necāvit.
7. Ponte rūptō, Horātius in flūmen dēsiluit (*jumped down*).
8. Urbe conditā, Rōmulus numquam postea vīsus est.
9. Pecūniā redditā, puerī nōn pūnītī sunt.
10. Mālō aureō Venerī datō, Paris Helenam in mātīmōnium dūxit.

B. *Translate the English clause or phrase by an ablative absolute:*

1. \_\_\_\_\_, dea erat misera.  
Because her daughter had been lost
2. \_\_\_\_\_, Rōmānī Etrūscōs timēbant.  
Although the kings had been driven out
3. \_\_\_\_\_, hostēs agrōs vāstāvērunt.  
After blockading the city
4. \_\_\_\_\_, incolae arma nōn dēpōnent.  
Although the city has been besieged for many days
5. \_\_\_\_\_, parentēs erunt laetī.  
If the boy is freed
6. \_\_\_\_\_, peditēs ad aciem accessērunt.  
The cavalry having been dismissed
7. \_\_\_\_\_, cōpiae pugnābant.  
Although the general had been wounded
8. \_\_\_\_\_, magister rēs cognōvit.  
After reading this book

C. *Translate:*

1. Urbe Rōmā conditā, Rōmulus multōs cīvēs coēgit.
2. Aedificiis in monte Palātīnō aedificātis, multī finitīmī Rōmam veniēbant.
3. Hīs rēbus audītis, servōs captōs pūnīvit.
4. Pāce factā mīlitēs domum dīmissī sunt.

5. Hīs rēbus cognitīs, captīvīs ignōvit. 6. Impetū factō, hostēs ex castrīs expulimus. 7. Bellō gestō, fīnitīmī nostrī nōbīscum pācem fēcērunt. 8. Proeliō factō, hostēs arma dēposuērunt. 9. Armīs dēpositīs Sabīnī bellō dēstiterant. 10. Pecūniā āmissā, puer domō discēdere vetitus est.

D. *Write in Latin:*

1. On receipt of the money, we increased our property.
2. On the defeat of their army, they had ceased from war.
3. On their defeat, they sought peace.
4. The signal was given and they made an attack.
5. The hostages who had been received were left in Rome.
6. After the hostages had been received, they did not fear war.
7. After the town had been besieged for many days, the citizens laid down their arms.
8. The city, having been captured by our forces, was burned.
9. When the city had been burned, the inhabitants were all taken (dūcō) to Rome.
10. In summer, after the fields have been plowed, we can increase our property.

## SUPPLEMENTARY EXERCISE

*Translate:*

1. Hīs rēbus cognitīs, prīncipēs bellō dēsistere coopērunt.
2. Duodecim nāvibus āmissīs, reliquīs nāvigāre poterat.
3. Nostrī (*Our men*) incolumēs, paucīs vulnerātīs, ad castra vērunt.
4. Paulātim numerus hostium nostrōrum auctus erat.
5. Signō datō, nostrī impetum fēcērunt.
6. Cōpiīs superātīs, Sabīnī arma nōn dēpōnent.
7. Imperātor, omnibus equitibus missīs, nōs fīnitīmōs pūnīre iussit.
8. Monte occupātō, imperātor proelium nōn fēcīt, sed auxilia expectābat.

<b>causa, causae, f.,</b> cause, reason; <b>multis dē causīs,</b> for many reasons	<b>dēsistō, dēsistere, dēstitī,</b> <b>dēstitūm,</b> cease
<b>signum, -ī, n.,</b> signal, standard; <b>signum proeliī (gen.) dare,</b> to give the signal for battle	<b>ignōscō, ignōscere, ignōvī,</b> <b>ignōtūm,</b> <i>with dative,</i> forgive
<b>spectāculum, -ī, n.,</b> show, spectacle	<b>pūniō, pūnīre, pūnīvī, pūnītūm,</b> punish
<b>maestus, -a, -um,</b> sad	<b>adsum, adesse, adfuī,</b> be near, be at hand, attend
<b>augeō, augēre, auxī, auctum,</b> increase	<b>paulātīm,</b> <i>adverb,</i> little by little, gradually

**Adsum** is a compound of **sum**; the present infinitive is **adesse**; the six tenses of the indicative are **adsum, aderam, aderō, adfuī, adfueram, adfuerō**.

**Augeō** in the active voice means *make greater*; in the passive, *be made greater* or *become greater*: **Rem auxit,** *He increased his property*; **Numerus incolārum auctus est,** *The population has increased*.

Some Latin verbs may be used both transitively, that is with a direct object, and intransitively, that is absolutely or with some construction other than a direct object. **Sistō**, the verb of which **dēsistō**, in this vocabulary, is a compound, is an example of a verb that has both transitive (*cause to stand, place*) and intransitive (*stand, stand firm, stand still, halt*) meanings.

Compounds of **sistō** are most often used intransitively. **Dēsistō** may be used with a complementary infinitive (**Pugnāre dēstitērunt,** *They ceased to fight, stopped fighting*) or with the ablative (**Pugnā dēstitērunt,** *They ceased from battle, stopped fighting*).

Using the prefixes **ab, con-, ex, in, re-**, form compounds of the verb **sistō**. Derive the meaning of each compound verb, then check with the Latin dictionary to verify the meaning and to check whether the compound verb may be used transitively as well as intransitively.



The Pont du Gard, built in 14 A.D. near Nîmes, France. This photograph of the interior of one of the most famous aqueducts provides a chance to study the system of Roman pipelines.

## REVIEW LESSON FIVE

### I. Vocabulary

- A. Give the *genitive singular, gender and meaning of these nouns:*

aciēs	equitātus	manus	sapientia
adventus	exercitus	mātrimōnium	saxum
campus	fuga	memoria	senātus
causa	glōria	merīdiēs	signum
cornū	hōra	nūntius	spectāculum
cūra	imperium	parēns	spēs
currus	impetus	peditātus	templum
custōs	īnsidiae (pl.)	poena	tempus
diēs	Iuppiter	prīnceps	Trōia
discessus	lacus	rēgia	verbum
domus	lūx	rēs	vigilia

- B. Give the *nominative case in all genders (if declinable) and the meaning:*

alius	neuter	quīnque	sinister
alter	nōnus	quīntus	sōlus
aureus	novem	reliquus	tertius
brevis	nūllus	sapiēns	tōtus
decem	octāvus	secundus	trēs
decimus	octō	septem	trīstis
dexter	prīmus	septimus	ūllus
duo	quārtus	sex	ūnus
ingēns	quattuor	sextus	uter
maestus			

- C. Give the *principal parts and the meaning of these verbs:*

abdō	cognōscō	postulō	remittō
accipiō	dēsistō	pūniō	reportō
adsum	exspectō	reddō	scribō
aedificō	ignōscō	rēgnō	vincō
augeō			

- D. Give the *meaning of these words and phrases:*

frūstrā	paulātīm
impetum facere in	poenās dare
in mātrimōnium dūcere	postea

ita  
media nox  
mediā nocte  
memoriam dēpōnere  
memoriam retinēre  
nam  
nēmō

prīma lūx  
prīmā lūce  
proelium facere  
quōmodo  
quot  
subitō  
signum proeliī dare

## II.

### Forms

- A. *Decline hic lacus; domus; aciēs; spēs āmissa.*
- B. *Conjugate vincō in the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative passive.*

## III.

### Forms and Syntax

*Complete these sentences by filling in the blanks:*

1. Nouns of the second declension ending in **-us** have the ending \_\_\_\_ in the genitive singular; those of the fourth declension ending in **-us** have the ending \_\_\_\_ in the genitive singular.
2. Most nouns of the fourth declension are \_\_\_\_\_ in gender; **domus** and **manus** are \_\_\_\_\_ and **cornū** is \_\_\_\_\_.
3. Nouns of the fifth declension are those which end in \_\_\_\_ or \_\_\_\_ in the genitive singular.
4. Most fifth declension nouns are \_\_\_\_\_ in gender; **meridiēs** is \_\_\_\_\_.
5. For masculine and feminine nouns the accusative singular endings of the five declensions are \_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_, and \_\_\_\_; the genitive plural, \_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_, and \_\_\_\_; the accusative plural, \_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_, and \_\_\_\_.
6. For neuter nouns the \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ cases always have the same endings; the accusative plural ending of neuter nouns fourth declension is \_\_\_\_.
7. Nine adjectives, such as **alius**, have slight irregularities in declension. The genitive singular ending is \_\_\_\_ and the dative singular, \_\_\_\_\_. In the plural these adjectives are declined like \_\_\_\_\_.



8. With names of cities, towns, small islands and **domus**, place *to which* is expressed by the \_\_\_\_\_ case \_\_\_\_\_ a preposition; place *from which*, by the \_\_\_\_\_ case \_\_\_\_\_ a preposition; place *in (at) which* by a special case, the \_\_\_\_\_.
9. The locative singular endings for the first three declensions are \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_, and \_\_\_\_\_ or \_\_\_\_\_. The locative plural endings are the same as those of the \_\_\_\_\_ case.
10. When the subject of the sentence is the doer of the action, the verb is in the \_\_\_\_\_ voice; when the subject is acted upon, in the \_\_\_\_\_ voice.
11. A participle is a verbal \_\_\_\_\_ which agrees with the noun it modifies in \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_. It retains its verbal characteristics of \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ and may take an object and a modifier.

#### IV.

#### Translation

##### A. *Translate the Latin sentence:*

1. Nūlla pecūnia sex adulēscētibz data est quod parentibz eō diē nōn pāruerant.
2. Multōs diēs pater cum alterō filiō in lātō marī nāvigāverat; nunc cum alterō filiō ad urbēs pulchrās Graeciae appropinquābat.
3. Quārtā vigiliā reliquus peditātus hostium victus est et multī captīvī ab duce nostrō exspectātī sunt.
4. Aliae puellae cum mātribz suis Rōmae manēre poterant sed aliae obsidēs ad malum rēgem remissae sunt.
5. Tarquinius, ex patriā expulsus, auxilium ab prīncipe hostium postulāre nōn dubitāvit. Nōne iniūria maxima erat?
6. Porsena, pāce cum senātū populōque Rōmānō factā, memoriā Tarquiniī dēposuit et pugnāre dēstitit.
7. Mālō frūstrā postulātō, duae deae erant irātae; Venus sōla propter dōnum acceptum laeta erat.
8. Cūr, signō proeliī datō, Achillēs in castrīs sedet?
9. Cīvēs insidiās nōn cognōverant et paucīs horīs equus ingēns in urbem ductus est.

B. Fill in the blank with the correct translation of the English word or phrase:

1. Impetus \_\_\_\_\_ (at noon) factus est. 2. \_\_\_\_\_ (If guards are seen), fugiēmus. 3. Verba \_\_\_\_\_ (spoken) audire nōn poterat. 4. \_\_\_\_\_ (To which man of the two) obsidēs trāditī sunt? 5. Fēminās puellāsque \_\_\_\_\_ (at home) labōrāre iussit. 6. Iter \_\_\_\_\_ (for five days) per campōs fēcērunt. 7. Nōmen \_\_\_\_\_ (of neither chief) equitātuī nōtum est. 8. \_\_\_\_\_ (Since the tenth legion has been sent) cēterae legiōnēs magnam spem victōriae habent. 9. \_\_\_\_\_ (Within three years) rēgiā ingentem et pulchram aedificābunt. 10. Cornū dextrum in monte ante prīmam lūcem \_\_\_\_\_ (will have been stationed).

C. Change the verb from active to passive making the necessary changes:

1. Servus fugam captīvōrum nūntiāvit. 2. Adulēscētēs magistrum sapientem amāverant. 3. Currum nostrum invēnimus. 4. Dedistīne poenās?

## V. Word Study and Derivatives

A. Using the suffix **-ābilis** or **-ibilis** form derivatives from:

revocō      audiō      vulnerō      legō      dēfendō

Note the effect of adding the prefix **in-** (**ir-**, **il-**) to the derivatives formed.

B. Give the fourth declension noun, with meaning, formed from the supine stem of these verbs: **adveniō**, **ascendō**, **discēdō**, **stō**.

C. Explain the italicized words in these sentences using your Latin vocabulary to derive the meaning:

1. It has been said that eternal *vigilance* is the price we pay for liberty.
2. The monotonous tones of the commencement speaker and his extreme *verbosity* made his listeners sleepy.
3. An *insidious* plot is being devised.
4. The government, in spite of an announced declaration of *neutrality*, permitted the army to invade a small and helpless country.

5. The upper pane in that door is *translucent*, but not transparent.
  6. The *cornucopia*, representing hours of hard work, was the conversation piece of the party.
  7. Does the patient require *custodial* care?
  8. The doctors have no *alternative*; the diagnosis indicates surgery.
  9. The *temporal* affairs of the church are entrusted to the Board of Trustees.
  10. Sections of the *penal* code are to be studied and revised by a committee.
  11. The legislature adjourned *sine die*.
  12. In 1066 *A.D.*, William of Normandy invaded England and brought the culture of the continent to the island.
- D. *Explain the derivation of the names of the twelve months.*

## VI. Roman History and Mythology

*Identify the following from the description given:*

1. Haec puella Rōmāna, obses Porsenae data, Rōmam inter tēla hostium trānāvit.
2. Hī frātrēs Graecī prō Rōmā pugnāvērunt.
3. Hic deus fulmina faciēbat.
4. Hic ultimus rēx Trōiae erat.
5. Hic adulēscēns pulcher Helenam amāvit.
6. Haec nymp̄ha erat īrāta quod Paris memoriam amīcitiae et amōris dēposuerat.
7. Haec dea aureum mālum mediōs in deōs et deās iēcīt.
8. "Diem perdidī!" inquit hic.
9. Haec dea erat uxor sororque Iovis.
10. Huic deae Paris aureum mālum dedit.
11. "Glōriam bellī tibi dabō," inquit Paridī haec dea.
12. Hic erat nūntius deōrum.
13. In hōc monte habitābant deī deaeque.
14. Hic filius Priamī erat fortissimus Trōiānōrum.
15. Hic clārus dux Graecōrum Hectorem interfēcīt et ab frātre eius interfectus est.



Paris, a Trojan prince, seduces Helen and persuades her to elope with him to Troy.

## VII.

### Sight Reading

#### Dē Cane Avidō

Āmittit meritō (*deservedly*) proprium quī aliēnum petit. Ōlim canis per flūmen carnem ōre ferēns (*carrying*) natābat. Aquārum in speculō vīdit simulācrum suum aliamque praedam ab aliō cane ferrī (*to be carried*) putābat. Statim carnem ēripere cupiēbat; dēceptus autem aviditātē suā, cibum quem (*which*) tenēbat ōre āmisit nec carnem quam petēbat potuit tangere.

*Moral:* Thou shalt not covet.

PHAEDRUS 1.4 (*Adapted*)

aliēnus, -a, -um, another's  
aviditās, -tātis, *f.*, longing for  
avidus, -a, -um, greedy  
canis, canis, *m.*, dog  
carō, carnis, *f.*, flesh  
cibus, -ī, *m.*, food  
dēceptus, -a, -um, cheated  
ēripiō, -ere, snatch

natō, -āre, swim  
ōs, ōris, *n.*, mouth  
proprius, -a, -um, one's own  
simulācrum, -ī, *n.*, image,  
likeness  
speculum, -ī, *n.*, mirror  
tangō, -ere, touch, reach

*Answer the following questions in English:*

1. Describe the dog crossing the river.
2. What did he see?
3. What mistake did he make?
4. Why was the mistake costly?



*Statue of the Emperor  
Marcus Aurelius,  
Rome*

# 32

## Present Indicative Passive: All Conjugations

Semper pauper eris, sī pauper es, Aemiliāne,  
Dantur opēs nullīs nunc nisi dīvitibus.

MARTIAL 5.81

*If poor you are, Aemilianus,  
Poor you'll always be;  
For wealth is given now-a-days  
To the rich only.*

234

### Dē Liscō (Part 1)

Liscus, dux Gallōrum, erat mīles fortis et audāx. Is, mīlitibus ad oppidum, quod (*which, nom. sing.*) erat caput rēgnī convocātis, hanc ōrātiōnem habuit:

“Vōs, Gallī, ā mē monēminī. Rōmānī magnīs itineribus in Galliam contendunt. Oppida nostra ab exercitū eōrum op- 5  
pugnantur, agrī vāstantur; multī ex nostrīs mīlitibus necantur;  
liberī fēminaeque adventū hostium terrentur.

“Cīvēs sumus cīvitātis liberae. Nēmō umquam nōs ignāvōs (cowards) appellāvit. Numquam memoriam iniūriarū Rōmānōrum dēpōnēmus. Memoriam virtūtis vestrae retinēte. 10  
Multīs dē causīs nōs (ourselves, acc.) armīs dēfendere dēbēmus. Mox proelium cum hostibus committēmus. Proeliō cum hostibus commissō nōlīte dubitāre usque<sup>1</sup> ad mortem prō patriā pugnāre.

Dum haec geruntur (While these things were being done, 15  
while this was taking place),<sup>2</sup> exercitus Rōmānus ad caput rēgnī Liscī accēdēbat. Vīcīs Gallōrum incēnsīs, incolae finitimōrum oppidōrum fūmum (smoke) ignium vidēre poterant. Ubi Rōmānī ad portam oppidī accessērunt, lēgātus Rōmānus magnā vōce clāmāvit: 20

“Audīte mē, Gallī. Vīcī vestrī incenduntur; aliī Gallī interficiuntur, aliī capiuntur. Multī senēs et fēminae multae in servitūtem dūcuntur. Nūllam spem salūtis habētis. Sī decem ex prīncipibus vestrīs obsidēs trādideritis atque reliquī mīlitēs arma dēposuerint, liberīs, senibus, fēminīs parcēmus.” 25

### Respondē Latīnē :

1. Ā quō Gallī monentur? 2. Ā quibus oppida Gallōrum vāstantur? 3. Num nēmō umquam Gallōs ignāvōs appellāvit? 4. Quid Gallī numquam dēpōnent? 5. Quandō Gallī proelium cum Rōmānīs committent? 6. Dum haec geruntur, quid faciēbat exercitus Rōmānus? 7. Quid poterant vidēre incolae oppidōrum finitimōrum? 8. Quid lēgātus Gallīs magnā vōce clāmat? 9. Quās iniūriās faciunt Rōmānī? 10. Parcentne Gallīs Rōmānī?

<sup>1</sup> Usque emphasizes a preposition: usque ad mare, all the way to the sea, right up to the sea.

<sup>2</sup> Note this use of the passive of gerō and learn the phrase.





*Photographie Giraudon*

Vercingetorix, a Gallic chieftain, waged war bravely but unsuccessfully against Julius Caesar. He was taken to Rome as a captive, dragged through the streets, and then put to death.

## 235

## PASSIVE VOICE

In Latin the passive voice of the present, imperfect, and future tenses is formed by using the passive personal endings with the same tense signs and vowel changes that occur in the active voice, with a few exceptions.

### PASSIVE PERSONAL ENDINGS

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1st person	-or, -r, I	-mur, we
2nd person	-ris, (-re), <sup>3</sup> you	-mini, you
3rd person	-tur, he, she, it	-ntur, they

<sup>3</sup> -re, the alternate ending for 2nd person singular passive is the one regularly used in the Imperative Passive.

FIRST CONJUGATION  
PRESENT INDICATIVE

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
<i>I carry,</i> <i>am carrying,</i> <i>do carry</i>	<i>I am carried,</i> <i>I am being</i> <i>carried</i>

SINGULAR

<b>portō</b>	<b>portor</b>
<b>portās</b>	<b>portāris</b>
<b>portat</b>	<b>portātur</b>

PLURAL

<b>portāmus</b>	<b>portāmur</b>
<b>portātis</b>	<b>portāmini</b>
<b>portant</b>	<b>portantur</b>

SECOND CONJUGATION  
PRESENT INDICATIVE

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
<i>I move,</i> <i>am moving,</i> <i>do move</i>	<i>I am moved,</i> <i>I am being</i> <i>moved</i>

SINGULAR

<b>moveō</b>	<b>moveor</b>
<b>movēs</b>	<b>movēris</b>
<b>movet</b>	<b>movētur</b>

PLURAL

<b>movēmus</b>	<b>movēmur</b>
<b>movētis</b>	<b>movēmini</b>
<b>movent</b>	<b>moventur</b>

Compare the quantity of the stem vowel in **portat** and **portātur**, in **movet** and **movētur**.

THIRD CONJUGATION  
PRESENT INDICATIVE

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
<i>I lead,</i> <i>am leading,</i> <i>do lead</i>	<i>I am led,</i> <i>I am being</i> <i>led</i>

SINGULAR

<b>dūcō</b>	<b>dūcor</b>
<b>dūcis</b>	<b>dūceris</b>
<b>dūcit</b>	<b>dūcitur</b>

PLURAL

<b>dūcimus</b>	<b>dūcimur</b>
<b>dūcitis</b>	<b>dūcimini</b>
<b>dūcunt</b>	<b>dūcuntur</b>

THIRD CONJUGATION — *IO*  
PRESENT INDICATIVE

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
<i>I take,</i> <i>am taking,</i> <i>do take</i>	<i>I am taken,</i> <i>I am being</i> <i>taken</i>

SINGULAR

<b>capīō</b>	<b>capior</b>
<b>capis</b>	<b>caperis</b>
<b>capit</b>	<b>capitur</b>

PLURAL

<b>capimus</b>	<b>capimur</b>
<b>capitis</b>	<b>capimini</b>
<b>capiunt</b>	<b>capiuntur</b>

Compare the active form **dūcis** with the passive **dūceris**; compare the active form **capis** with the passive **caperis**. Note the **e** before the personal ending of the passive.

## FOURTH CONJUGATION

## PRESENT INDICATIVE

## ACTIVE

## PASSIVE

*I hear, am hearing, do hear**I am heard, I am being heard*

## SINGULAR

## PLURAL

audiō      audīmus  
 audīs      audītis  
 audit      audiunt

audior      audīmur  
 audiris      audimini  
 auditur      audiuntur

236

## EXERCISES

A. *Translate:*

1. Movēris; dūceris; vocāris.
2. Convocantur; capiuntur; dīmittuntur.
3. Mittiminī; obsidēminī; laudāminī.
4. Terrētur; occupātur; āmittitur.
5. Iubēmur; vidēmur; accipimur.
6. Prohibēris; invenīris; relinqueris.
7. Iubeor; cōgor; audītus sum.
8. Ager vāstātur. Saxum iacitur. Saxum iactum est.

B. *Write in Latin:*

1. He is moving; he is being moved.
2. We free; we are freed.
3. They punish; they are punished.
4. I am sending; I am being sent.
5. You (s.) are seeking; you (s.) are being sought.
6. He forbids; he is forbidden.
7. They kill; they are killed.
8. We are calling; we are being called.
9. You (pl.) are holding back; you (pl.) are being held back.
10. They are driving; they are being driven.

C. *Change singular forms to plural:*

1. Exercitus ad oppidum accēdit.
2. Eques ad lēgātum mittitur.
3. Labōrāre iubēris.
4. Obses ā mē accipitur.
5. Id oppidum oppugnātur.

D. *Replace the active by the passive, making all necessary changes:*

1. Paucōs peditēs capimus.
2. Rōmānī oppidum nostrum oppugnant.
3. Cīvis bonus servum liberat.
4. Sociī vestrī agrōs nostrōs vāstant.
5. Saxa iaciō.

E. *Translate:*

1. Tū labōrāre iubēris, ego nōn iubeor.
2. Magna victōria finitimīs nostrīs ab hōc nūntiō nūntiātur.
3. Pōns tempestāte rumpitur.
4. Magnae cōpiaē in silvās abduntur.
5. Obsēdēruntne umquam Sabīnī urbem Rōmam?
6. Dum Sabīnī spectāculum spectant, virginēs rapiuntur.
7. Novā urbe ā pāstōribus conditā, multī incolae cōguntur.
8. Hostēs exercitum nostrum timēre videntur.<sup>4</sup>
9. Nōlīte pūnīre illōs maestōs servōs; eīs ignōscite.
10. In finitimam prōvinciam magnīs itineribus dūcimur.

F. *Write in Latin:*

1. A speech is being delivered by the leader in the Forum.
2. A city is being founded on the hill.
3. The farmers, although they are old men, are being led into slavery.
4. Who is being driven from the city by the angry citizens?
5. Do not forget your friends who have been slain in battle.
6. Without any reason our lands are gradually being destroyed by the Gauls.

## SUPPLEMENTARY EXERCISES

A. *Replace the personal pronoun of the first person by that of the second, and vice versa; make any necessary changes.*

1. Nōs ā patre monēmur.
2. Tū saepe laudāris.
3. Pecūnia mihi datur.
4. Tū in servitūtem dūceris.
5. Arma ā nobīs trāduntur.

B. *Change singular forms to plural:*

1. Fortis mīles laudātur.
2. Ōrātiō ā duce habētur.
3. Haec rēs ā tē scītur.
4. Parce mihi.
5. Prōvincia Rōmāna vāstātur.

C. *Replace the active by the passive, making all necessary changes:*

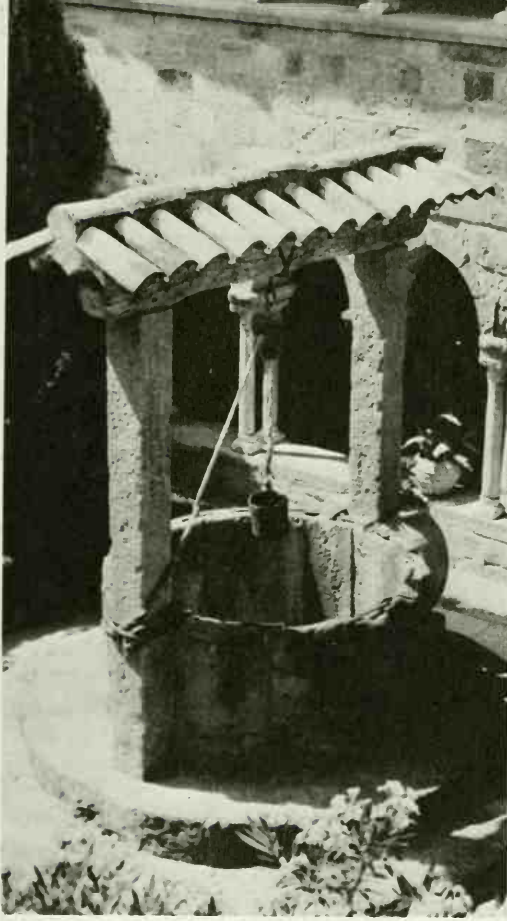
1. Arma nōn capitis.
2. Incolae hostēs vident.
3. Num obsidēs Rōmānīs datis?
4. Vulnus grave accipit.
5. Hostēs in urbe inveniunt.

<sup>4</sup> Videor may mean *I am seen* or *I seem*. The latter meaning is very common. Timēre vidētur, *He seems to be afraid*.

**vīcus, -ī, m.,** village  
**ōrātiō, ōrātiōnis, f.,** speech;  
     **ōrātiōnem habēre,** to deliver  
     a speech  
**senex, senis (gen. pl. senum), m.,**  
     old man  
**servitūs, servitūtis, f.,** slavery  
**committō, committere, commisi,**  
     **commissum,** entrust, commit;  
**proelium committere,** to begin  
     or engage in battle

**contendō, contendere, contendi,**  
     **contentum,** strive; hasten,  
     hurry; fight  
**parcō, parcere, peperci or parsi,**  
     **parsum,** with dative, spare  
**umquam, adverb,** ever  
**atque (or, before a consonant only,**  
     **ac), and, and also, and further**  
**dum haec geruntur,** while this  
     was taking place or going on  
**magnis itineribus,** by forced  
     marches<sup>5</sup>

<sup>5</sup> Caesar's army ordinarily marched about 15 miles a day; on a forced march they would cover 25 miles or more.



*Ancient well in  
Frejus, France*

# 33

## Imperfect and Future Indicative Passive All Conjugations

Ūnum prō multīs dabitur caput.

*One life shall be given for many.*

VERGIL, AENEID 5, 815

238

### Dē Liscō (Part 2)

Verbīs lēgātī audītīs, Gallī magnopere movēbantur. Omnis Gallia ab Rōmānīs occupābātur, oppida expugnābantur et dēlēbantur, agrī vāstābantur, incolae expellēbantur. Itaque, cōnsiliō (*council of war*) convocātō, Liscus lēgātō Rōmānō respondit:

5



“Inīquum est Rōmānōs in Galliam venīre. Nōs vōbīs nōn sumus inimīcī. Pācem et amīcitiam populī Rōmānī petimus. Vōs moneō; sī urbem nostram oppugnāveritis, prō liberīs amātīs uxōribusque pugnābimus. Memoriam iniūriae vestrae  
10 retinēbimus. Ōlim (*Some day*) vōs vincēmus; neminī parcēmus.”

Interim castra nōn longē ab urbe pōnēbantur et vāllō fossāque mūniēbantur, frūmentum comportābātur, praesidium collocābātur, aciēs instruēbātur. Nūlla spēs pācis relinquēbātur.

15 Multōs diēs Rōmānī oppidum Liscī obsidēbant. Sed oppidum, quod obsidiōne capere nōn poterant, expugnāre cōstituērunt. Itaque lēgātus Rōmānus, priusquam impetum fēcīt, mīlitēs convocāvit.

“Hodiē (*Today*),” inquit, “id oppidum oppugnābimus. Sī  
20 eritis fortēs, id capiētis. Nihil nōs prohibēre poterit. Multa dōna et magna praemia vōbīs dabuntur. Fortēs mīlitēs habēbiminī (*You will be considered, thought*). Amīcitia populī Rōmānī ā prīncipibus tōtīus Galliae petētur.”

Tum, aciē instructā, signum proeliī dedit. Sub mūrōs  
25 oppidī accessērunt. Subitō omnibus portīs<sup>1</sup> Gallī ēruptiōnem fēcērunt (*burst forth*). Sex hōrās pugnābātur (*Fighting went on, the battle continued*).

Tandem, multīs interfectīs vulnerātisque, Gallī repulsī arma dēpōnere coāctī sunt. Libertās Gallōrum fortium āmissa est.

### Respondē Latīnē :

1. Cūr convocāvit cōsiliū Liscus? 2. Quid est inīquum Rōmānōs facere? 3. Suntne Gallī Rōmānīs inimīcī? 4. Interim quae in Galliā gerēbantur? 5. Cūr cōstituērunt Rōmānī oppidum Gallōrum expugnāre? 6. Quandō convocāvit lēgātus mīlitēs? 7. Sī erunt fortēs, quid facient mīlitēs Rōmānī? 8. Quandō dedit lēgātus signum proeliī? 9. Multīs interfectīs vulnerātisque, quid Gallī facere coāctī sunt? 10. Quid Gallī āmiserant?

<sup>1</sup> With *ēruptiōnem facere*, place *from which* is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.

## 239 IMPERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE

The imperfect indicative passive of all conjugations is formed by adding the endings:

-bar	-bāmur
-bāris	-bāminī
-bātur	-bantur

to the present stem with the same vowel changes that occur in the imperfect active.

### FIRST CONJUGATION

*I was being carried*

SINGULAR	PLURAL
portābār	portābāmur
portābāris	portābāminī
portābātur	portābantur

### SECOND CONJUGATION

*I was being moved*

SINGULAR	PLURAL
movēbar	movēbāmur
movēbāris	movēbāminī
movēbātur	movēbantur

### THIRD CONJUGATION

*I was being led*

### THIRD CONJUGATION — IŌ

*I was being taken*

### FOURTH CONJUGATION

*I was being heard*

dūcēbar  
dūcēbāris  
dūcēbātur

#### SINGULAR

capiēbar  
capiēbāris  
capiēbātur

audiēbar  
audiēbāris  
audiēbātur

#### PLURAL

dūcēbāmur  
dūcēbāminī  
dūcēbantur

capiēbāmur  
capiēbāminī  
capiēbantur

audiēbāmur  
audiēbāminī  
audiēbantur

## 240 FUTURE INDICATIVE PASSIVE

The future indicative passive of first and second conjugation verbs is formed by adding the endings:

-bor	-bimur
-beris	-biminī
-bitur	-buntur

to the present stem.

## FIRST CONJUGATION

*I shall be carried,  
you will be carried*

SINGULAR	PLURAL
portābor	portābimur
portāberis	portābiminī
portābitur	portābuntur

## SECOND CONJUGATION

*I shall be moved,  
you will be moved*

SINGULAR	PLURAL
movēbor	movēbimur
movēberis	movēbiminī
movēbitur	movēbuntur

Compare active **portābis** with passive **portāberis**. Compare active **movēbis** with passive **movēberis**. Note the **e** before the personal ending of the passive form.

The future indicative passive of third and fourth conjugation verbs is formed by replacing the active personal endings with the passive personal endings:

-r	-mur
-ris	-minī
-tur	-ntur

## THIRD CONJUGATION

*I shall be led*

dūcar  
dūcēris  
dūcētur

## THIRD CONJUGATION — IŌ

*I shall be taken*

### SINGULAR

capiar  
capiēris  
capiētur

### PLURAL

capiēmur  
capiēminī  
capiēntur

## FOURTH CONJUGATION

*I shall be heard*

audiar  
audiēris  
audiētur

audiēmur  
audiēminī  
audiēntur

Compare **dūceris**, second person singular present indicative passive, with **dūcēris**, second person singular future indicative passive.

A. *Translate:*

1. In Germāniam redūcēmur. 2. Gallī vincēbantur.
3. Templum aedificābitur. 4. Cum lēgātō mittēminī.
5. Impetus sustinēbātur. 6. Castra pōnēbantur. 7. Cō-  
piae in īnsidiīs collocābuntur. 8. Acīēs īnstruēbātur.
9. Fortis mīles appellābor. 10. Ad Graeciam mittēris.

B. *Write in Latin:*

1. War used to be waged. 2. The towns were being  
defended. 3. The trenches were being filled. 4. We  
shall be forbidden to leave. 5. Many things will be sent  
to you. 6. We were being prevented. 7. Our liberty will  
be lost. 8. Many gifts will be given. 9. They seemed  
(*imperf.*) to be wise. 10. A large reward will be received.

C. *Translate:*

1. Laudābor; laudābar; laudor. 2. Accipiuntur; accipi-  
entur; accipiēbantur. 3. Reddētur; redditur; reddēbātur.
4. Movēmur; movēbāmur; movēbimur. 5. Relinquēris;  
relinqueris; relinquēbāris. 6. Instruētur; dēlētur; trāditur.
7. Sustinēbuntur; mūniēbantur; nūntiantur. 8. Inveni-  
untur; abduntur; aedificābuntur. 9. Vidēris; dūcēris;  
dūceris. 10. Appellābāminī; obsidēbiminī; prohibēminī.

D. *Replace the active verbs by passive and make the necessary  
changes:*

1. Mīlitēs impetum sustinēbunt. 2. Dux castra pōnēbat.
3. Asiā vincēmus. 4. Custōs captīvōs removēbit.
5. Fīliās eius vocāvī.

E. *Translate:*

1. Impetū factō, repellentur.
2. Sī urbs capta erit, magna praemia nōbīs dabuntur.
3. Nūntius sub mūrū mittēbātur.
4. Līberī sub ponte stābant.
5. Sī victī erunt, libertās āmittētur.
6. Obsidibus datīs, praesidium nostrum ex urbe vestrā  
dūcētur.
7. Secundā hōrā acīēs ab imperātōre īnstruēbātur.
8. Germānia ā maximīs exercitibus vincēbātur.

F. *Write in Latin:*

1. Our liberty will be lost unless we drive back the foe.
2. Because he had been an evil king, he was being driven from Rome by the wretched citizens.
3. In the third year of the war many towns both of Italy and of Sicily were being stormed and destroyed.
4. When the signal for battle is given, we shall make an attack on the enemy's lines.
5. As envoys had been sent to us by the enemy, peace and friendship were being sought.

## SUPPLEMENTARY EXERCISES

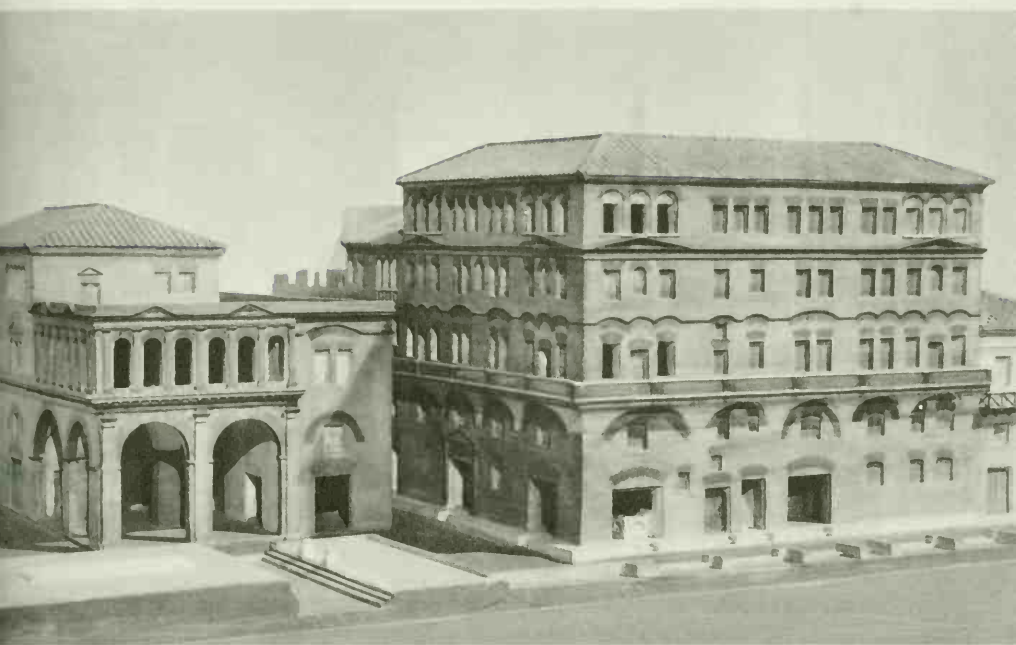
- A. *Including the principal parts, write synopses in the indicative mood, both active and passive, of: accipiō, 3rd person plural; dēleō, 1st person plural; vincō, 3rd person singular.*
- B. *Replace the active verbs by passive and make the necessary changes:*
1. Puerī saxa iaciunt.
  2. Imperātor legiōnem remittet.
  3. Puella cōpiam aquae portābat.
  4. Id oppidum oppugnābimus.
  5. Rōmānī Gallōs reppulērunt.
- C. *Write in Latin:*
1. Soon rewards will be given to all of you.
  2. Because of the flight of their army, the Etruscans were greatly alarmed (*terrītus*).
  3. At dawn the left wing was being sent across the river.
  4. The camp will be pitched by the legion in the middle of the forest.

242

## VOCABULARY

amicitia, amicitiae, *f.*, friendship  
dōnum, -ī, *n.*, gift  
praemium, praemiū, *n.*, reward  
libertās, libertātis, *f.*, freedom  
nihil, *indeclinable*, *n.*, nothing  
expugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,  
storm, take by storm  
dēleō, dēlere, dēlēvī, dēlētum,  
destroy

instruō, instruere, instrūxī,  
instrūctum, draw up, arrange;  
aciem instruere, to draw up a  
line of battle  
repellō, repellere, reppulī,  
repulsum, drive back, repulse  
mūniō, mūnīre, mūnīvī,  
mūnītum, fortify; mūnitiō,  
mūnitiōnis, *f.*, fortification  
longē, *adverb*, far  
magno opere, *adverb*, greatly

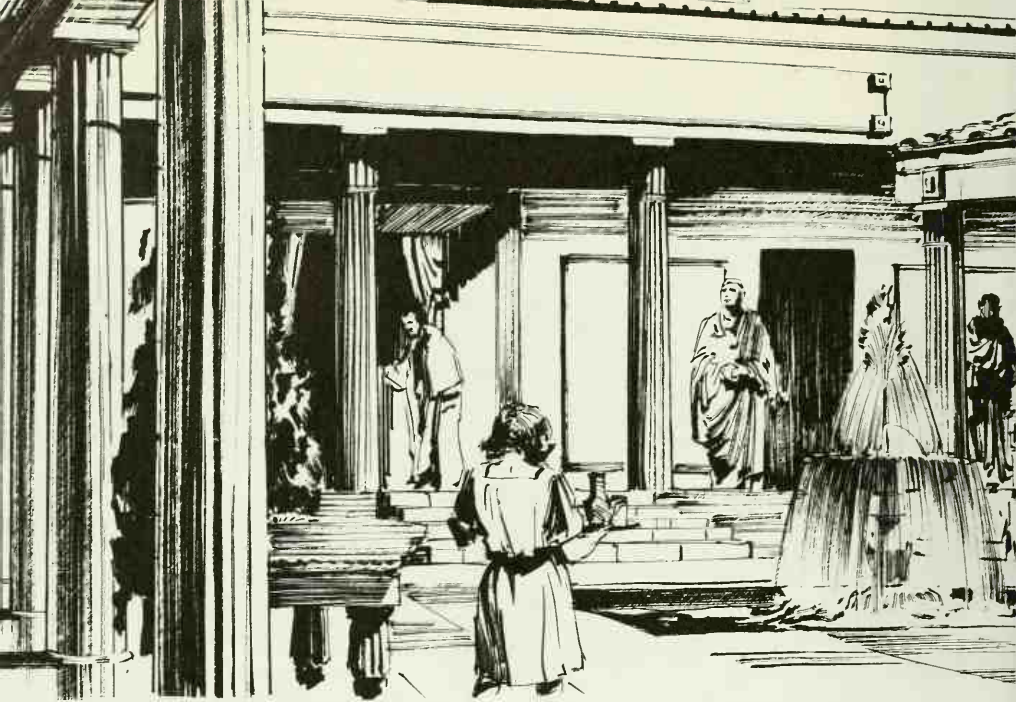


Plastic model of a large apartment house in Ostia. The Roman *insula*, far more common than the single *domus*, developed in a vertical direction.

The picture of the Roman house on pages 294 and 295 may be taken to be reliable in every detail because of a terrible disaster that fell upon the city of Pompeii near Naples in 79 A.D. Two Roman authors named Pliny were in the neighborhood of Pompeii, when the great volcano, Vesuvius, erupted with fearful violence and showers of pumice stone and dust fell upon the city and the country around. Severe earthquakes, fires in the houses, and great upheavals in the sea near the shore accompanied by thick darkness terrified the people. Many perished, including the elder Pliny; his nephew, Pliny the Younger, in two of his letters gives us a detailed account of the dreadful event as he saw it.

The showers of ashes buried the town; the roofs of the houses were broken down and as time passed the woodwork





The plan of the Pompeian house was, in its time, the ultimate in gracious living for a Mediterranean type of climate. Houses similar to these are still being built

rotted away. About two hundred years ago the buried city began to be dug up. The excavations have been carried out with increasing care, and now visitors to Italy may walk about in a city preserved to us from the first century of our era, see the stone-paved streets deeply rutted by the Roman chariots, and look into the temples, theaters, houses, stores and factories.

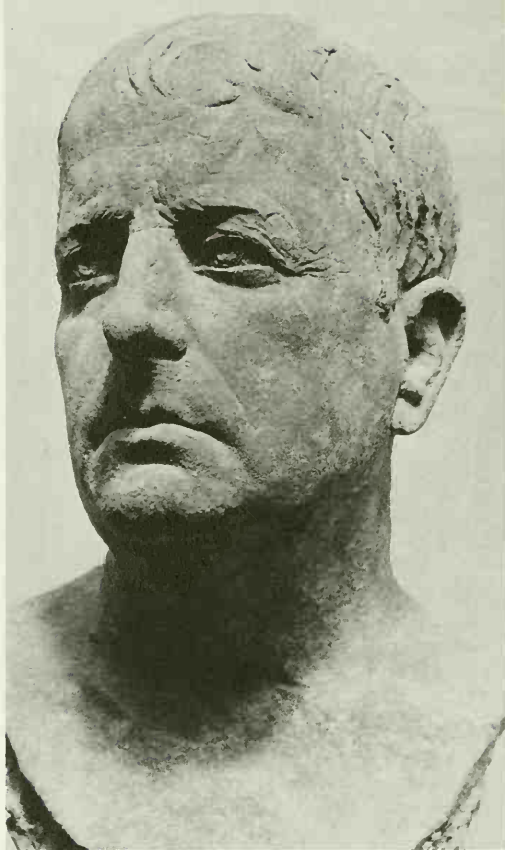
The houses at Pompeii are not all on the same plan, but they are alike in some ways. The house is enclosed by windowless walls all around on the lower floor: you enter the house between two stores, each with its shop-front and its store or living quarters upstairs looking to the street. The entrance hall has a strong pair of doors to shut at night. Through the doorway we enter the main living-room (*atrium*), lofty and lit by the sunlight pouring through a large open space in the roof. Under this open space is a small tank or pool into which rain pours from the roof. Around the atrium are smaller



wherever the climate is mild, particularly in locations that do not favor an outside garden area.

rooms all lit from this central apartment; opposite the main door is a room sometimes used for dining, especially on formal occasions, but used also as an office by the master of the house. By a passageway we enter into the more private part of the house, the colonnaded court (*peristylum*). In the center is a garden, and on two, three or four sides an open space shaded with pillars. Smaller rooms open from this court, and sometimes there is a second story with small rooms, some of which have windows looking out.

The Pompeian houses were made for summer weather. In colder climates the Roman architects provided a heating system that warmed the mosaic pavements of which the floors were made. These floors with their gay designs and the interesting pictures painted on the walls must have made the homes of the Romans very cheerful places to look at, and some at least of their charm may be recaptured by a visit to Pompeii.



*Bust in terracotta,  
first century B.C.*

# 34

## Interrogative Pronoun Interrogative Adjective

Sed quis custōdiet ipsōs custōdēs?  
*But who will guard the guards themselves?*

JUVENAL

244

### Dē Rēbus Gestīs Leōnidāe

- Pater.** Audīvistīne dē rēbus gestīs fortis Leōnidāe (*Leonidas*)?  
**Filius.** Minimē. Quis erat Leōnidās?  
**Pater.** Rēx Lacedaemoniōrum (*Spartans*).  
**Filius.** Quī erant Lacedaemoniī?  
5 **Pater.** Fortis populus Graeciae antīquae.  
**Filius.** Quae erant rēs gestae Leōnidāe?

- Pater.** Ōlim Xerxēs, rēx Persārum (*of the Persians*) . . . nōne audīvistī dē Persīs?
- Filius.** Audīvī.
- Pater.** Xerxēs, ubi ingentem exercitum in Graeciam dūxit, 10  
magnum partem terrae vīcit, et iter in mediam  
Graeciam faciēbat. Eō tempore Lacedaemoniī duōs  
rēgēs habuērunt. Utrum rēgem contrā Persās mīsē-  
runt?
- Filius.** Leōnidam? 15
- Pater.** Ita. Leōnidam mīsērunt.
- Filius.** Quantum exercitum, quot mīlitēs habēbat Leōnidās?
- Pater.** Parvum exercitum et paucās cōpiās Leōnidās habēbat.  
Cum parvō exercitū ad angustiās, ubi magnā cum  
cūrā cōpiās collocāvit, iter fēcit. 20
- Filius.** Vēnēruntne Persae quoque ad angustiās?
- Pater.** Prīmum (*First*) Xerxēs nūntium mīsīt.
- Filius.** Quid dīxit?
- Pater.** “Dēpōnite arma,” magnā vōce inquit, “et amīcī este  
Persīs.” 25
- Filius.** Quid respondit Leōnidās?
- Pater.** “Venī et ea cape.” Tum nūntius: “Nihil vidēbitis ob  
multitūdinem hastārum sagittārumque nostrārum.”  
Ille respondit: “In umbrā pugnābimus.” Xerxēs  
irātus mīlitēs dēlectōs contrā Graecōs dūcere cōnsti- 30  
tuit. Sed quattuor diēs mīlitēs retinēbat; quīntō diē  
impetum fēcit.
- Filius.** Cuius cōpiae erant fortiōrēs (*braver*)?
- Pater.** Cōpiae Leōnidae. Eō diē Persae Graecōs nōn vīcē-  
runt. Posterō diē nōn vīcērunt. Tum cōpiae Per- 35  
sārum in Graecōs impetum ā tergō fēcērunt.
- Filius.** Quōmodo poterant impetum ā tergō facere? Quā viā  
montem trānsiērunt (*did they cross*)?
- Pater.** Prōditor (*Traitor*) Graecus eīs viam mōnstrāvit.  
Prīmā lūce et ā fronte et ā tergō Graecī circumventī 40  
sunt. Fortiter impetūs hostium sustinēbant, sed  
Leōnidās, dux fortis, interfectus est. Graecī quoque,  
omnēs ad ūnum (*to a man*), interfectī sunt.

The battle described in this story took place at the Pass of Thermopylae. At Thermopylae a simple memorial bearing the words of the poet Simonides was set up by the Greeks.

ὦ ξειν', ἀγγέλλειν Λακεδαιμονίοις ὅτι τῇδε  
κείμεθα τοῖς κείνων ῥήμασι πειθόμενοι.

Dīc, hospes, Spartae nōs tē hīc vīdisse iacentēs,  
dum sāctīs patriae lēgibus obsequimur.

CICERO: Disputātiōnēs Tusculānae I. 42.101

*"Go, tell the Spartans, thou that passest by,  
That here, obedient to their laws, we lie."*

### Respondē Latīnē :

1. Quis erat Leōnidās? 2. Quī erant Lacedaemoniī? 3. Quot rēgēs habuērunt Lacedaemoniī? 4. Utrum rēgem contrā Persās mīsērunt? 5. Quid dīxit nūntius Xerxis? 6. Quid respondit Leōnidās? 7. Quid Xerxēs irātus facere cōstituit? 8. Quot diēs retinēbat mīlitēs? Quid fēcit quīntō diē? 9. Cuius cōpiaē erant fortiōrēs? 10. Quōmodo poterant cōpiaē Persārū impetum ā tergō facere?

245

## INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN

	SINGULAR		PLURAL		
	M. AND F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	quis	quid	quī	quae	quae
<i>Gen.</i>	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>Acc.</i>	quem	quid	quōs	quās	quae
<i>Abl.</i>	quō	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

The pronoun *quis*? means *who?*, and *quid*? *what*?

Quis librum habet?	Who has the book?
Quid tibi dat?	What is he giving to you?
Quem vidēs?	Whom do you see?
Cui librum dās?	To whom are you giving the book?
Cuius librum habēs?	Whose book have you?



	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
<i>Gen.</i>	cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>Acc.</i>	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
<i>Abl.</i>	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

The interrogative adjective is used in agreement with a noun and is translated *what*.

Quī puer librōs habet?	What boy has the books?
Quod dōnum tibi dat?	What gift is he giving to you?
Quae puella respondēbit?	What girl will reply?
Quō in oppidō habitās?	In what town do you live?

*Cum* is attached to the ablative of the interrogative pronoun *quis*.      Quōcum ambulat?      With whom is he walking?

## DIRECT QUESTIONS

A direct question in Latin may be introduced by:

- (a) the interrogative pronoun **quis**
- (b) the interrogative adjective **quī**
- (c) an interrogative adjective or adverb or adverb phrase
  - uter, utra, utrum**, which of two?
  - quantus, quanta, quantum**, how great?
  - quot, indeclinable**, how many?
  - cūr**, why?
  - quandō**, when? (*used in questions only*)
  - ubi**, where, in what place?
  - quō**, whither, where, to what place?
  - unde**, whence, from what place?
  - quōmodo**, how?
  - quā dē causā**, for what reason?
  - quibus dē causis**, for what reasons?
- (d) **-ne, nōne, num**

For answers to questions, see Section 118.



A. *Translate:*

1. Cui pārētis?
2. Ad quem peditēs mittuntur?
3. Quā viā Rōmam vēnistī?
4. Utram sorōrem amās?
5. Quam sorōrem vocābās?
6. Quibus dē causīs erant nōbīs inimicī?
7. Quot nautae sunt in classe Rōmānā?
8. Ubi castra posita erant?
9. Quandō Persae in Graeciam venient?

B. *Supply the interrogative word or phrase:*

1. \_\_\_\_\_ (*Where*) omnēs hominēs properant?
2. \_\_\_\_\_ (*From what place*) hostēs iter fēcērunt?
3. \_\_\_\_\_ (*What*) urbēs captae sunt?
4. \_\_\_\_\_ (*With whom, pl.*) prīnceps potēns proelium faciēbat?
5. \_\_\_\_\_ (*How*) exercitum novum cōgēmus?
6. \_\_\_\_\_ (*How great*) erat caedēs Gallōrum?
7. \_\_\_\_\_ (*To whom, s.*) iter mōnstrāvistī?
8. \_\_\_\_\_ (*To whom, pl.*) mīlitēs captī hostium ductī sunt?
9. \_\_\_\_\_ (*Whose, s.*) filius rēgīnam in mātirimōnium dūxit?
10. \_\_\_\_\_ (*In what town*) habitat avus tuus?

C. *Write in Latin:*

1. Into what province has the senate sent the cavalry?
2. How did the weary traveler reach the left bank of the river?
3. How great a reputation has the commander of your (*pl.*) troops?
4. How many ships are on that huge lake?
5. With whom (*pl.*) were the brothers fighting?
6. What towns had been captured by you (*pl.*)?
7. Whose (*s.*) chariot is being handed over to those bold young men?
8. Whom (*pl.*) has he pardoned; whom (*pl.*) has he punished?



The marble temples and shrines adorning the Acropolis in Athens 2300 years ago have served as models for buildings of classic design for centuries.

## SUPPLEMENTARY EXERCISES

A. *Supply the correct interrogative word or phrase and then translate the sentence:*

- |   |                        |
|---|------------------------|
| 1. _____ exercitus impetum in nōs ā<br>tergō facit? | How large              |
| 2. _____ auxilia mittuntur?                         | To whom ( <i>pl.</i> ) |
| 3. _____ arx nostra circumventa est?                | By whom ( <i>pl.</i> ) |
| 4. _____ grave huius lēgātī vulnus?                 | Isn't                  |
| 5. _____ hoc cōsilium est periculōsum?              | For whom ( <i>s.</i> ) |

B. *Write in Latin:*

- Which legion (of the two) reached the pass on the following day?
- Into what province has the senate sent the cavalry?

3. Why are you (s.) sad on this beautiful day?
4. For what reason have they stopped fighting on the right?
5. How many black horses are being brought (*led*) from the plain?
6. Surely there aren't many ships on this lake, are there?
7. Where were you (*pl.*) wandering at dawn?
8. Whose (s.) brother was with you in the territory of the enemy?

## 249

## VOCABULARY

angustiae, angustiārum, *f. pl.*,  
narrow pass  
fāma, -ae, *f.*, reputation, renown  
umbra, -ae, *f.*, shade, shadow  
tergum, -ī, *n.*, back, rear  
antīquus, -a, -um, ancient  
posterus, -a, -um, next, following  
dēligō, dēligere, dēlēgī,  
dēlēctum, choose

circumveniō, circumvenīre,  
circumvēnī, circumventum,  
surround  
rēs gesta, rei gestae, *f.*, deed,  
exploit

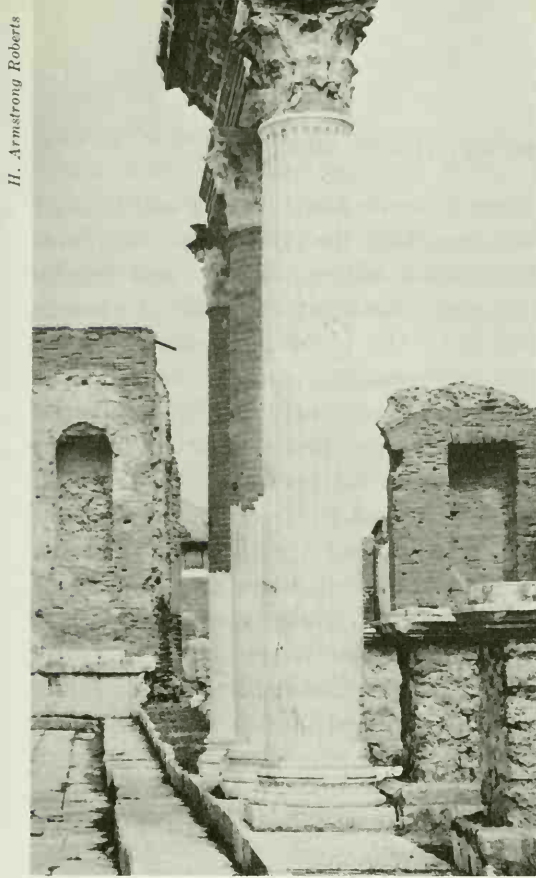
ā fronte, in front<sup>1</sup>  
ā tergō, in the rear<sup>1</sup>  
ā dextrā, on the right<sup>1</sup>  
ā sinistrā, on the left<sup>1</sup>

## 250

## WORD STUDY

In the transference from one language to another, especially if the transfer is through an intermediate language, a word is frequently modified in meaning. Some words become more general, some more specialized than the original word. The English word *umbrella* is an instance of such change in meaning. The Latin **umbra**, *shade*, came to have the more general meaning of *shelter*. The diminutive suffix **-ellus**, **-a**, **-um**, means *little*. Combining these two elements would give the meaning of "a little shade" or "a little shelter" and the word **ombrella** in the intermediate language (Italian) has these meanings. In English the word, however, has grown to have the meaning of *a shelter from the rain*, in distinction to *parasol* (**parāre**, **sōl**), *a shelter from the sun*.

<sup>1</sup> Latin emphasizes the quarter from which an act proceeds.



*Columns in Pompeii,  
Italy*

# 35

## The Irregular Verb *Eō* Compounds of *Eō*

Diffūgēre<sup>1</sup> nivēs, redeunt iam grāmina campīs  
arboribusque comae.

Mūtat terra vicēs et dēcrēscientia rīpās  
flūmina praetereunt.

HORACE, ODES 4.7

*The snows have fled, already the grass is returning to the fields  
and the leaves to the trees.*

*The earth undergoes her yearly change and the subsiding streams  
flow by their banks.*

<sup>1</sup> Notice the 3rd person plural ending of the perfect active -ēre (-ē<sup>r</sup>unt) which is frequently found in poetry.

The Romans did not begin to write their history until about 200 B.C. For the period preceding that date the first historians relied, in great part, upon official records and family chronicles. For the early centuries even the official records were unreliable, as in 390 B.C. the Gauls had sacked Rome and had destroyed the existing records.

Fabius Pictor, early in the second century B.C., wrote the first history of Rome. Two hundred years later Livy wrote a detailed history, in one hundred forty-two books, carrying the account of Rome's ancestors back to Troy.

According to the tradition followed by Livy, the Trojan hero Aeneas escaped with his father and son and a band of followers from the burning city of Troy, and after many adventures reached the mouth of the River Tiber in Italy. There he made an alliance with the Latins, an Italian tribe, married a Latin princess, Lavinia, and built a city, which he called Lavinium in her honor. His son founded the city of Alba Longa, where his descendants ruled for three hundred years. A princess of this house, Rhea Silvia, was the mother of Romulus and Remus, the founders of Rome.

There is no historical evidence for the connection thus established between Troy and Rome. But it pleased the vanity of the Romans to believe that they had so ancient and honorable an origin.

The Roman poet Vergil used the story of the fall of Troy, the wanderings of Aeneas, and the settlement in Italy as the theme of his epic poem the *Aeneid*.

### Dē Aenēā et Iulō (Part 1)

Urbs Trōia ā Graecīs decem annōs obsidēbātur; sed annō  
 obsidiōnis decimō urbs capta incēnsa est. Vir Trōiānus,  
 nōbilis et fortis, Aenēās nōmine, filius deae Veneris, nāvēs  
 aedificāvit et ex patriā exīre parāvit. Ex flammīs patrem  
 5 fīliumque servāverat atque etiam penātēs (*household gods*);  
 sed uxor Creūsa, quae (*who, fem. nom. sing.*) in fugā ā viā

errāverat, periit. Nam dum ab urbe abeunt, eī Aenēās haec verba dīxit: “Nōlī mē sequī (*to follow*) nisi longō spatiō; hostēs ubīque (*everywhere*) sunt et nōs omnēs simul cōspicient. At sī singulī (*one at a time*) ibimus, omnēs, ut spērō (*as I hope*), 10 effugiēmus.” Creūsa tamen viam amīsit, neque umquam rūsus est vīsa ā miserō Aenēā, quamquam is in urbem magnō cum periculō rediit.

Itaque cum multīs Trōiānīs nāvem ascendit, ut māter Venus monuerat. Per multa maria in multās terrās trānsiit; semper 15 (*always*) novam patriam, quam (*which, fem. acc. sing.*) fāta prōmiserant (*the Fates had promised*), quaerēbat. Sed magnā tempestāte nāvēs in lītus Āfricae frāctae sunt; eās tamen Aenēās auxiliō rēgīnae Carthāginis (*of Carthage*) reficere coepit. Rēgīna, Dīdō nōmine, Trōiānum pulchrum amāvit; eum sēcum 20 (*with her*) tenēre cupīvit. Sed Aenēās, ā deīs iussus, Carthāgine exiit. Trōiānī rūsus nāvēs ascendērunt et post multōs diēs, quamquam Italiam petēbant, ad īnsulam Siciliam adiērunt.

### Respondē Latīnē :

1. Quot annōs urbs Trōia obsidēbātur? 2. Quandō urbs capta incēnsa est? 3. Quis erat Aenēās? 4. Quōs servāverat Aenēās? 5. Quid uxōrī Creūsae accidit (*happened*)? 6. Quae verba dīxit Aenēās? 7. Nōnne rediit Aenēās in urbem magnō cum periculō? 8. Quō trānsiit Aenēās cum Trōiānīs? 9. Quid quaerēbat? 10. In quod lītus nāvēs frāctae sunt?

eō, īre, īī (īvī), itum, go

#### INDICATIVE

PRESENT

IMPERFECT

*I go*

*I was going*

eō	īmus	ībam	ībāmus
īs	ītis	ībās	ībātis
it	eunt	ībat	ībant



## FUTURE

*I shall go*

ībō	ībimus
ībis	ībitis
ībit	ībunt

## PERFECT

*I have gone*

iī	iimus
iistī	iistis
iit	iērunt

## PLUPERFECT

*I had gone*

ieram	ierāmus
ierās	ierātis
ierat	ierant

## FUTURE PERFECT

*I shall have gone*

ierō	ierimus
ieris	ieritis
ierit	ierint

## IMPERATIVE

## SINGULAR

*ī, go*

## PLURAL

*īte, go*COMPOUNDS OF *EŌ***abeō, abīre, abīi, abitum**, go away, depart**adeō, adīre, adīi, aditum**, go to, approach, advance, visit**exeō, exīre, exīi, exitum**, go out of, go forth, depart; leave  
(*with ex and abl.*)**ineō, inīre, iniī, initum**, go into, enter; enter upon, begin**pereō, perīre, perīi, peritum**, perish**redeō, redīre, redīi, reditum**, go back, return**trānseō, trānsīre, trānsīi, trānsitum**, go across, cross, cross  
over, pass

**Adeō** is completed either by **ad** with the accusative or by the accusative without a preposition; **ineō**, either by **in** with the accusative or by the accusative alone; **abeō**, usually by **ab** or **ex** with the ablative, sometimes by the ablative alone; **exeō**, usually by **ex** with the ablative; **trānseō**, by the accusative.

253

## EXERCISES

A. *Translate:*1. *Ībunt.*2. *Eunt.*3. *Trānsiērunt.*4. *Abierāmus.*5. *Exībat.*6. *Ībisne?*7. *Trānsit.*8. *Redībimus.*9. *Nōli īre.*

- B. Give the correct form of **eō** or a compound of **eō** :
- |                                      |                                     |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. I was going.                      | 6. Do not go across ( <i>pl.</i> ). |
| 2. You ( <i>s.</i> ) will enter.     | 7. Go ( <i>s.</i> ).                |
| 3. You ( <i>pl.</i> ) have returned. | 8. He will perish.                  |
| 4. We had gone away.                 | 9. They are going forth.            |
| 5. They were advancing.              | 10. He will have gone back.         |
- C. Complete, using the correct form of **eō** or a compound of **eō** :
- |  |                      |
|--|----------------------|
| 1. Ad urbem finitimam _____.               | we are approaching   |
| 2. $\bar{E}$ castris noctū _____.          | they had left        |
| 3. Peditēs montem mox _____.               | will cross           |
| 4. Aenēās cum sociis<br>Carthāginem _____. | was entering         |
| 5. Gladiō et ignī _____.                   | they have perished   |
| 6. _____ nōn poterunt.                     | to go away           |
| 7. In templum sacrum _____<br>dēbēmus.     | to go into           |
| 8. Ex urbe obsessā _____.                  | they are departing   |
| 9. $\bar{A}$ vicō nostrō _____.            | they were going away |
| 10. Quīntō diē frāter meus _____.          | returned             |
- D. Translate:
1. Eā viā ire nōn poterant, nam īnsidiās timēbant.
  2. Graeci, ad bellum parātī, mare nāvibus trāseunt.
  3. Quibus dē causis vir nōbilis et fortis mare periculōsum trāsiit?
  4. Pāce factā dux noster cum equitibus in prōvinciam ē Galliā exhibet.
  5. Primā aestāte ā vicō abiit neque umquam rūsus vīsus est.
  6. Trōiānī, quamquam Italiam petēbant, ad īsulam Siciliam adiērunt.
  7. Magnā tempestāte nāvēs in lītus Āfricae frāctae sunt; multae āmissae sunt, paucae servātae.
  8. Multis aedificiis ā lītore cōspectis, nautae urbem petere cōstituērunt.
  9. Audīvistīne dē rēbus gestis huius adulēscētis clārī?
  10. Dum Trōiānī nāvēs reficiunt, Dīdō Aenēān (*acc.*) amāvit.
- E. Write in Latin:
1. While she was leaving the city, Creusa lost her way (*use abl. abs.*) and perished.
  2. As soon as they had gone out from the city, the Trojans built ships, for they could not remain there.



Bust of a statue known as the Venus of Cnidus, now in the Vatican Museum at Rome. It is the Roman copy of the Greek statue wrought by Praxiteles.

3. After he had left his fatherland, he sailed to Sicily, where he remained for many days.
4. While the Trojans were crossing the sea, a great storm wrecked their ships on the coast of Africa.
5. When Aeneas returns to the shore, he will repair the ships shattered by the storm.
6. We shall soon enter into the land given to us by the gods.
7. Surrounded by flames they could not leave the building.
8. Between the two lines of battle a small space had been left.
9. If you catch sight of the flames, embark at once; do not enter the city again.
10. Will the women and children perish, if the city is taken by storm?

## SUPPLEMENTARY EXERCISE

Write a synopsis in all tenses of **trānseō** in the 3rd plural indicative active and of **redeō** in the 3rd singular indicative active.

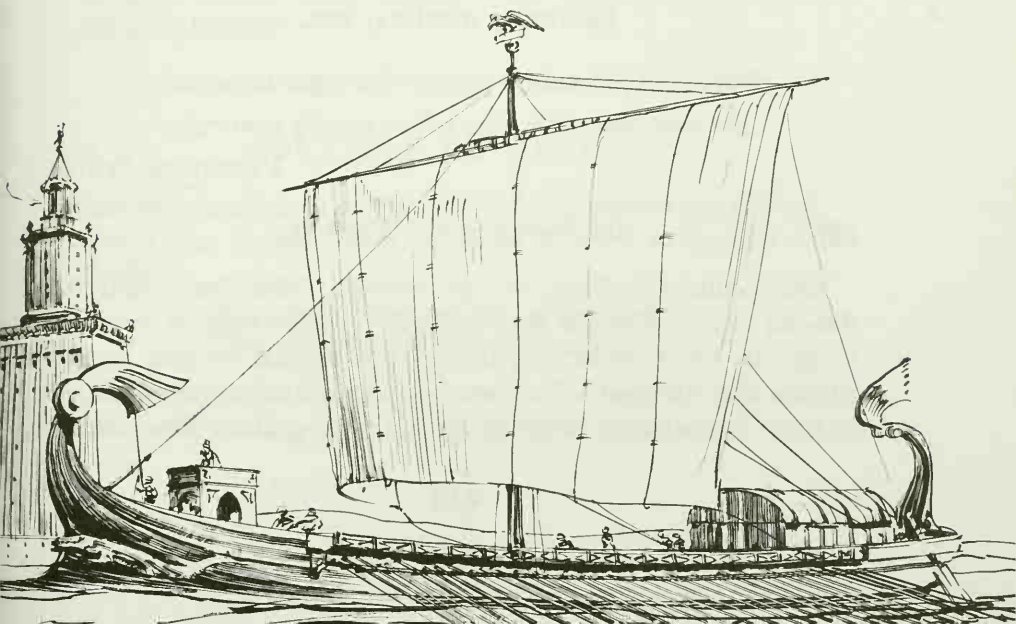
254

## VOCABULARY

**flamma**, -ae, *f.*, flame  
**spatium**, spatii, *n.*, space,  
 distance  
**litus**, litoris, *n.*, shore  
**nōbilis**, nōbilis, nōbile,  
 well-born, noble, illustrious  
**cōspiciō**, cōspicere, cōspēxī,  
 cōspectum, catch sight of,  
 see, perceive  
**frangō**, frangere, frēgī, frāctum,  
 break, wreck, shatter

**quaerō**, quaerere, quaesivī,  
 quaesitum, seek, ask, inquire  
**reficiō**, reficere, refēcī, refectum,  
 repair, remake, restore  
**at**, *conjunction*, but, however  
**etiam**, *conjunction and adverb*,  
 even, also, still  
**rūrsus**, *adverb*, again, back  
**simul**, *adverb*, at the same time,  
 together  
**nāvem** (nāvēs) ascendere, to go  
 on board, embark

The Roman *trireme* was propelled by wind and oar (as was its Greek predecessor, which Aeneas would have used). Less common were *biremes*, with two banks of oars, and *quadriremes*, with four banks. Beyond the *trireme* shown below is the great lighthouse at Alexandria. Built in 280 B.C., this 530 foot high structure was one of the wonders of the ancient world.





*Temple of Hercules  
along the Appian  
Way*

# 36

## Ablative of Respect; Adjectives as Nouns *Summus, medius, etc.*

Omnēs aequō animō pārent ubi dignī imperant.

*All men cheerfully obey where worthy men rule.*

PUBLILIUS SYRUS

255

### Dē Aenēā et lūlō (Part 2)

Rēx Siculus (*Sicilian*), ubi dē adventū Trōiānōrum audīvit,  
Aenēān (*acc.*) et sociōs eius benignē recēpit (*received kindly*).  
In Siciliā, quod multī suōrum aegrī et dēfessī corpore erant,  
Aenēās diū manēbat. Tandem tempore idōneō cum validīs et  
5 fortibus in Italiam nāvigāvit; et quod ad grātum lītus terrae

prōmissae incolumēs pervēnerant, omnēs laetī animō erant grātiāsque deīs ēgērunt. Longum iter tōtum cōnfēcerant neque umquam rūsus nāvēs ascendere volēbant (*wished*).

Simul atque Trōiānī ad litus pervēnērunt, "Septem annōs," inquit Aenēās, "omnēs nōs omnia per maria errāvimus. 10 Magnō in periculō saepe fuimus; tandem Italiam invēnimus. Hīc est domus; haec patria est: prope rīpam flūminis castra pōnēmus."

Posterō diē Aenēās ad rēgem Latīi (*Latium*), Latīnum (*Latinus*) nōmine, quī per nūntium dē adventū Trōiānōrum 15 cognōverat, decem lēgātōs mīsit. "Date," inquit Aenēās, "haec dōna rēgī et pācem ab eō petite."

Ubi ad Latīnum vērunt, "Ō rēx," inquit ūnus ex lēgātīs, "Trōiānī sumus. Aenēās, prīnceps noster, nōs ad tē mīsit. Amīcī tibi erimus. Nōlī nōs expellere. Pācem spērāmus; 20 cōnfīrmā nōbīscum et pācem et amīcītiā."

### Respondē Latīnē :

1. Quid fēcit rēx Siculus ubi dē adventū Trōiānōrum audīvit?
2. Cūr Aenēās in Siciliā diū manēbat?
3. Cūr erant omnēs laetī animō?
4. Quibus Trōiānī grātiās ēgērunt?
5. Quot annōs errāvērunt Trōiānī?
6. Quid dīxit Aenēās dē domō, dē patriā?
7. Ad quem mīsit Aenēās decem lēgātōs?
8. Quōmodo cognōverat Latīnus dē adventū Trōiānōrum?
9. Quid lēgātīs dīxit Aenēās?
10. Quae ā Latīnō petīvit ūnus ex lēgātīs?

Liscus est rēx nōmine; cēterīs prīncipibus potestāte pār nōn est.

Liscus is king in name; he is not equal in power to the rest of the chiefs.

Hic miser servus est ūnō pede claudus.

This poor slave is lame in one foot.

The ablative without a preposition is used to indicate in what respect a statement is true (ablative of respect).





Pottery from Wroxeter in Shropshire, England. In the provinces, unearthed treasures show Roman love of adornment in objects of practical use.

257

## ADJECTIVES AS NOUNS

Plural adjectives are used freely as nouns. The masculine denotes persons; the neuter denotes things. Masculine adjectives may be thus used in any case; neuter adjectives, usually only in the nominative and accusative cases.

**bonī**, the good, good people  
**fortēs**, the brave  
**malī**, the wicked, bad people  
**multi**, many, many people  
**omnēs**, all (men), everybody  
**paucī**, (a) few people

**bona**, good things, goods,  
 property  
**mala**, misfortunes  
**multa**, many things  
**omnia**, all (things), everything  
**pauca**, (a) few things

This use is especially common with possessive adjectives:  
**nostrī**, our men, our comrades; **nostra**, our property  
**sui**, his (their) men, his (their) friends; **sua**, his (their)  
property

258 Several Latin adjectives are used in agreement with a noun where, in English, we use a noun like *top*, *middle*, etc., followed by the preposition *of*.

summus, -a, -um, top of	in mediā insulā, in the middle
medius, -a, -um, middle of	of the island
īmus, -a, -um, bottom of	īmum mare, the bottom of the
omnis, -is, -e, all of	sea
tōtus, -a, -um, whole of	omnēs nōs, all of us
reliquus, -a, -um, rest of,	tōta Gallia, the whole of Gaul
remaining	reliquae legiōnēs, the rest of the
summus mōns, the top of the	legions
mountain	

259

## EXERCISES

### A. Translate:

1. Omnēs pācem amant.
2. Multī pācem spērant.
3. Paucī bellum cupiunt.
4. Sua auxit.
5. Aenēas suōs amābat et regīna suōs amābat.
6. Omnēs videt; omnia videt.
7. Omnia nōn possumus (facere) omnēs.
8. Fortūna fortēs adiuvat (*aids*).
9. Tōtum mālum est malum.
10. Omnia haec māla sunt mala.

### B. Translate:

1. Cum puerīs puellae exībunt; cum celeritāte exībunt.
2. Cum sagittīs erat gladius; sagittīs vulnerābiminī.
3. Magnā virtūte pugnat; virtūte frātre superat.
4. Hic vir est pede claudus; ille pede celerī (*swift*) ambulat.
5. Nōbīs spē nōn sunt parēs; magnā spē proelium committēmus.

### C. Complete by translating the English phrase:

1. Equitēs \_\_\_\_\_ (on top of the hill) collocāvit.
2. Equitēs \_\_\_\_\_ (the bottom of the hill) accessērunt.
3. Currus est \_\_\_\_\_ (in the middle of the field).
4. Currum \_\_\_\_\_ (through the middle of the woods)

agēbat. 5. Mārcus \_\_\_\_\_ (*all of us*) sapientiā superat.  
 6. Mārcus \_\_\_\_\_ (*all of you*) dōna dabit. 7. Ad  
 \_\_\_\_\_ (*the rest of the troops*) ōrātiōnem dux habuit.  
 8. \_\_\_\_\_ (*The rest of the troops*) erant in sinistrō cornū.  
 9. Rōmānī paucīs annīs \_\_\_\_\_ (*the whole of Gaul*)  
 vīcerint. 10. \_\_\_\_\_ (*In the whole of Gaul*) sunt multī  
 Rōmānī.

D. *Translate:*

1. Cīvitās nostra multitūdine hominum superat. 2. Neque  
 numerō neque celeritāte nōbīs erant parēs. 3. Ā meīs in  
 rīpā flūminis captus est. 4. Nostrī, quamquam aegrī  
 erant, ibi nōn manēbant. 5. Nostra nōn trādēmus.  
 6. Cum tōtum longum iter cōnfēcerint, in mediā īnsulā  
 manēbunt. 7. Amīcitiam nōbīscum cōfirmāte et hīc  
 manēte. 8. Propter inopiam omnium rērum hīc manēre  
 nōn possumus. 9. Et bonī et malī praemia dēbita petē-  
 bant.

E. *Write in Latin:*

1. The bad do not like the good. 2. There are strong  
 fortifications on the top of the hill. 3. The sick and the  
 weary will be left behind in the camp. 4. After their  
 long journey all of the Trojans were weary both in spirit  
 and in body. 5. After fighting the battle, our men  
 thanked the gods because they were unharmed. 6. At a  
 fitting time everybody will come to the town; they will  
 see everything. 7. On the bottom of the sea are many  
 wrecked ships. 8. A brave leader remains with his men  
 in danger. 9. If they establish friendship with us, we  
 shall spare all of them. 10. He was the first to establish  
 (*He first established*) friendship with us.

## SUPPLEMENTARY EXERCISE

*Translate:*

- |                               |                               |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. at the bottom of the lake  | 5. through the whole of Italy |
| 2. the rest of the messengers | 6. across the middle of       |
| 3. at the beginning of spring | the plain                     |
| 4. down from the top of the   | 7. by all of us               |
| mountain                      | 8. on behalf of everybody     |



**grātia**, -ae, *f.*, favor, good will, influence; gratitude, thanks;  
**grātiās agere**, *with dative*, to thank

**animus**, -ī, *m.*, soul, heart, spirit; courage

**aeger**, **aegra**, **aegrum**, ill, sick  
**grātus**, **grāta**, **grātum**, pleasing

**idōneus**, **idōnea**, **idōneum**, fitting, suitable

**validus**, -a, -um, strong

**cōfirmō**, **cōfirmāre**,  
**cōfirmāvī**, **cōfirmātum**, strengthen; encourage; establish; **amicitiā**

**cōfirmāre**, to establish friendship

**spērō**, **spērāre**, **spērāvī**,  
**spērātum**, hope, hope for

**cōficiō**, **cōficere**, **cōfēcī**,  
**cōfectum**, complete, finish

**prōmittō**, **prōmittere**, **prōmīsī**,  
**prōmissum**, promise

**hīc**, *adverb*, here

The adjective suffix **-idus**, **-a**, **-um**, *having the quality of*, is most often attached to the present stem of a verb. For example, **validus**, **-a**, **-um**, *strong, powerful*, is based on the present stem of the verb **valeō**, **valēre**, *be strong, be well* and the adjective **fluidus**, **-a**, **-um**, *flowing, moist*, is based on the present stem of the verb **fluō**, **fluere**, *flow* (*cf.* **flūmen**).

English adjectives derived from Latin adjectives ending in **-idus** show only the base of the Latin adjective; for example, *valid* and *fluid*.

Form similar Latin adjectives from the present stem of **cupiō**, **rapiō**, **timeō**. Give the meaning of each adjective and the English derivative of the adjectives formed on **rapiō** and **timeō**.

Sometimes the Latin adjective ending in **-idus** is formed on the base of a noun or another adjective. Examples are **lūcidus**, *having the quality of light, bright* (**lūx**, **lūcis**); **gravidus**, *having the quality of heaviness, pregnant* (**gravis**, **gravis**, **grave**, **heavy**).



*Aeneas carrying  
Anchises from the  
burning city of Troy*

# 37

## Cardinal Numerals Extent of Space *Mille* and *mīlia*

Dā mī<sup>1</sup> bāsia<sup>2</sup> mīlle, deinde centum,  
dein mīlle altera,<sup>3</sup> dein secunda centum,  
deinde usque altera mīlle, deinde centum.

CATULLUS 5, 7-9

*Give me a thousand kisses, then a hundred,  
Then a second thousand, then a second hundred,  
Then once more another thousand, then a hundred.*

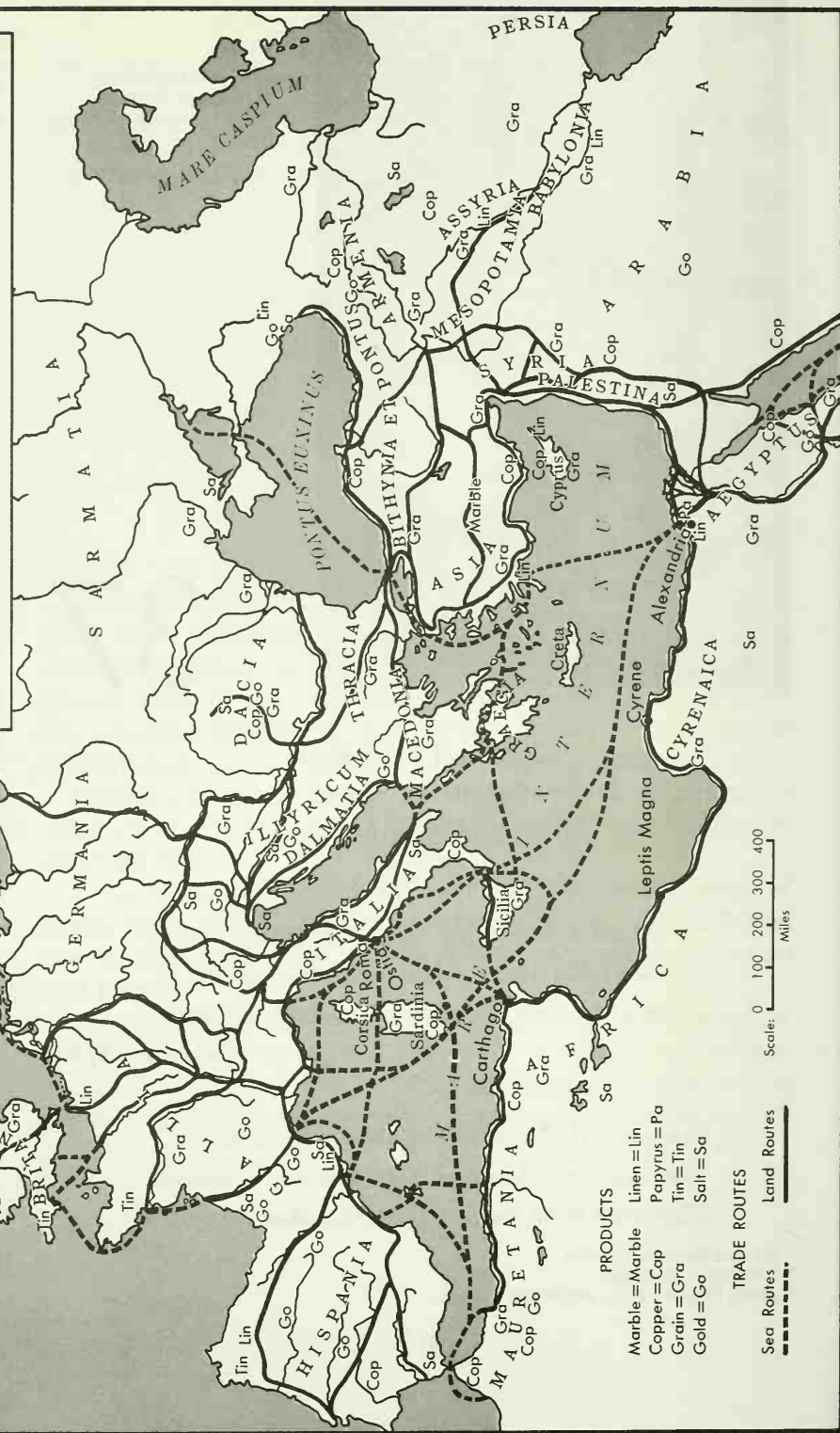
<sup>1</sup> mī, contraction of mihi

<sup>2</sup> bāsium = ōsculum

<sup>3</sup> alter, frequently = secundus



# Trade Routes and Products of the Roman World



## PRODUCTS

- Marble = M
- Copper = C
- Grain = G
- Gold = S
- Linen = L
- Papyrus = P
- Tin = T
- Salt = Sa

## TRADE ROUTES

- Sea Routes (Solid Line)
- Land Routes (Dashed Line)

Latīnus decem Trōiānōs benignē recēpit, et filiā Lāvīniā in mātirimōnium Aenēae (*dat.*) dare volēbat (*wished*); sed Turnus, vir Italus (*Italian*), cui (*to whom*) antea eam prōmiserat, magnopere irātus trecentis militibus bellum contrā Latīnum et Aenēā gessit. Itaque ducenti Latīni et centum 5 Trōiāni interfecti sunt. Aenēas ipse (*himself*) sagittā vulnerātus est. Mox, tamen, ā mātře Venere sānātus (*healed*), ōsculum parvō filiō Iūlō dat, et “Disce, puer,” inquit, “virtūtem ex mē, fortunā ex aliis. Hodiē tē dēfendam: sed cum vir eris, memor es tuōrum (*your own people*) et patris Aenēae!” 10 Tum Aenēas cum Turnō, sōlus cum sōlō (*in single combat*) diū pugnāvit, eumque interfecit.

Posteā Lāvīniā in mātirimōnium dūxit, et post mortem Latīni rēx factus est Latīi. Oppidum aedificāvit, quod (*which*) Lāvīnium ex nōmine uxōris appellāvit et quod aberat tria 15 milia passuum ā marī. Post mortem Aenēae rēgnāvit filius Iūlus. Urbem condidit, quam (*which, acc.*) Albam Longam appellāvit, quod et oppidum erat longum et mūrōs habēbat albōs. Post eum rēgēs undecim deinceps (*in succession*) per trecentōs annōs rēgnāverunt. 20

Rhea Silvia, nāta (*descended*) ex hāc domū rēgālī (*royal*), dīcitur fuisse (*to have been*) mātēr Rōmulī Remīque, urbis Rōmae conditōrum.

### Respondē Latīnē :

1. Quid volēbat Latīnus? 2. Quid fēcit Turnus? 3. Quot Latīni, quot Trōiāni interfecti sunt? 4. Quid Aenēae accidit?
5. Quid cōsiliū (*What advice*) filiō Iūlō dedit Aenēas?
6. Quōcum pugnāvit Aenēas sōlus? 7. Quis post mortem Latīni factus est rēx Latīi? 8. Quod nōmen Aenēas oppidō dedit? 9. Ubi erat oppidum? 10. Cūr Iūlus urbem Albam Longam appellāvit? 11. Per quot annōs rēgnāverunt rēgēs?

Review Sections 187-189.

XI	ūndecim	eleven
XII	duodecim	twelve
XIII	tredecim	thirteen
XIV	quattuordecim	fourteen
XV	quīndecim	fifteen
XVI	sēdecim	sixteen
XVII	septendecim	seventeen
XVIII	duodēvīgintī	
	octōdecim	eighteen
XIX	ūndēvīgintī	
	novendecim	nineteen
XX	vīgintī	twenty
XXI	vīgintī ūnus	twenty-one
XXII	vīgintī duo	twenty-two
XXX	trīgintā	thirty
C	centum	one hundred
CC	ducentī, -ae, -a	two hundred
CCC	trecentī, -ae, -a	three hundred

The numerals from **ūndecim** to **vīgintī**, and **trīgintā** and **centum** are indeclinable. **Ducentī** and **trecentī** are declined like the plural of **altus**.

## COMPOUND NUMERALS

Some parts of a compound numeral may be declined while other parts are indeclinable: **trīgintā duo vīcī**, thirty-two villages; **trīgintā tria oppida**, thirty-three towns. In compound numbers over 100, the largest number is usually put first, the rest following without **et**.

**centum vīgintī militēs**, one hundred twenty soldiers  
**centum trīgintā tria oppida**, one hundred thirty-three towns

**Sagitta est longa trēs pedēs.**

The arrow is three feet long.

**Flūmen est altum duōs pedēs et lātum sēdecim pedēs.**

The stream is two feet deep and sixteen feet wide.

What case is used to express the length of the arrow? the depth and width of the stream?

Extent of space is expressed by the accusative case without a preposition.

## 265 ROMAN TABLE OF MEASUREMENT

**IV digitī = I palmus**

**IV palmī = I pēs (11.65 in.)**

**digitus, -ī, m.,** finger, finger breadth

**palmus, -ī, m.,** palm, palm breadth

**pēs, pedis, m.,** foot

## 266 THOUSAND AND THOUSANDS

(a) **Mille**, one thousand, is an indeclinable adjective.

*Nom.*    **mille mīlitēs**, one thousand soldiers

*Gen.*    **mille mīlitum**

*Dat.*    **mille mīlitibus**

*Acc.*    **mille mīlitēs**

*Abl.*    **mille mīlitibus**

(b) **Mīlia**, thousands, is a neuter plural noun, declined like the plural **animālia**.

*Nom.*    **mīlia**

*Gen.*    **mīlium**

*Dat.*    **mīlibus**

*Acc.*    **mīlia**

*Abl.*    **mīlibus**

As the plural **mīlia** is neuter, adjectives and numerals modifying it must be neuter: **multa mīlia, tria mīlia**. The plural **mīlia** is used with a genitive.

**Duo milia Rōmānōrum vērunt.**

Two thousand Romans have come.

**Tria milia equitum habet.**

He has three thousand horsemen.

**Sex milibus militum arma dedit.**

He gave arms to six thousand soldiers.

**Cum multis milibus civium adit.**

He is approaching with many thousand citizens.

267

## MILEAGE

**Passus, passūs, m.**, a pace, marks a distance of about five feet. 1000 **passūs** (**mille passūs**) became the standard of measurement for longer distances. We may translate **mille passūs** by *mile* (**milia passuum, miles**). The English word *mile* is, in fact, derived from the phrase **mille passūs**.

**Oppidum mille passūs abest.** The town is a mile away.

**Campus est quīque milia passuum lātus.** The plain is five miles wide.

268

## EXERCISES

A. *Translate:*

1. undecim tēla; quīdecim magistrī
2. cum duodēvīgintī nautīs; cum vīgintī duōbus nautīs
3. trecentōrum equōrum; trium equōrum; trīgintā trium equōrum
4. in centum duābus urbibus; in vīgintī duābus urbibus
5. cum tribus adulēscētib; cum trecentīs adulēscētib; cum
6. ad duōs militēs; ad duo milia militum; ad ducentōs militēs
7. vāllum septem pedēs altum; vāllum sēdecim pedēs longum
8. flūmen ducentōs pedēs lātum; mōns duo milia pedum altus
9. Urbs mille passūs abest; urbs tria milia passuum abest.
10. Hostēs duo milia passuum absunt; hostēs duodecim milia passuum aberant.

B. *Translate:*

- |                            |                            |
|----------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. an arrow four feet long | 4. a ditch eight feet deep |
| 2. a wall three feet high  | 5. He walked twelve paces. |
| 3. a river ten paces wide  | 6. He walked a mile.       |

C. *Translate:*

1,000 kisses 10,000 captives 3,000 animals 1 mile 2 miles

D. *Complete by translating the English:*

1. Cum \_\_\_\_\_ (2,000 soldiers) urbem oppugnabit.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ (3,000 citizens) capti sunt.
3. Rōma ab illā urbe \_\_\_\_\_ (7 miles) abest.
4. Campus est \_\_\_\_\_ (6 miles long).
5. Castra \_\_\_\_\_ (9 miles) ab flūmine pōnentur.
6. In legiōnibus sunt \_\_\_\_\_ (many thousands of brave soldiers).
7. Cum exercitū sunt \_\_\_\_\_ (1,000 horsemen).
8. Domus ducis \_\_\_\_\_ (a mile) ā castris abest.
9. Castra \_\_\_\_\_ (3 miles) ab oppidō absunt.
10. Nēmō \_\_\_\_\_ (100 miles) ūnō diē ambulāre potest.

E. *Translate:*

1. Herī dux noster, dē proeliō novō monitus, aciem instrūxit.
2. Hodīe arx ab hostibus circumvenitur; crās obsidēbitur.
3. Exercitus duo cornua habet, dextrum et sinistrum.
4. Exercitus in Galliā fuerat; cum Gallis magnā cum virtūte pugnāverat.
5. Post multa et āeria proelia militēs erant dēfessī, et ad castra vīgintī mīlia passuum reducti sunt.
6. In proeliis ācribus trecenti militēs interfecti erant; ducenti vulnerati.
7. Liberi boni sunt memorēs parentium.
8. Mille militēs dēfessī et aegri ibi relictī sunt.

F. *Write in Latin:*

1. A Roman army had two wings, a left and a right.
2. Often there were ten legions in an army.
3. In the legions were many thousand soldiers.
4. The army had fought many fierce battles in Gaul and had slain 3,000 Gauls.
5. Two hundred Roman soldiers had been killed; three hundred, wounded.
6. Before the battle the cavalry had hastened four miles through the middle of a forest.





Terracotta bowl with footstand.  
Arretine ware, probably 1st  
century A.D.

7. There, after the signal was given, the Romans joined battle with the Gauls. 8. All the infantry fought bravely but were soon defeated. 9. Three hundred Gauls were captured and killed. 10. After the battle the Romans returned to their camp which (*quae*) was eight miles from town.

269

VOCABULARY

<i>fortūna</i> , -ae, <i>f.</i> , fortune, chance, good fortune	<i>discō</i> , <i>discere</i> , <i>didicī</i> , —, learn
<i>ōsculum</i> , -ī, <i>n.</i> , kiss	<i>absum</i> , <i>abesse</i> , <i>āfuī</i> , —, be absent, be distant
<i>conditor</i> , <i>conditōris</i> , <i>m.</i> , founder	<i>anteā</i> , <i>adverb</i> , before, previously
<i>pēs</i> , <i>pedis</i> , <i>m.</i> , foot	<i>crās</i> , <i>adverb</i> , tomorrow
<i>albus</i> , -a, -um, white	<i>herī</i> , <i>adverb</i> , yesterday
<i>memor</i> ( <i>gen. sing. memoris</i> , <i>abl. sing. memorī</i> , <i>gen. pl. memorum</i> ), remembering, mindful of, <i>used with gen.</i>	<i>hodiē</i> , <i>adverb</i> , today

*Absum* is a compound of *sum*: present indicative, *absum*; imperfect, *aberam*; future, *aberō*; perfect, *āfuī*; pluperfect, *āfueram*; future perfect, *āfuerō*.

## REVIEW LESSON SIX

### I. Vocabulary

- A. Give the genitive singular, gender and meaning of these nouns:

amīcitia	flamma	nihil	servitūs
angustiae (pl.)	fortūna	ōrātiō	spatium
animus	grātia	ōsculum	tergum
conditor	libertās	pēs	umbra
dōnum	lītus	praemium	vīcus
fāma	mūnitiō	senex	

- B. Give the nominative singular, in all genders, and the meaning of these adjectives:

aeger	antīquus	idōneus	nōbilis	quantus
albus	grātus	memor	posterus	validus

- C. Give the principal parts and the meaning of these verbs:

abeō	cōspiciō	expugnō	quaerō
absum	contendō	frangō	redeō
adeō	dēleō	ineō	reficiō
circumveniō	dēligō	īnstruō	repellō
committō	discō	mūniō	spērō
cōficiō	eō	parcō	trānseō
cōfirmō	exeō	pereō	

- D. Give the meaning of these words and phrases:

ā dextrā	etiam	quā dē causā
ā fronte	herī	quibus dē causīs
anteā	hīc	rēs gesta
ā sinistrā	hodiē	rūrsus
at	longē	simul
ā tergō	magnopere	umquam
atque (ac)	magnīs itineribus	unde
crās	multīs dē causīs	
aciem īnstruere		nāvem ascendere
amīcitiam cōfirmāre		ōrātiōnem habēre
grātiās agere		proelium committere

### II. Forms and Syntax

- A. Give the cardinal numbers in Latin from ūnus to vīginti and the ordinal numbers from prīmus to decimus.

- B. Decline the interrogative pronoun **quis**, **quid** and the interrogative adjective **quī**, **quae**, **quod**.
- C. Give indicative synopses both active and passive of **dēleō** in the third person singular and of **repellō** in the first person plural.
- D. Give an indicative synopsis of **eō** in the first person singular.
- E. Give the indicated form:
- |                   |                              |
|-------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. Acc. Pl.       | <b>quod proelium</b>         |
| 2. Dat. Sing.     | <b>ūnus magister sapiēns</b> |
| 3. Abl. Pl.       | <b>omnēs nōs</b>             |
| 4. Acc. Sing.     | <b>summus mōns</b>           |
| 5. Gen. Pl.       | <b>trēs lēgātī potentēs</b>  |
| 6. Dat. Pl.       | <b>duae rēgīnae nōbilēs</b>  |
| 7. Future 3rd Pl. | <b>absum</b>                 |

### III. Translation

- A. Translate these Latin sentences:
- Eō diē peditēs iter quīndecim mīlium passuum fēcērunt; castra in mediō monte posita sunt.
  - Dum haec in vīcō geruntur, multī mīlitēs prope lītus vulnerābantur et paucī interficiēbantur.
  - Nōlī committere omnia illī ūnī prīncipī; crās multa mīlia passuum aberit et domum redīre poteris.
  - Dux ad suōs ōrātiōnem habēbat: "Oppida nostra circumvenientur et liberī nostrī in servitūtem dūcentur nisi patriam dēfenderitis."
  - Quantus erat exercitus hostium? Quot lēgātī exībant cum mīlitibus? Quae tēla portābant? Quā dē causā discēdēbant?
  - Castra vāllō octō pedēs altō et fossā duodecim pedēs lātā mūniuntur; crās tamen ea expugnābimus.
  - Pater Aenēae erat senex dēfessus et aeger. Quamquam in patriā suā manēre cupiēbat, cum filiō nāvem ascendit et ad multās terrās trāsiit. Nōnne Trōiānī erant virī fortēs?
  - Simul atque ignēs ab incolīs vīcōrum cōspectī sunt, omnēs terrītī ad lītus contendērunt. Paucī effūgērunt; multī periērunt.

B. Complete by translating the English word or phrase:

1. \_\_\_\_\_ (*Whose*) nāvēs in lītus frāctae sunt?
2. Fīlius patrī suō \_\_\_\_\_ (*in wisdom*) pār nōn est.
3. Aequum est \_\_\_\_\_ (*many things*) spērāre.
4. Saepe ūnō diē mīlia \_\_\_\_\_ (*slaves*) in arēnā vulnerantur. Hodīc \_\_\_\_\_ (*two hundred*) interfectī sunt.
5. Nūntius \_\_\_\_\_ (*eighteen miles*) ad vīcum fīnitimum ambulābat.
6. Mīlitēs \_\_\_\_\_ (*the top of the mountain*) vidēre nōn poterant.
7. \_\_\_\_\_ (*To whom*) dux ōrātiōnem habuit?
8. Sī aciēs \_\_\_\_\_ (*is drawn up*) in angustīis, nostrī magnō in perīculō erunt.
9. Cloelia in urbem cum aliīs obsidibus \_\_\_\_\_ (*is going*).
10. \_\_\_\_\_ (*What*) librī ab magistrō dēlēctī sunt?

IV. Word Study and Derivatives

*Explain the meaning of the italicized words:*

1. My brother completed the work for his advanced degree *in absentia*.
2. Your habitual *procrastination* is a source of irritation to the entire family.
3. *Delete* all trivial details.
4. His biological experiment on the subject of *albino* rats won an award at the Science Fair.
5. Our forefathers wished to secure the blessings of liberty for themselves and their *posterity*.
6. The Red Cross has publicized the urgent need for blood *donors*.
7. Is the *validity* of the prosecutor's summary subject to question?
8. The next course in the chemistry sequence will be *Quantitative Analysis*.
9. Did you ever see an animal as *inquisitive* as this cat?
10. Although an octogenarian, the ambassador shows no signs of *senility*.

## V. Ancient History and Mythology

A. *Identify the following from the description given:*

1. Fīlius Aenēae urbem Albam Longam condidit.
2. Fīlia Latīnī in mātirimōnium ducī Trōiānō data est.
3. Rēx Persārum ingentem exercitum in Graeciam dūxit.
4. Centum quadrāgintā (*forty*) duōs librōs dē rēbus gestīs Rōmānōrum scrīpsit.
5. Haec urbs antīqua Italiae calamitāte nātūrae ignīque dēlēta est.

B. What tradition linked the Roman people with the ancient Trojans?

## VI.

### Sight Reading

#### Dē Capris Barbātis

Ōlim caprae grātiā petentēs (*seeking*) ad Iovem vērunt. Ā patre hominum et deōrum barbā similem barbae caprōrum postulābant. Statim barba data est. Tum caprī, maerētēs quod fēminae dignitāte parēs erant, indignārī (*to complain*) coepērunt. “Sinite,” inquit Iuppiter, “illās glōriā vānā habēre et vestrī ōrnātum mūneris gerere (*to wear*), dummodo vōbīs parēs fortitūdine nōn sint (*are*).”

*Moral:* Be not too concerned with vain trivialities.

PHAEDRUS IV. 17 (*Adapted*)

barba, -ae, *f.*, beard;  
barbātus, -a, -um, bearded  
caper, caprī, *m.*, he-goat  
capra, -ae, *f.*, she-goat  
dignitās, -tātis, *f.*, honor, dignified appearance  
dummodo, *conj.*, provided  
fortitūdō, -tūdinis, *f.*, strength, moral courage

maerēns, grieving  
mūnus, mūneris, *n.*, office, function  
ornātus, -ūs, *m.*, equipment, embellishment  
sinō, -ere, permit, allow  
vānus, -a, -um, empty

*Answer these questions in English:*

1. What favor were the she-goats seeking?
2. Were they successful in their quest?
3. Why were the he-goats unhappy?
4. What was Jupiter's advice to the males?



*Statue of Julius  
Caesar (c. 102-44  
B.C.), Rome*

# 38

## Relative Pronoun

*Fēlix quī potuit rērum cognōscere causās.*

*Happy is he who has been able to learn the causes of things.*

VERGIL

270

## Dē Civitāte Rōmānā

Populum Rōmānum septem rēgēs deinceps (*in succession*)  
rēxērunt, quōrum ultimus (*last*) Tarquinius Superbus appellā-  
tus est. Quō<sup>1</sup> expulsō ob iniūriam ā filiō Sextō factam in  
Lucrētiam, mātṛōnam (*married lady*) Rōmānam, Rōmānī  
multīs dē causīs rēgibus pārēre nōlēbant (*did not want*). Duōs 5

<sup>1</sup> The relative is used freely in Latin at the beginning of an independent sentence for closer connection with the preceding sentence: **Quō expulsō**, *when he was driven out (literally, who having been driven out)*.



cōsulēs igitur creāvērunt quī imperium per annum solum habēbant. Cōsulēs Rōmānī cīvēs armātōs in bellum dūcēbant, necnōn (*and also*) iūra (*laws*) dabant in urbe omnibus.

At cīvēs cōsulēs semper habēre mālēbant (*preferred*), quī  
10 ex eīs familiīs nātī erant (*were descended*), quōrum patrēs senātōrēs (*as senators*) cōsiliū rēgibus antea dederant, et tum cōsulibus dabant. Hī patriciī appellābantur; plērumque (*as a rule*) multōs agrōs servōsque habēbant; cēterōs cīvēs nōn cūrābant.

15 Cēterōs plēbem appellābant, quōrum in numerō erant nautae mercātōrēsque multīque aliī. Ex hāc plēbe erant nōnnūllī (*some*) quī servī patriciōrum fuerant, officiaque eīs dēbēbant. Hī clientēs, illī patrōnī erant. Plūrimīs (*For very many*) tamen ex plēbe, quibus nōn erant patrōnī, vīta misera erat. Postrēmō  
20 plēbs Rōmā exīre et pauca mīlia passuum ab urbe cīvitatē suam condere cōstituit.

Postquam plēbs ex urbe discessit, tribūnī duo creatī sunt; quī auxilium plēbī dabant eamque ab iniuriīs patriciōrum dēfendēbant.

### Respondē Latīnē :

1. Quī post mortem Rōmulī populum Rōmānum rēxērunt?
2. Cūr expulsus est Tarquinius Superbus?
3. Quid postea fēcērunt Rōmānī?
4. Quālēs (*What kind of*) cōsulēs cīvēs habēre mālēbant?
5. Quod nōmen eīs datum est?
6. Quid cēterōs appellābant?
7. Quī erant clientēs?
8. Cūr cōstituit plēbs Rōmā exīre?
9. Ubi cīvitatē suam condere plēbs cōstituit?
10. Quae erant officia tribūnōrum?

A relative pronoun connects a subordinate clause, of which it is a part, to some noun or pronoun which has gone before and which is called its antecedent (*ante* + *cēdō*, *I go*). In the sentence

*This is the messenger who has just arrived,*  
*who* connects the subordinate clause, *who has just arrived*, with the antecedent, *messenger*.

In English the relative pronouns are *who* (*whose, whom*), *which*, and *that*.

In Latin the relative pronoun is **quī**, which is declined as follows:

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
<i>Gen.</i>	cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>Acc.</i>	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
<i>Abl.</i>	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

**RULE:** In Latin a relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person. *But* its case is determined by its use in the clause in which it stands.

Miles [quī pugnat] est fortis.	The soldier [who is fighting] is brave.
Miles [cuius arma habeō] est fortis.	The soldier [whose arms I have] is brave.
Miles [cui arma dedī] est fortis.	The soldier [to whom I have given the arms] is brave.
Miles [quem videō] est fortis.	The soldier [whom I see] is brave.
Miles [ā quō Gallus est vulnerātus] est fortis.	The soldier [by whom the Gaul was wounded] is brave.
Cōpiae [quae pugnant] sunt fortēs.	The troops [that are fighting] are brave.
Cōpiae [quārum sum dux] sunt fortēs.	The troops [whose leader I am] are brave.
Cōpiae [quibus arma dedī] sunt fortēs.	The troops [to whom I have given the arms] are brave.
Cōpiae [quās videō] sunt fortēs.	The troops [that I see] are brave.
Cōpiae [ā quibus Galli sunt vulnerātī] sunt fortēs.	The troops [by whom the Gauls have been wounded] are brave.

The preposition **cum** is attached to the ablative of the relative pronoun.

**Frāter meus [quōcum vēnī] manēbit.**

My brother [with whom I came] will remain.

**Soror mea [quācum vēnī] manēbit.**

My sister [with whom I came] will remain.

**Liberī mei [quibuscum vēnī] manēbunt.**

My children [with whom I came] will remain.

English frequently omits the relative pronoun; Latin must insert it.

This is the camp we are pitching.

**Haec sunt castra quae pōnimus.**

The relative pronoun may be used with the pronoun **is** as its antecedent.

*Masc.* **is quī**, he who, the man who

**eī quī**, they who, those who

*Fem.* **ea quae**, she who

*Neut.* **id quod**, that which

**ea quae**, those things which

**Is sum [quī id fēcī].**

I am he (the man) [who did it].

**Eīs dixī ea [quae cognōveram].**

I told them those things [which I had found out].

The English word *what* sometimes means *that which* or *those things which*.

**Dā mihi id quod (ea quae) in manū habēs.**

Give me what you have in your hand.

A. *Translate:*

1. Legiō quae est in castrīs est decima.
2. Legiō cuius pars est in urbe est septima.
3. Legiō cui nova arma data sunt est quīnta.
4. Legiō quam in Britanniam dūcet est sexta.
5. Legiō quācum in Germāniam vēnit est tertia.

6. Castra quae pōnuntur erunt maxima.
7. Castra quōrum vāllum est altum fossam lātam habent.
8. Castra quibus hostēs appropinquant capientur.
9. Castra quae posuērunt sunt prope Tiberim.
10. Castra in quibus manēmus mox movēbuntur.
11. Vīcus quī incēsus est erat parvus.
12. Vīcus cuius partem incendērunt erat magnus.
13. Vīcus quem incendēmus est parvus.
14. Gallī quī captī sunt in servitūtem dūcentur.
15. Gallī quōrum puerī captī sunt maestī sunt.
16. Gallī quibus praemia dedit sunt laetī.
17. Gallī quōs exīre iusserat exiērunt.
18. Gallī sine quibus haec oppida capere nōn possumus sunt ācrēs mīlitēs.
19. Gallī quibuscum amīcitiam cōfirmāvimus ōlim erant nōbīs inimicī.
20. Gallī ad quōs auxilia missa sunt fortiter pugnant.

B. *Complete with the correct form of the relative pronoun:*

- |  |            |
|--|------------|
| 1. Vīdī puellam ____ vēnit.                  | who        |
| 2. Vidēbimus puellās ____ vērunt.            | who        |
| 3. Puellae ____ viderāmus vērunt.            | whom       |
| 4. Puella ____ videram vēnit.                | whom       |
| 5. Hic est puer ____ pater venit.            | whose      |
| 6. Hī sunt puerī ____ pater veniet.          | whose      |
| 7. Ille est miles ____ gladium dedimus.      | to whom    |
| 8. Illī sunt mīlitēs ____ gladiōs dedimus.   | to whom    |
| 9. Hic est gladius ____ nōs dēfendet.        | with which |
| 10. Haec sunt tēla ____ vōs dēfendent.       | with which |
| 11. Frāter meus ____ vērī est parvus.        | with whom  |
| 12. Frātrēs meī ____ vērī sunt parvī.        | with whom  |
| 13. Soror ____ vērī est parva.               | with whom  |
| 14. Dōnum ____ habent hī senēs est pulchrum. | which      |
| 15. Dōna ____ habet hic senex sunt pulchra.  | which      |
| 16. Miles ____ dēfendimur fortis est.        | by whom    |
| 17. Mīlitēs ____ dēfendimur fortēs sunt.     | by whom    |
| 18. Servus ____ captus est interficiētur.    | who        |
| 19. Servī ____ captī sunt interficientur.    | who        |
| 20. Servus ____ laudāmus est nōbīs grātus.   | whom       |

C. *Translate:*

1. Auxilium ab omnibus clientibus quī Rōmae habitant ā duōbus tribūnīs petitur.
2. Patriciī multōs servōs quibus imperant habent.
3. Pater huius familiae est Lūcius quem populus Rōmānus cōsulem creāvit.
4. Clientēs officia patriciīs Rōmānīs dēbēbant.
5. Cornēlius est patrōnus hōrum clientium quōrum agrī sunt prope urbem.
6. Dā mihi ea quae in manū habēs.
7. Vīta armātōrum ā quibus patria dēfenditur saepe est brevis.
8. Date omnia quae habētis Mārcō quī nūper cōsul creātus est.
9. Eī quī cōsulēs creatī erunt cīvēs armātōs in bellum dūcent.
10. In hāc cīvitatē quae ā patriciīs regitur plēbs est misera.

D. *Write in Latin:*

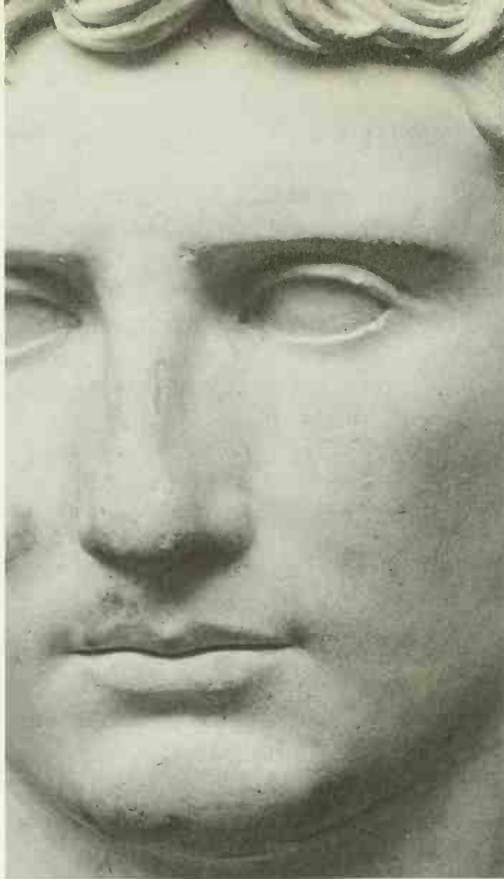
1. Our cities are being destroyed by these Romans, who have come into our territories.
2. The clients, many of whom have no money, will seek help from the rest of the citizens.
3. The lake to which they are going is deep.
4. Few of the patricians live in that part of the city which is nearest to the Forum.
5. The common people will seek aid from the tribunes who have recently been elected.
6. The patricians to whom the clients owed services were nobles.
7. The ship in which (by which) we sailed to Sicily is part of the Roman fleet.
8. Some of these men whom you see are traders; others are sailors.
9. Those who give advice to the king ought to give good advice.
10. Because of the wrong which had been done, the citizens drove the king from Rome.

<b>familia</b> , -ae, <i>f.</i> , family	<b>plēbs</b> , <b>plēbis</b> , <i>f.</i> , <i>collective sing.</i> ,
<b>vīta</b> , -ae, <i>f.</i> , life	common people, plebeians, the
<b>patricius</b> , <b>patriciī</b> , <i>m.</i> , a patrician	masses
<b>patrōnus</b> , -ī, <i>m.</i> , patron	<b>armātus</b> , -a, -um, armed
<b>tribūnus</b> , -ī, <i>m.</i> , tribune	<b>creō</b> , <b>creāre</b> , <b>creāvī</b> , <b>creātum</b> ,
<b>officium</b> , <b>officiī</b> , <i>n.</i> , duty, service	elect, make, create
<b>cliēns</b> , <b>clientis</b> ( <i>gen. pl.</i>	<b>regō</b> , <b>regere</b> , <b>rēxī</b> , <b>rēctum</b> ,
<b>clientium</b> ), <i>m. and f.</i> , client	direct, rule
<b>cōnsul</b> , <b>cōsulis</b> , <i>m.</i> , consul	<b>igitur</b> , <i>postpositive<sup>2</sup> conjunction</i> ,
	therefore, accordingly
	<b>postrēmō</b> , <i>adverb</i> , at last

You have already been introduced to the concept of "word families," groups of words having a common ancestry. In the vocabulary of this lesson you have two words, **patricius** and **patrōnus**, that are derived from the noun **pater**. With the help of a Latin dictionary, determine the relationship that these two words and the four that follow bear to the root word **pater**: **patrius**, **patria**, **patruus**, **patrimōnium**.

<sup>2</sup> A postpositive word normally follows the first word in the sentence; it cannot stand first.





*Head of Augustus,  
first century A.D.*

39

Comparison of Adjectives  
Ablative of Comparison

Ō māt̄re pulchrā filia pulchrior  
*O daughter fairer than a mother fair!*

HORACE: ODES 1.16

275

Xerxēs Graeciam Vincere Cōstituit

Ōlim in magnā urbe Persidis (*of Persia*), pulchriōre quam cēterīs urbibus terrae, rēx, Xerxēs nōmine, habitābat. Is erat irātus Graecīs quī in Graeciā īsulīsque habitābant, quod multīs bellīs auxilia ad hostēs Persārum inde missa erant.

5 Itaque Xerxēs Graeciam īsulāsque vincere cōstituit. Postquam nāvēs mīlitēsque undique coēgit, trāns mare nāvi-

gāre parāvit. Mīlitibus nautisque convocātis “Graecōs superāre,” inquit, “erit facile. Graecī, quamquam sunt fortēs et audācēs, vōbīs nōn sunt fortiōrēs et audāciōrēs. Omnium enim mīlitum fortissimī et audācissimī estis; multās victōriās reportāvistis. Ubi vīdistis rēgem potentiōrem, populum clāriōrem, exercitum ācriōrem? Brevī victōriam iterum reportāre poteritis.” 10

Persae īnsulās, quae sunt prope Graeciam, prīmō superāre cōstituērunt. Aliīs īnsulis appropinquāre facile erat, quod lītus erat aequum et collēs marī imminentēs<sup>1</sup> (*overhanging*) erant humiliōrēs; aliīs appropinquāre difficile erat quod īnsulae erant altae et montēs altissimōs habēbant. Sed in īnsulis erant paucae urbēs mūnitae. 15

Incolae tamen īnsulārum, quod semper liberī erant liberārumque cīvitātum, imperiō Persicō (*adj.*) pārere nōlēbant (*did not wish*). 20

### Respondē Latīnē :

1. Ubi habitābat Xerxēs? 2. Quibus erat Xerxēs irātus?
3. Cūr irātus erat? 4. Quid facere cōstituit Xerxēs?
5. Quid Xerxēs mīlitibus nautisque dīxit? 6. Omnium mīlitum quī sunt fortissimī?
7. Cūr erat aliīs īnsulis facile, aliīs difficile appropinquāre? 8. Cūr incolae īnsulārum imperiō Persicō pārere nōlēbant?

## 276 COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES IN ENGLISH

In the sentences

This is a high tree,  
This is a higher tree than that,  
This is the highest tree in the park,

different trees are being compared with respect to their height. The three forms of the adjective, *high*, *higher*, *highest*, express three different degrees of comparison. *High* is in the positive degree, *higher* in the comparative, and *highest* in the superlative.

<sup>1</sup> *immineō* is used with the dative.

In English, adjectives are compared regularly either by adding *-er*, *-est* to the positive or by placing the adverbs *more*, *most* before the positive.

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
high	higher	highest
pleasing	more pleasing	most pleasing

## 277 COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES IN LATIN

The nominative of comparatives is formed by adding to the base of the positive the suffix *-ior* for the masculine and feminine, and *-ius* for the neuter.

POSITIVE	BASE	COMPARATIVE
<b>altus</b>	<b>alt-</b>	<b>altior</b> ( <i>m. and f.</i> ), <b>altius</b> ( <i>n.</i> ), higher
<b>fortis</b>	<b>fort-</b>	<b>fortior</b> ( <i>m. and f.</i> ), <b>fortius</b> ( <i>n.</i> ), braver

## 278 DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES

Comparatives are declined on the model of nouns with consonant stems of the third declension, that is, the ablative singular ends in *-e*, the genitive plural in *-um*, the nominative and accusative neuter plural in *-a*.

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	M. AND F.	N.	M. AND F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>fortior</b>	<b>fortius</b>	<b>fortiōrēs</b>	<b>fortiōra</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>fortiōris</b>	<b>fortiōris</b>	<b>fortiōrum</b>	<b>fortiōrum</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>fortiōrī</b>	<b>fortiōrī</b>	<b>fortiōribus</b>	<b>fortiōribus</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>fortiōrem</b>	<b>fortius</b>	<b>fortiōrēs</b>	<b>fortiōra</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>fortiōre</b>	<b>fortiōre</b>	<b>fortiōribus</b>	<b>fortiōribus</b>

## 279 FORMATION OF SUPERLATIVES

The Latin superlative is formed by adding the suffix *-issimus* (*m.*), *-issima* (*f.*), *-issimum* (*n.*) to the base. It is declined like *altus*, *-a*, *-um*.

POSITIVE	BASE	SUPERLATIVE
<b>altus, -a, -um</b>	<b>alt-</b>	<b>altissimus, -a, -um</b> <i>the highest, very high</i>
<b>fortis, -is, -e</b>	<b>fort-</b>	<b>fortissimus, -a, -um</b> <i>the bravest, very brave</i>

The comparative is sometimes translated *too* or *rather* and the superlative *very*.

**longior:** longer, too long, somewhat long, rather long  
**longissimus:** longest, very long

## ABLATIVE OF COMPARISON

**Rōmānī erant audāciōrēs quam Gallī.**

**Rōmānī erant audāciōrēs Gallīs.**

The Romans were bolder than the Gauls.

**Hieme noctēs longiōrēs quam diēs sunt.**

**Hieme noctēs longiōrēs diēbus sunt.**

In winter nights are longer than days.

**Amiciōrēs sunt nōbīs quam vōbīs.**

They are more friendly to us than to you.

When **quam** (*than*) is used after a comparative, the second noun takes the same case as the noun with which it is compared; that is, **quam** is followed by the same case as that which precedes it. But when **quam** is followed by the nominative or accusative case, **quam** may be omitted while the second noun is put in the ablative (ablative of comparison). The ablative cannot replace **quam** with the genitive, dative, or ablative; **quam** must be used in the fifth example.

281 The adjective **certus, -a, -um** means *sure, certain*. To express the idea *to inform someone*, Latin says *to make someone more certain*. The comparative adjective agrees with the person or persons receiving the information.

**Lēgātum certiōrem fēcī.**

I informed the staff-officer.

**Lēgātōs certiōrēs fēcī.**

I informed the staff-officers.

**Lēgātus certior factus est.**

The staff-officer was informed.

**Lēgātī certiōrēs factī sunt.**

The staff-officers were informed.

- A. *Translate. Give all possible meanings for the comparative and superlative.*
1. Dux fortis; dux fortior; dux fortissimus.
  2. Puerī fortēs; puerī fortiōrēs; puerī fortissimī.
  3. Breve tempus; brevius tempus; brevissimum tempus.
  4. In altō marī; in altiōre marī; in altissimō marī.
  5. Huius puellae laetae; huius puellae laetiōris; huius puellae laetissimae.
  6. Ad flūmen longius; ad flūmen longissimum; ad flūmina longiōra.
  7. Cum mīlitibus audācissimīs; cum mīlite audāciōre; cum mīlite audācissimō.
  8. Intrā vāllum lātius; intrā vālla lātissima; intrā vālla lātiōra.
- B. *Give the comparative and superlative forms of the adjective and translate:*
1. Illa urbs clāra; illa urbs \_\_\_\_\_; illa urbs \_\_\_\_\_.
  2. Cōnsilium ūtile; cōnsilium \_\_\_\_\_; cōnsilium \_\_\_\_\_.
  3. Hī pāstōrēs amīcī; hī pāstōrēs \_\_\_\_\_; hī pāstōrēs \_\_\_\_\_.
  4. Tria vulnera gravia; tria vulnera \_\_\_\_\_; tria vulnera \_\_\_\_\_.
  5. Apud rēgem potentem; apud rēgem \_\_\_\_\_; apud rēgem \_\_\_\_\_.
  6. Ad puerōs audācēs; ad puerōs \_\_\_\_\_; ad puerōs \_\_\_\_\_.
  7. In marī altō; in marī \_\_\_\_\_; in marī \_\_\_\_\_.
  8. Cum fēminīs nōbilibus; cum fēminīs \_\_\_\_\_; cum fēminīs \_\_\_\_\_.
- C. *Translate:*
1. Ego sum laetior quam avus meus.
  2. Ille mīles vulnera multa et gravissima habet.
  3. Ab hāc clārissimā cīvitāte iter fēcerāmus.
  4. Brevī rēgem dē novō cōnsiliō Persārum certiōrem facient.
  5. Hī collēs sunt illīs montibus humiliōrēs.
  6. Multōs annōs hasta erat ūtilissima.

7. Prīmō vĕre exercitum longiōre viā ad prōvinciam dūxit.
8. Dē fugā hōrum equitum certiōrēs factī, peditēs iterum ad castra mūnīta rediērunt.

D. *Write in Latin:*

1. This tower is higher than the rampart.
2. Our men will always be led by bolder chiefs.
3. In summer, nights are very short; in winter, rather long.
4. The bravest legions were being stationed in those towns.
5. Have you (*pl.*) ever seen a more powerful king?
6. That soldier has many very serious wounds.
7. This plan is very useful to us.
8. Lakes are wider than rivers, but rivers are often longer than lakes.
9. Because the time is very short, we ought to inform the staff-officer at once.

## SUPPLEMENTARY EXERCISES

A. *Translate:*

1. Haec legiō fortior; hic mīles audācissimus; hoc cōnsilium ūtilius.
2. Hae portae altissimae; hī rēgēs potentiōrēs; haec flūmina lātissima.
3. In flūmen altius; in silvam lātiōrem; in urbem clārisimam.
4. In fossā lātissimā; in vāllō lātiōre; in arce altissimā.
5. Cum puerīs fortiōribus; cum mīlitibus nōbilissimīs; cum mulieribus laetiōribus.

B. *Write in Latin:*

1. (*Nom.*) deeper water; a most famous city; a more famous man.
2. Of a very brave soldier; of a wider sea; of a rather long river.
3. Across the longest bridge; across a somewhat wide plain; across the very deep ditch.
4. Away from many most famous cities; away from too high gates; away from a rather long route.
5. (*Dat.*) to the bravest young man; to a more famous queen; to a most daring sailor.



C. *Translate:*

1. Quis parat bellum longius? 2. Tertiō diē viātōrēs ad flūmen lātius pervēnērunt. 3. Cōsul, sī dē victōriā certior factus erit, cōpiās ad urbem remittet. 4. Cōsul, simul atque dē periculō graviōre certior factus est, aciem instrūxit. 5. Nūllum aliud iter habēmus brevius illō.

283

VOCABULARY

**certus, -a, -um**, certain;  
**certiōrem facere**, to inform  
**brevis, brevis, breve**, short;  
**brevi**, *adverb*, in a short time,  
quickly  
**difficilis, difficilis, difficile**, hard,  
difficult  
**humilis, humilis, humile**, low  
**enim**, *postpositive conjunction*,  
for

**inde**, *adverb*, then; thence, from  
that place  
**iterum**, *adverb*, again, a second  
time  
**quam**, *conjunction*, than  
**semper**, *adverb*, always  
**undique**, *adverb*, from all sides,  
on all sides  
**victōriam reportāre**, to gain a  
victory

Painting by Cesare Maccari. Cicerō denounces Catiline in the Senate. The conspirator is shunned by colleagues who have moved away from him.



Brown Brothers



*Roman theater in  
Mérida, Spain*

40

## Irregular Comparison of Adjectives Ablative of Measure of Difference

Dulcis et alta quies placidaeque simillima morti

*Sleep sweet and deep, most like to quiet death.*

VERGIL: AENEID VI, 522

284

Dē Amphissō

In ūnā ex insulīs erat cīvis Graecus, Amphissus nōmine, quī  
(*who*) audācior cēterīs cīvibus erat. Multōs adulēscētēs,  
militēs ācerrimōs, quōs superiōre annō coēgerat, convocāvit.  
Brevissimā viā ā locīs superiōribus ad litus cōpiās dūxit. Dum  
haec geruntur, nāvēs plūrimae hostium vīsae sunt. Hīs 5  
nāvibus vīsīs, Graecī clāmōrem maximum fēcērunt.

- Persīs,<sup>1</sup> ubi ad lītus nāvigāvērunt, difficillimum erat nāvibus ēgredi (to land), praesertim quod adulēscētēs Graecī, quī multō audāciōrēs erant, impetum ācerissimum fēcērunt. Brevī  
 10 Persae ad nāvēs repulsī sunt. Deinde (Next) peius Persīs accidit, nam proximō diē complūrēs nāvēs incēnsae sunt. Reliquae nāvēs statim ā lītore discessērunt, neque in aliās īnsulās impetum facere audēbant. īnsulae omnēs erant liberae propter summam virtūtem incolārum ūnūs īnsulae.
- 15 Optimī cīvēs Amphissō plūrimam pecūniam dare volēbant (wished). "Pecūniam," inquit Amphissus, "accipere nōlō (I refuse). Omnēs bonī patriam dēfendere dēbent. Nōn sum fortior cēterīs militibus. Nōs omnēs liberī sumus. Liberī semper manēbimus."

### Respondē Latīnē :

1. Quālis (What kind of) cīvis erat Amphissus?
2. Quōs dūxit ad lītus ā locīs superiōribus?
3. Quandō cōpiās Amphissus cōgerat?
4. Quid, nāvibus vīsīs, fēcērunt Graecī?
5. Cūr erat difficillimum Persīs nāvibus ēgredi?
6. Quid Persīs accidit?
7. Quid peius Persīs accidit?
8. Cūr erant omnēs īnsulae liberae?
9. Quid optimī cīvēs Amphissō dare volēbant?
10. Quid dīxit Amphissus?

## 285 COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES (CONT'D)

Adjectives ending in **-er** form the superlative by adding **-rimus** to the masculine nominative singular of the positive.

The comparative is formed regularly.

POSITIVE	BASE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
pulcher	pulchr-	pulchrior	pulcherrimus
miser	miser-	miserior	miserrimus
ācer	ācr-	ācrior	ācerrimus
celer	celer-	celerior	celerrimus

<sup>1</sup> Persis, dat. plural; difficilis is used with dative.

Six adjectives ending in *-ilis* form the superlative by adding *-limus* to the base.

<i>facilis</i>	easy	<i>facilior</i>	<i>facillimus</i>
<i>difficilis</i>	difficult	<i>difficilior</i>	<i>difficillimus</i>
<i>similis</i>	like	<i>similior</i>	<i>simillimus</i>
<i>dissimilis</i>	unlike	<i>dissimilior</i>	<i>dissimillimus</i>

The other two are *gracilis*, *slender*, and *humilis*, *low*. Other adjectives ending in *-ilis* have the regular superlative: *ūtilis*, superlative *ūtilissimus*; *nōbilis*, superlative *nōbilissimus*.

The following adjectives are compared irregularly:

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE
<i>bonus</i> , -a, -um, good	<i>melior</i> , <i>melius</i> , better
<i>malus</i> , -a, -um, bad	<i>peior</i> , <i>peius</i> , worse
<i>magnus</i> , -a, -um, large	<i>maior</i> , <i>maius</i> , larger
<i>parvus</i> , -a, -um, small	<i>minor</i> , <i>minus</i> , smaller
<i>multus</i> , -a, -um, much	—, <i>plūs</i> , more
<i>multī</i> , -ae, -a, many	<i>plūrēs</i> , -a, more

#### SUPERLATIVE

<i>optimus</i> , -a, -um, best
<i>pessimus</i> , -a, -um, worst
<i>maximus</i> , -a, -um, largest
<i>minimus</i> , -a, -um, smallest
<i>plūrimus</i> , -a, -um, most
<i>plūrimī</i> , -ae, -a, most

## DECLENSION OF *MINOR*, *MINUS*

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>minor</i>	<i>minus</i>	<i>minōrēs</i>	<i>minōra</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>minōris</i>	<i>minōris</i>	<i>minōrum</i>	<i>minōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>minōrī</i>	<i>minōrī</i>	<i>minōribus</i>	<i>minōribus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>minōrem</i>	<i>minus</i>	<i>minōrēs</i>	<i>minōra</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>minōre</i>	<i>minōre</i>	<i>minōribus</i>	<i>minōribus</i>

287 **Plūs** in the singular is a neuter noun used with the genitive:

**Habeō plūs pecūniae quam frāter meus.**

I have more money than my brother.

**Plūrēs** in the plural is an adjective declined as follows:

	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>plūrēs</b>	<b>plūra</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>plūrium</b>	<b>plūrium</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>plūribus</b>	<b>plūribus</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>plūrēs</b>	<b>plūra</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>plūribus</b>	<b>plūribus</b>

**Plūrēs militēs**, *more soldiers*; **plūra**, *more things*.

**Complūrēs**, **complūra**, *several*, is declined like **plūrēs**:  
**Fēminae complūrēs**, *several women*.

## 288 ABLATIVE OF MEASURE OF DIFFERENCE

**Titus est longior ūnō pede quam Mārcus.**

Titus is taller by a foot than Marcus.

Titus is a foot taller than Marcus.

**Flūmen est lātius multis pedibus quam via.**

The river is wider by many feet than the road.

The river is many feet wider than the road.

**Aestāte diēs paucis hōris longiōrēs sunt quam noctēs.**

In summer the days are a few hours longer than the nights.

With comparatives, the ablative without a preposition is used to denote the measure or degree of difference (ablative of measure of difference).

The neuter ablatives **multō**, *by much*, **paulō**, *by a little*, **nihilō**, *by nothing*, are frequently used in this construction.

**Lūcius est multō melior quam frāter.**

(Lucius is better by much than his brother.)

Lucius is much better than his brother.

**Id aedificium est paulō maius.**

(That building is larger by a little.)

That building is a little larger.

**Is nūntius erat nihilō celerior.**

(This messenger was swifter by nothing.)

This messenger was no swifter.

A. *Translate:*

1. Mīles ācer; mīles ācerior; mīles ācerimus.
2. Iter facile; iter facilius; iter facillimum.
3. Hī equī celerēs; hī equī celeriorēs; hī equī celerrimī.
4. Multī amīcī; plūrēs amīcī; plūrimī amīcī.
5. Filius bonus; filius melior; filius optimus.
6. Huius puellae pulchrae; huius puellae pulchrioris; huius puellae pulcherrimae.
7. In parvīs castrīs; in minōribus castrīs; in minimīs castrīs.
8. Propter magistrum malum; propter magistrum peiōrem; propter magistrum pessimum.
9. In magnō marī; in maiōre marī; in maximō marī.
10. Trāns collem humilem; trāns collem humiliōrem; trāns collem humillimum.

B. *Give the comparative and superlative form of the adjective and translate:*

1. Nāvis celeris; nāvis \_\_\_\_\_; nāvis \_\_\_\_\_.
2. Proelium ācre; proelium \_\_\_\_\_; proelium \_\_\_\_\_.
3. Puer bonus; puer \_\_\_\_\_; puer \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Parvus vīcus; \_\_\_\_\_ vīcus; \_\_\_\_\_ vīcus.
5. Iter difficile; iter \_\_\_\_\_; iter \_\_\_\_\_.
6. In lītore humilī; in lītore \_\_\_\_\_; in lītore \_\_\_\_\_.
7. Dē magnīs rēbus; dē \_\_\_\_\_ rēbus; dē \_\_\_\_\_ rēbus.
8. Cum fēminā pulchrā; cum fēminā \_\_\_\_\_; cum fēminā \_\_\_\_\_.
9. Ad multōs mīlitēs; ad \_\_\_\_\_ mīlitēs; ad \_\_\_\_\_ mīlitēs.

C. *Translate:*

1. Ad maiōra castra; in maxima castra; plūrima animālia; plūrēs cīvēs.
2. Cum pulcherrimīs puellīs; plūs animī; librī ūtilissimī; in minōribus castrīs.
3. In meliōre nāvī; nōbilissima urbs; humillimae nāvēs; complūribus cīvibus.
4. Multō melior filius; paulō gracilior mulier; trāns plūrima flūmina; in maiōre marī.
5. Annō superiōre; ad loca superiōra; summā (cum) virtūte; plūs speī.



D. *Translate:*

1. (*Nom.*) Much better boys; the best boys; the best girls; these very beautiful homes. 2. Into a little smaller city; to several very beautiful cities; from the largest town; to the high citadel. 3. Through that very large plain; (*dat.*) to a much more famous leader; with the noblest men; to the larger camp. 4. With these four horsemen; by fiercer soldiers; more water; more animals. 5. To the higher ground; on the next day; at daybreak; more courage.

E. *Translate:*

1. Uxor mea est pulchra; ea est multō pulchrior uxore tuā; pulcherrima est omnium uxōrum. 2. Quid est melius quam virtūs? 3. Quid est in homine melius bonā mente? 4. Hīs rēbus cognitīs rēx Persārum plūrimās nāvēs longās cōēgerat. 5. Hieme diēs sunt multō breviorēs. 6. Nostri in summō monte complūrēs hōrās steterant. 7. Proximō diē plūs frūmentī et plūrimōs equitēs cōēgit. 8. Britannia est multīs mīlibus passuum lātior Hiberniā (*Ireland*). 9. Prīmā lūce impetum ācerrimum in maximum numerum hostium fēcērunt. 10. Facillimum est ad īmum montem pervenīre.

F. *Write in Latin:*

1. The soldiers are very wretched because they have a very wicked general. 2. Cavalry are swifter than infantry; the black horses of the Gauls are very swift. 3. It will be more difficult to reach the island on the next day. 4. This plan will be more useful to us than to you. 5. It is better to station the troops in the nearest woods at daybreak. 6. Because his sons were very evil, Tarquinius was driven from Rome. 7. We cannot carry more grain with us. 8. On this very wide river there are several bridges. 9. Germany is many miles wider than Gaul. 10. What is better than courage?

## SUPPLEMENTARY EXERCISE

Compare the following adjectives and give the English meanings of each form: **brevis**, **similis**, **bonus**, **audāx**, **celer**.

290

### VOCABULARY

**locus**, **locī**, *m.*, place, position;  
*pl.*, **loca**, **locōrum**, *n.*, places,  
ground, district

**clāmor**, **clāmōris**, *m.*, shouting,  
din

**celer** (*gen. celeris*), **celeris**,  
**celere**, swift, rapid

**prior**, former; **prīmus**, first

**propior**, nearer; **proximus**, near-  
est, next

**superus**, upper; **superior**, higher;

**suprēmus**, **summus**, highest;

**in superiōre locō**, in a higher  
position; **loca superiōra**, *n. pl.*,  
higher ground, the heights;

**annō superiōre**, last year;

**in summō monte**, on the top of  
the mountain; **summā (cum)**

**virtūte**, with exceptional (very  
great) courage

**accidō**, **accidere**, **accidī**, happen

**praesertim**, *adverb*, especially,  
particularly

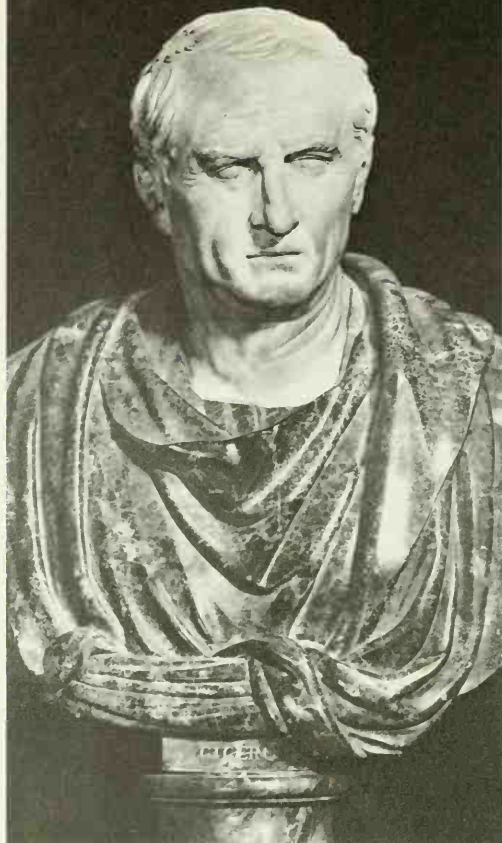
291

### WORD STUDY

English is indebted to Latin for many words formed directly on the comparative or superlative forms of irregular adjectives.

Give an English word directly derived from the comparative of **magnus**, **parvus**, **multus**, **superus**.

Give an English word derived directly or indirectly from the superlative of **bonus**, **malus**, **prior**, and **propior**.



*Bust of Cicero,  
Galleria Uffizi,  
Florence*

41

## Formation and Comparison of Adverbs

Fortiter Fidēliter Forsan Fēliciter  
*Bravely, faithfully, perhaps successfully*

292

### Dē Ōrātōribus Clārissimīs

Quīntus et Sextus sunt frātrēs. Hic est parvus et ille est longior ūnō pede quam frāter. Pater puerōrum in Galliā ācrit̄er fortiterque pugnāvit. Ibi bis pedibus vulnerātus est et nunc male ambulat. Cotīdiē puerī ad scholam veniunt.  
5 Quīntus bene legit, sed male scrībīt. Cum puerī legunt, Quīntus Sextum facile superat. Magister puerōrum, Crassus nōmine, nōn solum est magnus ōrātor sed etiam erat magister Cicerōnis, maximī ōrātōris.

Crās puerī in scholā nōn erunt, sed ad Forum ūnā cum patre suō adībunt. Ibi audient ōrātiōnēs quās Cicerō et Hortēnsius, 10  
clārissimī ōrātōrēs Rōmānī, ad populum dē lēge Māniliī habēbunt. Mānilius populō Rōmānō lēgem dē Pompeiō tulit (*has proposed*).

Pompeius, dux magnus, ā populō Rōmānō magnopere amātur quod eum periculō servāvit. Frūmentum Rōmam nāvigīs ā 15  
Sardiniā, Siciliā, Āfricā saepissimē portātur. Multī pīrātae, audācissimī virī quī in Ciliciā, prōvinciā Asiae, habitant, per tōtum mare longē lātēque errant. In Marī Internō (*Mediterranean*) nāvigāverunt et multa nāvigia cēpērunt. Pompeius, 20  
ubi dux factus est, nāvēs quam celerrimē parāvit et cum pīrātīs ācerimē et fortissimē pugnāvit. In marī Pompeius pīrātās facile vīcit, eōsque mox in Ciliciam pepulit. Ita fāma Pompei est magna et omnēs hostēs Rōmae eum timent.

Nunc Mithridātēs, rēx Pontī, quī anteā bellum gesserat cum exercitibus Rōmānīs, rūsus in Asiā pugnāt. Pompeius cupit 25  
quam primum pugnāre cum eō rēge quī multōs civēs Rōmānōs crūdēliter necāvit. Crās Cicerō dē periculō bellī Mithridāticī (*adj.*) ad populum Rōmānum ōrātiōnem habēbit. Cicerō Pompeium esse ducem bellī Mithridāticī cupit et prō lēge Māniliī ōrātiōnem habēbit. Manilius quoque vult Pompeium 30  
esse ducem. Contrā lēgem Hortēnsius ōrātiōnem habēbit. Puerī, Quīntus et Sextus, ōrātiōnēs ōrātōrum clārōrum audīre cupiunt.

## 293 FORMATION OF ADVERBS

Most adverbs in Latin are formed from adjectives. They are formed from adjectives of the first and second declensions by adding *-ē* to the base of the positive.

ADJECTIVE	BASE	ADVERBS
<i>lātus</i> , wide	<i>lāt-</i>	<i>lātē</i> , widely
<i>altus</i> , high	<i>alt-</i>	<i>altē</i> , high (on high, high up), deeply
<i>longus</i> , long	<i>long-</i>	<i>longē</i> , far
<i>liber</i> , free	<i>liber-</i>	<i>liberē</i> , freely
<i>pulcher</i> , beautiful	<i>pulchr-</i>	<i>pulchrē</i> , beautifully

They are formed from adjectives of the third declension by adding **-iter** to the base of the positive.

<b>fortis</b> , brave	<b>fort-</b>	<b>fortiter</b> , bravely
<b>gravis</b> , serious	<b>grav-</b>	<b>graviter</b> , seriously
<b>ācer</b> , sharp	<b>ācr-</b>	<b>ācriter</b> , sharply
<b>celer</b> , swift	<b>celer-</b>	<b>celeriter</b> , swiftly

**Audāx** adds **-ter**: **audāx**, bold; base **audāc-**; **audācter**, boldly.

Adjectives ending in **-ns** add **-er**: **potēns**, powerful; base **potent-**; **potenter**, powerfully.

## 294 COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

The comparative of an adverb has the same form as the accusative singular neuter of the comparative of the corresponding adjective.

The superlative of an adverb is formed by substituting **-ē** for the final **-us** of the superlative of the corresponding adjective.

	POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
<i>Adjective</i>	<b>lātus</b>	<b>lātior</b>	<b>lātissimus</b>
<i>Adverb</i>	<b>lātē</b>	<b>lātius</b>	<b>lātissimē</b>
<i>Adjective</i>	<b>longus</b>	<b>longior</b>	<b>longissimus</b>
<i>Adverb</i>	<b>longē</b>	<b>longius</b>	<b>longissimē</b>
<i>Adjective</i>	<b>liber</b>	<b>liberior</b>	<b>liberrimus</b>
<i>Adverb</i>	<b>liberē</b>	<b>liberius</b>	<b>liberrimē</b>
<i>Adjective</i>	<b>fortis</b>	<b>fortior</b>	<b>fortissimus</b>
<i>Adverb</i>	<b>fortiter</b>	<b>fortius</b>	<b>fortissimē</b>
<i>Adjective</i>	<b>ācer</b>	<b>ācrior</b>	<b>ācerrimus</b>
<i>Adverb</i>	<b>ācriter</b>	<b>ācius</b>	<b>ācerrimē</b>
<i>Adjective</i>	<b>celer</b>	<b>celerior</b>	<b>celerrimus</b>
<i>Adverb</i>	<b>celeriter</b>	<b>celerius</b>	<b>celerrimē</b>
<i>Adjective</i>	<b>audāx</b>	<b>audācior</b>	<b>audācissimus</b>
<i>Adverb</i>	<b>audācter</b>	<b>audācius</b>	<b>audācissimē</b>

The following adverbs show some irregularity:

<b>bene</b> , well	<b>melius</b> , better	<b>optimē</b> , best, very well
<b>male</b> , badly	<b>peius</b> , worse	<b>pessimē</b> , worst, very badly
<b>diū</b> , long (for a long time)	<b>diūtius</b> , longer	<b>diūtissimē</b> , very long

facile, easily	facilius, more easily	facillimē, most easily, very easily
magnopere, greatly	magis, more	maximē, especially
multum, much	plūs, more	plūrimum, most, very much
parum, little	minus, less	minimē, least, very little
prope, near, nearly	propius, nearer	proximē, nearest, very near
saepe, often	saepius, more often	saepissimē, most often

**Parum** usually means *too little, not enough*; **minimē**, *not in the least, not at all*.

295 **Quam** with the superlative of an adjective or adverb expresses the highest degree possible.

<b>Liberī sunt quam optimī.</b>	The children are as good as possible.
<b>Quam celerrimē venient.</b>	They will come as quickly as possible.
<b>Quam primum iter fēcērunt.</b>	They marched as soon as possible.

296

## EXERCISES

A. *Translate:*

1. Celeriter redire; celerius redire; celerrimē redire.
2. Longē abesse; longius abesse; longissimē abesse.
3. Diū pugnāre; diūtius pugnāre; diūtissimē pugnāre.
4. Facile vincere; facilius vincere; facillimē vincere.
5. Quam celerrimē ambulāmus; quam primum discēdam; puerī quam optimē contendunt.
6. Hodiē liberius dicere potest; heri liberē dicere nōn poterat; crās, ut (as) spērō, liberrimē dicere poterit.
7. Hae puella bene scribit, sed pessimē legit; soror melius legit, sed peius scribit.
8. Liberī audācter respondēre nōn dēbent; adulēscētēs saepe audācius respondent; num senēs audācissimē respondent?
9. Agricola est minus fortis quam nauta; mercātor minimē fortis est.
10. Mulierēs magnopere timēbant; agrīs vāstātīs, magis timēbunt.



B. *Give the comparative and superlative forms of the adverb and translate:*

1. Male scribere; \_\_\_\_\_ scribere; \_\_\_\_\_ scribere.
2. Crūdēliter necāre; \_\_\_\_\_ necāre; \_\_\_\_\_ necāre.
3. Facile vincere; \_\_\_\_\_ vincere; \_\_\_\_\_ vincere.
4. Diū pugnāre; \_\_\_\_\_ pugnāre; \_\_\_\_\_ pugnāre.
5. Sapienter dīcere; \_\_\_\_\_ dīcere; \_\_\_\_\_ dīcere.
6. Senex bene vidēre nōn potest; senex \_\_\_\_\_ vidēre nōn potest; senex \_\_\_\_\_ vidēre nōn potest.
7. Ille rēx potenter imperat; ille rēx \_\_\_\_\_ imperat; ille rēx \_\_\_\_\_ imperat.
8. Frāter meus clārē clāmābat; frāter meus \_\_\_\_\_ clāmābat; frāter meus \_\_\_\_\_ clāmābat.
9. Cōpiae montēs celeriter trānsībunt; cōpiae montēs \_\_\_\_\_ trānsībunt; cōpiae montēs \_\_\_\_\_ trānsībunt.
10. Hostēs agrōs lātē vāstāvērunt; hostēs agrōs \_\_\_\_\_ vāstāvērunt; hostēs agrōs \_\_\_\_\_ vāstāvērunt.

C. *Write in Latin:*

1. They had fought fiercely on the rather wide plain.
2. He led his troops very quickly to the top of the hill.
3. Today we shall remain at home for a longer time.
4. Our allies have sent reinforcements as often as possible.
5. This very beautiful girl writes rather badly.
6. My plan is much better than yours, Lucius.
7. This book is very useful to us, for we read well.
8. Twice we climbed the highest hill rather easily.
9. This orator is by far the best.
10. She is the least happy of all the children.

D. *Translate:*

1. Prīmō pīrātae ob fāmam Pompeiī magnopere terrentur.
2. Ita lēgātī quam plūrimās nāvēs coēgerant.
3. Servus aquam facilius atque celerius quam parvus puer portāre poterat.
4. Impetum proximō diē facillimē sustinuerant.
5. Hic impetus ā pīrātīs minus facile sustinēbitur.
6. Interim, dum haec geruntur, ille rēx crūdēlissimus plūrimōs cīvēs Rōmānōs rūrsus necāvit.
7. Quam celerrimē castra propius movēre coepērunt.
8. Saepe equitēs ex equīs dēsiliunt (*leap down*) et inter peditēs pugnant.
9. Quam maximō numerō nautārum coāctō, crās nāvīgā-

bimus. 10. Pīrātae, cum dē adventū Pompeiī cognōverint, magis terrēbuntur.

E. *Write in Latin:*

1. The inhabitants of the town will boldly defend their wives and children.
2. The girls read not only better but also faster than the boys.
3. For too long a time they remained in the smaller town.
4. The Romans did not conquer the enemy easily because they (*the enemy*) were very bold.
5. Our commander ought to fight as soon as possible for (*on behalf of*) his men.
6. The Gauls fought very fiercely and boldly with the Romans.
7. We shall most easily withstand all the attacks of the cavalry for a very long time.
8. He had gone along with the noblest chief of the whole of Gaul.
9. I shall station as friendly a garrison as possible in the larger citadel.
10. The Gauls were conquered by the Romans because the Romans had braver leaders than the Gauls.

## SUPPLEMENTARY EXERCISES

- A. *Compare the following adjectives: lātus, gravis, bonus.*  
B. *Form adverbs from the adjectives in Exercise A; compare these adverbs.*

297

## VOCABULARY

pīrāta, -ae, *m.*, pirate  
nāvigium, nāvigii, *n.*, boat  
lēx, lēgis, *f.*, law  
ōrātor, ōrātōris, *m.*, orator  
crūdēlis, crūdēlis, crūdēle, cruel;  
crūdēliter, *adverb*, cruelly  
bis, *adverb*, twice

longē lātēque, far and wide  
nōn solum . . . sed etiam, not  
only . . . but also  
primum, *adverb*, first, in the first  
place; quam primum, as early  
(soon) as possible  
ūnā cum (*with abl.*) together  
with, along with



*Claudian aqueduct  
designed to carry  
water to the Palatine  
and other hills of  
Rome*

# 42

## Reflexive Pronouns

Nūllī sē dīcit mulier mea nūbere mālle  
 quam mihi, nōn sī sē Iuppiter ipse petat.  
 Dīcit; sed mulier cupidō quod dīcit amantī,  
 in ventō et rapidā scribere oportet aquā.

CATULLUS 70

*My girl says she'd marry no one but me  
 Not even if Jupiter sought her.  
 But what a girl says to a man mad with love  
 Should be written in wind and swift water.*

Although after 493 B.C. the plebeians had their own officers, the tribunes, to protect them, they continued to be oppressed, as the law was purely oral and traditional and was known only to the patricians. The plebeians insisted that the laws be written and published in order that they might know by what laws they were being judged.

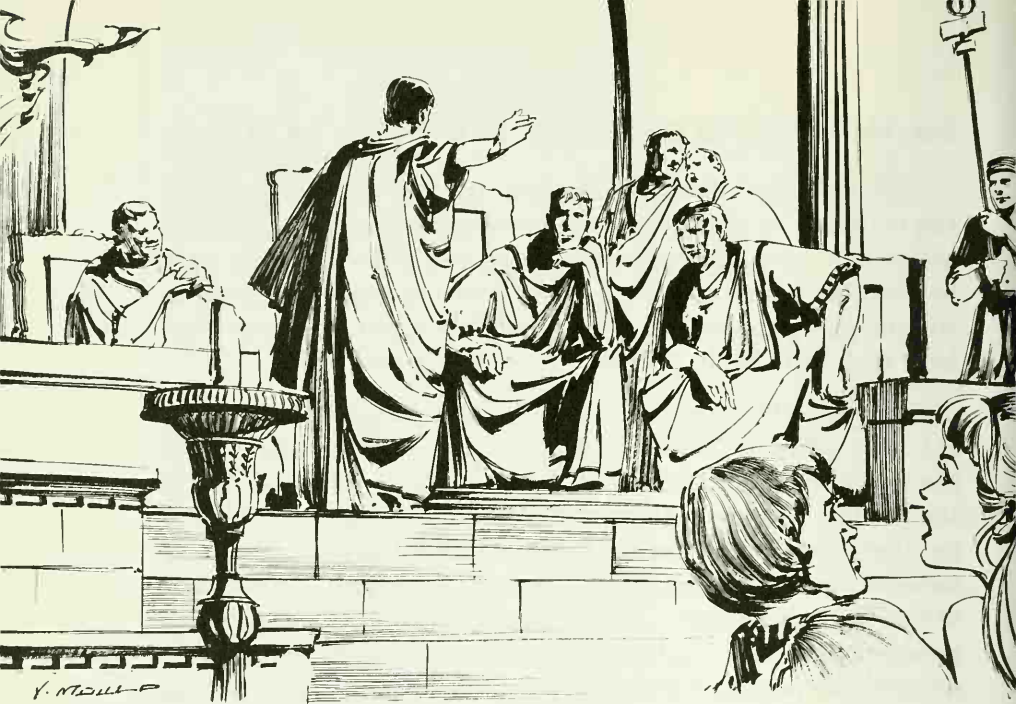
For years the patricians opposed this measure, but in 451 B.C., in place of the two consuls, ten commissioners were elected for one year to draw up a code of laws. They published ten tables of laws. As the work had not been completed, another board was elected for the following year; the only member to be re-elected was Appius Claudius. Two final tables were published. The commissioners should then have resigned, but they continued in office until a shameful crime aroused the people, who forced them to lay down their power.

### Dē Decemvirīs: dē Verginiā (Part 1)

Quod dē lēgibus multōs annōs inter patriciōs plēbēiōsque (plebeians) discordia erat, tandem prō (*in place of*) duōbus cōsulibus decemvirī creātī sunt: quī ā populō iussī sunt lēgēs novās et aequās facere. Cōsulēs enim sibi suisque cōsulēbant nec plēbem cūrābant. Itaque decemvirī lēgum tabulās 5 (*tables, brief codes*) decem scrīpsērunt. Ē decemvirīs ūnus, Appius Claudius nōmine, amīcus plēbī esse vidēbātur; iterum igitur est creātus ā populō. Tum superbus crūdēlisque factus est (*became*) quamquam plēbī antea fuerat amīcus; propter crūdēlītatem imperia eius diūtius sustinēre nōn poterant. 10

Tandem nefās (*a crime*) in urbe factum imperiū decemvirōrum finem fēcīt. Nam virgō Verginia, L.<sup>1</sup> Verginiū filia, L. Iciliō, tribūniciō virō (*an ex-tribune*), prōmissa erat. Quam sibi habēre volēbat Appius Claudius, aliisque modīs frūstrā temp-tātīs, dum pater Verginae in castrīs abest, M.<sup>1</sup> Claudium, 15

<sup>1</sup> Latin proper names are often abbreviated: C. — Gaius, Cn. — Gnaeus, L. — Lucius, M. — Marcus, P. — Publius, Q. — Quintus.



One of the greatest contributions made by Rome to Western civilization was its system of laws. Under the Empire one universal system of law, developed over centuries of time, gave equal justice to all free Romans. It was flexible enough to allow for local customs, yet firm enough to safeguard the poor against the rich, and the weak against the strong. Cases were usually tried before judges known as *praetors* and were argued by professional advocates much like our modern lawyers.

clientem suum, virginem in servitūtem dūcere iussit. Eī (on her), dum in Forum venit, M. Claudius manum iniēcit (laid). Negāvit (He denied) eam esse filiā Verginiī; servam et filiā servae suae appellāvit. Verginiā sē sequī (to follow) 20 iubēbat. Tum Claudius puellam ad tribūnal (judgment-seat) Appiī dūcit.

L. Icilius et P. Numitōrius, puellae avunculus, interveniunt (intervened). Ad Appium Icilius sē convertit. “Nōlī, Appī,” inquit, “contrā iūs agere. Virgō est liberī cīvis filiā libera.”

25 Appius respondit, “In posterum diem rem differam (I shall postpone). Claudius ūnum solum diem iūre suō dēcēdet (will waive his right). Nisi, autem, is quī pater puellae appellātur crās adfuerit, virgō erit Claudiī serva.”

A reflexive pronoun (**reflectere**, *to bend back*) is a pronoun that refers to the subject. In the sentence, *I hurt myself*, the word *myself* is the object of the verb but refers to the subject. She admires *herself*. The slaves hid *themselves*. I will take you with *me*.<sup>2</sup>

A reflexive pronoun has four cases: genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative.

The reflexive pronouns of the first and second persons have the same forms as the personal pronouns.

	FIRST PERSON		SECOND PERSON	
	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>meī</b>	<b>nostrī</b>	<b>tuī</b>	<b>vestrī</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>mihi</b>	<b>nōbīs</b>	<b>tibi</b>	<b>vōbīs</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>mē</b>	<b>nōs</b>	<b>tē</b>	<b>vōs</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>mē</b>	<b>nōbīs</b>	<b>tē</b>	<b>vōbīs</b>

	THIRD PERSON	
	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>suī</b>	<b>suī</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>sibi</b>	<b>sibi</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>sē or sēsē</b>	<b>sē or sēsē</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>sē or sēsē</b>	<b>sē or sēsē</b>

The preposition **cum** is attached to the ablative of the reflexive pronoun of the third person.

**Militēs sēcum ēdūcit.** He leads out the soldiers with him.

Learn the following table:

**mē laudō**, I praise myself  
**tē laudās**, you praise yourself  
**sē laudat**, he praises himself, she praises herself, it praises itself  
**nōs laudāmus**, we praise ourselves  
**vōs laudātis**, you praise yourselves  
**sē laudent**, they praise themselves

<sup>2</sup> Note that the reflexive in English does not always have the suffix *-self*.



In the following sentences, note the use of the reflexive pronoun in the genitive, dative and ablative cases.

**Rēgīna est suī memor.**

The queen is mindful of herself.

**Agrum optimum sibi dēligunt.**

They choose the best land for themselves.

**Multōs militēs sēcum habēbat.**

He had many soldiers with him.

The English translation of the reflexive of the third person depends on the subject. Compare with the reflexive adjective (Section 164). Note the translation of **sē** in the following sentences:

**Vir sē vulnerāvit.**      The man wounded himself.

**Fēmina sē vulnerāvit.**      The woman wounded herself.

**Virī sē vulnerāvērunt.**      The men wounded themselves.

The father orders his daughter to give the money to him.

If the pronoun *him* represents *the father*, it is a reflexive pronoun and is translated by **sibi**. But if the pronoun *him* represents some person other than her father (as, for example, her brother), it is a personal pronoun and is translated by **eī**.

Distinguish between

He (the general) took us with him (the general) *and*

He (the general) sent us with him (the captain).

**300**      There are many verbs in English which are used both transitively and intransitively, but whose equivalents in Latin can be used transitively only and require a direct object in the accusative.

- (a) **abdō, abdere, abdidī, abditum**, hide, conceal  
**dēdō, dēdere, dēdidī, dēditum**, surrender  
**movēō, movēre, mōvī, mōtum**, move  
**vertō, vertere, vertī, versum**, turn  
**convertō, convertere, convertī, conversum**, turn

English may say,      *We hide or We hide ourselves.*

Latin says,      **Nōs (acc.) abdimus.**

English may say,      *He surrenders or He surrenders himself.*  
 Latin says,              *Sē (acc.) dēdit.*

- (b) *iungō, iungere, iūnxī, iūnctum*, join, unite  
*coniungō, coniungere, coniūnxī, coniūnctum*, join, unite

English says,              *The Sabines join the Romans.*  
 Latin says,                *The Sabines unite themselves to or with*  
                                  *the Romans.*  
                                  *Sabīnī sē Rōmānīs (dative) or cum*  
                                  *Rōmānīs coniungunt.*

301

## EXERCISES

### A. *Translate:*

1. Puer sē vulnerābit.    2. Cōsul iūra suīs dedit.    3. Cōsul numquam est suī memor.    4. Dux multōs mīlitēs sēcum dūxit.    5. Incolae nōbīs sē statim dēdidērunt.    6. Rēx victus sē interfēcit.    7. Hostēs sē in silvās abdidērunt.<sup>3</sup>    8. Dē sē dīcit; dē eō dīcit.    9. Sabīnōs obsidēs sibi dare coēgit.    10. Aliī sē abdidērunt, aliī sē dēdidērunt.

### B. *Complete each sentence with the correct form of the pronoun (reflexive or personal):*

1. He often praises himself.      \_\_\_\_ saepe laudat.  
    He often praises me.            \_\_\_\_ saepe laudat.  
    He often praises her.           \_\_\_\_ saepe laudat.
2. We shall not surrender.        \_\_\_\_ nōn dēdēmus.  
    He will not surrender.          \_\_\_\_ nōn dēdet.  
    They will not surrender.        \_\_\_\_ nōn dēdent.
3. He is mindful of them.          \_\_\_\_ est memor.  
    He is mindful of himself.        \_\_\_\_ est memor.  
    He is mindful of you (s.).       \_\_\_\_ est memor.
4. They chose presents for him.   Dōna \_\_\_\_ dēlēgērunt.  
    They chose presents for  
       themselves.                    Dōna \_\_\_\_ dēlēgērunt.  
    They chose presents for you.   Dōna \_\_\_\_ dēlēgērunt.

<sup>3</sup> In with the *accusative* is used with *abdō*.

- |   |                       |
|---|-----------------------|
| 5. He brought the slave girl<br>with him. | Servam ____ dūxit.    |
| They brought the slave girl<br>with them. | Servam ____ dūxērunt. |
| We brought the slave girl<br>with us.     | Servam ____ dūximus.  |

C. *Translate:*

1. Multīs vulnerātīs, nōs quam fortissimē dēfendimus.
2. Amīcitiā cōfīrmātā, incolae oppidī sē cum Rōmānīs coniūnxērunt.
3. Familiam sēcūm ad Italiā dūxit.
4. Contrā iūs et sine causā hōs necāvērunt.
5. Hīs rēbus territa, haec serva in illam cameram sē abdidit.
6. Sī finem iniūriarū fēcerint, sē nōbīs coniungere poterunt.
7. Numquam nōs vidēmus ut (as) fīnitimī nōs vident.
8. Posterō diē sē et arma ex eō locō mōvērunt.
9. Agrōs lātiōrēs meliōrēsque nōbīs plēbīque petimus.
10. Quem cōsulis? Cui cōsulēbās?

D. *Write in Latin:*

1. They were compelled to surrender themselves and their arms.
2. The other states will hesitate to join us because of the cruelty of the decemvir.
3. If their towns are burned, they will hide in the woods.
4. That haughty king had with him one thousand infantry and two thousand cavalry.
5. My uncle will join his friends tomorrow.
6. Those who praise themselves are never praised by others.
7. Do not stir from this spot. If you move, you will be in great danger.
8. We have more grain with us than you have with you.
9. Because he seems to be friendly to the masses, he has been elected a second time.
10. He took thought for himself and his (followers).

### SUPPLEMENTARY EXERCISE

*Write in Latin:*

1. He never praises himself.
2. They never praise themselves.
3. He brought (led) soldiers with him.
4. The king killed himself.
5. He forced the Sabines to give him hostages.
6. They will join us.
7. I shall not surrender.
8. They have hidden in the woods.
9. He talks about himself.
10. He talks about her.



Columns of the Temple to  
Diana at Évora, Portugal.

302

## VOCABULARY

**discordia**, -ae, *f.*, discord, strife  
**serva**, -ae, *f.*, female slave  
**avunculus**, -ī, *m.*, uncle (mother's  
 brother)  
**modus**, -ī, *m.*, manner, way,  
 means; limit  
**crūdēlitās**, **crūdēlitātis**, *f.*,  
 cruelty  
**iūs**, **iūris**, *n.*, right, law  
**superbus**, -a, -um, proud,  
 haughty

**cōsulō**, **cōsulere**, **cōsului**,  
**cōsultum**, consult, ask the  
 advice of (*with acc.*); take  
 thought for, consult the  
 interests of (*with dat.*)  
**iniciō**, **inicare**, **iniēcī**, **iniectum**,  
 throw in, put on, inspire  
**temptō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, try,  
 attempt  
**autem**, *postpositive conjunction*,  
 but; however; moreover  
**frūstrā**, *adverb*, in vain  
**finem** (*with gen.*) **facere**, make  
 an end (of something), put an  
 end to, finish



*Statue in the Temple  
of Apollo, Pompeii*

# 43

## Ipse, Īdem Genitive of Description

Pāx hominibus bonae voluntātis  
*Peace to men of good will*

### 303 Dē Decemviris: dē Verginiā (Part 2)

Eōdem diē quō Appius haec respondit, amīcī Vergīniae cōstituērunt frātre<sup>m</sup> Iciliū filiūque Numitōriū, virōs magnae virtūtis, mittere inde ad Verginium in castra. Iussī abīre nōn timent et quam celerrimē nūntium ad patrem ipsum perferunt  
5 (*deliver*). Interim Appius domum sē recēpit. Verginium Rōmam redīre vetuit. Hoc tamen malum cōsiliū sērū fuit, quod Verginius, dē iniūriā filiae certior factus, ad urbem redīre statim cooperat.

At Rōmae prīmā lūce cīvēs in Forum convēnērunt. Tum eō Verginius maestissimus filiam ipsam cum multitudine 10 amicōrum dēdūcit (*escorts*). Frūstrā libertātem Verginiaē petēbant. Appius, vir magnae crūdēlitātis, cēdere nōluit (*refused*).

Tum Verginius, "Pauca," inquit, "cum filiā sēcētō (*privately*) dīcere volō (*I wish*)." Facultāte datā filiam dūcit ad 15 tabernās (*shops*), atque ibi ab laniō cultrō arreptō (*snatching a knife from a butcher*), "Hōc ūnō," inquit, "quō possum modō, filia, tibi libertātem dō." Eōdem tempore pectus puellae trānsfīgit (*pierces*), respectānsque (*looking back*) ad tribūnal, "Tē ipsum," inquit, "Appī, tuumque caput sanguine hōc 20 cōnsecrō (*doom to destruction*)."

Deinde omnēs plēbēiī, perterritī propter iniūriās decemvirōrum Rōmā iterum abiērunt; decemvirī imperium dēponere coāctī sunt. Cōsulēs tribūnīque plēbis dēnuō (*anew*) creātī sunt. 25

Verginius ipse tribūnus creātus est et Appius, in carcerem (*prison*) iniectus, sē interfēcit.

## 304

## IPSE, IPSA, IPSUM

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
Gen.	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
Dat.	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
Acc.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
Abl.	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs

**Ipse** emphasizes nouns and pronouns of any person. It may be used in agreement with the pronoun contained in the verb. Emphasis is secured in English by the use of *-self* and *-selves*, as in *yourself* and *yourselves*; by the use of such words as *very*, *mere*, *actual*, and such phrases as *in person*, *of one's own accord*, *with one's own eyes*.



**Lēgātus ipse haec dīxit.**

The envoy himself said this.

**Exercitus ā duce ipsō dūcētur.**

The army will be led by the general in person.

**Puellās ipsās vīdimus.**

We saw the girls themselves.

**Ipsa vēnit.**

She has come of her accord.

**Illō ipsō diē victī sunt.**

On that very day they were defeated.

**Clāmōribus ipsīs territī sunt.**

They were frightened by the mere cries.

**Ego ipse eum vīdī.**

I saw him with my own eyes.

Words like *myself* and *himself* in English may be reflexive pronouns or emphatic pronouns. When they are reflexive pronouns they cannot, as a rule, be omitted without spoiling the sense of the sentence. When they are emphatic, they may be omitted.

In the sentence *He hurt himself*, *himself* is required to complete the thought. But in the sentence *He himself hurt me*, we may omit *himself* and still have a complete thought.

305

## ĪDEM, EADEM, IDEM

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	īdem	eadem	īdem	eīdem	eaedem	eadem
<i>Gen.</i>	eiusdem	eiusdem	eiusdem	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
<i>Dat.</i>	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem	eīsdem	eīsdem	eīsdem
<i>Acc.</i>	eundem	eandem	īdem	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
<i>Abl.</i>	eōdem	eādem	eōdem	eīsdem	eīsdem	eīsdem

Īdem means *the same*.

**Eadem castra**, the same camp; **eiusdem virī**, of the same man.

The English phrase *the same as* is translated by **īdem quī**.

**Est īdem quī semper fuit.**

He is the same as he has always been.

**Eandem legiōnem, quam antea, mīsit.**

He sent the same legion as (he had sent) before.

306

GENITIVE OF DESCRIPTION

A noun in the genitive case modified by an adjective may be used to describe a person or thing. The genitive of description is regularly used if the descriptive phrase has to do with numerals.

**vir magnae virtūtis**, a man of great courage

**mūrus quīque pedum**, a five-foot wall

**praesidium trium legiōnum**, a garrison of three legions

**iter duōrum mīlium passuum**, a two-mile march

307

EXERCISES

A. *Translate:*

1. Cōsul ipse mē laudāvit.
2. Cōsul sē iterum laudāvit.
3. Prīncipem ipsum laetē accipiēmus.
4. Puellae ipsī dōnum pulcherrimum dedimus.
5. Illō ipsō diē hostēs sē recēpērunt.

B. *Translate:*

1. Eōdem tempore equitēs hostium vīdit.
2. Dux eiusdem exercitūs fortissimē pugnābat.
3. Peditēs ipsī ad eundem locum sē recēpērunt.
4. Eādem dē causā frūmentum nōn comportātum est.
5. In prōvinciam eōdem itinere quō antea contendēmus.

C. *Translate:*

1. Rēx Etruscōrum erat vir magnae crūdēlitātis.
2. Cīvēs mūrum quīque pedum faciunt.
3. Hī mīlitēs, virī summae virtūtis, illud flūmen trānsire audēbunt.
4. Praesidium trium legiōnum eō missum est.
5. Peditēs iter duōrum mīlium passuum fēcērunt.

D. *Complete each sentence:*

1. The consul himself praised me. Cōnsul \_\_\_\_ mē laudāvit.  
The consul praised himself. Cōnsul \_\_\_\_ laudāvit.
2. Of his own accord he has come. \_\_\_\_ vēnit.  
The king has come in person. Rēx \_\_\_\_ vēnit.
3. On that very day I saw him. Illō \_\_\_\_ diē eum vīdī.  
By a mere shout they were frightened. \_\_\_\_ clāmōre territī sunt.
4. At the same time he saw the cavalry. \_\_\_\_ tempore equitēs vīdit.  
For the same reason he fled. \_\_\_\_ dē causā fūgit.
5. He built a five-foot wall. Mūrum quīnque \_\_\_\_ fēcīt.  
He is a man of great courage. Est vir \_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_.

E. *Translate:*

1. Ōrātor ipse, vir tantae sapientiae, haec nōbīs dīxit.
2. Haec ab ipsīs cīvibus audīverat.
3. Facultāte datā, finem bellī longiōris faciēmus.
4. Nōlī eō ire sine nōbīs, nam est locus periculōsus.
5. Dux ipse ad maiōra castra paucīs diēbus redībit.
6. Noctū trēs filiī rēgis ipsīus ad eadem castra ibunt.
7. Ego ipse vīdī sanguinem cōsulis vulnerātī.
8. Illō ipsō diē peditēs fēcerant iter duodecim mīlium passuum.
9. Legiō ipsa rediit ad eadem castra ex quibus prīmō vēre iter fēcerat.
10. Quod omnia parāta erant, nōs ipsī eādem portā ēruptiōnem facere potuimus.

F. *Write in Latin:*

1. The commander himself will free his (men).
2. For the same reason a garrison had been left in the town.
3. The

horseman, a man of great courage, climbed the wall of his own accord. 4. She did not hesitate to cross the river herself. 5. The legion itself returned to the same camp.

308

## VOCABULARY

<b>facultās, facultātis, f.,</b> opportunity, means; ability	<b>recipiō, recipere, recēpī, receptum,</b> regain, recover; <b>sē</b>
<b>pectus, pectoris, n.,</b> breast, chest	<b>recipere,</b> to betake oneself, retreat; to recover, rally
<b>sanguis, sanguinis, m.,</b> blood	<b>deinde, adverb,</b> then, afterwards
<b>sērus, -a, -um,</b> late	<b>eādem dē causā,</b> for the same reason
<b>perterreō, perterrēre, perterruī, perterritum,</b> terrify	<b>eō, adverb,</b> to that place, there
<b>cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessum, in-trans.,</b> give way, retire, yield; move	<b>facultātem dare (potestātem facere),</b> to give an opportunity

309

## WORD STUDY

Many Latin phrases and abbreviations of Latin phrases have been taken over directly into English. From **is, ea, id** comes the expression *id est*, abbreviated *i.e.*, from **īdem** we have *idem*, abbreviated *id.*, with the **-dem** suffix also *ibidem*, abbreviated *ibid.* These three expressions are frequently found in reference works. Check the meanings in a large English dictionary.

From **ipse** we have the expressions *ipse dixit*, *ipso facto* and *post ipso facto*. These expressions, especially the last two, are most often seen in connection with legal matters. Check for meaning.

## REVIEW LESSON SEVEN

### I. Vocabulary

- A. Give the genitive singular, gender and meaning of these nouns:

avunculus	facultās	nāvigium	pīrāta
clāmor	familia	officium	plēbs
cliēns	iūs	ōrātor	sanguis
cōsul	lēx	patricius	serva
crūdēlitās	locus	patrōnus	tribūnus
discordia	modus	pectus	vīta

- B. Give the nominative singular, in all genders, and the meaning of these adjectives:

armātus	crūdēlis	prior	superbus
brevis	difficilis	propior	superior
celer	humilis	proximus	superus
certus	prīmus	sērus	suprēmus

- C. Give the principal parts and the meaning of these verbs:

accidō	creō	perterreō	regō
cēdō	iniciō	recipiō	temptō
cōsulō			

- D. Give the meaning of these words and phrases:

autem	facultātem	iterum	semper
bis	dare	loca superiōra	sē recipere
brevī	fīnem facere	longē lātēque	summā cum
certiōrem	frūstrā	postrēmō	virtūte
facere	igitur	praesertim	superiōre annō
crūdēlīter	inde	prīmum	ūnā cum
deinde	in summō	proximō annō	undique
eādem dē	monte	proximō diē	victōriam
causā	in superiōre	quam	reportāre
eō	locō	quam prīmum	

### II. Forms and Syntax

- A. Decline the relative pronoun: **quī, quae, quod**  
 B. Give the comparative and superlative of the adjectives and translate the forms: **certus, brevis, pulcher, celer, difficilis, nōbilis, bonus, magnus.**

- C. *Decline the comparative adjectives minor and plūrēs.*
- D. *Form adverbs from these adjectives and give the comparative and superlative forms of the adverbs: laetus, gravis, miser, ācer.*
- E. *Give the comparative and superlative of these adverbs: male, facile, diū, magnopere.*
- F. *Decline the pronoun ipse in the singular; idem in the plural.*
- G. *Give the Latin for: of the same woman, of the very woman, to the same consul, to the consul himself, (nom.) the same men, (nom.) the very men, (acc.) the same general, (acc.) the very general.*

### III.

### Translation

1. Propter iniūriās quae ā patriciīs factae erant, plēbs cum ducibus quōs dēlēgerant Rōmā discessit.
2. Certior factus dē graviōre perīculō, quod tempus erat breve, cōsul iussit ducēs quam celerrimē impetum facere.
3. Quod hostēs magnā cum celeritātē castrīs appropinquābant, nostrī ad ācrius proelium sē parāvērunt.
4. Hīs verbīs audītis, pater ad nōs sē vertit. "Nōlīte, puerī, timēre," inquit. "Īte, vōs abdite in silvās. Mē et vōs et domum nostram quam fortissimē dēfendam."
5. Pīrātae erant crūdēlissimī virī quī per tōtum mare nāvīgābant. Ōlim duōs liberōs cōsulīs Rōmānī in Viā Appiā prope Rōmam raptōs in Asiā audācissimē trānsportāvērunt.
6. Eī quī clientēs appellābantur ōlim fuerant servī patriciōrum; eī quibus erant clientēs patrōnī appellābantur.
7. Crās soror mea brevissimā viā in Italiā perveniet. Mox Rōmam ibit ubi trēs diēs manēbit. Quārto diē et ad Siciliā et ad aliās īsulās multō minōrēs nāvīgābit.
8. Parvī filiī eius mulieris erant maximō in perīculō. Māter eōrum autem erat magnae virtūtis. Magnō animālī interfectō puerōs sēcum ad salūtem dūxit.



## IV.

## Word Study

A. *Explain the meaning of the italicized words:*

1. Adequate housing for all is not merely a *legal* consideration.
2. Some vowels are marked with macrons, others with *breves*.
3. She has the unhappy *faculty* of always being wrong.
4. With an *avuncular* smile, he patted the child on the head.
5. The singer's *mode* of dress resembled that of a dandy of the nineteenth century.
6. His father is a steel *magnate*.

B. *Give the meaning of these abbreviations or phrases: i.e., ibid., ipso facto, id.*

## V.

## Background

*From among the names in the right-hand column identify the person or persons described in the phrases of the left-hand column:*

- |   |                         |
|---|-------------------------|
| ( ) Eī quī servī fuerant officiaque patriciīs dēbēbant  | 1. Amphissus            |
| ( ) Maximus ōrātor Rōmānus                              | 2. Appius Claudius      |
| ( ) Rēx Pontī quī cum Rōmānīs in Asiā pugnāvit          | 3. Cicerō               |
| ( ) Dux Rōmānus quī pīrātās vīcit                       | 4. clientēs             |
| ( ) Ultimus rēx Rōmānōrum                               | 5. Hortēsius            |
| ( ) Pater Rōmānus quī filiam suam interfēcīt            | 6. Mithridātēs          |
| ( ) Ōrātor quī contrā lēgem Māniliānam ōrātiōnem habuit | 7. patriciī             |
| ( ) Eī quī ex familiīs prīmōrum senātōrum nātī sunt     | 8. patrōnī              |
| ( ) Ūnus ē decemvirīs quī factus est crūdēlis           | 9. Pompeius             |
| ( ) Rēx Persārum quī Graeciam vincere cōstituit         | 10. Tarquinius Superbus |
|   | 11. Verginius           |
|   | 12. Xerxēs              |

## VI.

## Sight Reading

## Dē Cane Fidēli

Ōlim fūr nocturnus<sup>1</sup> canī pānem mīsit. Cibō obiectō animal (*acc.*) capere temptābat. “Heus,” inquit canis, “linguam vīs meam prohibēre lātrāre prō rē dominī. Multum errās. Namque ista subita benignitās mē iubet vigilāre.”<sup>2</sup> Meā culpā lucrum nōn faciēs.”

Moral: Sudden generosity pleases the stupid; the intelligent see and laugh at the trap.

PHAEDRUS 1.23 (*Adapted*)

## VOCABULARY

benignitās, benignitātis, *f.*,  
kindness  
canis, canis, *m.* and *f.*, dog  
cibus, cibī, *m.*, food  
culpa, culpaē, *f.*, fault  
dominus, dominī, *m.*, master  
fūr, fūris, *m.*, thief  
Heus! Hey there  
iste, ista, istud, that of yours  
lātrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, bark

lingua, linguae, *f.*, tongue;  
language  
lucrum, lucrī, *n.*, profit  
namque, *conjunction*, for  
obicīō, obicere, obiēcī, obiectum,  
throw before, throw in front of  
pānis, pānis, *m.*, bread  
temptō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, try,  
tempt  
vīs, you (*s.*) want

<sup>1</sup> Cf. *nox* and *noctū*.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. *vigilia*.



*Apollo of Veii,  
Etruscan terracotta,  
Museo Nazionale,  
Rome*

44

### Present Participle Active

*Audentēs deus ipse iuvat.*

*God himself helps those who dare.*

OVID: MET.10.586

### 310 Dē Camillō et Magistrō Faliscōrum (Part 1)

Veii, a town of Southern Etruria, was captured by the Romans under Camillus in 396 B.C. Falerii, the chief town of the Falisci in Etruria, surrendered to Rome about 395 B.C.

5 *Paucīs annīs antequam Rōma capta est ā Gallīs, M. Fūrius Camillus, vir clārissimus et fortissimus, dictātor Rōmānus factus est, Rōmānī enim Vēiōs capere volēbant (wished). Itaque cum magnīs cōpiīs Camillus quam celerrimē ad urbem iter fēcit. Decem per annōs urbs obsidēbātur; incolae, auxilia ā finitimīs expectantēs, fortissimē pugnābant; multī, impetum Rōmānōrum sustinentēs, interfectī sunt. Urbs tandem capta est.*

Vēiis captīs, Camillō bellum cum Falīscīs, Faleriōrum incolīs, gerentī fortūna mātūram victōriam dedit. Mēs erat Falīscīs 10  
 puerōs complūrēs simul eīdem hominī et magistrō et comitī  
 committere. Prīncipum liberōs is quī scientiā superāre  
 vidēbātur docēbat. Is in pāce (*in time of peace*) puerōs ante  
 urbem cotīdiē ēdūcēbat. Eō mōre per bellī tempus nōn  
 intermissō, modo breviōribus modo longiōribus spatiīs eōs ā 15  
 portā trahit. Postrēmō puerōs inter statiōnēs (*outposts*)  
 hostium castraque Rōmāna dūxit. Ad Camillum adductus,  
 factō malō pessima verba addit. Nam, “Urbem Faleriōs,”  
 inquit, “in manūs Rōmānōrum trādere volō (*I wish*). Itaque  
 eōs puerōs, quōrum parentēs ibi prīncipēs sunt, in potestātem 20  
 tuam dedi.”

### PRESENT PARTICIPLE ACTIVE

311 The present participle active of a Latin verb is formed by adding **-ns** to the present stem (or modified present stem). The nominative singular ending appears as

	I	II	III	III -iō	IV
	-āns	-ēns	-ēns	-iēns	-iēns
I	portō	portāns, portantis ( <i>gen. sing.</i> )			carrying
II	moveō	movēns, moventis ( <i>gen. sing.</i> )			moving
III	dūcō	dūcēns, dūcentis ( <i>gen. sing.</i> )			leading
	capiō	capiēns, capientis ( <i>gen. sing.</i> )			taking
IV	audiō	audiēns, audientis ( <i>gen. sing.</i> )			hearing

### DECLENSION OF PRESENT PARTICIPLE ACTIVE

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	MASC. & FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. & FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	portāns	portāns	portantēs	portantia
Gen.	portantis	portantis	portantium	portantium
Dat.	portantī	portantī	portantibus	portantibus
Acc.	portantem	portāns	portantēs (-is)	portantia
Abl.	portante	portante	portantibus	portantibus

## PRESENT PARTICIPLE ACTIVE OF *EŌ*

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	MASC. & FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. & FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>iēns</b>	<b>iēns</b>	<b>euntēs</b>	<b>euntia</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>euntis</b>	<b>euntis</b>	<b>euntium</b>	<b>euntium</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>euntī</b>	<b>euntī</b>	<b>euntibus</b>	<b>euntibus</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>euntem</b>	<b>iēns</b>	<b>euntēs</b>	<b>euntia</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>eunte</b>	<b>eunte</b>	<b>euntibus</b>	<b>euntibus</b>

**313** The present participle is always active in voice, and expresses an act going on at the same time as the action of the main verb.

**Mīles pugnāns vulnerātur.** The soldier while fighting is wounded.

**Mīles pugnāns vulnerātus est.** The soldier while fighting was wounded.

**Mīles pugnāns vulnerābitur.** The soldier while fighting will be wounded.

**Mīlitem pugnantem videō.** I see the soldier fighting.

**Mīlitem pugnantem vidī.** I saw the soldier fighting.

**Mīlitem pugnantem vidēbō.** I shall see the soldier fighting.

In the above sentences, the soldier is in the act of fighting when he is wounded and when I see him.

**314** The English equivalent of a present participle active often takes the form of a phrase or a clause.

**Dux exercitum dūcēns vulnerātus est.**

The commander,  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{leading} \\ \text{while leading} \\ \text{while he was leading} \\ \text{as he was leading} \end{array} \right\}$  the army, was wounded.

The present participle active often has the value of an English noun, or of an English relative clause with its antecedent.

**amāns**, a lover, he who loves  
**fugientēs**, the fugitives, those who are fleeing  
**timentēs**, those who are afraid

**Iter facientēs cēpit.**

He captured those who were marching.

315 As the present participle is active, *while* with a passive verb must be translated by **dum** with the present *indicative* passive.

**Castra, dum pōnuntur, oppugnāta sunt.**

The camp, while being pitched, was attacked.

316 The present participle active may be used in the ablative absolute construction if the thought is active and the time of the ablative absolute phrase is the same as that of the main action.

**Equitibus pugnantibus, peditēs sē recēpērunt.**

While the cavalry were fighting, the infantry retreated.

Latin has no present participle for the verb **sum**. Two nouns, or a noun and an adjective, may form an ablative absolute phrase where the present participle of **sum** (*being*) is understood.

**Messalā et Pisōne cōsulibus**

Messala and Piso (being) consuls  
in the consulship of Messala and Piso

**Rōmulō duce; tē duce**

Romulus (being) leader; you (being) leader  
under the leadership of Romulus; under your leadership

**Mātre invitā, ego ad oppidum nōn eō.**

[ My mother being unwilling,  
With my mother unwilling,  
Since my mother is unwilling,  
When my mother is unwilling,  
Against my mother's wishes,  
I do not go to the town.



A. *Translate:*

1. Puerum saxum iacentem vīdī. 2. Puerum saxum iacentem videō. 3. Eōs in camerā sedentēs vidēbimus.
4. Mīles fortiter pugnāns vulnerātus est. 5. Mīles fortiter pugnāns vulnerābitur. 6. Dux fugientēs capit. 7. Dux fugientēs cēpit. 8. Cum comite aquam cupiente ad lacum vēnit. 9. Est filius mercātōris in Italiā habitantis.
10. Puerō in viā stantī pecūniam dedimus.

B. *Complete the sentence with a present participle using correct gender, number and case:*

1. Mīles \_\_\_\_\_ (*while fighting*) vulnerābitur.
2. Dux lēgātōs \_\_\_\_\_ (*while they were speaking*) audīvit.
3. Omnēs cīvēs ex urbe \_\_\_\_\_ (*going out*) vīdimus.
4. Mīlitēs castra \_\_\_\_\_ (*who are pitching*) ā duce laudantur.
5. Incolae auxilia \_\_\_\_\_ (*while awaiting*) fortissimē pugnābant.
6. Multī impetum Rōmānōrum \_\_\_\_\_ (*as they were withstanding*) interfectī sunt.
7. Parvus puer ā pāstōre in agrīs \_\_\_\_\_ (*who was working*) inventus est.
8. Dux cōpiārum arcem \_\_\_\_\_ (*storming*) fortissimus est.
9. Tēla gladiīque ā \_\_\_\_\_ (*those who are afraid*) nōn laudābuntur.
10. Nūntiō Rōmam \_\_\_\_\_ (*who is hurrying*) viam mōnstrāmus.

C. *Translate each set of sentences, noting the major grammatical difference between the two sentences of a set:*

1. Sociī nostrī, bellum gerentēs, multīs proeliīs hostēs vīcērunt.  
Dum haec geruntur, sociī nostrī ad campum accēdēbant.
2. In mīlitēs, castra pōnentēs, hostēs impetum ācrem fēcērunt.  
Dum castra pōnuntur, mīlitēs oppugnātī sunt.

3. Agricola agrōs arāns labōrem nōn intermīsīt.  
Ager, dum arātur, ab hostibus crūdēlibus vāstātus est.
4. Cum equite captīvum trahente mīlitēs redeunt.  
Dum captīvus ab equite trahitur, mīlitēs ad castra redeunt.
5. Multī eum pontem rumpentem spectābant.  
Dum pōns ab adulēscētibz rumpitur, Hōrātius impetum hostium sustinēbat.

D. *Complete the following sentences using an ablative absolute:*

- |   |                                   |
|---|-----------------------------------|
| 1. ____ hōs puerōs docēre nōn potes.                | Since I am unwilling              |
| 2. ____ agricola servōs vocāns audītus est.         | After the grain had been gathered |
| 3. ____ hostēs facillimē vincēmus.                  | Under the leadership of Marcus    |
| 4. ____ Camillus verba multō peiōra addidit.        | After saying this                 |
| 5. ____ ad urbem crās ībimus.                       | Although the girl is ill          |
| 6. ____ omnēs timēbant.                             | When Camillus was speaking        |
| 7. ____ exercitus duo diēs manēbit.                 | If the camp is fortified          |
| 8. ____ omnia ā fugientibus rapta sunt.             | When the city was captured        |
| 9. ____ iūra bona cīvibus data sunt.                | Under your consulship             |
| 10. ____ equitēs locum idōneum ad castra invenient. | While the infantry is fighting    |

E. *Translate:*

1. Omnēs amantem amant. 2. Heri, antequam Rōmam vēnistī, ōrātōrem ōrātiōnem habentem audīvī. 3. Dum ad Camillum addūcitur, ab omnibus vīsus est. 4. Frūmentō in oppidum portātō, agricola servōs vocāns audītus est. 5. Comitēs nostrī, ex silvīs exeuntēs, vulnerātī sunt.

6. Interim, dum puerī longius ā portā trahuntur, magister ā Rōmānīs captus est. 7. Clāmōrēs servōrum agrōs arantium audīvimus. 8. Eī quī cēterōs scientiā superāre vidēbantur magistrī līberōrum nostrōrum factī sunt. 9. Ad custōdem Rōmānum in portā stantem perveniunt. 10. Parvā parte aestātis reliquā, quamquam in hīs locīs mātūrae sunt hiemēs, tamen ad Britanniam nāvigāre contendit.

F. *Write in Latin:*

1. The chief listened to the envoys while they were speaking.
2. He is the son of the consul who is fighting in Africa.
3. Since you are unwilling I shall not teach these children.
4. We saw the dictator standing in front of the house.
5. Standing in front of the house we saw the dictator.
6. Under the leadership of Camillus whom do you fear?
7. We cannot prevent those who are teaching our sons from leading them out of the town.
8. If you add a single word, you will be driven out.
9. At one time he was our friend and comrade, at another a dangerous enemy.
10. While Camillus was making an attack, the Falisci escaped.

scientia, scientiae, *f.*, knowledge  
factum, -ī, *n.*, deed  
comes, comitis, *m.*, companion  
mōs, mōris, *m.*, habit, custom  
invītus, -a, -um, against one's  
will, unwilling  
mātūrus, -a, -um, early  
addō, addere, addidi, additum,  
add  
addūcō, addūcere, addūxī,  
adductum, lead to, bring;  
influence

ēdūcō, ēdūcere, ēdūxī, ēductum,  
lead out  
intermittō, intermittere,  
intermīsī, intermissum, cease,  
interrupt, leave off  
trahō, trahere, trāxī, tractum,  
draw, drag, lead  
antequam, *conjunction*, before<sup>1</sup>  
modo, *adverb*, only; just now,  
lately; modo . . . modo, at one  
time . . . at another

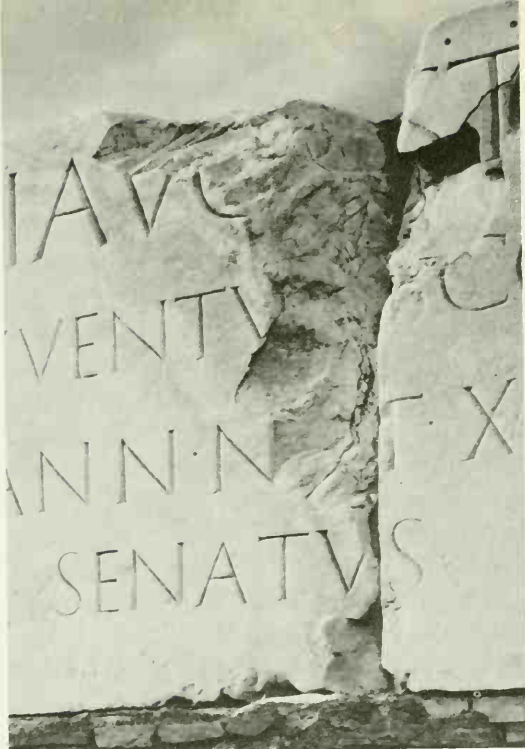
<sup>1</sup> Cf. Section 125, footnote 4.

A feminine noun of the first declension, ending in *-ia* (*gen. -iae*), may be formed on the stem of the present participle: for example, **scientia**, **scientiae**, *f., knowledge*, from **sciēns**, **scientis**, present participle of **sciō**, *know*.

Frequently such nouns are formed from the participle of a compound verb. For example, **continentia**, *temperance, moderation*, comes from **continēns**, **continentis**, present participle of **contineō** (**con-** + **teneō**), *hold together, hold in check*. **Sufficiētia**, *sufficiency*, comes from **sufficiēns**, **sufficientis**, present participle of **sufficiō** (**sub-** + **faciō**), *put under, supply, satisfy*.

Nouns formed on the present participle give English derivatives ending in *-ance*, *-ence*, *-ancy*, *-ency*: for example, *observance*, *science*, *occupancy*, *consistency*. Sometimes the English word is derived from a word found not in Classical but in later Latin. *Adherence*, *regency*, *tendency* are derived from the Medieval Latin words **adhaerentia**, **regentia**, **tendentia**. Sometimes the noun is formed in English on the analogy of the Latin formation. For example, *expediency* is directly formed on English *expedient*.

Form a Latin noun based on the present participle of each of the following verbs: **abstineō**, **audiō**, **cōnsciō**, **cōnstō**, **conveniō**, **efficiō**, **repugnō**, **prōvideō**. Give an English noun derived from each Latin noun you have formed. Check each noun in both Latin and English dictionaries and note any change in meaning between the Latin noun and its English derivative.



Stone record of the  
Caesars in the Forum

# 45

## Future Participle Active

Avē, Caesar, moritūrī tē salūtant.

*Hail, Caesar; those who are about to die salute you.*

SALUTATION OF ROMAN GLADIATORS ON ENTERING THE ARENA

### 320 Dē Camillō et Magistrō Faliscōrum (Part 2)

Camillus, quī, ut (as) suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, cum exercitū Farleiōs obsessūrus vēnerat, vir fortissimus et iūstissimus erat; ubi verba magistrī audīvit, “Neque ad populum,” inquit, “neque ad imperātōrem similem tuī<sup>1</sup> vēnistī. Ut (As) sunt  
5 pācis iūra, sic sunt bellī iūra, iūstēque ea nōn minus quam fortiter didicimus gerere (*observe*). Nōn populī Rōmānī cōnsuētūdō est arma capere contrā puerōs; arma cēpimus contrā eōs quī sine causā nobīs bellum intulērunt (*have made*

<sup>1</sup> With *similis* the genitive of the personal pronoun is regularly used instead of the dative.

war on) et hostibus nostris auxilium tulērunt (*have given*). Ego Rōmānīs artibus, virtūte, opere, armīs, Faleriōs, sicut (*just as*) 10 Vēiōs, victūrus sum."

Dēnūdātum (*stripped*) deinde eum, manibus post tergum illigātīs (*bound*), Camillus puerīs trādīdit. "Hunc prōditōrem (*traitor*)," inquit, "pūnītūrī sumus. Vōs, quōs nōbīs trādere volēbat (*he was willing*), virgīs verberantēs (*beating with* 15 *switches*), eum ad urbem ductūrī estis; poenās prō scelere in cōnspectū suōrum datūrus est."

Ubi autem populus haec audīvit et hoc spectāculum vīdit, senātus convocātus est, tōtaque cīvitās pācem ā Rōmānīs petere cōstituit. Faliscōrum lēgātī, quī huic negōtiō praefectī 20 erant (*had been put in charge, with dat.*), ad senātum Rōmānum intrōductī (*brought in*), ita dīxērunt: "Patrēs cōscriptī (*the formal title of the Roman senators; translate, Gentlemen*), tālī victōriā victī ā vōbīs et imperātōre vestrō, dēdimus nōs vōbīs; nōs melius sub imperiō vestrō quam lēgibus nostrīs vīctūrī 25 sumus (*from vīvere, to live.*)"

## 321 FUTURE PARTICIPLE ACTIVE

The future participle active is formed by adding the ending -ūrus to the supine stem. It is declined like *altus, alta, altum*.

VERB	SUPINE STEM	FUTURE PARTICIPLE	
portō	portāt-	portātūrus	going to carry, about to carry, intending to carry, likely to carry, on the point of carrying
moveō	mōt-	mōtūrus	going to move, etc.
dūcō	duct-	ductūrus	going to lead, etc.
capiō	capt-	captūrus	going to take, etc.
audiō	audīt-	audītūrus	going to hear, etc.
trānseō	trānsit-	trānsitūrus	going to cross, etc.
sum	————	futūrus	going to be, etc.



322 The future participle active combined with forms of **sum** denotes intention, impending action, or that which is about to happen.

<i>Present</i>	<b>portātūrus sum</b>	I am going to carry, am about to
	<b>portātūrus es</b>	carry, intend to carry, am likely to
	<b>portātūrus est</b>	carry, am on the point of carrying
	<b>portātūrī sumus</b>	
	<b>portātūrī estis</b>	
	<b>portātūrī sunt</b>	
<i>Imperfect</i>	<b>portātūrus eram</b>	I was going to carry, was about to carry, etc.
<i>Future</i>	<b>portātūrus erō</b>	I shall be about to carry
<i>Perfect</i>	<b>portātūrus fui</b>	I have been about to carry
<i>Pluperfect</i>	<b>portātūrus fueram</b>	I had been about to carry
<i>Future Perfect</i>	<b>portātūrus fuerō</b>	I shall have been about to carry

The future participle agrees with the subject in gender, number, and case.

**Camillus signum datūrus est.**

Camillus is about to give the signal.

**Cōpiae proelium commissūrae erant.**

The troops were going to join battle.

**Hostēs aditūrī fuerant.**

The enemy had intended to advance.

The future participle active may be used without a form of **sum** to denote intention or purpose, usually after a verb of motion.

**Vēnērunt castra oppugnātūrī.**

They came to attack the camp.

**Oppidum obsessūrus exercitum dūxit.**

Intending to besiege the town he brought an army.





Bronze statuette of a Roman woman sacrificing. Augustan period, early 1st century A.D.

E. *Translate:*

1. Caedem peditātūs ducī nūntiātūrī sumus. 2. Mīlitēs prō castrīs stantēs vīdit. 3. Pāce factā lēgātī Rōmā celeriter discēdent. 4. Vōcēs mīlitum pontem trānseuntium audīvī. 5. Bellumne rūsus parātūrī erant? 6. Servum in cōspectū omnium pūnītum nōn relinqūemus. 7. Rēge amīcitiam cōfīrmante, cīvēs cōsilium audāx cēpērunt. 8. Ā quō audītūrus est dē hōc negōtiō? Ā multīs audītūrus est. 9. Oppidō trīgintā diēs obsessō, hostēs sē recēpērunt. 10. Artibus Rōmānīs Germānōs facile victūrī sumus.

F. *Write in Latin:*

1. I am about to march into Gaul with three legions. 2. As we have pointed out above, they intended to punish this wretched slave. 3. The general himself, after defeating

the Gauls, had intended to return to Rome. 4. This just man is accustomed to remember all his friends. 5. According to custom he was going to send a supply of grain to the inhabitants of the village. 6. Are you (*pl.*) pitching camp here to besiege our city? 7. They knew all the plans which had been adopted by the common people. 8. No one, especially those who fear animals, will dare to go through this same forest. 9. On seeing the flames the farmer hurried to the spot where the buildings had been set on fire. 10. It is the custom of the Roman people to take up arms against those who do not observe (*gerō*) the laws of peace.

<b>negōtium, negōtīi, n.,</b> concern, business, affair, matter	<b>tālis (<i>gen. tālis</i>), tālis, tāle,</b> such
<b>ars, artis, f.,</b> art, skill	<b>dēmōnstrō, dēmōnstrāre,</b>
<b>cōnsuētūdō, cōnsuētūdinis, f.,</b> custom, habit	<b>dēmōnstrāvī, dēmōnstrātum,</b> point out, mention
<b>opus, operis, n.,</b> work, task	<b>cōnsuēscō, cōnsuēscere,</b>
<b>scelus, sceleris, n.,</b> wickedness, crime	<b>cōnsuēvī, cōnsuētum,</b> become accustomed
<b>cōnspectus, cōnspectūs, m.,</b> sight, view, presence	<b>dēdō, dēdere, dēdidī, dēditum,</b> surrender, hand over
<b>iūstus, -a, -um,</b> just, right, proper	<b>suprā, adverb,</b> above
	<b>ex cōnsuētūdine,</b> according to custom

The perfect tense may denote a present state resulting from a completed action: **cognōvī**, I know (*literally*, I have found out, I have become acquainted with); **cōnsuēvī**, I am accustomed (*literally*, I have become accustomed). Similarly, the pluperfect may denote a past state resulting from a previously completed action: **cognōveram**, I knew (*literally*, I had found out); **cōnsuēveram**, I was accustomed (*literally*, I had become accustomed). And the future perfect may denote a future state resulting from a previously completed action: **cognōverō**, I shall know (*literally*, I shall have found out).

In the earliest days of Rome, her citizens were engaged chiefly in agriculture and in war. The daily life of a citizen which we are going to describe here is that of a well-to-do Roman in the days of Caesar and Cicero and Augustus.

As the Roman had to rely for light on small lamps and torches, he fitted his work and recreation, as far as possible, into the hours of daylight. Merchants opened their shops at sunrise. The Roman gentleman rose early. At daybreak, at four o'clock in summer, at six in winter, clients would fill the hall of their patron to pay their respects to him, to talk business and seek advice.

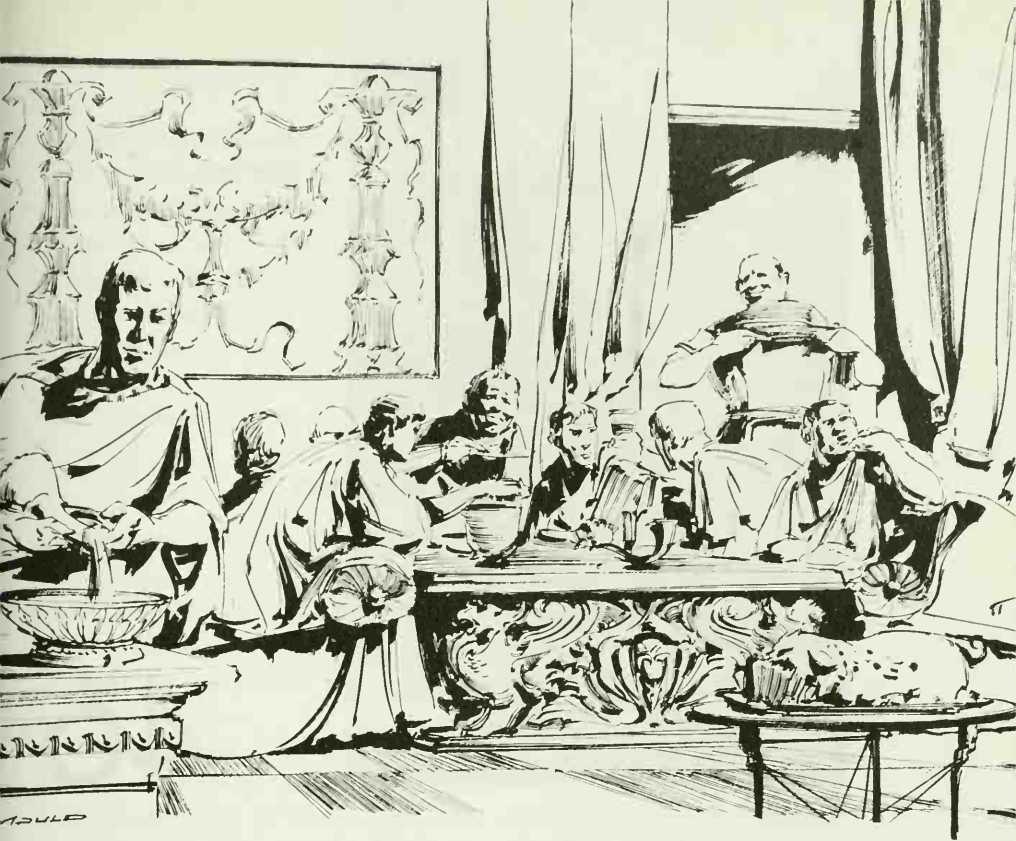
As soon as his clients had left or even while they were gathering, the master of the house had his breakfast. This was a light meal, consisting of bread dipped in wine, bread and honey, olives, dates, or cheese.

Then he set out, often accompanied by his friends and clients, to call on important people and relatives and to visit the Forum, where he would find various duties and activities awaiting him. He might attend the law-courts or a session of the senate, or listen to a speaker. There were always crowds in the Forum and in the streets until noon, carrying on animated discussions of current politics or business.

At noon came luncheon, which was made up of fish, vegetables, and fruit. This meal was usually followed by the siesta.

Then came the hour for bathing. Though rich people had their own bathrooms, men of all classes went to the public baths. These were a special feature of Roman life, especially under the Emperors, who spent vast sums on magnificent bathing establishments.

The bath was followed by dinner, which was at once the chief meal of the day and a social occasion. As dining rooms were small, the Romans rarely seated more than nine persons at a time. On entering the dining room the guests removed their walking shoes and put on sandals. Around the table



Long, unhurried dinners were the rule in patrician Roman living.

were three couches; on these the guests reclined, three on a couch, with the left elbow resting on a soft cushion. Table cloths were not used before the second century A.D., but each guest was provided with a napkin. Much of the food was served already prepared. There were no forks; the guests used spoons of various kinds and, mainly, their fingers.

The meal, which lasted long, consisted of introductory dishes to whet the appetite, various courses (*cēna prima*, *secunda*, *tertia*, all the way to *sexta* or even *septima*), and a dessert of cakes and fruits. Before the dessert, a cake mixed with salt was offered to the household gods. During the unhurried meal there was plenty of opportunity for discussion on various topics.

At the close of the evening the guests asked for their shoes and took their departure.





*Pyrrhic victory in  
Southern Italy*

# 46

## Dative with Verbs Dative of Purpose Dative of Interest

*Cui bonō?*

*Who benefits?*

326

**Pyrrhus (318 – 272 B.C.)**

Pyrrhus, king of Epirus in western Greece, claimed descent from the Greek hero Achilles. He was well trained in the art of war as developed by the best Greek generals. His aim was to unite the Greeks living in Southern Italy and Sicily into one nation. When the Greek city of Tarentum in Southern Italy sought his aid against the Romans, he crossed to Italy with a strong force. He first met the Romans at Heraclea (280 B.C.) and defeated them, largely through the use of elephants. His losses, however, were so heavy that they

almost nullified the victory, and so the phrase “a Pyrrhic victory” means one counterbalanced by losses. Pyrrhus sent his envoy Cineas to Rome, but he could not persuade the senate to make peace. After defeating the Romans again the next year, he went to Sicily to aid the Greek cities there against the Carthaginians. In 276 B.C. he returned to Italy, but was defeated by the Romans the following year at Beneventum and forced to retire to Epirus. He was killed in 272 B.C. while fighting in Southern Greece.

### Dē Rēge Pyrrhō (Part I)

Centum ferē (*almost*) annīs post ea quae memorāvimus (*we have related*), Tarentīnī (*Tarentines, people of Tarentum*), quī urbem magnam in Italiae parte merīdiānā (*southern*) habitābant, iniūriam summam Rōmānīs fēcērunt, nam classem Rōmānam in portū subitō oppugnantēs, bellō nōn indietō, 5 dēlēverant.

Lēgātī Rōmānī ā senātū Tarentum propter iniūriam missī sunt. Tarentīnī colloquium cum Rōmānīs habēre nōlēbant (*were unwilling*) et eōs magnā cum contumēliā (*insult*) Tarentō expulērunt. Rōmānī igitur bellum indicere nōn dubitāvērunt. 10 Ūnō exercitū Rōmae praesidiō urbī relictō, duo exercitūs contrā hostēs iter fēcērunt. Quamquam multae urbēs ex parte Tarentīnōrum contrā Rōmānōs pugnāvērunt, ducēs Rōmānī victōrēs erant victōrēsque futūrī vidēbantur. Itaque Tarentīnī lēgātōs ad Pyrrhum, rēgem Ēpīrōtārū (*of the Epirotes, in-* 15 *habitants of Epirus*), trāns mare mittunt ab eō sibi auxilium petītūrī. Subsidiō Tarentīnīs, Pyrrhus, quī magnō exercitū praeerat, cōpiās suās ūnā cum multīs elephantīs in Italiam trānsportāvit. Elephantī rēgī erant magnō ūsuī, nam Rōmānī, faciē (*form, appearance, abl.*) eōrum numquam prius (*before*) 20 vīsā perterritī, prīmō in proeliō apud Hēraclēam hostibus resistere nōn potuērunt; cēdere coāctī sunt.

Rēx, quī magnum in rē militārī ūsum habuerat, post proelium corpora interfectōrum spectābat, omniaque versa (*turned*) in hostem invēnit. “Difficillimum erit,” inquit, “hominēs tantae 25 virtūtis proeliō superāre. Aliīs modīs fortasse (*perhaps*) eōs vincere poterō.”

Several Latin verbs, of which eleven are listed below, are used with the *dative* case, though the usual English meaning of these verbs seems to require a direct object.

appropinquō, appropinquāre, appropinquāvī, appropinquātum,  
approach

crēdō, crēdere, crēdidī, crēditum, believe

ignōscō, ignōscere, ignōvī, ignōtum, pardon, forgive

imperō, imperāre, imperāvī, imperātum, command

noceō, nocēre, nocuī, nocitum, injure, harm

occurrō, occurrere, occurri, occursum, meet

parcō, parcere, peperci, parsum, spare

pāreō, pārere, pārui, pāritum, obey

persuādeō, persuādere, persuāsi, persuāsum, persuade

resistō, resistere, restitī, ———, resist

studeō, studere, studui, ———, be eager for, aim at, devote  
oneself to

### 328 DATIVE WITH COMPOUND VERBS

Many verbs compounded with *ad*, *ante*, *con*, *in*, *inter*, *ob*, *post*, *prae*, *sub*, *super*, are used with the dative case.

**Legiōnī praeest.**

He is in command of the legion.

If the simple verb of the compound is transitive, the compound may take, in addition to the dative, a direct object in the accusative.

**Lēgātum legiōnī praefēcit.**

He put the general in charge of the legion.

If, in the active, the verb takes both the dative and the accusative, in the passive the accusative becomes the subject.

**Lēgātus legiōnī praefectus est.**

The general was put in charge of the legion.

It is important to note that not all verbs compounded with the prefixes listed above are used with the dative.

**Īnsulam adit.** He visits the island.  
**Nāvem inveniunt.** They find a ship.

There is no simple rule for the cases with compound verbs. The student should note carefully the constructions used by Latin writers themselves.

## 329 DATIVE OF PURPOSE

A noun in the dative may express the purpose or intention of an action.

**Diēs colloquiō dictus est.**  
A day was set for the conference.  
**Locum castrīs dēligit.**  
He chooses a place for a camp.

With certain nouns the dative of purpose is regularly used with **sum** where a predicate nominative would seem more natural. The most common of these datives are **auxiliō**, **cūrae**, **impedimentō**, **praesidiō**, **subsidiō**, and **ūsui**.

**Tanta pecūnia est cūrae.**  
So much money is a worry.  
**Gladius gravis est impedimentō.**  
A heavy sword is a hindrance.

## 330 DATIVE OF INTEREST

The dative may denote the person or thing concerned in an action, the person in whose interest or to whose advantage or disadvantage something is done.

**Nāvibus timet.**  
He fears for the ships.  
**Liberīs cōsulit.**  
He takes thought for his children.

**Timeō**, when used with the accusative, means *to fear*; with the dative of interest, *to fear for*.

**Militēs timet; militibus timet.**  
He fears the soldiers; he fears for the soldiers.

**Cōsulō**, when used with the accusative, means *to consult*; with the dative of interest, *to look out for*.

**Fīlium cōnsulit; filiō cōnsulit.**

He consults his son; he looks out for his son.

331

DOUBLE DATIVE

The dative of interest is often combined with the dative of purpose to form what is called the double dative.

**Legiō ei auxiliō vēnit.**

The legion came to help him  
(literally, as a help for him).

**Militēs urbī praesidiō reliquit.**

He left soldiers to guard the city  
(literally, as a guard for the city).

**Fīlia mihi magnae cūrae est.**

My daughter is a great care to me.

**Nōbīs ūsuī est.**

It is useful to us; it is of service to us.

332

EXERCISES

A. *Translate:*

1. Cīvis bonus lēgibus pāret.
2. Camillus duābus legiōnibus praeest.
3. Hoc nōbīs est magnō ūsuī.
4. Equitibus redeuntibus occurrimus.
5. Et pecūniae et glōriae studet.
6. Auxiliō est aliīs, impedimentō aliīs.
7. Equitēs redeuntēs nōbīs occurrerunt.
8. Hī militēs urbī praesidiō relinquentur.
9. Nōlīte illī puerō nocēre.
10. Salūtī militum cōnsulit.

B. *Complete by translating the English:*

1. Diem \_\_\_\_\_ (for a conference) dicere debēmus.
2. In eōs \_\_\_\_\_ (mountains) appropinquantēs impetum fecimus.
3. Nōlī \_\_\_\_\_ (the orator) crēdere.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ (all your armies) resistere possumus.
5. Mille virī \_\_\_\_\_ (to guard the baggage) relinquentur.
6. Hīs verbīs \_\_\_\_\_ (us) facile persuāsīt.
7. Ā vōbīs pecūniam \_\_\_\_\_ (for himself) postulābit.
8. \_\_\_\_\_ (him) celeriter ignōvimus.

9. Sī \_\_\_\_\_ (*my son*) peperceris, \_\_\_\_\_ (*to you*) semper erō amīcus. 10. Mārcus \_\_\_\_\_ (*this legion*) praefectus est; is Lūcium \_\_\_\_\_ (*the garrison*) praefēcit.

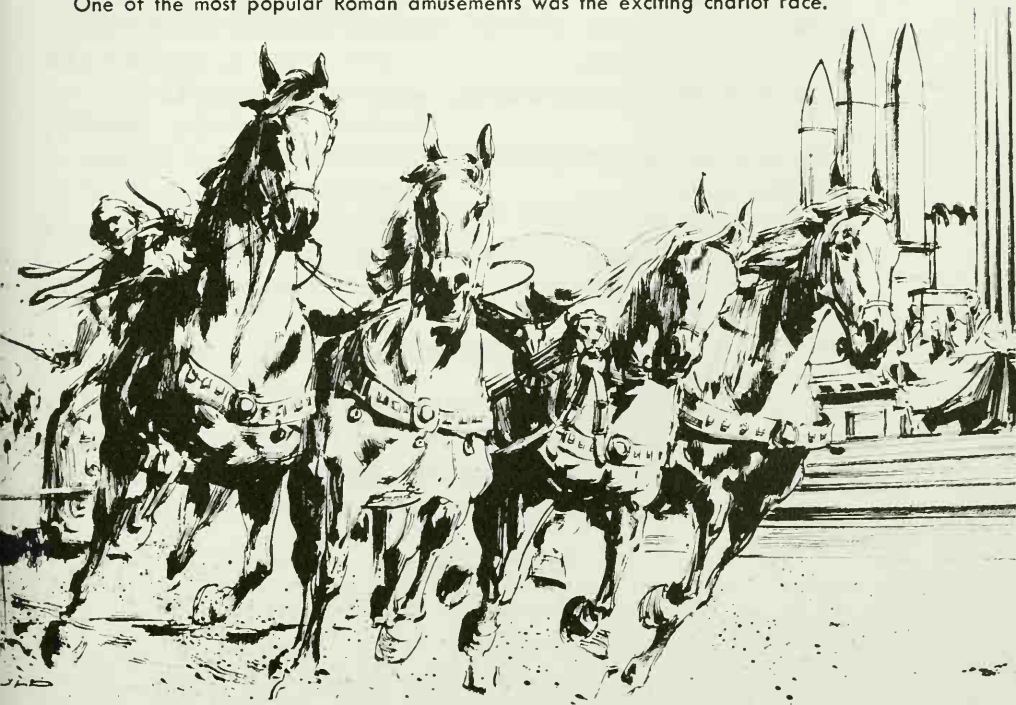
C. *Translate:*

1. Lēgātus, vir summae virtūtis, equitātuī praefectus erat.
2. Rēx ipse incolās perterritōs periculō liberāvit.
3. Equitēs legiōnī subsidiō iterum vēnērunt.
4. Dux noster, cōpiīs undique coāctīs, Gallīs obsidēs imperāvit.
5. Prīncipēs quī tōtī Galliae imperant in Forum convenient.
6. Hae cīvitatēs nobīs magnae cūrae sunt.
7. Graeci mare trānsiērunt ā Rōmānīs sibi auxilium petītūrī.
8. Pyrrhus, auxiliō Tarentīnīs, multōs elephantōs unā cum cōpiīs suis in Italiam trānsportāvit.
9. Ūnō exercitū Rōmae praesidiō urbī relictō, duo exercitūs contrā hostēs iter fēcērunt.
10. Peditī quem ad alterum cōsulem mīserat timēbat.

D. *Write in Latin:*

1. Do not declare war, for we have not harmed you.
2. The Romans have left two armies to guard the city.

One of the most popular Roman amusements was the exciting chariot race.





3. Marcus has been put in charge of the camp. 4. The general had put Marcus in charge of the camp; he (*ille*) has been in charge of it for three days. 5. We shall not be able to resist the advancing army. 6. This angry master will not spare the weary boys. 7. Your (*s.*) very daring plan will be of great use to us. 8. Our men, having been given the opportunity, intend to meet the enemy at once. 9. I often fear for my daughter; she is a great care to me. 10. Good parents look out for (their) children; they ask the advice of wise (men).

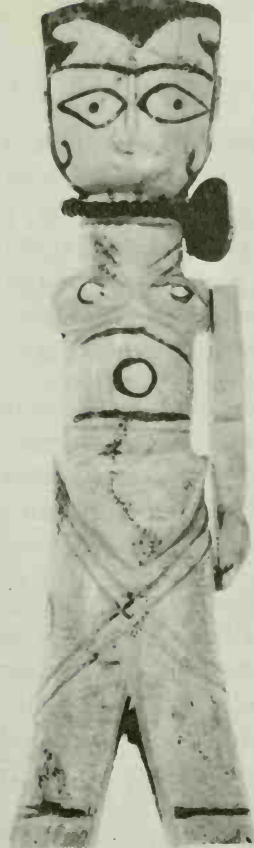
## SUPPLEMENTARY EXERCISE

*Translate:*

1. Cōsul captīvō pepercit. 2. Pontī appropinquāmus.
3. Cōpiūs imperāverat. 4. Clientibus studet. 5. Mihi persuādere nōn poteris. 6. Tibi crēdō. 7. Hostibus occurrī sumus. 8. Pārēte parentibus. 9. Nōlīte nōbīs nocēre. 10. Omnī impetuī restitērunt.

colloquium, colloquī, *n.*, conversation, conference  
 impedimentum, -ī, *n.*, hindrance;  
*plural*, baggage  
 subsidium, subsidī, *n.*, support, reinforcements  
 victor, victōris, *m.*, victor  
 portus, portūs, *m.*, harbor, port  
 ūsus, ūsūs, *m.*, use, service; experience  
 militāris (*gen.* militāris), militāris, militāre, military  
 trānsportō, trānsportāre, trānsportāvī, trānsportātum, transport, carry across, bring over

studeō, studēre, studiū, ———, (*with dative*) be eager for, aim at, devote oneself to  
 praeficiō, praeficere, praefēcī, praefectum, put or set in command of  
 resistō, resistere, restitī, ———, (*with dative*) resist  
 praesum, praesesse, praefuī, be in command of  
 bellum indicere (indicō, indicere, indixī, indictum), to make a formal declaration of war  
 rēs militāris, rei militāris, *f.*, the art of war



*Roman bone doll  
from Egypt, first to  
seventh century A.D.*

# 47

## Present Infinitive, Active and Passive

### Indirect Statement

Malum est cōnsilium quod mūtārī nōn potest.

*It's an ill plan that can't be changed.*

PUBLILIUS SYRUS

334

### Dē Rēge Pyrrhō (Part 2)

Itaque Pyrrhus Cīneam (*Cineas*), ōrātōrem callidum (*shrewd*), Rōmam ad senātum mīsit. Hic senātuī dīxit Pyrrhum rēgem ipsum velle (*wish, infinitive*) diem colloquiō cum Rōmānīs dīcere. In urbem inīre volēbat pācem cum Rōmānīs cōnfīrmātūrus.

- 5 Appius Claudius autem, quī propter caecitātem (*blindness*) diū cōsiliis publicis abstinuerat (*had refrained from*), certior factus senātum cum lēgātō ā Pyrrhō missō agere, in cūriam (*senate-house*) ductus est. Ibi, postquam Claudius magnō studiō senātum monuit rēgem esse periculōsum neque populum
- 10 Rōmānum tālī hostī crēdere dēbere, patrēs (*the senators*) negāvērunt sē pācem cum Pyrrhō cōfirmāre velle.

Posteā ad C. Fabricium cōsulem quīdam (*a certain one*) ex militibus Pyrrhī suā sponte vēnit. "Ego," inquit, "sī mihi praemium dederis, rēgī nocēbō; eī venēnum (*poison*) dabō."

- 15 Quem cōsul ad Pyrrhum remisit, et per nūntium rēgem dē hīs insidiis certiōrem fēcit.

- Tum rēx in Siciliam trānsiit, spērāns, rēbus ibi bene gestis, sē maiōribus cum cōpiis redire et Rōmānōs vincere posse. At illī interim contrā Lūcānōs (*Lucanians, in Southern Italy*) aliōsque hostēs prosperē (*successfully*) in Italiā bellum gesserunt. Pyrrhus, ubi post quīnque annōs ad Italiam rediit, apud Beneventum ab Rōmānīs victus, clāmāvit sē ex Italiā discedere cōgī.
- 20

The infinitive in Latin is used in both the active and the passive voice.

Nōs castra oppugnāre iussit.	He ordered us to attack the camp.
Nōs castra movēre iussit.	He ordered us to move the camp.
Nōs castra pōnere iussit.	He ordered us to pitch a camp.
Nōs castra capere iussit.	He ordered us to take the camp.
Nōs castra mūnīre iussit.	He ordered us to fortify a camp.

Castra oppugnārī iussit.	He ordered the camp to be attacked.
Castra movērī iussit.	He ordered the camp to be moved.
Castra pōnī iussit.	He ordered a camp to be pitched.
Castra capī iussit.	He ordered the camp to be taken.
Castra mūnīrī iussit.	He ordered a camp to be fortified.

## PRESENT INFINITIVE

	ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
I	-āre	portāre	-ārī	portārī
II	-ēre	movēre	-ērī	movērī
III	-ere	dūcere	-ī	dūcī
III -iō	-ere	capere	-ī	capī
IV	-īre	audīre	-īrī	audīrī
	trānseō	trānsīre		trānsīrī

336

## INDIRECT STATEMENT

An indirect statement differs from a direct statement in that it does not give the exact words of the speaker.

Compare these direct and indirect statements in English.

DIRECT	INDIRECT
The boy says, "The man is coming."	The boy says [that the man is coming].
The man says, "I am free."	The man says [that he is free.]

Indirect statements follow verbs of saying, knowing, thinking, perceiving: **dīcō**, **respondeō**, **scribō**, **sciō**, **exīstimō**, **putō**, **sentiō**, **intellegō**, **certiōrem faciō**, etc.

An indirect statement in English usually takes the form of a subordinate noun clause beginning with *that* and having its verb in the indicative mood.

I know [*that he is* a good man].

Sometimes an indirect statement in English is expressed by an infinitive with its subject in the objective case.

I know [*him to be* a good man].

In Latin the *verb* of an *indirect statement* is in the *infinitive mood* with its *subject* in the *accusative case*.

The boy says [that the man is coming].      **Puer dīcit [virum venīre].**

The man says [that he is free.]      **Vir dīcit [sē esse liberum].**

In indirect statements in English the tense of the verb in the subordinate clause is influenced by the tense of the verb in the principal clause.

The man *says* [that the soldiers *are fighting*].  
The man *said* [that the soldiers *were fighting*].

In Latin the present tense of the infinitive expresses the *same time* as the principal verb:

Vir dicit [mīlitēs pugnāre].      The man says [that the soldiers are fighting].  
Vir dixit [mīlitēs pugnāre].      The man said [that the soldiers were fighting].

The personal pronoun subject of a verb in the indicative mood is usually omitted in Latin: **venit**, *he is coming*. But in an indirect statement the subject of the infinitive must always be expressed: **dīcō** [**EUM venīre**], I say [that he is coming].

In the third person we must distinguish between subjects that are reflexive and those that are not reflexive.

(Mārcus) dīcit sē (= Mārcum) esse liberum.  
He (= Marcus) says that he (= Marcus) is free.  
(Lūcius) dīcit eum (= Mārcum) esse liberum.  
He (= Lucius) says that he (= Marcus) is free.  
(Rōmānī) dīcunt sē (= Rōmānōs) esse liberōs.  
They (= the Romans) say that they (= the Romans) are free.  
(Graecī) dīcunt eōs (= Rōmānōs) esse liberōs.  
They (= the Greeks) say that they (= the Romans) are free.

The verb **negō**, **negāre**, **negāvī**, **negātum**, *deny, say . . . not*, is regularly used instead of **dīcō** followed by a negative in the indirect statement.

**Negō** [dictātōrem venīre].  
I say [that the dictator is NOT coming].  
**Negāvīt** [sē hoc umquam facere].  
He said [that he NEVER did this].

A. *Translate:*

1. Pyrrhus est in Siciliā. Nūntius dīcit Pyrrhum esse in Siciliā. Nūntius dīxit Pyrrhum esse in Siciliā. 2. Dux in Galliam it. Exīstimāmus ducem in Galliam īre. Exīstimāvimus ducem in Galliam īre. 3. Rēx cum Gallīs pugnat. Audīmus rēgem cum Gallīs pugnāre. Audīvimus rēgem cum Gallīs pugnāre. 4. Urbs oppugnātur. Sentīmus urbem oppugnārī. Sēnsimus urbem oppugnārī. 5. Rēx Rōmānōs vincere nōn potest. Intellegō rēgem Rōmānōs vincere nōn posse. Intellēxī rēgem Rōmānōs vincere nōn posse.

B. *Change the direct statements to indirect statements in Latin following the expressions given and translate:*

1. Rēx bellum in Italiā gerit. Nūntius cognōvit \_\_\_\_\_.
2. Mīlītēs nostrī fortiter pugnant. Nūntius dēmōnstrat \_\_\_\_\_.
3. Exercitus ā Caesare dūcitur. Nūntius nūntiat \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Multī mīlītēs capiuntur. Scrībit \_\_\_\_\_.
5. Caesar oppidum oppugnat. Nūntius respondet \_\_\_\_\_.

C. *Change the direct statements to indirect statements in Latin following the expressions given and translate:*

1. Amīcus meus Rōmae est. Audīvī \_\_\_\_\_.
2. Appius in cūriam dūcitur. Certior factus sum \_\_\_\_\_.
3. Pyrrhus ex Italiā discēdere cōgitur. Docuī \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Obsidēs ducī trāduntur. Vīdī \_\_\_\_\_.
5. Cum hoste pācem facere nōn dēbētis. Negāvī \_\_\_\_\_.

D. *Translate:*

1. He says that the soldiers are coming.  
that the legion is coming.  
that the forces are coming.  
that he is coming.
2. He said that the soldiers were coming.  
that the legion was coming.  
that the forces were coming.  
that he was coming.



3. They think that the camp is large.  
that the river is deep.  
that the trench is broad.  
that they are brave.
4. They thought that the camp was large.  
that the river was deep.  
that the trench was broad.  
that they were brave.
5. You say that we are not holding the hills.  
that he does not do these things.  
that they do not have war ships.
6. He perceived that we were friendly to the Romans.  
that we were unfriendly to the Germans.  
that it was dangerous to us.

E. *Translate:*

1. Dēmōnstrant cōpiās Pyrrhī esse maximās. 2. Respondent sē aliud iter habēre nūllum. 3. Ostendunt sē rēs bene gerere. 4. Claudium certiōrem faciunt sē pācem cum rēge nōn cōfirmāre. 5. Nūntiant cōpiās convenīre neque longē abesse. 6. Patrēs monet hoc esse Rōmānīs periculōsum. 7. Dīcit aliōs abīre, aliōs adīre. 8. Patrēs negant sē cum rēge agere. 9. Suā sponte dīxit sē intelligere sē discēdere prohibērī. 10. Magnā vōce clāmāvit sē domō expellī.

F. *Write in Latin:*

1. We see that our ships are being wrecked by the storm. 2. With the greatest eagerness they are collecting twenty ships of this type. 3. They pointed out that the consul was hiding money belonging to the state in his own house. 4. They relate that Claudius is warning the senators that the king is an enemy. 5. He answers that he is a Roman citizen and cannot make peace with Pyrrhus. 6. He says that the heights cannot be taken by our troops during the first watch. 7. He declared that the citizens did not despair of safety. 8. I wrote that the danger was increasing. 9. The messenger, although wounded, came to Caesar and reported that large forces of the Gauls were assembling. 10. Fabricius, sending a messenger to Pyrrhus' camp, informed the king of the plot.

The Romans were fond of mosaics, and there are many remains throughout the Empire. This one, depicting Medusa, was found near Seville, Spain.



George Pickow, Three Lions, Inc.

**studium, studiī, *n.***, eagerness, zeal

**pūblicus, -a, -um**, of the people  
*or* the state, public

**existimō, existimāre, existimāvī, existimātum**, think, believe, suppose

**negō, negāre, negāvī, negātum**, deny, say . . . not

**noceō, nocēre, nocuī, nocitum**,  
(*with dative*) injure, harm

**crēdō, crēdere, crēdidī, crēditum**, (*with dative*) believe

**intellegō, intellegere, intellēxī, intellēctum**, understand, be aware, perceive

**ostendō, ostendere, ostendī, ostēsum *or* ostentum**, show, point out, declare

**sentiō, sentire, sēnsī, sēsum**, feel, perceive

**agere cum**, to treat *or* confer with

**diem dīcere**, to set a day

**rēs gerere**, to manage affairs

**suā sponte**, of one's own accord



*Roman bridge across  
the Loire River,  
Blois, France*

# 48

## Perfect and Future Infinitives

Numquam sē cēnāsse<sup>1</sup> domī Philo iūrat, et hoc est:  
nōn cēnat, quotiēns nēmo vocāvit eum.

MARTIAL 5.47

*Philo swears he's never once  
Dined home. That's true, no doubt,  
For Philo never eats at all,  
If no one asks him out.*

<sup>1</sup> cēnāsse = cēnāvisse. The perfect active tenses are often shortened by omitting -vi-.

Carthage (Carthāgō, Carthāginis, *f.*) was a rich and important city at the northeast end of the Bay of Tunis in Northern Africa. It was founded by Phoenicians (Latin, **Poenī**; hence the adjective **Pūnicus**) about the middle of the ninth century B.C. Carthage became the capital of one of the most important empires of ancient times. During the earlier centuries Carthage and Rome were friendly. But commercial expansion and the desire for more territory brought the two powers into conflict. The First Punic War (264-241 B.C.) saw the rise of Rome as a naval power. As a result of her victories, Rome added the island of Sicily to her territories. During the Second Punic War (218-201 B.C.) the great Carthaginian general Hannibal invaded Italy, but his many victories failed to break Rome's resistance. Eventually Rome was again victorious, adding Spain to her empire. Half a century later (149 B.C.) came the Third Punic War. It lasted for three years, and after a stubborn defense the city of Carthage was taken and destroyed. Her territories in Africa were added to Rome's dominions.

### Dē Rēgulō (Part I)

Suprā dēmōnstrāvimus Tarentīnōs bellō decem ferē annōrum victōs esse, imperiōque Rōmānō additōs. Quibus rēbus factīs, Italia ferē tōta senātui populōque Rōmānō pārēbat. Sed priusquam Tarentīnī ab Rōmānīs victī sunt, altera (*a second*) urbs magna et potēns, Carthāgō nōmine, imperiī suī finēs 5 augēre coeperat. Scīmus, bellō magnō inter hās duās urbēs inceptō, diū neutrōs (*neither side*) vīcisse.

Trāditum est (*There is a tradition*) M. Atilium Rēgulum, cōsulem Rōmānum, virum magnae fideī cōstantiaeque, Poenīs nāvālī pugnā victīs, ad Āfricam cum magnā classe 10 trānsiisse. Ibi postquam complūribus proeliīs Poenōs superāvit, neque successor (*a successor*) ā senātū mittēbātur, litterās ad senātum mīsit; nam exīstimāvit succēssōrem mittī ac sē ipsum revocārī dēbere.

15 Interim Poenī, quod rēs bene gerere nōn potuerant, Xanthippum, ducem Lacedaemonium (*Spartan*), virum summā reī mīlītāris scientiā, arcessīvērunt (*summoned*). Mox Rōmānī certiorēs factī sunt Rēgulum victum captumque esse.

20 Tum Poenī Rēgulum ad senātum mīsērunt quod dē pāce et dē commūtātiōne captīvōrum agere volēbant. Ille iūrāverat sē Carthāginem reditūrum esse, pāce nōn factā commūtātiōneve (-ve, or) captīvōrum; itaque prō certō habēbant (*they were assured*) eum pācem aequīs condiciōnibus relātūrum esse (*fut. inf., bring back*).

### 340

## INFINITIVES

Every regular transitive verb has six infinitives, three in the active voice and three in the passive voice.<sup>2</sup>

Learn the following rules for forming the infinitives:

#### ACTIVE

#### PRESENT

The *present infinitive active* is the second principal part of the verb; **amāre**, to love, **dūcere**, to lead.

The *present infinitive passive* is formed by changing final -e of the present infinitive active to -ī; **amārī**, to be loved. In the third conjugation, however, final -ere becomes -ī; **dūcī**, to be led, **capī**, to be taken.

#### PERFECT

The *perfect infinitive active* is the perfect stem + -isse; **amāvisse**, to have loved.

The *perfect infinitive passive* is the perfect participle passive and **esse**; **amātus esse**, to have been loved.

#### FUTURE

The *future infinitive active* is the future participle active and **esse**; **amātūrus esse**, to be going to love.

The *future infinitive passive* is the supine and **īrī**; **amātum īrī**, to be going to be loved.

<sup>2</sup> The future passive infinitive is not often used and need not be learned at this time.

## ACTIVE

<i>Present</i>	portāre	movēre	dūcere	capere	audire
<i>Perfect</i>	portāvisse	mōvisse	dūxisse	cēpisse	audīvisse
<i>Future</i>	portātūrūs esse	mōtūrūs esse	ductūrūs esse	captūrūs esse	audītūrūs esse

## PASSIVE

<i>Present</i>	portārī	movērī	dūcī	capī	audīrī
<i>Perfect</i>	portātus esse	mōtus esse	ductus esse	captus esse	audītus esse
<i>Future</i>	portātum irī	mōtum irī	ductum irī	captum irī	audītum irī

## ACTIVE

## PASSIVE

<i>Present</i>	esse	posse	trānsire	trānsirī
<i>Perfect</i>	fuisse	potuisse	trānsiisse	trānsitus esse
<i>Future</i>	futūrus esse or fore	————	trānsitūrus esse	trānsitum irī

## 341 TIME EXPRESSED BY THE INFINITIVE

The tense of the infinitive in an indirect statement may be determined by relating the time of the infinitive to the time of the principal verb. The *present* infinitive expresses the *same* time as the time of the principal verb; the *perfect* infinitive expresses time *before* the time of the principal verb; the *future* infinitive expresses time *after* the time of the principal verb.

Dicit milītēs pugnāre.	He says that the soldiers are fighting.
Dixit milītēs pugnāre.	He said that the soldiers were fighting.
Dicit milītēs pugnāvisse.	He says that the soldiers have fought <i>or</i> fought.
Dixit milītēs pugnāvisse.	He said that the soldiers had fought.
Dicit milītēs pugnātūrōs esse.	He says that the soldiers will fight.
Dixit milītēs pugnātūrōs esse.	He said that the soldiers would fight.

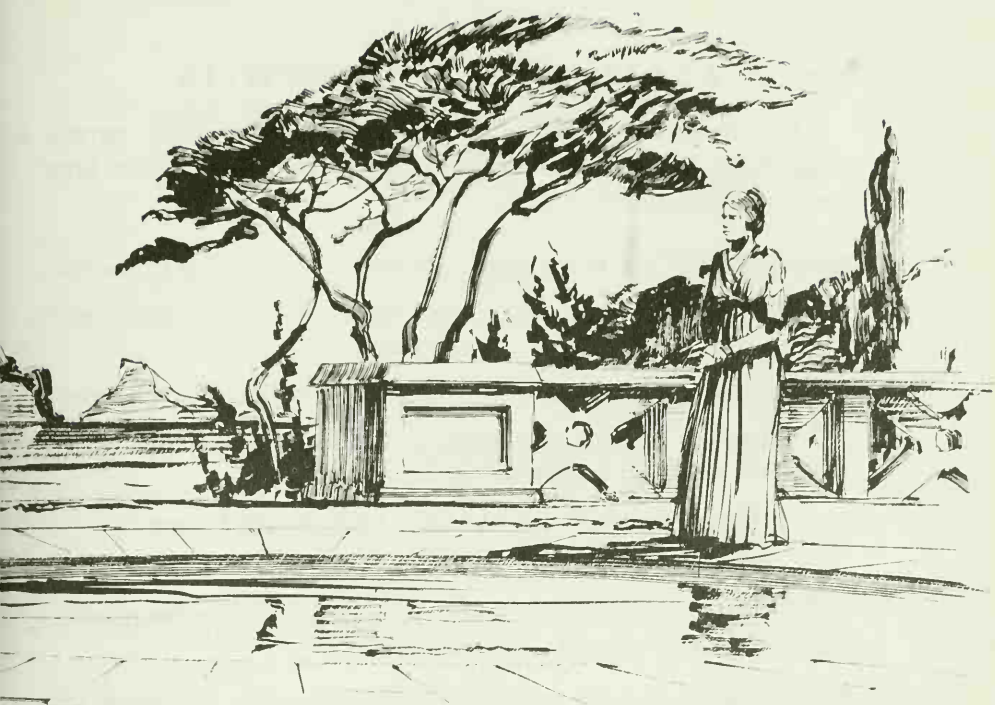




The life of an aristocratic Roman family was leisurely. Much time was spent in family companionship, particularly during the long periods when the entire family withdrew from the city to country estates in the Sabine and Alban hills or along the seacoast. A large part of a boy's education was received from his father as they walked and talked together in the beautifully terraced gardens of these villas.

The tense of the infinitive may be determined by reference to the *direct* words of the speaker. The present tense of the infinitive stands for a present tense of the direct statement; the perfect tense of the infinitive for a past tense of the direct statement; a future tense of the infinitive for a future tense of the direct statement.

DIRECT STATEMENT	INDIRECT STATEMENT	LATIN
The soldiers are fighting.	He says that the soldiers are fighting.	<b>Dīcit</b> milītēs pug-nāre.
<b>Milītēs</b> pugnant.	He said that the soldiers were fighting.	<b>Dixit</b> milītēs pug-nāre.



The remains of many such luxurious villas are still to be seen studding such areas as the Campagna di Roma (south of Rome) and the Mediterranean and Adriatic coasts of the Italian peninsula. Many wealthy Romans owned several of these sumptuous retreats. Cicero is reported to have owned seven! Lining the beautiful and scenic coastal areas, they must have presented a rich and splendid spectacle.

The soldiers fought.	He says that the soldiers fought.	Dīcit milītēs pugnā-visse.
Milītēs pugnāvērunt.	He said that the soldiers had fought.	Dixit milītēs pugnā-visse.
The soldiers will fight.	He says that the soldiers will fight.	Dīcit milītēs pugnā-tūrōs esse.
Milītēs pugnābunt.	He said that the soldiers would fight.	Dixit milītēs pugnā-tūrōs esse.

The rules for the tense of the infinitive apply to passive infinitives also.

**Vir dīcit hostēs repellī.**

The man says that the enemy are being driven back.

**Vir dīcit hostēs repulsōs esse.**

The man says that the enemy have been driven back.

The future participle in the future infinitive active agrees with the subject of the infinitive. The future infinitive **fore** remains unchanged.

**Dīcit Camillum ventūrum esse.** He says that Camillus will come.

**Dīcit militēs ventūrōs esse.** He says that the soldiers will come.

**Dīcit puellās ventūrās esse.** He says that the girls will come.

**Dīcit sē futūrum esse bonum. Dīcit sē fore bonum.**  
He says that he will be good.

**Dīcit sē futūram esse bonam. Dīcit sē fore bonam.**  
She says that she will be good.

The perfect participle passive in the perfect infinitive passive agrees with the subject of the infinitive.

**Nūntiat oppida incēnsa esse.** He announces that the towns, the

**Nūntiat urbēs incēnsās esse.** cities, the villages, have been

**Nūntiat vīcōs incēnsōs esse.** burned.

**spērō, spērāre, spērāvī, spērātum,** hope

**prōmittō, prōmittere, prōmīsī, prōmissum,** promise

**iūrō, iūrāre, iūrāvī, iūrātum,** swear

**Spērō mē Rōmam ventūrum esse.**

I hope that I shall come to Rome. I hope to come to Rome.

**Prōmittis tē haec factūrum esse.**

You promise that you will do this. You promise to do this.

**Rēgīna iūrat sē hostibus parsūram esse.**

The queen swears that she will spare the enemy.

The queen swears to spare the enemy.

Verbs of hoping, promising, and swearing take in Latin the accusative of the pronoun and the FUTURE infinitive.

A. *Translate the sentence with each infinitive:*

1. Dīcit mātrem liberōs \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) vocāre                      b) vocāvisse                      c) vocātūram esse
2. Crēdimus tē \_\_\_\_\_ trīstem.  
a) esse                      b) fuisse                      c) futūrum esse
3. Cognōvī cōpiās nostrās flūmen \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) trānsīre                      b) trānsiisse                      c) trānsitūrās esse
4. Dux negāvit sē proelium \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) committere                      b) commīsisse                      c) commissūrum esse
5. Senēs intellēxērunt adulēscētēs ā magistrō \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) addūcī                      b) adductōs esse

B. *Supply the correct tense of the infinitive:*

1. Omnēs dīxērunt sē deīs grātiās \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) were thanking                      b) had thanked                      c) would thank
2. Sentīmus perīculum \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_ maximum.  
a) is                      b) was                      c) will be
3. Rēx certior factus est legiōnēs ad campum \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) were approaching                      b) had approached  
c) would approach
4. Nūntius nūntiat servum frūmentum \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) is gathering                      b) has gathered                      c) will gather
5. Mulier exīstimāvit filiā suā \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) was being freed                      b) had been freed

C. *Change the following direct statements to indirect statements in Latin, following the introductory words given; translate:*

1. Cōsul Rōmānus ad Āfricā nāvīgat.  
Nūntius dīxit \_\_\_\_\_.
2. Equitēs impetum hostium repellent.                      Exīstimō \_\_\_\_\_.  
3. Proelium nāvāle primā lūce commissum est.  
Lēgātus dīcit \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Frāter meus rēs bene gessit.                      Soror negāvit \_\_\_\_\_.
5. Urbs nostra circumvenītur.  
Custōdēs ostendēbant \_\_\_\_\_.

D. *Translate:*

1. Dīxit sapientiam huius magistrī fore summam. 2. Audīvimus fossam ā servīs complētam esse. 3. Sēnsērunt hostēs mediam urbem occupāvisse. 4. Scripsit custōdēs remōtōs esse. 5. Mōnstrāvī novum bellum inceptum esse. 6. Cognōvit mīlitem praeium ā Rōmānīs postulātūrum esse. 7. Negat nōs pecūniam reddere posse. 8. Dēmōnstrat alterum cōsulem Rōmae manēre, alterum ad Āfricam missum esse. 9. Respondet victōrēs pācem aequīs condiciōnibus fēcisse. 10. Quī patrēs sciunt proelium nāvāle factum esse?

E. *Write in Latin:*

1. He says that the children have been called by their mother.
2. He says that the soldiers have not closed the gate.
3. We heard that the slaves would fill the trench.
4. They perceived that the middle of the city had been burned.
5. He knew that the soldier would demand a reward from the Romans.
6. He knows that a reward has been demanded from Camillus.
7. He points out that the sick soldiers have been left in the camp.
8. He replies that a letter has been sent to the senate.
9. I have been informed that a new fleet has not yet been built.

cōstantia, -ae, <i>f.</i> , firmness, resolution	nāvālis, nāvālis, nāvāle, pertaining to a ship, naval
litterae, litterārum, <i>f. pl.</i> , dispatch, letter	quālis, quālis, quāle, what kind, what sort of
commūtātiō, commūtātiōnis, <i>f.</i> , exchange	claudō, claudere, clausī, clausum, close, shut in
condiciō, condiciōnis, <i>f.</i> , terms, agreement	incipiō, incipere, incēpi, inceptum, begin
fidēs, fideī, <i>f.</i> , faith, faithfulness, loyalty, fidelity	ferē, <i>adv.</i> , almost, nearly quam diū, <i>adv.</i> , how long



*Decorative relief with griffin, first century A.D.*

# 49

## Deponent Verbs Semi-deponent Verbs

*Glōria virtūtem tamquam umbra sequitur.*

*Glory follows virtue like a shadow.*

CICERO

346

### Dē Rēgulō (Part 2)

At Rēgulus, postquam Rōmam in senātum vēnit, dīxit sē, cōnsulem Rōmānum factum, captīvum esse hostium, nōluitque (*refused*) sententiam dīcere (*to give his opinion*). Rogātus tamen dē pāce ab Rōmānīs, arbitrātus est senātum pācem cum Poenīs facere nōn dēbēre: Poenōs esse hostēs perpetuōs (*continuous, lasting*) populī Rōmānī, neque perpetuam pācem cum eīs cōfirmārī posse. 5



Deinde ubi eum dē commūtātiōne captīvōrum sententiam rogāvērunt, respondit captīvōs commūtāre esse stultum; sē  
 10 esse senem et inūtilem, ā Xanthippō victum; inter Poenōs tamen, ab Rōmānīs captōs, esse iuvenēs et bonōs ducēs. Patrēs igitur nōluērunt (*refused*) pācem neque commūtātiōnem captīvōrum facere.

Tum Rēgulus, multīs Rōmānōrum invītīs, Rōmā discēdere  
 15 et Carthāginem proficīscī cōstituit. Uxōrī, liberīs, amīcīs, “Valēte;” inquit, “nōlīte prō mē lacrimāre (*weep*): nōn sum cīvis Rōmānus sed captīvus hostium. Fidem solvere ergā (*break faith with*) Poenōs, hostēs infidōs (*faithless*), nōn possum. Prō patriā vītā dēdō, et fēliciter (*happily*) moriar. Pollicē-  
 20 minī vōs dē salūte Rōmae nōn dēspērātūrōs.<sup>1</sup> Valēte et vincite, Rōmānī!”

Quamquam bene sciēbat sē, rē infectā, in dolōre cruciātūque (*in pain and agony*) peritūrum esse, nihilōminus (*nonetheless*) summā cum cōstantiā ad Āfricā reversus est.

## 347

## DEPONENT VERBS

A deponent (**dē**, *aside* + **pōnō**, *place*) verb lays aside or lacks *active forms* in Latin, but has an *active meaning*. With very few exceptions, the Latin forms of a deponent verb are like the *passive forms* of a transitive verb.

A deponent verb has only three principal parts, all passive in form:

PRESENT INDICATIVE    PRESENT INFINITIVE    PERFECT INDICATIVE

**cōnor**, I try                      **cōnārī**, to try                      **cōnātus sum**, I have tried

There are deponent verbs in all conjugations. The conjugation is indicated by the present infinitive.

I	<b>cōnor</b>	<b>cōnārī</b>	<b>cōnātus sum</b>	try, attempt
II	<b>vereor</b>	<b>verērī</b>	<b>veritus sum</b>	fear
III	<b>sequor</b>	<b>sequī</b>	<b>secūtus sum</b>	follow
III	<b>-ior prōgredior</b>	<b>prōgredī</b>	<b>prōgressus sum</b>	advance
IV	<b>partior</b>	<b>partīrī</b>	<b>partitus sum</b>	divide, share

<sup>1</sup> In compound forms of the infinitive **esse** is sometimes omitted.

# 348 CONJUGATION OF DEPONENTS

## PRESENT INDICATIVE

I try	I fear	I follow	I advance	I divide
cōnor	vereor	sequor	prōgredior	partior
cōnāris	verēris	sequeris	prōgrederis	partiris
cōnātur	verētur	sequitur	prōgreditur	partitur
cōnāmur	verēmur	sequimur	prōgredimur	partimur
cōnāminī	verēminī	sequiminī	prōgrediminī	partiminī
cōnantur	verentur	sequuntur	prōgrediuntur	partiuntur

## IMPERFECT INDICATIVE

I was trying	I was fearing	I was following
cōnābar	verēbar	sequēbar
I was advancing	I was dividing	
prōgrediēbar	partiēbar	

## FUTURE INDICATIVE

I shall try	I shall fear	I shall follow
cōnābor	verēbor	sequar
I shall advance	I shall divide	
prōgrediar	partiar	

## PERFECT INDICATIVE

I have tried	I have feared	I have followed
cōnātus sum	veritus sum	secūtus sum
I have advanced	I have divided	
prōgressus sum	partītus sum	

## PLUPERFECT INDICATIVE

I had tried	I had feared	I had followed
cōnātus eram	veritus eram	secūtus eram
I had advanced	I had divided	
prōgressus eram	partītus eram	

#### FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE

I shall have tried cōnātus erō	I shall have feared veritus erō	I shall have followed secūtus erō
I shall have advanced prōgressus erō	I shall have divided partītus erō	

#### PRESENT IMPERATIVE

cōnāre	verēre	sequere	prōgredere	partīre
cōnāminī	verēminī	sequiminī	prōgrediminī	partīminī

349

### SEMI-DEPONENT VERBS

A semi-deponent verb has active forms in the present, imperfect, and future tenses, and passive forms in the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect tenses. The meaning of all forms is active.

**audeō, audēre, ausus sum, dare, venture**

The forms of **audeō** may be synopsisized thus:

**audeō, audēre**

**ausus sum**

#### INDICATIVE

<i>Present</i>	<b>audeō</b>	<i>Perfect</i>	<b>ausus sum</b>
<i>Imperfect</i>	<b>audēbam</b>	<i>Pluperfect</i>	<b>ausus eram</b>
<i>Future</i>	<b>audēbō</b>	<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	<b>ausus erō</b>

#### IMPERATIVE

**audē, audēte**

350

### EXERCISES

A. *Translate:*

- |                 |                      |
|-----------------|----------------------|
| 1. Verentur.    | 8. Gaudēte!          |
| 2. Sequere mē!  | 9. Sequentur.        |
| 3. Gāvīsus est. | 10. Oriar.           |
| 4. Arbitrāmur.  | 11. Cōnābor.         |
| 5. Exīstimāmus. | 12. Proficīsciminī!  |
| 6. Mortuus est. | 13. Proficīsciminī.  |
| 7. Verita erat. | 14. Prōgrediēbantur. |

B. *Translate:*

1. They think.
2. We had promised.
3. They were rejoicing.
4. You (*pl.*) will set out.
5. They had shared.
6. He was trying.
7. Rejoice!
8. We were advancing.
9. I shall try.
10. They have set out.
11. We are returning.
12. He is dying.
13. They fear.
14. You(*s.*) have followed.
15. She will follow.
16. We dare.
17. Follow me!
18. She does promise.
19. We shall advance.
20. She will have returned.

C. *Complete the sentence:*

1. Post caedem multōrum hostēs iterum \_\_\_\_\_ (*advanced*).
2. Hoc flūmen in montibus \_\_\_\_\_ (*rises*).
3. Urbe expugnātā, cīvēs \_\_\_\_\_ (*retreated*).
4. In silvam ire nōn \_\_\_\_\_ (*they did dare*).
5. \_\_\_\_\_ (*They promised*) sē obsidēs datūrōs esse.
6. Ipse cum omnibus cōpiīs in Italiam \_\_\_\_\_ (*is setting out*).
7. Gallīs auxilium \_\_\_\_\_ (*he kept giving*).
8. In hōc locō dormīre \_\_\_\_\_ (*we shall try*).
9. Propter magnam victōriam \_\_\_\_\_ (*we are rejoicing*).
10. \_\_\_\_\_ (*Follow*) mē statim, Mārce.

D. *Translate:*

1. Impedīmenta in summō colle collocāre verēbitur.
2. Sī valēs, bene est.<sup>2</sup>
3. Nōlī, lēgāte, longius ā castrīs prōgredi.
4. Dum in silvā errant, subitō ā Gallīs captī sunt.
5. Exercitum in portum prōgredi et nāvēs ascendere et sē sequī iussit.
6. Sī valēbit, rē infectā nōn revertētur.
7. Et dux quī cōpiīs praeerat et multī mīlitēs mortuī erant.
8. Cum prīmum sententiam dīxit, summā cum cōstantiā ad Hispāniam reversus est.

E. *Write in Latin:*

1. We had tried to reach the harbor before midnight.
2. They will set out at noon and will follow us many miles.
3. She promises to come at once.
4. These men think that we are unfriendly to them.
5. We shall not

<sup>2</sup> The Romans frequently used this formula (often written S.V.B.E.) at the beginning of a letter.

advance farther from the place. 6. They feared the Roman armies which were coming into Gaul. 7. Although wounded, the young men had attempted to reach the same place. 8. After learning our plans, that king did not try to defend his own city. 9. This knowledge is useful to the Romans, useless to the pirates. 10. The tenth legion has faith; the fourth despairs of everything.

### 351

### VOCABULARY

**sententia**, -ae, *f.*, opinion  
**stultus**, -a, -um, foolish, silly  
**inūtilis**, **inūtilis**, **inūtile**, useless  
**iuvenis**, **iuvenis**, **iuvene**, young;  
*masc. as noun, iuvenis*, young  
 man (*gen. pl. of both adj. and*  
*noun iuvenum*)  
**arbitror**, **arbitrārī**, **arbitrātus**  
 sum, think, consider, judge  
**gaudeō**, **gaudēre**, **gāvisus sum**,  
 rejoice, be glad  
**polliceor**, **pollicērī**, **pollicitus**  
 sum, promise

**valeō**, **valēre**, **valui**, ———, be  
 strong, be well; *imperative*,  
**valē**, **valēte**, farewell, good-  
 bye  
**morior**, **morī**, **mortuus sum**, die  
**proficiscor**, **proficiscī**, **profectus**  
 sum, set out  
**revertor**, **revertī**, **reversus sum**,  
 return, come back  
**orior**, **orīrī**, **ortus sum**, arise, rise  
**rē infectā**, with his (their) work  
 undone

### 352

### WORD STUDY

You have already learned the adjective suffix **-bilis** (**-ābilis**, **-ibilis**), *able to be, able to*. The adjective suffix **-ilis** has the same meaning. For example **inūtilis**, *useless*, is formed by adding the negative prefix **in-** to **ūtilis**, an adjective formed by adding **-ilis** to the stem of the verb **ūtor**, *use*.

Form similar adjectives on the present stem of: **agō**, **doceō**, **faciō**. Give the meaning of each adjective.

The suffix **-ilis** must be carefully distinguished from the suffix **-īlis** which is added to the base of a noun and means *pertaining to, belonging to* (*cf. -ālis*).

Using the suffix **-ilis** form adjectives on the base of: **cīvis**, **hostis**, **iuvenis**, **puer**, **senex**. Give the meaning of each adjective.

In general the ancient world accepted slavery as an established custom and did not ask whether such a practice was morally right.

In ancient times slaves were commonly not of a different color or race from their masters. The chief sources of slaves were capture in war, seizure by pirates and brigands, enslavement for serious crimes, and the exposure of children. In addition to slaves thus acquired, there were the children born of slave women. This last class of slave became more important as the supply of prisoners of war diminished.

Slaves were drawn to Rome and Italy from all nationalities, but chiefly from the Eastern Mediterranean, whence came Greeks, Syrians, and Egyptians. Many of the slaves from the east were skilled workers and men with better education than their masters. For manual work the Romans often used slaves captured in the north and west, such as the tall, strong Gauls and Germans.

The Romans employed their slaves in various ways. In a small household two or three could do all the work. Larger households had bigger staffs; among the slaves might be professional men, such as doctors and teachers, who served the master and his family; the master might even increase the number of his slaves for show.

Slaves were important in industry and business. In the crafts slaves worked alongside their master; a baker or a mason might have twenty or thirty slaves working under his direction. Trustworthy slaves were sometimes put in charge of stores and workshops and were suitably rewarded.

The State or the municipality made considerable use of educated slaves, mainly Greeks. Such service gave a slave a higher standing among his fellows and entitled him to a salary. These learned slaves did much of the work now done by some of the higher and all of the lower branches of the Civil Service.

In the early days of slavery in Rome there were many instances of the harshest cruelty and wanton waste of life.



The most unfortunate were captives from the barbarian tribes; serving as herdsmen or branded and shackled workers, they were dressed in rags and herded at night into underground dungeons. "The slave should always be working or sleeping;" such was Cato's advice to his countrymen, for he thought that an owner should work his slaves like cattle, selling off the old and weak.

There were, however, many kindly masters, who treated their slaves with affection. As time passed, especially under the Empire, slavery grew milder; life became more tolerable for the slaves as a whole; there was some guarantee that a slave might enjoy protection of life and property and have a family of his own.

Slaves set free by their masters were known as freedmen. Under the Empire emancipation became common, faithful household slaves often being freed after six years' service. The freedman owed a certain deference to his former owner. He himself was ineligible for certain positions, e.g., a magistracy in Rome, but his son, born after his father had been set free, was a full citizen.

For many freedmen, freedom meant little change from the best of slavery. They carried on their previous occupations or moved a little up the scale, serving as skilled workmen, traders, shopkeepers, stewards, secretaries, and teachers. Most of them lived humbly but some won fortune and influence.

The Roman poet Horace is said to have been the son of a freedman father; yet he enjoyed the friendship of many of the most important men of Rome. Of himself he says, *ex humilī potēns*, "risen high from low estate."



Michelangelo  
Cumaean Sibyl,  
Sistine Chapel,  
Vatican

# 50

## Participles and Infinitives: Deponent and Semi-Deponent Verbs

Aut vincere aut mori  
*Either to conquer or to die*

### Dē Libris Sibyllinis<sup>1</sup>

354 Tarquinius Superbus erat septimus rēx Rōmānōrum. Ōlim anus (**anus, anūs**, *an old woman*) ad Tarquinium Superbum adiit, novem librōs portāns, quōs esse dīvina ōrācula dīcēbat. Hōs librōs rēgī vēndere (*to sell*) cōnābātur. Tarquinius pretium rogāvit. Mulier pretium maximum poposcit; 5 rēx mīrātus eam dērīsīt (*laughed at her*). Dolum (*a trick*) suspicātus, anuī nōn cōnfīsus est.

<sup>1</sup> This story is from Aulus Gellius who lived in the second century of our era, and wrote "Noctes Atticae," *Attic Nights*, a book dealing with many topics.

Tum illa trēs librōs ex novem incendit, et reliquōs sex eōdem pretiō vēndere volēbat. Sed Tarquinius multō rīsīt magis, loquēns anum īnsānam esse. Negāvit sē librīs illiūs ūtī velle (wanted). Mulier nihil morāta trēs aliōs librōs igne cōn-sūmpsit, et trēs reliquōs eōdem pretiō vēndere volēbat. Tarquinius iam attentiorē animō factus est (became more interested), et librōs<sup>2</sup> trēs reliquōs mercātus est (bought, deponent) nihilō minōre (no less) pretiō quam erat petītum prō omnibus. Postea populus Rōmānus trēs librōs Sibyllīnōs in templō Iovis semper tuēbātur.

### 355 PARTICIPLES OF DEONENTS AND SEMI-DEONENTS

A deponent or semi-deponent verb has three participles, all active in meaning.

PRESENT	PERFECT	FUTURE
cōnāns trying	cōnātus having tried	cōnātūrus going to try
verēns fearing	veritus having feared	veritūrus going to fear
sequēns following	secūtus having followed	secūtūrus going to follow
prōgrediēns advancing	prōgressus having advanced	prōgressūrus going to advance
partiēns dividing	partītus having divided	partītūrus going to divide
audēns daring	ausus having dared	ausūrus going to dare

356 The present participle active of a deponent or semi-deponent is formed in the same way as the present participle active of a regular verb of the same conjugation. The time of the present participle is always the same as that of the main verb.

**Pugnāns, interfectus est.**

While fighting, he was slain.

**Pugnantēs, interfectī sunt.**

While fighting, they were slain.

**Trānsire cōnāns, interfectus est.**

While trying to cross, he was slain.

<sup>2</sup> These books called "Sibylline" were consulted by the Romans for many centuries, being regarded as of special sanctity and prophetic value.

**Trānsīre cōnantēs, interfectī sunt.**

While trying to cross, they were slain.

**Victōriā suā gaudentēs cōpiaē prōgrediuntur.**

Rejoicing in their victory the troops advance.

**Victōriā suā gaudentēs cōpiaē prōgrediēbantur.**

Rejoicing in their victory, the troops were advancing.

**357** The perfect participle of a deponent or semi-deponent verb is found in the third principal part. It has an active meaning. It is declined like **altus**. The time denoted by the perfect participle is prior to that of the main verb.

**Ibi diū morātī, Gallī profectī sunt.**

Having delayed

After delaying

After they had delayed

When they had delayed

} there for a long time, the Gauls set out.

**Mille passūs prōgressa, legiō castra pōnet.**

After advancing a mile,

After it has advanced a mile,

When it has advanced a mile,

} the legion will pitch camp.

**Verbīs ducis cōnfisī impetum faciunt.**

Having trusted the words of their leader,

Because they have trusted the words of their leader, }

} they are attacking.

The perfect participle of a regular verb has a passive meaning. The perfect participle of a deponent or semi-deponent has an active meaning.

**Miles vulnerātus mortuus est.**

The soldier, after being wounded, died.

**Miles morātus profectus est.**

The soldier, after delaying, set out.

**Militēs dēlēctī profectī sunt.**

The soldiers, after being chosen, set out.

**Militēs profectī prōgressī sunt.**

The soldiers, after setting out, advanced.

In translating from English into Latin, watch carefully the voice of the participle. If the voice of the English participle differs from the voice of the Latin participle, first rewrite the English using the voice required by the Latin.

*Having collected an army, he set out.*

As **cōgō** has a perfect participle passive, rewrite the English to read:

*An army having been collected, he set out.*

**Exercitū coāctō, profectus est.**

An ablative absolute phrase may be composed of a noun or pronoun in the ablative case and the perfect participle active of a deponent.

**Magnā tempestāte ortā, multae nāvēs frāctae sunt.**

As a great storm had arisen, many ships were wrecked.

The perfect participles active of some deponents and semi-deponents often appear to have the force of present participles: **veritus, arbitrātus, ausus** are often best translated *fearing, thinking, daring*. Such participles give the reason for the main action.

**Exercitum nostrum veritī fūgērunt.**

Fearing our army, they fled.

**Nōs hostēs esse arbitrātus fūgit.**

Thinking that we were the enemy, he fled.

**Appropinquāre nōn ausus domum rediit.**

Not daring to approach, he returned home.

**358** The future participle active of a deponent or semi-deponent verb is used in the same way as the future participle active of a regular verb.

**Pugnātūrus est.**

He is going to fight.

**Cōnātūrus est.**

He is going to try.

**Cōpiae discessūrae sunt.**

The troops are about to depart.

**Cōpiae profectūrae sunt.**

The troops are about to set out.

**Omnia ausūrus est.**

He is likely to dare anything.

## INFINITIVES OF DEPONENTS AND SEMI-DEPONENTS

A deponent or semi-deponent verb has three infinitives, all active in meaning. The present infinitive is the second principal part of the verb. The perfect infinitive is the perfect participle and **esse**. The future infinitive is the future participle and **esse**.

PRESENT	PERFECT	FUTURE
<b>cōnārī</b> to try	<b>cōnātus esse</b> to have tried	<b>cōnātūrus esse</b> to be about to try
<b>verērī</b> to fear	<b>veritus esse</b> to have feared	<b>veritūrus esse</b> to be about to fear
<b>sequī</b> to follow	<b>secūtus esse</b> to have followed	<b>secūtūrus esse</b> to be about to follow
<b>prōgredī</b> to advance	<b>prōgressus esse</b> to have advanced	<b>prōgressūrus esse</b> to be about to advance
<b>partīrī</b> to divide	<b>partītus esse</b> to have divided	<b>partitūrus esse</b> to be about to divide
<b>audēre</b> to dare	<b>ausus esse</b> to have dared	<b>ausūrus esse</b> to be about to dare

The infinitives of **morior** are **morī**, **mortuus esse**, **moritūrus esse**.

## EXERCISES

A. *Translate the following infinitives:*

1. mīrārī    2. secūtus esse    3. ūtī    4. locūtūrus esse
5. poscere    6. tuērī    7. dēmōnstrāvisse    8. cōnsūptūrus esse
9. ēductus esse    10. morātus esse

B. *Translate the following sentences, noting the participles:*

1. Cornū sinistrum profectūrum est.    2. Legiōnem sē dēfendere cōnantem vīdimus.    3. Hostēs praedam partītūrī sunt.    4. Mīles vulnerātus erat dēfessus.    5. Diū morātus tandem sē mōvit.    6. Senex pecūniam poscēns est aeger.    7. Liberōs spectāculum mīrantēs spectābam.    8. Patrēs haec locūtī abiērunt.    9. Hīs rēbus dictīs, patrēs abiērunt.    10. Mīlitēs, primā lūce prōgressī, in cōnspectum hostium pervēnērunt.



C. *Translate the sentence by using each of the words or phrases below:*

1. Legiōnem ex nāvī \_\_\_\_\_ vīdimus.  
a) ēgredientem    b) ēgressam    c) ēgressūram
2. Cum iuvenibus multa \_\_\_\_\_ ambulat.  
a) audentibus    b) ausīs    c) ausūrīs
3. \_\_\_\_\_ ad finēs Galliae adiērunt.  
a) Militēs iter facientēs    b) Itinere factō, militēs  
c) Militēs iter factūrī

D. *Complete the sentence:*

1. Ducis verbīs \_\_\_\_\_ duo lēgātī profectī sunt.  
having relied on
2. Equitēs obsidēs \_\_\_\_\_ cēpērunt.  
as they were fleeing
3. Complūrēs senēs templum \_\_\_\_\_ vīdī.  
protecting
4. Ibi diū \_\_\_\_\_ Gallī nōs adorientur.  
having delayed
5. \_\_\_\_\_ frūmentō, agricola ex agrīs exiit.  
Having collected

E. *Complete the sentence:*

1. Intellegimus viātōrēs templa Rōmae \_\_\_\_\_.  
are wondering at
2. Pollicitī sunt sē ducem \_\_\_\_\_.  
would follow
3. Spērāmus prīncipēs fortēs \_\_\_\_\_.  
will return
4. Cognōvī sorōrem meam ad alteram rīpam trānsīre \_\_\_\_\_.  
has tried
5. Dux dicit sē in pīrātās impetum facere \_\_\_\_\_.  
dares

F. *Translate:*

1. Pollicita est sē tēcum itūram esse.
2. Certiōrēs factī sunt ducem mortuum esse.
3. Inopiam frūmentī veritus, cōstituit longius prōgredi.
4. Propter magnam umbram in silvā morārī nōn audēbant.

5. Spērant sē facillimē ad castra perventūrōs esse.
6. Gladiūs ūtī nōn possumus; mē duce, Rōmānī bellum nōn indicent.
7. Rōmānōs, dum nāvēs reficiuntur, Britannī adortī sunt.
8. Suntne hī iuvenēs gaudentēs eīdem quī heri maestissimī erant?
9. Scīmus incolās victōs ad lītus incolumēs pervenīre cōnātōs esse.
10. Rēgulus certior factus est hostēs exercitum nostrum sequī; nōn arbitrābātur eōs nōs adorīrī ausūrōs.

G. *Write in Latin:*

1. The soldier said he was not afraid. 2. We heard the two ambassadors talking. 3. We learned that the general had died. 4. When the storm arose, many ships were wrecked. 5. Do not rejoice, friends, with the work still undone. 6. Fearing a divine command, he set out before noon. 7. After speaking thus (*these things*), he left. 8. He said that a small army could not guard the citadel. 9. Suspecting that the oracle was divine, we obeyed (its) commands. 10. Although wounded the brave youth tried to seek safety by flight.

ōrāculum, -ī, *n.*, oracle  
 pretium, pretiī, *n.*, price, value  
 dīvīnus, -a, -um, divine  
 mīror, mīrārī, mīrātus sum,  
     wonder, wonder at  
 moror, morārī, morātus sum,  
     delay, wait, stay  
 suspīcor, suspīcārī, suspīcātus  
     sum, suspect  
 tueor, tuērī, tūtus or tuitus sum,  
     protect, guard, defend  
 cōnfīdō, cōnfīdere, cōnfīsus sum,  
     *with dat.*, trust, rely on

cōnsūmō, cōnsūmere,  
     cōnsūmpsī, cōnsūptum,  
     spend; consume, destroy  
 loquor, loquī, locūtus sum, speak  
 poscō, poscere, poposcī,  
     ———, ask for, demand  
 ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum, *with abl.*,  
     use  
 adorior, adorīrī, adortus sum,  
     attack, assault  
 iam, *adverb*, now, by this time,  
     already

## REVIEW LESSON EIGHT

### I. Vocabulary

- A. *Give the genitive singular, gender and meaning of these nouns:*

ars	cōnsuētūdō	opus	scientia
colloquium	factum	ōrāculum	sententia
comes	fidēs	portus	studium
commūtātiō	impedimentum	pretium	subsidiūm
condiciō	litterae	rēs mīlitāris	ūsus
cōspectus	mōs	scelus	victor
cōstantia	negōtium		

- B. *Give the nominative singular in all genders and the meaning of these adjectives:*

dīvīnus	iūstus	mīlitāris	quālis
inūtilis	iuvenis	nāvālis	stultus
invītus	mātūrus	pūblicus	tālis

- C. *Give the principal parts and the meaning of these verbs:*

addō	dēmōnstrō	noceō	sentīō
addūcō	ēdūcō	orior	sequor
adorior	exīstimō	ostendō	studeō
arbitror	gaudeō	partior	suspīcor
audeō	incipiō	polliceor	trahō
claudō	intellegō	poscō	trānsportō
cōnfīdō	intermittō	praeficiō	tueor
cōnor	loquor	praesum	ūtor
cōnsuēscō	mīror	proficīscor	valeō
cōnsūmō	morior	prōgredior	vereor

- D. *Give the meaning of these words and phrases:*

agere cum	ferē	modo . . . modo	rēs gerere
bellum indicere	iam	quam diū	suā sponte
diem dicere	modo	rē infectā	suprā

### II. Forms and Syntax

- A. *Give with their English meanings the present active, perfect passive, and future active participles of: dēmōnstrō, dēdō, sentiō, claudō, trahō.*

B. Give the infinitives of: **crēdō, incipiō, sentiō, polliceor, proficiscor.**

C. Give an indicative synopsis of **prōgredior** in the third person plural.

D. Complete the following sentences by substituting for the English word the Latin form required in the sentence:

- |                  |                 |         |
|------------------|-----------------|---------|
| 1. Lēgātus _____ | praefectus est. | army    |
| 2. Lēgātus _____ | praeest.        | army    |
| 3. Lēgātus _____ | auxiliō est.    | general |
| 4. Lēgātus _____ | ducī est.       | help    |
| 5. Lēgātus _____ | pāret.          | general |
| 6. Lēgātus _____ | est ūsuī.       | general |
| 7. Lēgātus _____ | studet.         | glory   |
| 8. Lēgātus _____ | crēdit.         | us      |

E. Complete the following sentences by substituting for the English phrase the Latin form required in the sentence:

- |                               |               |
|-------------------------------|---------------|
| 1. Dīcunt cīvem viam _____.   | is showing    |
| 2. Dīxērunt cīvem viam _____. | was showing   |
| 3. Dīcunt cīvem viam _____.   | has shown     |
| 4. Dīxērunt cīvem viam _____. | had shown     |
| 5. Dīcunt sē _____.           | are following |
| 6. Dīxērunt sē _____.         | had followed  |
| 7. Dīcunt puerōs _____.       | will follow   |

### III. Translation

1. Claudius, arbitrātus Rōmānīs tālēs condiciōnēs nōn fore ūsuī, negāvit senātum cum Pyrrhō pācem cōfirmāre dēbere.
2. Militēs hostibus fortiter resistantēs nōn poterant sustinēre oppugnantium impetum.
3. Vidimus puerōs occurrentēs patrī quī sub vesperum (*evening*) domum redībat.
4. Rēx arbitrātus est sē nōn dēbere ignōscere cōnantibus sibi nocēre.
5. Gāvīsus est quod cognōverat mātrem tertiā hōrā Rōmam reversam esse.
6. Scīmus Carthāginem, urbem magnam et potentem, bellum cum Rōmānīs multōs annōs gessisse.

## IV.

## Word Study and Derivatives

A. *Explain the meaning of the italicized words:*

1. Orders to evacuate the building were issued as soon as the *noxious* fumes were detected.
2. The prisoner confidently expected a *commutation* of his sentence.
3. *Negotiations* were conducted in secret between the parties concerned.
4. The anthropologist had just completed a study of the *mores* of certain African tribes.
5. The imperfect tense in Latin is sometimes used with a *conative* meaning.
6. After a work-out on the handball court and a brisk massage, the weary executive feels *rejuvenated*.
7. Please arrange the items in proper *sequence*.
8. The whole matter was submitted to *arbitration*.
9. She has a regrettable taste for *ostentation* in dress.
10. A cold in the *incipient* stage is sometimes able to be cured.

B. *Give the meaning of the suffix in each of these adjectives: **facilis, crēdibilis, iuvenilis**. Give an English adjective derived from each of the Latin adjectives. Give the meaning of the English adjectives.*

## V.

## Background

*From the proper names in the right-hand column, select the one that matches each of the definitions in the left-hand column:*

- |   |               |
|---|---------------|
| ( ) Cīvēs urbis Carthāginis                             | 1. Camillus   |
| ( ) Oppidum Etrūriae ā Camillō captum                   | 2. Claudius   |
| ( ) Rēx Ēpīrōtārum quī cum Rōmānīs bellum gessit        | 3. Faleriī    |
| ( ) Cīvēs oppidī in Italiae merīdiānā (southern) parte  | 4. Poenī      |
| ( ) Dictātor Rōmānus quī Vēiōs cēpit                    | 5. Pyrrhus    |
| ( ) Cōsul Rōmānus quī hostibus infidus esse nōn poterat | 6. Rēgulus    |
|   | 7. Tarentīnī  |
|   | 8. Xanthippus |

## Dē Mīlvō et Columbīs

Columbae saepe fūgerant mīlvum et celeritāte mortem vitāverant. Ōlim raptor<sup>1</sup> cōnsilium vertit ad fallāciam et genus inerme tālī dolō dēcēpit: "Cūr sollicitam vītā agitis potius quam mē rēgem creātis? Vōs ab omnī iniūriā incolumēs servābō."

Illae crēdentēs mīlvō sēsē trādunt. Quī rēgnō occupātō coepit vescī singulis et exercēre imperium saevīs unguibus. Tum dē reliquīs ūna: "Meritō poenās damus."

Moral: He who seeks help at the hands of the wicked finds destruction.

PHAEDRUS 1.31 (*Adapted*)

## Questions :

1. How had the doves previously eluded the kite?
2. What did the kite ask the doves to do?
3. What promise did the kite make?
4. How did the kite carry out his promise?
5. What conclusion did one of the doves reach?

## VOCABULARY

columba, -ae, f., dove  
dēcipiō, dēcipere, dēcēpī,  
dēcēptum, deceive  
dolus, dolī, m., trick  
exerceō, exercēre, exercuī,  
exercitum, exercise  
fallācia, -ae, f., deceit  
inermis, inermis, inerme,  
defenseless  
meritō, adverb, deservedly

mīlvus, mīlvī, m., kite (a bird of  
prey resembling the hawk)  
potius quam, conjunction, rather  
than  
saevus, -a, -um, savage  
singulī, -ae, -a, one at a time  
sollicitus, -a, -um, troubled  
unguis, unguis, m., claw  
vescor, vescī, with abl., feed on  
vītō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, avoid

<sup>1</sup> rapt- (*supine stem of rapiō*) + -or, one who



# 51

## The Subjunctive Mood Present Subjunctive Hortatory and Jussive Subjunctive

362

Lūdus Scaenicus: Ignis (Part 1)

The Argiletum, a district of Rome, lay between the Circus Maximus and the Aventine; here many tradesmen had shops. The Subura was the valley between the Esquiline, Viminal, and Quirinal; it was a busy district, with many booths and vegetable markets. (See Map of Rome.)

*Rōmae erant magna aedificia in quibus habitābant multae familiae. Haec aedificia Rōmānī “īnsulās” appellābant; nam ut (as) in certīs regiōnibus īnsulae sunt mediō in flūmine, sīc illa aedificia erant in vīs. In Subūrā, quae erat vallēs inter montēs urbis Rōmae, erant īnsulae multae et altae. Complūra tabulāta (stories) habēbant: in īmō tabulātō erant tabernae, in altiōribus habitābant familiae.*

*In viā Mārcus ad mātrem currit.*

**Mārcus :** Ō māter, spectā, spectā; ārdet īnsula!

**Cluentia :** Tacē, Mārce, occupāta sum. Nam primum olera (vegetables) ad cēnam (dinner) emam; tum tē ad tōnsōrem (barber) dūcam; capillus (hair) enim tibi est longior. Celeriter prōgrediāmur. Nē morēmur.

5

**Mārcus :** Māter, māter, spectā tū! In Subūrā est alta īnsula quae ārdet.

**Cluentia :** Quid dīcis, mī fili? Ō! Est nostra īnsula, et domī sunt liberī meī! Ad tabernam patris curre atque eī omnia dīc. Statim veniat.

10

*Mārcus ad tabernam patris, quae est in Argilētō, currit celeriter. Cluentia senātōribus duōbus occurrit.*

**Cluentia:** Ō virī clārissimī, nōs iuvāte, sultis (= sī vultis, *if you please*): vestram fidem (*protection*) implōrō (*implore*). Servāte liberōs meōs cārōs. Pauperēs sumus, perībimus omnēs. Ubi sunt liberī meī!

*Tum Cluentia domum discēdit.*

**363** The indicative mood in Latin is used almost without exception to express statements of fact.

**364** The subjunctive mood is used in independent sentences and in the principal clauses of compound or complex sentences to express varieties of meaning that are different from the statement of fact. It is used sometimes in subordinate (or dependent) clauses to express the same varieties of meaning as it expresses in principal clauses, and also, very frequently, to show that a statement or question is quoted, or to indicate some purpose, result, condition, or concession connected with the thought of the principal clause.

### 365 PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE

1ST CONJ.	2ND CONJ.	3RD CONJ.	3RD -iō	4TH CONJ.
portem	moveam	dūcam	capiam	audiam
portēs	moveās	dūcās	capiās	audiās
portet	moveat	dūcat	capiat	audiat
portēmus	moveāmus	dūcāmus	capiāmus	audiāmus
portētis	moveātis	dūcātis	capiātis	audiātis
portent	moveant	dūcant	capiant	audiant

### PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE PASSIVE

1ST CONJ.	2ND CONJ.	3RD CONJ.	3RD -iō	4TH CONJ.
porter	movear	dūcar	capiar	audiar
portēris	moveāris	dūcāris	capiāris	audiāris
portētur	moveātur	dūcātur	capiātur	audiātur
portēmur	moveāmur	dūcāmur	capiāmur	audiāmur
portēminī	moveāminī	dūcāminī	capiāminī	audiāminī
portentur	moveantur	dūcantur	capiantur	audiantur

## PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE OF DEPONENTS

1ST CONJ.	2ND CONJ.	3RD CONJ.	3RD <i>-ior</i>	4TH CONJ.
cōner	verear	sequar	prōgrediar	partiar
cōnēris	vereāris	sequāris	prōgrediāris	partiāris
cōnētur	vereātur	sequātur	prōgrediātur	partiātur
cōnēmur	vereāmur	sequāmur	prōgrediāmur	partiāmur
cōnēminī	vereāminī	sequāminī	prōgrediāminī	partiāminī
cōnentur	vereantur	sequantur	prōgrediantur	partiantur

## PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE OF SEMI-DEPONENTS

audeam	audeāmus	cōnfīdam	cōnfīdāmus
audeās	audeātis	cōnfidās	cōnfidātis
audeat	audeant	cōnfīdat	cōnfīdant

## PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE OF SUM AND POSSUM

sim	sīmus	possim	possīmus
sis	sītis	possis	possītis
sit	sint	possit	possint

In the above tables, first notice the uniform vowel systems connecting the personal endings to the stems; the same vowel or vowels serve throughout the tense.

Notice also that no meanings are assigned for the forms of the subjunctive; there are no uniformly applicable meanings that can be given, but in the following lessons you will learn the uses of the subjunctive, and from the examples you will find suitable English translations for the different uses.

366

## HORTATORY SUBJUNCTIVE

When one person urges others of his own group and includes himself, the first person plural present subjunctive is used. The negative is *nē*.

<b>Hīc maneāmus.</b>	Let us remain here.
<b>Nē hīc maneāmus.</b>	Let us not remain here.

The present subjunctive in the third person singular and plural is used to express a command. The subject of the verb is in the nominative. The negative is **nē**.

<b>Hīc maneat.</b>	Let him remain here.
<b>Mārcus hīc maneat.</b>	Let Marcus remain here.
<b>Titus et Mārcus hīc maneant.</b>	Let Titus and Marcus remain here.
<b>Nē Iūlia et Cornēlia maneant.</b>	Let not (Don't let) Julia and Cornelia remain.

## EXERCISES

A. *Translate:*

1. Hīc labōrēmus.
2. Dīc mihi omnia.
3. Revertantur.
4. Sequāmur.
5. Nē pecūniam āmittāmus.
6. Eōs rogēmus.
7. Sequere mē!
8. Nōs iuvā!
9. Cōnsilium capiātur.
10. Cōnsilium capiētur.
11. Absint.
12. Nē morēmur.
13. Senātōrēs audeant.
14. Eō prōgrediantur.
15. Audientur.
16. Eōs certiōrēs faciāmus.
17. Tacē, filia.
18. Tabernam emat.
19. Līberōs doceant.
20. Rēs augeāmus.

B. *Translate:*

1. Let us rejoice!
2. Do (s.) this.
3. Don't let the ship be burned.
4. Let's remain here.
5. Let him run into the valley.
6. Let the army advance.
7. The legion will set out.
8. Let the legion set out.
9. Let the hill not be surrounded.
10. Let us attack the citadel.
11. Speak (*pl.*) to us.
12. Let her buy grain.
13. Let us be busy.
14. We do promise.
15. Let's promise.

C. *Translate:*

1. Hodiē victōriam reportāre cōnēmur.
2. Nē longius ab urbe prōgrediantur.
3. Gaudeāmus quod victōriam reportāvimus.
4. Pauperēs frūmentum habeant, nam emere nōn possunt.
5. Ad tabernam patris currāmus; nōs iuvābit, eī cōnfidāmus.

6. Post merīdiem ā castrīs discēdat et Rōmam proficīscātur.
7. Nōn omnēs servāre possumus; liberōs senēsque servēmus.
8. Cīvēs pontem rumpant; sī pontem rūperint, Etrūscī trānsīre nōn poterunt.
9. Hostēs finem iniūriārum faciant; deinde pācem facere poterimus.

D. *Write in Latin:*

1. Let the boys run most swiftly into the valley.
2. Let the senators ask for aid.
3. Let us not hesitate to destroy the bridge.
4. Let him help his dear children.
5. Let all set out at dawn.
6. Father is sleeping; let us all keep silent.
7. Don't let that cruel man punish the wretched slave.
8. If the city is stormed let us try to drive back the enemy.
9. Not only the young men but also the old men will join us.

## SUPPLEMENTARY EXERCISES

- A. *Write the present subjunctive active and passive of: liberō, videō, audiō.*
- B. *Write the present indicative active and passive of: cōnspiciō, laudō.*
- C. *Write the present indicative and subjunctive of: moror, vereor, proficīscor, gaudeō.*

369

## VOCABULARY

cēna, -ae, *f.*, dinner  
 taberna, -ae, *f.*, shop  
 senātor, senātōris, *m.*, senator  
 vallēs, vallis, *f.*, valley  
 cārus, -a, -um, dear  
 occupātus, -a, -um, busy  
 pauper (*gen.* pauperis), poor;  
     *as noun*, poor man (*gen. pl.*  
     pauperum)

iuvō, iuvāre, iūvī, iūtum, help  
 ārdeō, ārdēre, ārsī, ———, be  
     on fire, burn  
 taceō, tacēre, tacuī, tacitum,  
     be silent  
 currō, currere, cucurrī, cursum,  
     run  
 emō, emere, ēmī, ēmptum, buy  
 sīc, *adv.*, thus, so

# 52

## Imperfect Subjunctive Deliberative Questions Subjunctive in Wishes

370

### Lūds Scaenicus: Ignis (Part 2)

*Dum māter, liberōrum memor, domum currēns revertitur et Mārcus ad tabernam patris quam celerrimē properat, multa domī geruntur. Nam intereā tertiō in tabulātō īnsulae filiī et filiae Cluentiae flammīs perterrentur. Domus est fūmī plēna.*

**Aulus :**     Ō Tertia, aquam fer (*bring, imperative singular*).  
Quid faciāmus? Domum revertantur pater et  
māter. Nē morentur. Eōs hīc exspectēmus.  
Māter enim nōs ēgredi nōn passa est. “Nōlīte,  
liberī,” inquit, “exīre.” 5

**Tertia :**     Utinam parentēs nunc adessent. Nunc nūllam  
aquam habēmus. Tū, Secunda, dēcurre (*run down*)  
ad fontem et hanc urnam (*jar*) aquae plēnam  
refer. Fūmus per tabulās (*boards*) oritur.

**Secunda :**   Nōn possum urnam portāre; tū es magna, tū 10  
portā. Territa sum. Nē scālae (*staircase*) ardeant.  
Nūlla spēs est auxiliī. Ō māter, venī!

*Intrat (enters) Pūblius.*

**Pūblius :**   Ō puellae, sine morā dēcurrāmus omnēs. Ubi est  
Aulus? Eum nōn vidēre possum. Fūmus tam  
dēnsus (*thick*) est. 15

**Tertia :**     Est sub mēnsā (*table*). Venī, Aule.

**Pūblius :**   Manūs iungāmus. Venī, Secunda; nōlī lacrimāre;  
es fortis! Sine timōre omnēs prōgrediāmur.



### 371 IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE

1ST CONJ.	2ND CONJ.	3RD CONJ.	3RD <i>-iō</i>	4TH CONJ.
portārem	movērem	dūcerem	caperem	audīrem
portārēs	movērēs	dūcerēs	caperēs	audirēs
portāret	movēret	dūceret	caperet	audiret
portārēmus	movērēmus	dūcerēmus	caperēmus	audirēmus
portārētis	movērētis	dūcerētis	caperētis	audirētis
portārent	movērent	dūcerent	caperent	audirent

### IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE PASSIVE

1ST CONJ.	2ND CONJ.	3RD CONJ.	3RD <i>iō</i>	4TH CONJ.
portārer	movērer	dūcerer	caperer	audīrer
portārēris	movērēris	dūcerēris	caperēris	audirēris
portārētur	movērētur	dūcerētur	caperētur	audirētur
portārēmur	movērēmur	dūcerēmur	caperēmur	audirēmur
portārēmini	movērēmini	dūcerēmini	caperēmini	audirēmini
portārentur	movērentur	dūcerentur	caperentur	audirentur

### IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE OF DEPONENTS

1ST CONJ.	2ND CONJ.	3RD CONJ.	3RD <i>-ior</i>	4TH CONJ.
cōnārer	verērer	sequerer	prōgrederer	partīrer
cōnārēris	verērēris	sequerēris	prōgrederēris	partirēris
cōnārētur	verērētur	sequerētur	prōgrederētur	partirētur
cōnārēmur	verērēmur	sequerēmur	prōgrederēmur	partirēmur
cōnārēmini	verērēmini	sequerēmini	prōgrederēmini	partirēmini
cōnārentur	verērentur	sequerentur	prōgrederentur	partirentur

### IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE OF SEMI-DEPONENTS

audērem	cōnfiderem
audērēs	cōnfiderēs
audēret	cōnfideret
audērēmus	cōnfiderēmus
audērētis	cōnfiderētis
audērent	cōnfiderent

## IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE OF SUM AND POSSUM

essem	essēmus	possem	possēmus
essēs	essētis	possēs	possētis
esset	essent	posset	possent

The formation of the imperfect subjunctive of non-deponent verbs is very simple: add the personal endings to the present infinitive active. It should be noticed that in some forms the vowel before the personal ending is *-e-*, in some *-ē-*. Compare the forms of the imperfect subjunctive of deponent verbs with those of the imperfect subjunctive passive of non-deponent verbs. For the imperfect subjunctive, as for the subjunctive generally, no meanings are here assigned.

### 372           PRESENT AND IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE IN DELIBERATIVE QUESTIONS

Quid faciam?	What am I to do?
Quid diceret?	What was he to say?
Quō mē nunc vertam?	Where am I to turn now?
Quō tempore proficiscerēmur?	At what time were we to set out?
Maneam usque ad merīdiem?	Am I to wait until noon?

The present and imperfect subjunctive may be used in questions expressing *wonder* and *doubt*. Such questions, known as deliberative questions, are not asked for information but are uttered in difficulty or perplexity. The negative is **nōn**.

### 373           PRESENT AND IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE IN WISHES

#### OPTATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE

A wish for the future, which the speaker regards as more or less probable or possible, is regularly expressed by the present subjunctive. The negative is **nē**.

**Sīs victor.**

May you be victorious.

**Nē Rōmānī umquam vincantur.**

May the Romans never be conquered.

A wish for the present, which the speaker regards as contrary to fact or impossible, is expressed by **utinam** followed by the imperfect subjunctive.

**Utinam rēx essem.**

O that (Would that, I would) I were a king.

**Utinam frāter adesset.**

O that my brother were here.

In these two sentences the use of the imperfect subjunctive implies that the speaker is not a king, that the brother is absent. The negative is **nē**.

**Utinam nē abesset.**

O that he were not absent.

## 374

## GENITIVE WITH ADJECTIVES

The genitive is used with some adjectives to complete their meaning.

**cupidus, -a, -um**, eager,  
desirous, ambitious

**memor, memoris**, mindful<sup>1</sup>

**oblītus, -a, -um**, forgetful<sup>1</sup>

**perītus, -a, -um**, experienced,  
skilled

**imperītus, -a, -um**, inexperienced,  
unskilled

**plēnus, -a, -um**, full

**Cupidus imperiī est.**

He is eager for power.

**Memor est liberōrum.**

He is mindful of his children.

**Fossa est plēna aquae.**

The trench is full of water.

**Perītus rei militāris est.**

He is skilled in the art of war.

<sup>1</sup> Of the double forms in the genitive plural of the first and second personal pronouns, **nostrī** and **vestrī** are used with **memor** and **oblītus**.

**Ducem memorem nostrī habēmus.**  
We have a leader mindful of us.

A. *Translate:*

1. Discēdēmus. 2. Nōlī imperāre. 3. Quid faciam?
4. Dūc mīlitēs. 5. Abest. 6. Nē haec nōbīs accidant.
7. Cōnēminī. 8. Utinam cīvitās nē perdātur. 9. Nē eīs occurrāmus.
10. Quid dīcerent? 11. Utinam cōnārēris.
12. Hīc habitent. 13. Urbs expugnētur. 14. Utinam nē negōtium eī permitterētur.
15. Spectāte.

B. *Translate:*

1. What were we to say? 2. They will advance. 3. May they advance.
4. Let it be bought. 5. Let us not weep. 6. May they rejoice.
7. May he not be wounded. 8. Would that he were here.
9. What am I to do? 10. Ask the cause of his death.
11. I wish we could storm the citadel.
12. Let the column advance. 13. Are we to obey a wicked king?
14. Let's go home. 15. May he be able to put an end to the fighting.

C. *Translate:*

1. Num hī mercātōrēs pecūniae sunt cupidī? 2. Nē hae silvae sint plēnae hostium.
3. Intereā fūmus ignium procul (*in the distance*) vidērī poterat.
4. Ad quod op-  
pidum sine duce prōgrederēmur? 5. Ducem sapientem  
et reī mīlītāris perītum dēligāmus.
6. Nē cōpiae nostrae adventū hostium terga vertant.
7. Utinam nē rēx esset oblitus vestrī.
8. Huius generis pugnae imperītī hostēs pellere nōn poterant.

D. *Write in Latin:*

1. The legion was rapidly approaching. What were we to do?
2. Let us set out as soon as possible along with the cavalry and try to reach the rest of the army.
3. Would that we could see our mother approaching.
4. We can see the smoke of fires. Are we to think that reinforcements are at hand?
5. Because the trench is full of water, they cannot cross.
6. Meanwhile just before dawn let them set out from this place.
7. May they set out at nightfall; if they do so, they will be able to join us at dawn.

## SUPPLEMENTARY EXERCISE

Write the present and imperfect subjunctive active and passive of: **vulnerō, iubeō, expellō, cōspiciō, inveniō**; the present and imperfect subjunctive of: **moror, polliceor, proficīcor, sum, possum**.

376

### VOCABULARY

<b>mora, -ae, f.</b> , delay	<b>patior, patī, passus sum</b> , suffer, allow, permit; endure
<b>fūmus, -ī, m.</b> , smoke	<b>perdō, perdere, perdidī, perditum</b> , destroy, ruin
<b>fōns, fontis, m.</b> , spring, fountain	<b>permittō, permittere, permisi, permissum</b> , entrust
<b>timor, timōris, m.</b> , fear	<b>intereā, adverb</b> , meanwhile
<b>lacrimō, lacrimāre, lacrimāvī, lacrimātum</b> , weep	<b>tam, adverb</b> , so
<b>ēgredior, ēgredī, ēgressus sum</b> , go out, depart, leave; disembark, land	

377

### WORD STUDY

A third declension masculine noun ending in **-or, -ōris** is sometimes formed on the present stem of a verb. The stem vowel of the verb does not appear before the noun ending **-or**. The derived noun signifies the action or result of action of the verb. Some nouns of this type are: **timor, timōris, m.**, fear (**timeō, timēre, fear**); **horror, horrōris, m.**, a shaking, trembling, dread (**horreō, horrēre, bristle, shake**); **furor, furōris, m.**, a raging, madness, fury (**furō, furere, rage**).

Form similar nouns from these verbs: **amō, clāmō, teneō, terreō**. Give the meaning of the derived noun.

English nouns derived from Latin nouns ending in **-or** consist of the stem of the noun without additional ending; for example, *horror, furor*.

One should distinguish carefully between nouns ending in **-or**, showing action and nouns ending in **-tor** or **-sor**, showing the actor. Distinguish between **clāmōr** and **clāmātor**; **amor** and **amātor**.

# 53

## Perfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive Subjunctive in Wishes Regarding the Past Genitive Case

378

Lūdus Scaenicus: Ignis (Part 3)

*In viā iam vigilēs (watchmen) sīphōnibus (with pumps) ignem exstinguere cōnantur. Senātor dīves eōs hortātur. Cluentia lacrimat; īnsulam intrāre cupit, et vix ab aliīs retinētur.*

**Cluentia :** Ō liberī meī, ubi estis? Liberāte mē, virī; cūr mē retinētis? Cūr nōn patiminī mē domum intrāre? Aut liberōs meōs servābō aut moriar.

*Nunc Mārcus Accius, Cluentiae marītus (husband), celeriter venīt, et per turbam cum filiō sē trūdīt (pushes). Adventū marītī Cluentia clāmōrem tollīt.*

**Cluentia :** Ō Mārce, quid cōsiliī capiāmus? Liberōs iuvā.

**Accius :** Ō Cluentia, ubi sunt liberī?

5

**Cluentia :** Eōs domō ēgredi vetuī.

**Accius :** Intrābō; nēmō mē retinēbit.

**Mārcus :** Et ego.

*Ad iānuam (door) īnsulae currunt. Sed hōc ipsō tempore liberī manibus iūctīs exeunt, fūmō paene suffōcātī (choked). Vix vidēre possunt.*

**Accius :** Deīs laudem dēmus. Omnēs adsumus. Nē tālia iterum accidant. Deīs sacrificābimus.

10

**Cluentia :** Utinam īnsula nē incēnsa esset. Ubi nunc, mī cāre marīte, habitēmus?

**Mārcus :** Spectāte, vigilēs flammās sīphōnibus exstinguunt. Utinam, pater, vigil essem. Nostra domus servāta est!

15



- Senātor : Accī, ad mē venī. Tē probō. Semper tē probum  
(*trustworthy*) clientem habuī (*have found*). Cum  
uxōre liberisque tuīs venī, et apud mē (*at my*  
*house*) habitāte, dum (*until*) domus tua refecta erit.
- 20 Cluentia : Grātiā maximā habēmus, patrōne. Nōbīs  
onus magnum sustulistī.

*Accius et Cluentia grātiās patrōnō agunt et in templō sacrificant deīs quī liberōs cārōs servāvērunt.*

### 379 PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE

1ST CONJ.	2ND CONJ.	3RD CONJ.	3RD -iō	4TH CONJ.
portāverim	mōverim	dūxerim	cēperim	audīverim
portāverīs	mōverīs	dūxerīs	cēperīs	audīverīs
portāverit	mōverit	dūxerit	cēperit	audīverit
portāverīmus	mōverīmus	dūxerīmus	cēperīmus	audīverīmus
portāverītis	mōverītis	dūxerītis	cēperītis	audīverītis
portāverint	mōverint	dūxerint	cēperint	audīverint

Note that in the perfect subjunctive active second person singular and first and second persons plural the -i is long (portā'verīs, portāverī'mus, portāverī'tis) whereas in the corresponding forms of the future perfect indicative active the vowel is short (portā'veris, portāve'rimus, portāve'ritis).

### PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE PASSIVE

1ST CONJ.	2ND CONJ.	3RD CONJ.	3RD -iō	4TH CONJ.
portātus sim	mōtus sim	ductus sim	captus sim	audītus sim
portātus sis	mōtus sis	ductus sis	captus sis	audītus sis
portātus sit	mōtus sit	ductus sit	captus sit	audītus sit
portātī simus	mōtī simus	ductī simus	captī simus	audītī simus
portātī sītis	mōtī sītis	ductī sītis	captī sītis	audītī sītis
portātī sint	mōtī sint	ductī sint	captī sint	audītī sint

### PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE OF DEPONENTS

1ST CONJ.	2ND CONJ.	3RD CONJ.	3RD -ior	4TH CONJ.
cōnātus sim	veritus sim	secūtus sim	prōgressus sim	partītus sim

## PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE OF SEMI-DEPONENTS

ausus sim

cōnfisus sim

### 380 PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE

1ST CONJ.	2ND CONJ.	3RD CONJ.	3RD -iō	4TH CONJ.
portāvissem	mōvissem	dūxissem	cēpissem	audīvissem
portāvissēs	mōvissēs	dūxissēs	cēpissēs	audīvissēs
portāvisset	mōvisset	dūxisset	cēpisset	audīvisset
portāvissēmus	mōvissēmus	dūxissēmus	cēpissēmus	audīvissēmus
portāvissētis	mōvissētis	dūxissētis	cēpissētis	audīvissētis
portāvissent	mōvissent	dūxissent	cēpissent	audīvissent

### PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE PASSIVE

1ST CONJ.	2ND CONJ.	3RD CONJ.
portātus essem	mōtus essem	ductus essem
portātus essēs	mōtus essēs	ductus essēs
portātus esset	mōtus esset	ductus esset
portātī essēmus	mōtī essēmus	ductī essēmus
portātī essētis	mōtī essētis	ductī essētis
portātī essent	mōtī essent	ductī essent

3RD -iō

4TH CONJ.

captus essem	auditus essem
captus essēs	auditus essēs
captus esset	auditus esset
captī essēmus	audītī essēmus
captī essētis	audītī essētis
captī essent	audītī essent

### PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE OF DEPONENTS

cōnātus essem	veritus essem	secūtus essem
prōgressus essem	partītus essem	

### PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE OF SEMI-DEPONENTS

ausus essem

cōnfisus essem

## PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE OF SUM AND POSSUM

fuerim	fuissem	potuerim	potuissem
fueris	fuissēs	potueris	potuissēs
fuerit	fuisset	potuerit	potuisset
fuerimus	fuissēmus	potuerimus	potuissēmus
fueritis	fuissētis	potueritis	potuissētis
fuerint	fuissent	potuerint	potuissent

## PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE IN WISHES

### OPTATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE

Even when we know what has happened, we still express our feelings about the past, especially of regret about what has occurred, in the form of a wish (which, of course, can never be fulfilled). In Latin the pluperfect subjunctive is used, introduced by **utinam**. The negative is **nē**.

<b>Utinam nē Rōmā vēnisset.</b>	I wish (O that, Would that) he had not come from Rome.
<b>Utinam nē missus essem.</b>	Would that I had not been sent.

## GENITIVE CASE

### PARTITIVE GENITIVE

The genitive is used to denote the whole of which a part is taken.

**Magnum numerum militum misit.**  
He sent a large number of soldiers.

**Tiberis nōn est maximus omnium flūminum.**  
The Tiber is not the largest of all rivers.

The partitive genitive is often used with such neuter pronouns and adjectives as **quid**, *what*, **nihil**, *nothing*, **tantum**, *so much*, **quantum**, *how much*, **plūs**, *more*, **minus**, *less*, **satis**, *enough*, **parum**, *too little*, and **nimis**, *too much*, when these are the subject or object of a verb.

**Quid cōsiliī capiunt?**

What plan (*literally*, what of plan) are they adopting?

**Nihil agrī nōbīs relinquitur.**

No land (*literally*, nothing of land) is left to us.

**Habeō plūs pecūniae quam frāter meus.**

I have more (of) money than my brother.

**Militibus satis frūmenti nōn dedit.**

He did not give the soldiers enough (of) grain.

**384** With **paucī**, *few*<sup>1</sup>, **quīdam**, *a certain*, and cardinal numerals, the partitive idea is usually expressed by **ex** or **dē** with the ablative.

**Paucae dē virginibus rapiuntur.**

Few of the maidens are carried off.

**Ūnus ex eīs fuerat nauta.**

One of them had been a sailor.

**385**

## EXERCISES

A. *Translate:*

1. Utinam amīcus adesset. 2. Eōs hortēmur. 3. Nōlī longius errāre. 4. Utinam domum vēnissent. 5. Quid faciam? 6. Hortāre mīlitēs. 7. Rōmānī semper vincant. 8. Utinam reverterētur. 9. Discere cōnāminī. 10. Discere cōnēmur. 11. Utinam nē dēlētum esset. 12. Nē eam retineāmus. 13. Quid dīcerent? 14. Utinam clāmāvisset. 15. Hīc habitent. 16. Dīc mihi omnia. 17. Utinam nāvēs refectae essent. 18. Gaudeāmus. 19. Arma aurea eī dentur. 20. Nē haec nōbīs accidant.

B. *Translate:*

1. If only they had come to Rome. 2. I wish that he had not died. 3. May he always be mindful of us. 4. Be silent (*plural*). 5. Do not go (*singular*). 6. May our clients be freed. 7. What are you (s.) to say? 8. Let us

<sup>1</sup> Notice, however, the use of the partitive genitives **nostrum** and **vestrum** with **paucī** and **multī**, Lesson 15.

not be afraid. 9. Would that we were not poor. 10. What were we to do? 11. Let the signal be given. 12. O that I were rich. 13. Would that we had not been sent back. 14. Return at once. 15. Advance to the foot of the hill. 16. Let's try to learn.

C. *Complete the sentence:*

1. \_\_\_\_\_ (*What plan*) prīncipēs capiunt?
2. Armātīs \_\_\_\_\_ (*enough weapons*) nōn dedit.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ (*How much grain*) comportātum est?
4. Erat \_\_\_\_\_ (*too much discord*) apud Germānōs.
5. Ego habeo \_\_\_\_\_ (*less money*) quam tū.

D. *Complete the sentence:*

1. \_\_\_\_\_ (*Few of the citizens*) deīs sacrificant.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ (*Two of the soldiers*) ducēs dēlēgimus.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ (*One of the young men*) nōs hortābātur.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ (*Few of you*) cōnsilium probābunt.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ (*One of us*) clāmōrem tollet.

E. *Translate:*

1. Utinam ante proelium deīs imperātor sacrificāvisset.
2. Utinam esset eadem lēx marītō quae est uxōrī.
3. Sub lūcem omnēs exeant; nē morentur.
4. Clāmōre sublātō ad arcem currite; nōlīte morārī.
5. Quantum pecūniae dem huic turbae iuvenum?
6. Duo mīlia peditum praesidiō castrīs mittāmus.
7. Pete ab omnibus auxilium līberīs lacrimantibus.
8. Nē cupidus pecūniae sit, nam initium (*beginning*) omnium malōrum est.
9. Polliceāmur nōs librōs reliquōs ēmptūrōs.
10. Discēdant malī cīvēs ex urbe nostrā; hortāre bonōs; ūnum in locum omnēs conveniant.

F. *Write in Latin:*

1. What plan was the king to adopt?
2. At a given signal a shout was raised.
3. Let the general send envoys to the neighboring villages.
4. "I wish that all of us had wives," said one of the young men.
5. Don't let them flee from the show in tears (*weeping*).

6. Would that we hadn't been invited (*vocō*) to that show of yours.

## SUPPLEMENTARY EXERCISES

A. Write a subjunctive synopsis active and passive in the 3rd pl. of: *liberō, retineō, expellō, cōspiciō, inveniō*; a subjunctive synopsis 3rd sing. of: *hortor, polliceor, revertor, morior, audeō*.

B. Write in Latin:

There were enough men in Rome, but there was a scarcity of women. Romulus wished to have wives for his men, so he sent envoys to the chief men of the neighboring village. They delivered (*dō*) Romulus' message, "Let your daughters be given in marriage to my Romans." The chiefs were unwilling (*nōlēbant*) to do this. What was Romulus to do?

With the aid of his men, he devised (*formed*) this plan. He invited (*vocō*) his neighbors with their wives and children to a show which he had prepared with the greatest care. Many came to Rome to see (*fut. part.*) the show.

Suddenly a shout was raised; at a given signal a crowd of young men seized and carried many pretty maidens into the citadel. The parents were unable to help their daughters and fled from Rome in tears (*weeping*). They sought aid from the rest of the inhabitants of Italy and waged war with the Romans for many months (*mēnsēs, m.*). Finally, when only a small part of the summer remained, peace was made.

*turba, -ae, f.*, throng, crowd  
*laus, laudis, f.*, praise  
*onus, oneris, n.*, load, burden,  
 weight  
*dīves (gen. dīvitis), adj.*, rich  
*hortor, hortārī, hortātus sum*,  
 urge, encourage  
*probō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum*, approve

*sacrificō, sacrificāre, sacrificāvī*,  
*sacrificātum*, sacrifice  
*tollō, tollere, sustulī, sublātum*,  
 lift, raise; take away  
*aut, conjunction*, or; *aut . . . aut*,  
 either . . . or  
*paene, adverb*, nearly, almost  
*vix, adverb*, hardly, with  
 difficulty, scarcely



# ESSENTIALS OF ENGLISH GRAMMAR

387

## THE SENTENCE

A **sentence** is a group of words expressing a complete thought.

The sun is shining brightly today.

A sentence consists of a **subject** and a **predicate**.

The sun // is shining brightly today.

Here a statement is made about the sun; the expression *the sun* is the subject of the sentence. The rest of the sentence, *is shining brightly today*, tells what the sun does; this is the predicate.

388

## CLAUSES

A **clause** is a group of words which forms part of a sentence and which consists of a subject and a predicate.

[The day is done], and [the darkness

Falls from the wings of night].

Each of the two clauses in the sentence above, when taken by itself, makes a complete statement. Such clauses are called **principal clauses**.

In the sentence,

[Never spend your money][before you have earned it],  
the second clause, when taken by itself, does not make a complete statement. Such a clause is called a **subordinate clause**.

Sentences may be classified in two ways:

A. According to form:

- (i) **Simple**: made up of one subject and one predicate.  
Fortune favors the brave.
- (ii) **Compound**: made up of two or more principal clauses.  
[The storm has passed] and [the sun is coming out].
- (iii) **Complex**: made up of one or more principal clauses and one or more subordinate clauses.  
[When he woke] [it was already night].  
[She had given the ring to her goldsmiths twain],  
[Who smiled], [as they handed it back again].

B. According to use:

- (i) A **declarative sentence** makes an assertion or statement.  
We are going home today.
- (ii) An **interrogative sentence** asks a question.  
Are you going home today?
- (iii) An **imperative sentence** gives a command or makes a request.  
Go home now. Please leave at once.

## 390 PARTS OF SPEECH

Words may be classified according to the type of idea that they express and the work that they do in a sentence. Words in English fall into eight main groups. These groups are called the **parts of speech**: noun, pronoun, adjective, verb, adverb, preposition, conjunction, interjection.

## 391 NOUNS

A **noun** is the name of a person, place, thing, idea, or quality.

A name which is common to a number of objects possessing similar qualities is a **common noun**: man, town, car, school, song.

A special name given to a particular person or place is a **proper noun**: Longfellow, Paris.

A name given to a collection or group of objects considered as a unit is a **collective noun**: crowd, team, army.

392

## CASES

We use the term "case" to denote the relation of a noun to other words in the sentence. A noun in English has three **cases**: nominative, objective, possessive.

*N*

*P*

*O*

*O*

My father has invited my sister's husband to stay at our cottage.

393

The **nominative case** is used:

- (i) as the subject of a sentence. The subject is the doer of the action, or the person or thing about whom, or about which, an assertion is made.

The *hour* was late; the *fire* burned low.

- (ii) as part of the predicate to complete the verb *to be* or other linking verb and describe the subject (predicate nominative).

Britain is an *island*.

He has become a *lawyer*.

- (iii) to name the person directly addressed (nominative of address).

Take my cloak, O *Hiawatha*.

Come, old *friend*, sit down and listen.

- (iv) in apposition to a noun in the nominative (nominative in apposition). A noun used along with another noun to explain or define its meaning is a noun in apposition.

Near him was seated John Alden, his *friend*.

394

The **objective case** is used:

- (i) as the direct object of a verb.

Straight he took his *bow* of ash-tree.

We are going to buy a new *car*.

- (ii) as the object of a preposition.

Meanwhile, his friend, through *alley* and *street*,  
Wanders and watches with eager *cars*.

(iii) as part of the predicate to complete the verb and relate to the object (objective complement).

They named the settlement *Virginia*.

(iv) in apposition to a noun in the objective.

Yesterday I met your brother, the *doctor*.

(v) as the indirect object of a verb, that is, the person to whom something is given, said, or shown.

I gave the *girl* a flower.

She told the *child* a story.

The same idea may be expressed: I gave a flower to the girl. She told a story to the child.

395 The **possessive case** most commonly denotes ownership or possession: the *man's* house; our *neighbor's* car.

It also expresses connection of various kinds: the *shepherd's* song (the song sung by the shepherd); our *team's* defeat (the defeat suffered by our team).

**NOTE:** A subordinate clause may be used with the value of a noun:

(i) as a subject:

[What you say] is true = Your words are true.

(ii) as an object:

Resolve to perform [what you ought] = Resolve to perform your duty.

396

## PRONOUNS

A **pronoun** stands for or indicates a thing without naming it. In the following sentence the word *it* is a substitute for the idea *this house*. This house is old; *it* was built many years ago.

### The personal pronouns

1st	2nd	3rd
I	you	he, she, it
we	you	they

denote the person speaking (first person), the person spoken to (second person), the person or thing spoken about (third person).

I shall tell *you* about *him*.

The **demonstrative pronouns**, *this* (plural *these*), *that* (plural *those*), are used to point out some person or thing.

*This* is a maple; *that* is an oak.

The **interrogative pronouns** are those used to ask a question: *who* (objective *whom*, possessive *whose*), *which*, *what*.

*Who* is coming? *Whom* did you call? *Whose* book is this? *Which* do you prefer? *What* do you wish?

A **relative pronoun** connects a subordinate clause, of which it is a part, with the antecedent.

The girls [*who* are in the library] are reading.

The pronoun *who* connects the subordinate clause, *who are in the library*, of which it is a part, with the antecedent *girls*.

The relative pronouns are *who* (objective *whom*), *which* and *that*. A relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in person and number; but its case is determined by its use in the clause in which it stands.

I [*who* am your friend] will help you.

The man[*whom* you saw] is my brother.

A **reflexive pronoun** looks back or refers to the subject of the clause in which it stands.

The soldier was defending *himself*.

He took me with *him*.

The **emphatic pronoun** (sometimes referred to as *intensive*) is used along with a noun or another pronoun for the sake of emphasis.

The President *himself* must decide.

We *ourselves* cannot do this.

## 397

## ADJECTIVES

An **adjective** describes a noun or pronoun or limits or modifies its meaning. In the following sets of sentences see what effect is produced by the addition of the adjective.

We have a car. We have a *new* car.

A cat crossed my path. A *black* cat crossed my path.

The rose is a flower. The rose is a *beautiful* flower.

An adjective has three degrees of **comparison**:

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
old	older	oldest
beautiful	more beautiful	most beautiful
good	better	best

There is a special type of adjective which expresses possession (possessive adjectives): *my, mine; our; thy, thine; your; his, her, its; their.*

*My* brother is taller than *your* father.

A subordinate clause may be used with the value of an adjective.

This is the school [that I attend]  
Who is the man [who just called]?

The words *a, an, and the* are known as **articles**. *A* or *an* is the **indefinite article**; *the*, the **definite article**.

## 398

## VERBS

A **verb** is a word which tells what the subject does or is; in an interrogative sentence the verb asks a question; in an imperative sentence it issues a command or request.

He *drives* carefully; he *is* a careful driver.

*Does* he *drive*? *Drive* carefully.

Verbs may be classified according to use:

(i) A **transitive verb** takes a direct object.

And King Olaf *heard* the cry,

*Saw* the red light in the sky.

(ii) An **intransitive verb** does not take a direct object.

There he *stood* as one who *dreamed*.

(iii) A **linking verb** links a predicate noun or adjective to the subject.

He *is* the President. We *are* loyal.

In the verb phrases, *I am going, I did go, I have gone*, the central idea is that of *going*. The forms *going, go, gone* express the central idea; the verbs *am, did, and have* merely help in expressing that central idea, and are called **auxiliary** or **helping verbs**.



In making an assertion or asking a question, we wish to indicate the time expressed by the predicate. We use different forms of the verb to express the **tense**:

*present tense*: I see, am seeing, do see

*past tense*: I saw, was seeing, did see

*future tense*: I shall see, shall be seeing

To indicate that an act is complete, we use the

*perfect tense*: I have seen

*pluperfect tense*: I had seen

*future perfect tense*: I shall have seen

The **indicative mood** is used to state a fact, or to inquire whether something is a fact: He is carrying the water. Is he carrying the water?

The **imperative mood** is used to give a command: Give me the money.

In describing an action we wish to show whether the subject of the verb is (i) the agent or doer of the action, or (ii) the receiver or "victim" of the action. The **active voice** indicates that the subject is the doer; the **passive voice**, that the subject is the receiver.

*Active*: The dog *is chasing* the cat.

*Passive*: The cat *is being chased* by the dog.

*Active*: The general *led* the troops into battle.

*Passive*: The troops *were led* into battle by the general.

The verb forms *to go*, *to see*, *to build* are called **infinitives**. An infinitive is a verb form with the value of a noun, or, briefly, a verbal noun. As a verb, it has voice (active *to see*, passive *to be seen*), may govern objects, and may have adver-

<sup>1</sup>The subjunctive mood is not considered here, because its usage in English differs from its usage in Latin.

bial modifiers. As a noun, it may be used as the subject of a verb, as the predicate of a linking verb, and as the object of a verb.

*To play* is pleasant.

*To see* is *to believe*.

Boys like *to play* baseball.

*To advance* further was impossible.

403

## PARTICIPLES

A **participle** is a verbal adjective. As a verb, it has voice and tense, may govern objects, and may have adverbial modifiers. As an adjective, it modifies a noun or pronoun. The common forms of the participle are seen in the following:

The robin and the bluebird, *piping* loud,

Filled all the *blossoming* orchards with their glee.

*Having seen* both pictures, we left the theater.

*Attacked* (or *having been attacked*) by the brigands, the travelers were overpowered.

404

## ADVERBS

In the sentence, The colt ran swiftly, the word *swiftly* tells how the colt *ran*; *swiftly* modifies the verb *ran*.

An **adverb** modifies a verb, an adjective, or another adverb.

The man walks *slowly*.

He is a *very* old man.

The old man walks *less* easily.

An adverb, like an adjective, has three degrees.

POSITIVE

COMPARATIVE

SUPERLATIVE

easily

more easily

most easily

405

## PREPOSITIONS

A **preposition** is a word that joins a noun or pronoun to some other word, and marks the relation between the things which they denote.

I found him *at* home.  
Please give it *to* me.  
The rain came *through* the roof.

406

## CONJUNCTIONS

A **conjunction** is a word that connects words or groups of words.

[Nellie] *and* [Jane] were here.  
He will visit *either* [England] *or* [France].  
[I called to him] *but* [he did not answer].

Conjunctions are divided into two classes: coordinating and subordinating.

Coordinating conjunctions join together words or groups of words of equal value.

Subordinating conjunctions join subordinate clauses to principal clauses.

He came in [*because* it was raining].  
She came [*when* I called her].  
[*Although* it was cold] he did not wear a coat.

407

## INTERJECTIONS

An **interjection** is a word "thrown into" a sentence to express strong or sudden feeling.

*Oh*, it's you.  
*Hurrah!* We won.  
*Hello!* What are you doing here?

408

## EXPLETIVE

In the sentences,

There was a heavy snowfall this morning, *and*  
There are some famous paintings in that gallery,  
the true subjects are *snowfall* and *paintings*. *There* has no true meaning; it is merely an introductory word helping to fill out the sentence, and is called an **expletive**.

Compare the use of *there* as an adverb: I met him there.

# REVIEW OF SYNTAX

409

## AGREEMENT

1. The verb agrees with its subject in person and number. (§12)

**Agricolae arant.**

The farmers are plowing.

- A plural verb may have two singular subjects. (§12)

**Fēmina et puella labōrant.**

The woman and the girl are working.

2. A noun in apposition is in the same case as the noun which it explains. (§65)

**Cōpiae Boudiccae, rēginae, pārent.**

The troops obey Boadicea, the queen.

3. An adjective or a participle agrees with its noun in gender, number and case. (§§72, 202)

**Castra sunt magna.**

The camp is large.

**Urbs capta incēnsa est.**

The captured city was burned.

4. A relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person; but its case is determined by its use in the clause in which it stands. (§271)

**Miles [cui arma dedī] est fortis.**

The soldier [to whom I have given the arms] is brave.

## CASES

410

### NOMINATIVE

1. The subject of a verb in the indicative or subjunctive mood is in the nominative. (§11)

**Horātius in ponte stābat.**

Horatius stood on the bridge.

**Titus et Mārcus hīc maneant.**

Let Titus and Marcus remain here.

2. A predicate noun is in the nominative. (Predicate Nominative, §14)

**Britannia est insula.**

Britain is an island.

411

#### GENITIVE

1. The genitive is used to express possession. (Possessive Genitive, §45)

**Ager agricolae est parvus.**

The farmer's field is small.

2. The genitive is used to denote the whole of which a part is taken. (Partitive Genitive, §383)

**Prīmus rēgum erat Rōmulus.**

The first of the kings was Romulus.

3. A noun in the genitive modified by an adjective may be used to describe a person or thing. (Genitive of Description, §306)

**Est vir magnae virtūtis.**

He is a man of great courage.

4. The genitive is used with some adjectives to complete their meanings. (§374)

**Cupidus imperii est.**

He is eager for power.

412

#### DATIVE

1. The indirect object (the person to whom something is given or said or shown) is expressed by the dative case. (§38)

**Puellae pecūniam dat.**

He gives the girl the money.

2. The dative is used with certain special verbs. (See list, §327)

**Nōbīs facile persuāsit.**

He easily persuaded us.

3. The dative is used with many compound verbs. (§328)

**Legiōnī praeest.**

He is in command of the legion.

4. The dative is used to complete the meaning of many adjectives. (See list, §158)

**Italia Britanniae dissimilis est.**

Italy is unlike Britain.

5. A noun in the dative may express the purpose or intention of an action. (Dative of Purpose, §329)

**Locum castrīs dēligit.**

He chooses a place for a camp.

6. The dative may denote the person (or thing) in whose interest or to whose advantage or disadvantage something is done. (Dative of Interest, §330)

**Liberīs cōsulit.**

He takes thought for his children.

7. The dative of interest is often combined with the dative of purpose. (Double dative, §331)

**Militēs urbī praesidiō reliquit.**

(He left soldiers as a guard for the city.)

He left soldiers to guard the city.

#### 413

#### ACCUSATIVE

1. The direct object of a verb is in the accusative. (§20)

**Victōriam nūntiat.**

He announces the victory.

2. Many prepositions have their objects in the accusative. (§§22, 131)

**Cōpiās trāns flūmen contrā hostēs dūcit.**

He leads the troops across the river against the enemy.

3. With names of cities, towns and small islands, place to which is expressed by the accusative without a preposition. (§196)

**Frūmentum Rōmam portant.**

They carry the grain to Rome.



4. Extent of space is expressed by the accusative without a preposition. (§264)

**Flūmen est lātum sēdecim pedēs.**

The river is sixteen feet wide.

5. Time how long is expressed by the accusative without a preposition. (§209, 1)

**Diēs septem manēbunt.**

They will remain for a week.

6. The subject of the infinitive, if separately expressed, is in the accusative. (§§138, 336)

**Rēgem agrōs vāstāre nōn erat aequum.**

(For the king to lay waste the fields was not right.)

It was not right for the king to lay waste the fields.

**Dīcō eum venīre.**

I say that he is coming.

#### 414

#### ABLATIVE

1. The means or instrument by which something is done is expressed by the ablative without a preposition. (Ablative of Means, §31)

**Hastis pugnant.**

They fight with spears.

2. *In company with* and *in conflict with* are expressed by the ablative with the preposition **cum**. (§32)

**Cum Gallō ambulat.**

He is walking with the Gaul.

**Cum Gallō pugnat.**

He is fighting with the Gaul.

3. The manner in which an action is performed is expressed by a noun in the ablative preceded by the preposition **cum**. If the noun is modified by an adjective, **cum** is usually omitted. (Ablative of Manner, §181)

**Cum celeritāte vēnērunt.**

They came with speed.

**Summā celeritāte vēnērunt.**

They came with the utmost speed.

4. When **quam** (*than*) is used after a comparative, the second noun takes the same case as the noun with which it is compared. When **quam** would be followed by the nominative or accusative, **quam** may be omitted while the second noun is put in the ablative. (Ablative of Comparison, §280)

**Germānia est lātiōr quam Gallia.**

**Germānia est lātiōr Galliā.**

Germany is wider than Gaul.

5. With comparatives, the ablative without a preposition is used to denote the measure or degree of difference. (Ablative of Measure of Difference, §288)

**Turris est altior decem pedibus quam mūrus.**

(The tower is higher by ten feet than the wall.)

The tower is ten feet higher than the wall.

6. The ablative without a preposition is used to indicate in what respect a statement is true. (Ablative of Respect, §256)

**Hic servus est ūnō pede claudus.**

This slave is lame in one foot.

7. The person, or group of persons, by whom an act is performed is called the agent. The agent is expressed by the ablative with **ab**. (§217)

**Ager ab agricolā arātus est.**

The field has been plowed by the farmer.

8. Time when is expressed by the ablative without a preposition. (§209, 2)

**Secundā hōrā castra oppugnāvērunt.**

At the second hour they attacked the camp.

9. Time within which is expressed by the ablative without a preposition. (§209, 3)

**Sex diēbus perveniet.**

He will arrive within six days.

10. Many prepositions have their objects in the ablative. (See list, §131)

**Sine legiōnibus in Galliā manēbat.**

He remained in Gaul without the legions.

11. With names of cities, towns and small islands, place from which is expressed by the ablative without a preposition. (§196)

**Rōmā iter faciunt.**

They are marching from Rome.

12. An ablative absolute phrase, made up of a noun or pronoun together with a participle, noun or adjective in agreement, may be used to express some idea of time, cause, condition or concession connected with the main idea of a sentence. (§228)

**Oppidō incēnsō hostēs discēdent.**

When the town has been burned, the enemy will withdraw.

415

#### VOCATIVE

The vocative, like the nominative of address in English, is used in addressing someone. (§59)

**Ubi, Iūlia, est soror?**

Julia, where is your sister?

416

#### LOCATIVE

With names of cities, towns and small islands, place in which is expressed by the locative. (§196)

**Rōmae sunt multa templa.**

There are many temples in Rome.

#### MOODS

417 The indicative mood is used to state a fact, or to inquire whether something is a fact. (§363)

**Aquam portat.**

He is carrying the water.

**Portatne aquam?**

Is he carrying the water?

418 The subjunctive mood may be used

(a) in a principal clause:

(i) The first person plural of the present subjunctive is used when one person urges others of his own group and includes himself. (Hortatory Subjunctive, §366)

**Hīc maneāmus.**

Let us remain here.

- (ii) The present subjunctive is used to express a command in the third person. (Jussive Subjunctive, §367)

**Mārcus hīc maneat.**

Let Marcus remain here.

- (iii) The present and imperfect subjunctive are used in deliberative questions. (Deliberative Subjunctive, §372)

**Quid faciam?**

What am I to do?

**Quid dicerēmus?**

What were we to say?

- (iv) The present, imperfect, and pluperfect subjunctive are used in wishes. (Optative Subjunctive, §§ 373, 382)

**Sis victor.**

May you be victorious.

**Utinam rēx essem.**

Would that I were a king.

**Utinam nē missus essem.**

Would that I had not been sent.

- 419 The imperative mood is used to give a direct command. (§129)

**Dā mihi pecūniam.**

Give me the money.

- 420 The infinitive may be used

- (a) as the subject of a form of **sum**. (§137)

**Labōrāre est bonum.**

(To work is good.)

It is good to work.

- (b) to complete the meaning of another verb. (Complementary infinitive, §147)

**Redire cōstituerat.**

He had decided to return.

- (c) in an indirect statement. (§336)

**Dīcō [eum venīre].**

I say that he is coming.

1. A participle is a verbal adjective. As a verb, it has voice and tense, may be modified by an adverb, and may govern an object in the same case as the verb of which it is a part. As an adjective, the participle is declined, and agrees in gender, number, and case with the noun or pronoun which it modifies.
2. The perfect participle passive of a regular verb is passive in meaning, and denotes time prior to that of the main verb. (§202)

**Servus captus poenās dabit.**

The slave, if caught, will suffer punishment.

3. The perfect participle of a deponent is active in meaning, and denotes time prior to that of the main verb. (§357)

**Mille passūs prōgressa, legiō castra posuit.**

After advancing a mile, the legion pitched camp.

4. The present participle of all verbs is active in meaning, and expresses an action going on at the same time as the action of the main verb. (§§313, 356)

**Pugnāns, interfectus est.**

While fighting, he was slain.

**Trānsire cōnāns, interfectus est.**

While trying to cross, he was slain.

5. The future participle of all verbs is active in meaning. It is most commonly used with forms of **sum** to denote intention or that which is about to happen. (§§322, 358)

**Cōpiae discessūrae sunt.**

The troops are about to depart.

**Cōpiae profectūrae sunt.**

The troops are about to set out.

# INFLECTIONS

## DECLENSION OF NOUNS

422

### FIRST DECLENSION

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR
<i>Nom.</i>	puella	puellae	Aenēās
<i>Gen.</i>	puellae	puellārum	Aenēae
<i>Dat.</i>	puellae	puellis	Aenēae
<i>Acc.</i>	puellam	puellās	Aenēān
<i>Abl.</i>	puellā	puellis	Aenēā

423

### SECOND DECLENSION

#### MASCULINE

##### SINGULAR

<i>Nom.</i>	mūrus	puer	ager	vir
<i>Gen.</i>	mūrī	puerī	agrī	virī
<i>Dat.</i>	mūrō	puerō	agrō	virō
<i>Acc.</i>	mūrum	puerum	agrum	virum
<i>Abl.</i>	mūrō	puerō	agrō	virō

##### PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	mūrī	puerī	agrī	virī
<i>Gen.</i>	mūrōrum	puerōrum	agrōrum	virōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	mūrīs	puerīs	agrīs	virīs
<i>Acc.</i>	mūrōs	puerōs	agrōs	virōs
<i>Abl.</i>	mūrīs	puerīs	agrīs	virīs

#### NEUTER

##### SINGULAR

##### PLURAL

##### PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	bellum	bella	castra
<i>Gen.</i>	bellī	bellōrum	castrōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	bellō	bellīs	castrīs
<i>Acc.</i>	bellum	bella	castra
<i>Abl.</i>	bellō	bellīs	castrīs



## MASCULINE AND FEMININE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	mīles	mīlitēs	legiō	legiōnēs
<i>Gen.</i>	mīlitis	mīlitum	legiōnis	legiōnum
<i>Dat.</i>	mīlitī	mīlitibus	legiōnī	legiōnibus
<i>Acc.</i>	mīlitem	mīlitēs	legiōnem	legiōnēs
<i>Abl.</i>	mīlite	mīlitibus	legiōne	legiōnibus

## NEUTER

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	corpus	corpora	flūmen	flūmina
<i>Gen.</i>	corporis	corporum	flūminis	flūminum
<i>Dat.</i>	corporī	corporibus	flūminī	flūminibus
<i>Acc.</i>	corpus	corpora	flūmen	flūmina
<i>Abl.</i>	corpore	corporibus	flūmine	flūminibus

## I-STEMS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

## MASCULINE AND FEMININE

## SINGULAR

<i>Nom.</i>	hostis	nāvis	caedēs	mōns
<i>Gen.</i>	hostis	nāvis	caedis	montis
<i>Dat.</i>	hostī	nāvī	caedī	montī
<i>Acc.</i>	hostem	nāvem	caedem	montem
<i>Abl.</i>	hoste	nāve (-ī)	caede	monte

## PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	hostēs	nāvēs	caedēs	montēs
<i>Gen.</i>	hostium	nāvium	caedium	montium
<i>Dat.</i>	hostibus	nāvibus	caedibus	montibus
<i>Acc.</i>	hostēs (-īs)	nāvēs (-īs)	caedēs (-īs)	montēs (-īs)
<i>Abl.</i>	hostibus	nāvibus	caedibus	montibus

## NEUTER

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	mare	maria	animal	animālia
<i>Gen.</i>	maris	—	animālis	animālium
<i>Dat.</i>	marī	maribus	animālī	animālibus
<i>Acc.</i>	mare	maria	animal	animālia
<i>Abl.</i>	marī	maribus	animālī	animālibus

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR
<i>Nom.</i>	vīs, f.	vīrēs	Iuppiter
<i>Gen.</i>		vīrium	Iovis
<i>Dat.</i>		vīribus	Iovī
<i>Acc.</i>	vim	vīrēs (-is)	Iovem
<i>Abl.</i>	vī	vīribus	Iove

	MASCULINE		NEUTER	
	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	exercitus	exercitūs	cornū	cornua
<i>Gen.</i>	exercitūs	exercituum	cornūs	cornuum
<i>Dat.</i>	exercitui	exercitibus	cornū	cornibus
<i>Acc.</i>	exercitum	exercitūs	cornū	cornua
<i>Abl.</i>	exercitū	exercitibus	cornū	cornibus

For the declension of *domus*, see Section 195.

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	diēs	diēs	rēs	rēs
<i>Gen.</i>	diēi	diērum	rei	rērum
<i>Dat.</i>	diēi	diēbus	rei	rēbus
<i>Acc.</i>	diem	diēs	rem	rēs
<i>Abl.</i>	diē	diēbus	rē	rēbus

## DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	altus	alta	altum	altī	altae	alta
<i>Gen.</i>	altī	altae	altī	altōrum	altārum	altōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	altō	altae	altō	altīs	altīs	altīs
<i>Acc.</i>	altum	altam	altum	altōs	altās	alta
<i>Abl.</i>	altō	altā	altō	altīs	altīs	altīs

# ADJECTIVES IN -er WHICH KEEP THE -e

<i>Nom.</i>	liber	libera	liberum	liberī	liberae	libera
<i>Gen.</i>	liberī	liberae	liberī	liberōrum	liberārum	liberōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	liberō	liberae	liberō	liberīs	liberīs	liberīs
<i>Acc.</i>	liberum	liberam	liberum	liberōs	liberās	libera
<i>Abl.</i>	liberō	liberā	liberō	liberīs	liberīs	liberīs

# ADJECTIVES IN -er WHICH DROP THE -e

## SINGULAR

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	pulcher	pulchra	pulchrum
<i>Gen.</i>	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchrī
<i>Dat.</i>	pulchrō	pulchrae	pulchrō
<i>Acc.</i>	pulchrum	pulchram	pulchrum
<i>Abl.</i>	pulchrō	pulchrā	pulchrō

## PLURAL

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchra
<i>Gen.</i>	pulchrōrum	pulchrārum	pulchrōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	pulchrīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs
<i>Acc.</i>	pulchrōs	pulchrās	pulchra
<i>Abl.</i>	pulchrīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs

430

# ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

## SINGULAR

## PLURAL

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	ācer	ācris	ācre	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
<i>Gen.</i>	ācris	ācris	ācris	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
<i>Dat.</i>	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
<i>Acc.</i>	ācrem	ācrem	ācre	ācrēs (-īs)	ācrēs (-īs)	ācria
<i>Abl.</i>	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

## SINGULAR

## PLURAL

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	fortis	fortis	forte	fortēs	fortēs	fortia
<i>Gen.</i>	fortis	fortis	fortis	fortium	fortium	fortium
<i>Dat.</i>	fortī	fortī	fortī	fortibus	fortibus	fortibus
<i>Acc.</i>	fortem	fortem	forte	fortēs (-īs)	fortēs (-īs)	fortia
<i>Abl.</i>	fortī	fortī	fortī	fortibus	fortibus	fortibus

# SINGULAR

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	audāx	audāx	audāx
<i>Gen.</i>	audācis	audācis	audācis
<i>Dat.</i>	audācī	audācī	audācī
<i>Acc.</i>	audācem	audācem	audāx
<i>Abl.</i>	audācī	audācī	audācī

# PLURAL

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	audācēs	audācēs	audācia
<i>Gen.</i>	audācium	audācium	audācium
<i>Dat.</i>	audācibus	audācibus	audācibus
<i>Acc.</i>	audācēs (-īs)	audācēs (-īs)	audācia
<i>Abl.</i>	audācibus	audācibus	audācibus

431

# PRESENT PARTICIPLE ACTIVE

## SINGULAR

## PLURAL

	MASC. & FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. & FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	portāns	portāns	portantēs	portantia
<i>Gen.</i>	portantis	portantis	portantium	portantium
<i>Dat.</i>	portantī	portantī	portantibus	portantibus
<i>Acc.</i>	portantem	portāns	portantēs	portantia
<i>Abl.</i>	portante	portante	portantibus	portantibus

432

# NINE IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

alius, alia, aliud	nūllus, -a, -um	tōtus, -a, -um
alter, -a, -um	ūnus, -a, -um	uter, utra, utrum
ūllus, -a, -um	sōlus, -a, -um	neuter, neutra, neutrum

For the declension, see Section 185.

433

# COMPARATIVE ADJECTIVE

## SINGULAR

## PLURAL

	MASC. & FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. & FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	fortior	fortius	fortiōrēs	fortiōra
<i>Gen.</i>	fortiōris	fortiōris	fortiōrum	fortiōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	fortiōrī	fortiōrī	fortiōribus	fortiōribus
<i>Acc.</i>	fortiōrem	fortius	fortiōrēs	fortiōra
<i>Abl.</i>	fortiōre	fortiōre	fortiōribus	fortiōribus

For the declension of *minor*, see Section 286; for *plūrēs*, see Section 287.

CARDINAL NUMERALS		ORDINAL NUMERALS
I.	ūnus, -a, -um	prīmus, -a, -um
II.	duo, -ae, -o	secundus
III.	trēs, tria	tertius
IV.	quattuor	quārtus
V.	quīnque	quīntus
VI.	sex	sextus
VII.	septem	septimus
VIII.	octō	octāvus
IX.	novem	nōnus
X.	decem	decimus
XI.	ūndecim	ūndecimus
XII.	duodecim	duodecim
XIII.	tredecim	tertius decimus
XIV.	quattuordecim	quārtus decimus
XV.	quīndecim	quīntus decimus
XVI.	sēdecim	sextus decimus
XVII.	septendecim	septimus decimus
XVIII.	duodēvigintī	duodēvicēsimum
XIX.	ūndēvigintī	ūndēvicēsimum
XX.	vīgintī	vicēsimum
XXI.	vīgintī ūnus	vicēsimum prīmus
XXVIII.	duodētrīgintā	duodētricēsimum
XXIX.	ūndētrīgintā	ūndētricēsimum
XXX.	trīgintā	tricēsimum
XL.	quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsimum
L.	quīnquāgintā	quīnquāgēsimum
LX.	sexāgintā	sexāgēsimum
LXX.	septuāgintā	septuāgēsimum
LXXX.	octōgintā	octōgēsimum
XC.	nōnāgintā	nōnāgēsimum
C.	centum	centēsimum
CI.	centum ūnus	centēsimum prīmus
CC.	ducentī, -ae, -a	ducentēsimum
CCC.	trecentī, -ae, -a	trecentēsimum
CCCC.	quadringentī, -ae, -a	quadringentēsimum
D.	quīngentī, -ae, -a	quīngentēsimum
DC.	sescentī, -ae, -a	sescentēsimum

DCC.	septingentī, -ae, -a	septingentēsimus
DCCC.	octingentī, -ae, -a	octingentēsimus
DCCCC.	nōngentī, -ae, -a	nōngentēsimus
M.	mille	millēsimus
MM.	duo mīlia	bis millēsimus

435

#### DECLENSION OF NUMERALS

For the declension of *ūnus*, see Section 188; *duo*, see Section 188; *trēs*, see Section 188; *mille*, see Section 266.

Ordinal numerals are declined like *altus*.

### PRONOUNS

436

#### PERSONAL PRONOUNS

##### FIRST PERSON, *ego*, *I*

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>ego</i>	<i>nōs</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>meī</i>	<i>nostrum, nostrī</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>mihi</i>	<i>nōbīs</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>mē</i>	<i>nōs</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>mē</i>	<i>nōbīs</i>

##### SECOND PERSON, *tū*, *you*

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>tū</i>	<i>vōs</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>tuī</i>	<i>vestrum, vestrī</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>tibi</i>	<i>vōbīs</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>tē</i>	<i>vōs</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>tē</i>	<i>vōbīs</i>

437

#### REFLEXIVE OF THE THIRD PERSON

*suī*, of *himself*, etc.

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>suī</i>	<i>suī</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>sibi</i>	<i>sibi</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>sē or sēsē</i>	<i>sē or sēsē</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>sē or sēsē</i>	<i>sē or sēsē</i>



*hic, this*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>hic</i>	<i>haec</i>	<i>hoc</i>	<i>hī</i>	<i>hae</i>	<i>haec</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>huius</i>	<i>huius</i>	<i>huius</i>	<i>hōrum</i>	<i>hārum</i>	<i>hōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>hunc</i>	<i>hanc</i>	<i>hoc</i>	<i>hōs</i>	<i>hās</i>	<i>haec</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>hōc</i>	<i>hāc</i>	<i>hōc</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>

*ille, that*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>ille</i>	<i>illa</i>	<i>illud</i>	<i>illī</i>	<i>illae</i>	<i>illa</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>illīus</i>	<i>illīus</i>	<i>illīus</i>	<i>illōrum</i>	<i>illārum</i>	<i>illōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>illī</i>	<i>illī</i>	<i>illī</i>	<i>illīs</i>	<i>illīs</i>	<i>illīs</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>illum</i>	<i>illam</i>	<i>illud</i>	<i>illōs</i>	<i>illās</i>	<i>illa</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>illō</i>	<i>illā</i>	<i>illō</i>	<i>illīs</i>	<i>illīs</i>	<i>illīs</i>

*is, this, that; he, she, it*

## SINGULAR

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>ea</i>	<i>id</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>eius</i>	<i>eius</i>	<i>eius</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>eī</i>	<i>eī</i>	<i>eī</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>eum</i>	<i>eam</i>	<i>id</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>eō</i>	<i>eā</i>	<i>eō</i>

## PLURAL

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>eī, iī</i>	<i>eae</i>	<i>ea</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>eōrum</i>	<i>eārum</i>	<i>eōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>eīs, iīs</i>	<i>eīs, iīs</i>	<i>eīs, iīs</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>eōs</i>	<i>eās</i>	<i>ea</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>eīs, iīs</i>	<i>eīs, iīs</i>	<i>eīs, iīs</i>

*idem, the same*

SINGULAR

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>idem</i>	<i>eadem</i>	<i>idem</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>eiusdem</i>	<i>eiusdem</i>	<i>eiusdem</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>eīdem</i>	<i>eīdem</i>	<i>eīdem</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>eundem</i>	<i>eandem</i>	<i>idem</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>eōdem</i>	<i>eādem</i>	<i>eōdem</i>

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>eīdem</i>	<i>eaedem</i>	<i>eadem</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>eōrundem</i>	<i>eārundem</i>	<i>eōrundem</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>eīdem</i>	<i>eīdem</i>	<i>eīdem</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>eōsdem</i>	<i>eāsdem</i>	<i>eadem</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>eīdem</i>	<i>eīdem</i>	<i>eīdem</i>

439

EMPHATIC PRONOUN

*ipse, self*

SINGULAR

PLURAL

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>ipse</i>	<i>ipsa</i>	<i>ipsum</i>	<i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsae</i>	<i>ipsa</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>ipsīus</i>	<i>ipsīus</i>	<i>ipsīus</i>	<i>ipsōrum</i>	<i>ipsārum</i>	<i>ipsōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>ipsum</i>	<i>ipsam</i>	<i>ipsum</i>	<i>ipsōs</i>	<i>ipsās</i>	<i>ipsa</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>ipsō</i>	<i>ipsā</i>	<i>ipsō</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>

440

RELATIVE PRONOUN

*quī, who, which, that*

SINGULAR

PLURAL

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>quī</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>quod</i>	<i>quī</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>quae</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>cuius</i>	<i>cuius</i>	<i>cuius</i>	<i>quōrum</i>	<i>quārum</i>	<i>quōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>quem</i>	<i>quam</i>	<i>quod</i>	<i>quōs</i>	<i>quās</i>	<i>quae</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>quō</i>	<i>quā</i>	<i>quō</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>

quis? *who?*

	SINGULAR		PLURAL		
	MASC. &				
	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	quis	quid	quī	quae	quae
<i>Gen.</i>	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>Acc.</i>	quem	quid	quōs	quās	quae
<i>Abl.</i>	quō	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

For the interrogative adjective, see Section 246.

## SUMMARY OF VERBS

442

## PRESENT INFINITIVE ACTIVE

1ST CONJ.	2ND CONJ.	3RD CONJ.	3RD CONJ. -iō	4TH CONJ.
portāre	movēre	dūcere	capere	audire

443

## PRESENT INDICATIVE

ACTIVE				
<i>I carry,</i> <i>I am carrying</i>	<i>I move,</i> <i>I am moving</i>	<i>I lead,</i> <i>I am leading</i>	<i>I catch,</i> <i>I am catching</i>	<i>I hear,</i> <i>I am hearing</i>
portō	moveō	dūcō	capiō	audiō
portās	movēs	dūcis	capis	audīs
portat	movet	dūcit	capit	audit
portāmus	movēmus	dūcimus	capimus	audīmus
portātis	movētis	dūcitis	capitis	audītis
portant	movent	dūcunt	capiunt	audiunt

## PASSIVE

<i>I am (being)</i> <i>carried</i>	<i>I am (being)</i> <i>moved</i>	<i>I am (being)</i> <i>led</i>	<i>I am (being)</i> <i>caught</i>	<i>I am (being)</i> <i>heard</i>
portor	moveor	dūcor	capior	audior
portāris	movēris	dūceris	caperis	audiris
portātur	movētur	dūcitur	capitur	auditur
portāmur	movēmur	dūcimur	capimur	audīmur
portāminī	movēminī	dūcimini	capimini	audīmini
portantur	moventur	dūcuntur	capiuntur	audiuntur

## ACTIVE

<i>I was carrying</i>	<i>I was moving</i>	<i>I was leading</i>	<i>I was catching</i>	<i>I was hearing</i>
portābam	movēbam	dūcēbam	capiēbam	audiēbam
portābās	movēbās	dūcēbās	capiēbās	audiēbās
portābat	movēbat	dūcēbat	capiēbat	audiēbat
portābāmus	movēbāmus	dūcēbāmus	capiēbāmus	audiēbāmus
portābātis	movēbātis	dūcēbātis	capiēbātis	audiēbātis
portābant	movēbant	dūcēbant	capiēbant	audiēbant

## PASSIVE

<i>I was being carried</i>	<i>I was being moved</i>	<i>I was being led</i>	<i>I was being caught</i>	<i>I was being heard</i>
portābar	movēbar	dūcēbar	capiēbar	audiēbar
portābāris	movēbāris	dūcēbāris	capiēbāris	audiēbāris
portābātur	movēbātur	dūcēbātur	capiēbātur	audiēbātur
portābāmur	movēbāmur	dūcēbāmur	capiēbāmur	audiēbāmur
portābāminī	movēbāminī	dūcēbāminī	capiēbāminī	audiēbāminī
portābantur	movēbantur	dūcēbantur	capiēbantur	audiēbantur

## FUTURE INDICATIVE

## ACTIVE

<i>I shall carry</i>	<i>I shall move</i>	<i>I shall lead</i>	<i>I shall catch</i>	<i>I shall hear</i>
portābō	movēbō	dūcam	capiam	audiam
portābis	movēbis	dūcēs	capiēs	audiēs
portābit	movēbit	dūcet	capiet	audiet
portābimus	movēbimus	dūcēmus	capiēmus	audiēmus
portābitis	movēbitis	dūcētis	capiētis	audiētis
portābunt	movēbunt	dūcent	capient	audient

## PASSIVE

<i>I shall be carried</i>	<i>I shall be moved</i>	<i>I shall be led</i>	<i>I shall be caught</i>	<i>I shall be heard</i>
portābor	movēbor	dūcar	capiar	audiar
portāberis	movēberis	dūcēris	capiēris	audiēris
portābitur	movēbitur	dūcētur	capiētur	audiētur
portābimur	movēbimur	dūcēmur	capiēmur	audiēmur
portābiminī	movēbiminī	dūcēminī	capiēminī	audiēminī
portābuntur	movēbuntur	dūcentur	capientur	audientur

## ACTIVE

<i>I have carried,</i> <i>I carried</i>	<i>I have moved,</i> <i>I moved</i>	<i>I have led,</i> <i>I led</i>	<i>I have caught,</i> <i>I caught</i>	<i>I have heard,</i> <i>I heard</i>
portāvī	mōvī	dūxī	cēpī	audīvī
portāvistī	mōvistī	dūxistī	cēpistī	audīvistī
portāvit	mōvit	dūxit	cēpit	audīvit
portāvimus	mōvimus	dūximus	cēpimus	audīvimus
portāvistis	mōvistis	dūxistis	cēpistis	audīvistis
portāvērunt	mōvērunt	dūxērunt	cēpērunt	audīvērunt

## PASSIVE

<i>I have been carried,</i> <i>I was carried</i>	<i>I have been moved,</i> <i>I was moved</i>	<i>I have been led,</i> <i>I was led</i>
portātus { sum es est	mōtus { sum es est	ductus { sum es est
portāti { sumus estis sunt	mōtī { sumus estis sunt	ductī { sumus estis sunt
<i>I have been caught,</i> <i>I was caught</i>	<i>I have been heard,</i> <i>I was heard</i>	
captus { sum es est	audītus { sum es est	
captī { sumus estis sunt	audītī { sumus estis sunt	

## ACTIVE

<i>I had carried</i>	<i>I had moved</i>	<i>I had led</i>	<i>I had caught</i>	<i>I had heard</i>
portāveram	mōveram	dūxeram	cēperam	audīveram
portāverās	mōverās	dūxerās	cēperās	audīverās
portāverat	mōverat	dūxerat	cēperat	audīverat
portāverāmus	mōverāmus	dūxerāmus	cēperāmus	audīverāmus
portāverātis	mōverātis	dūxerātis	cēperātis	audīverātis
portāverant	mōverant	dūxerant	cēperant	audīverant

PASSIVE		
<i>I had been carried</i>	<i>I had been moved</i>	<i>I had been led</i>
portātus { eram erās erat	mōtus { eram erās erat	ductus { eram erās erat
portātī { erāmus erātis erant	mōtī { erāmus erātis erant	ductī { erāmus erātis erant
<i>I had been caught</i>	<i>I had been heard</i>	
captus { eram erās erat	auditus { eram erās erat	
captī { erāmus erātis erant	audītī { erāmus erātis erant	

448

#### FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE

ACTIVE				
<i>I shall have carried</i>	<i>I shall have moved</i>	<i>I shall have led</i>	<i>I shall have caught</i>	<i>I shall have heard</i>
portāverō	mōverō	dūxerō	cēperō	audiverō
portāveris	mōveris	dūxeris	cēperis	audiveris
portāverit	mōverit	dūxerit	cēperit	audiverit
portāverimus	mōverimus	dūxerimus	cēperimus	audiverimus
portāveritis	mōveritis	dūxeritis	cēperitis	audiveritis
portāverint	mōverint	dūxerint	cēperint	audiverint

PASSIVE		
<i>I shall have been carried</i>	<i>I shall have been moved</i>	<i>I shall have been led</i>
portātus { erō eris erit	mōtus { erō eris erit	ductus { erō eris erit
portātī { erimus eritis erunt	mōtī { erimus eritis erunt	ductī { erimus eritis erunt

479



SINGULAR		PLURAL	
<i>I shall have been caught</i>	<i>I shall have been heard</i>	<i>We shall have been caught</i>	<i>We shall have been heard</i>
captus { erō eris erit	auditus { erō eris erit	capti { erimus eritis erunt	auditi { erimus eritis erunt

449

# PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

ACTIVE				
portem	moveam	dūcam	capiam	audiam
portēs	moveās	dūcās	capiās	audiās
portet	moveat	dūcat	capiat	audiat
portēmus	moveāmus	dūcāmus	capiāmus	audiāmus
portētis	moveātis	dūcātis	capiātis	audiātis
portent	moveant	dūcant	capiant	audiant

PASSIVE				
porter	movear	dūcar	capiar	audiar
portēris	moveāris	dūcāris	capiāris	audiāris
portētur	moveātur	dūcātur	capiātur	audiātur
portēmur	moveāmur	dūcāmur	capiāmur	audiāmur
portēmini	moveāmini	dūcāmini	capiāmini	audiāmini
portentur	moveantur	dūcantur	capiantur	audiantur

450

# IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

ACTIVE				
portārem	movērem	dūcerem	caperem	audīrem
portārēs	movērēs	dūcerēs	caperēs	audīrēs
portāret	movēret	dūceret	caperet	audīret
portārēmus	movērēmus	dūcerēmus	caperēmus	audīrēmus
portārētis	movērētis	dūcerētis	caperētis	audīrētis
portārent	movērent	dūcerent	caperent	audīrent

PASSIVE				
portārer	movērer	dūcerer	caperer	audīrer
portārēris	movērēris	dūcerēris	caperēris	audīrēris
portārētur	movērētur	dūcerētur	caperētur	audīrētur
portārēmur	movērēmur	dūcerēmur	caperēmur	audīrēmur
portārēmini	movērēmini	dūcerēmini	caperēmini	audīrēmini
portārentur	movērentur	dūcerentur	caperentur	audīrentur

## ACTIVE

portāverim	mōverim	dūxerim	cēperim	audīverim
portāverīs	mōverīs	dūxerīs	cēperīs	audīverīs
portāverit	mōverit	dūxerit	cēperit	audīverit
portāverīmus	mōverīmus	dūxerīmus	cēperīmus	audīverīmus
portāverītis	mōverītis	dūxerītis	cēperītis	audīverītis
portāverint	mōverint	dūxerint	cēperint	audīverint

## PASSIVE

portātus	$\begin{cases} \text{sim} \\ \text{sis} \\ \text{sit} \end{cases}$	mōtus	$\begin{cases} \text{sim} \\ \text{sis} \\ \text{sit} \end{cases}$	ductus	$\begin{cases} \text{sim} \\ \text{sis} \\ \text{sit} \end{cases}$
portātī	$\begin{cases} \text{simus} \\ \text{sitis} \\ \text{sint} \end{cases}$	mōtī	$\begin{cases} \text{simus} \\ \text{sitis} \\ \text{sint} \end{cases}$	ductī	$\begin{cases} \text{simus} \\ \text{sitis} \\ \text{sint} \end{cases}$
	captus	$\begin{cases} \text{sim} \\ \text{sis} \\ \text{sit} \end{cases}$		audītus	$\begin{cases} \text{sim} \\ \text{sis} \\ \text{sit} \end{cases}$
	captī	$\begin{cases} \text{simus} \\ \text{sitis} \\ \text{sint} \end{cases}$		audītī	$\begin{cases} \text{simus} \\ \text{sitis} \\ \text{sint} \end{cases}$

## ACTIVE

portāvissem	mōvissem	dūxissem	cēpissem	audīvissem
portāvissēs	mōvissēs	dūxissēs	cēpissēs	audīvissēs
portāvisset	mōvisset	dūxisset	cēpisset	audīvisset
portāvissēmus	mōvissēmus	dūxissēmus	cēpissēmus	audīvissēmus
portāvissētis	mōvissētis	dūxissētis	cēpissētis	audīvissētis
portāvissent	mōvissent	dūxissent	cēpissent	audīvissent

## PASSIVE

portātus	$\begin{cases} \text{essem} \\ \text{essēs} \\ \text{esset} \end{cases}$	mōtus	$\begin{cases} \text{essem} \\ \text{essēs} \\ \text{esset} \end{cases}$	ductus	$\begin{cases} \text{essem} \\ \text{essēs} \\ \text{esset} \end{cases}$
----------	--	-------	--	--------	--

portātī	{ essēmus essētis essent	mōtī	{ essēmus essētis essent	ductī	{ essēmus essētis essent
	captus	{ essem essēs esset		auditus	{ essem essēs esset
	captī	{ essēmus essētis essent		audītī	{ essēmus essētis essent

453

## PRESENT IMPERATIVE

## ACTIVE

## SINGULAR

<i>carry</i>	<i>move</i>	<i>lead</i>	<i>catch</i>	<i>hear</i>
portā	movē	dūc <sup>1</sup>	cape	audī

## PLURAL

portāte	movēte	dūcite	capite	audīte
---------	--------	--------	--------	--------

454

## INFINITIVES

## ACTIVE

<i>Present</i>	portāre	movēre	dūcere	capere	audire
<i>Perfect</i>	portāvisse	mōvisse	dūxisse	cēpisse	audivisse
<i>Future</i>	portātūrus	mōtūrus	ductūrus	captūrus	audītūrus
	esse	esse	esse	esse	esse

## PASSIVE

<i>Present</i>	portārī	movērī	dūcī	capī	audīrī
<i>Perfect</i>	portātus	mōtus	ductus	captus	audītus
	esse	esse	esse	esse	esse
<i>Future</i>	portātum	mōtum	ductum	captum	audītum
	irī	irī	irī	irī	irī

455

## PARTICIPLES

## ACTIVE

<i>Present</i>	portāns	movēns	dūcēns	capīēns	audiēns
<i>Future</i>	portātūrus	mōtūrus	ductūrus	captūrus	audītūrus

## PASSIVE

<i>Perfect</i>	portātus	mōtus	ductus	captus	audītus
----------------	----------	-------	--------	--------	---------

<sup>1</sup>The present imperative active of the third conjugation regularly ends in -e, as *mitte*, *send*. A few verbs have lost the -e: *dic*, *dūc*, *fac*, *fer*.

cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus sum	<i>try</i>
vereor, verērī, veritus sum	<i>fear</i>
sequor, sequī, secūtus sum	<i>follow</i>
prōgredior, prōgredī, prōgressus sum	<i>advance</i>
partior, partīrī, partītus sum	<i>share</i>

<i>I try</i>	<i>I fear</i>	<i>I follow</i>	<i>I advance</i>	<i>I share</i>
cōnor	vereor	sequor	prōgredior	partior
cōnāris	verēris	sequeris	prōgrederis	partiris
cōnātur	verētur	sequitur	prōgreditur	partitur
cōnāmur	verēmur	sequimur	prōgredimur	partimur
cōnāminī	verēminī	sequiminī	prōgrediminī	partiminī
cōnantur	verentur	sequuntur	prōgrediuntur	partiuntur

<i>I was trying</i>	<i>I was fearing</i>	<i>I was following</i>	<i>I was advancing</i>	<i>I was sharing</i>
cōnābar	verēbar	sequēbar	prōgrediēbar	partiēbar
cōnābāris	verēbāris	sequēbāris	prōgrediēbāris	partiēbāris
cōnābātur	verēbātur	sequēbātur	prōgrediēbātur	partiēbātur
cōnābāmur	verēbāmur	sequēbāmur	prōgrediēbāmur	partiēbāmur
cōnābāminī	verēbāminī	sequēbāminī	prōgrediēbāminī	partiēbāminī
cōnābantur	verēbantur	sequēbantur	prōgrediēbantur	partiēbantur

<i>I shall try</i>	<i>I shall fear</i>	<i>I shall follow</i>	<i>I shall advance</i>	<i>I shall share</i>
cōnābor	verēbor	sequar	prōgrediar	partiar
cōnāberis	verēberis	sequēris	prōgrediēris	partiēris
cōnābitur	verēbitur	sequētur	prōgrediētur	partiētur
cōnābimur	verēbimur	sequēmur	prōgrediēmur	partiēmur
cōnābiminī	verēbiminī	sequēminī	prōgrediēminī	partiēminī
cōnābuntur	verēbuntur	sequentur	prōgredientur	partientur

## PERFECT INDICATIVE

<i>I have tried</i>	<i>I have feared</i>	<i>I have followed</i>
cōnātus { sum es est	veritus { sum es est	secūtus { sum es est
cōnātī { sumus estis sunt	veritī { sumus estis sunt	secūtī { sumus estis sunt
<i>I have advanced</i>	<i>I have shared</i>	
prōgressus { sum es est	partitus { sum es est	
prōgressī { sumus estis sunt	partitī { sumus estis sunt	

## PLUPERFECT INDICATIVE

<i>I had tried</i>	<i>I had feared</i>	<i>I had followed</i>
cōnātus { eram erās erat	veritus { eram erās erat	secūtus { eram erās erat
cōnātī { erāmus erātis erant	veritī { erāmus erātis erant	secūtī { erāmus erātis erant
<i>I had advanced</i>	<i>I had shared</i>	
prōgressus { eram erās erat	partitus { eram erās erat	
prōgressī { erāmus erātis erant	partitī { erāmus erātis erant	

## FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE

<i>I shall have tried</i>	<i>I shall have feared</i>	<i>I shall have followed</i>
cōnātus { erō eris erit	veritus { erō eris erit	secūtus { erō eris erit

cōnātī	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{erimus} \\ \text{eritis} \\ \text{erunt} \end{array} \right.$	veritī	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{erimus} \\ \text{eritis} \\ \text{erunt} \end{array} \right.$	secūtī	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{erimus} \\ \text{eritis} \\ \text{erunt} \end{array} \right.$
--------	---	--------	---	--------	---

*I shall have advanced*

*I shall have shared*

prōgressus

 $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{erō} \\ \text{eris} \\ \text{erit} \end{array} \right.$ 

partītus

 $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{erō} \\ \text{eris} \\ \text{erit} \end{array} \right.$ 

prōgressī

 $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{erimus} \\ \text{eritis} \\ \text{erunt} \end{array} \right.$ 

partītī

 $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{erimus} \\ \text{eritis} \\ \text{erunt} \end{array} \right.$ 

463

# PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

cōner

verear

sequar

cōnēris

vereāris

sequāris

cōnētur

vereātur

sequātur

cōnēmur

vereāmur

sequāmur

cōnēminī

vereāminī

sequāminī

cōnentur

vereantur

sequantur

prōgrediar

partiar

prōgrediāris

partiāris

prōgrediātur

partiātur

prōgrediāmur

partiāmur

prōgrediāminī

partiāminī

prōgrediantur

partiantur

464

# IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

cōnārer

verērer

sequerer

cōnārēris

verērēris

sequerēris

cōnārētur

verērētur

sequerētur

cōnārēmur

verērēmur

sequerēmur

cōnārēminī

verērēminī

sequerēminī

cōnārentur

verērentur

sequerentur



prōgrederer  
prōgrederēris  
prōgrederētur  
  
prōgrederēmur  
prōgrederēmini  
prōgrederentur

partīrer  
partīrēris  
partīrētur  
  
partīrēmur  
partīrēmini  
partīrentur

465

PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

cōnātus	$\begin{cases} \text{sim} \\ \text{sīs} \\ \text{sit} \end{cases}$	veritus	$\begin{cases} \text{sim} \\ \text{sīs} \\ \text{sit} \end{cases}$	secūtus	$\begin{cases} \text{sim} \\ \text{sīs} \\ \text{sit} \end{cases}$
cōnātī	$\begin{cases} \text{sīmus} \\ \text{sītis} \\ \text{sint} \end{cases}$	veritī	$\begin{cases} \text{sīmus} \\ \text{sītis} \\ \text{sint} \end{cases}$	secūtī	$\begin{cases} \text{sīmus} \\ \text{sītis} \\ \text{sint} \end{cases}$
prōgressus	$\begin{cases} \text{sim} \\ \text{sīs} \\ \text{sit} \end{cases}$	partītus	$\begin{cases} \text{sim} \\ \text{sīs} \\ \text{sit} \end{cases}$		
prōgressī	$\begin{cases} \text{sīmus} \\ \text{sītis} \\ \text{sint} \end{cases}$	partītī	$\begin{cases} \text{sīmus} \\ \text{sītis} \\ \text{sint} \end{cases}$		

466

PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

cōnātus	$\begin{cases} \text{essem} \\ \text{essēs} \\ \text{esset} \end{cases}$	veritus	$\begin{cases} \text{essem} \\ \text{essēs} \\ \text{esset} \end{cases}$	secūtus	$\begin{cases} \text{essem} \\ \text{essēs} \\ \text{esset} \end{cases}$
cōnātī	$\begin{cases} \text{essēmus} \\ \text{essētis} \\ \text{essent} \end{cases}$	veritī	$\begin{cases} \text{essēmus} \\ \text{essētis} \\ \text{essent} \end{cases}$	secūtī	$\begin{cases} \text{essēmus} \\ \text{essētis} \\ \text{essent} \end{cases}$
prōgressus	$\begin{cases} \text{essem} \\ \text{essēs} \\ \text{esset} \end{cases}$	partītus	$\begin{cases} \text{essem} \\ \text{essēs} \\ \text{esset} \end{cases}$		
prōgressī	$\begin{cases} \text{essēmus} \\ \text{essētis} \\ \text{essent} \end{cases}$	partītī	$\begin{cases} \text{essēmus} \\ \text{essētis} \\ \text{essent} \end{cases}$		

467

## PRESENT IMPERATIVE

*Singular*  
*Plural*

cōnāre	verēre	sequere
cōnāminī	verēminī	sequiminī
prōgredere	partīre	
prōgrediminī	partiminī	

468

## INFINITIVES

*Pres.*  
*Perf.*  
*Fut.*

cōnārī	verērī	sequī
cōnātus esse	veritus esse	secūtus esse
cōnātūrus esse	veritūrus esse	secūtūrus esse
prōgredī	partīrī	
prōgressus esse	partītus esse	
prōgressūrus esse	partītūrus esse	

469

## PARTICIPLES

*Pres. Act.*  
*Perf. Act.*  
*Fut. Act.*

cōnāns	verēns	sequēns
cōnātus	veritus	secūtus
cōnātūrus	veritūrus	secūtūrus
prōgrediēns	partiēns	
prōgressus	partītus	
prōgressūrus	partītūrus	

470

## THE IRREGULAR VERB SUM

sum, esse, fuī, be

## INDICATIVE

## SUBJUNCTIVE

## PRESENT

*I am*

sum	sumus	sim	sīmus
es	estis	sīs	sītis
est	sunt	sit	sint

## IMPERFECT

*I was*

eram	erāmus	essem	essēmus
erās	erātis	essēs	essētis
erat	erant	esset	essent

FUTURE

*I shall be*

erō	erimus
eris	eritis
erit	erunt

INFINITIVES

<i>Pres.</i>	esse
<i>Perf.</i>	fuisse
<i>Fut.</i>	futūrus esse or fore

PERFECT

*I have been*

fuī	fuimus	fuerim	fuerimus
fuisti	fuistis	fueris	fueritis
fuit	fuērunt(-ēre)	fuerit	fuerint

PLUPERFECT

*I had been*

fueram	fuerāmus	fuissem	fuissēmus
fuerās	fuerātis	fuissēs	fuissētis
fuerat	fuerant	fuisset	fuissent

FUTURE PERFECT

*I shall have been*

fuerō	fuerimus
fueris	fueritis
fuerit	fuerint

PARTICIPLE

— —
— —
futūrus, -a, -um

IMPERATIVE

es, be      este, be

471

THE IRREGULAR VERB POSSUM

possum, posse, potuī, be able

INDICATIVE

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

*I am able, I can*

possum	possumus	possim	possimus
potes	potestis	possis	possitis
potest	possunt	possit	possint

IMPERFECT

*I was able, I could*

poteram	poterāmus	possem	possēmus
poterās	poterātis	possēs	possētis
poterat	poterant	posset	possent

## FUTURE

*I shall be able*

poterō	poterimus
poteris	poteritis
poterit	poterunt

## INFINITIVES

*Present* posse  
*Perfect* potuisse

## PERFECT

*I have been able*

potuī	potuimus	potuerim	potuerimus
potuistī	potuistis	potueris	potueritis
potuit	potuerunt	potuerit	potuerint

## PLUPERFECT

*I had been able*

potueram	potuerāmus	potuissem	potuissēmus
potuerās	potuerātis	potuissēs	potuissētis
potuerat	potuerant	potuisset	potuissent

## FUTURE PERFECT

*I shall have been able*

## PARTICIPLES

potuerō	potuerimus	<i>Present</i> potēns, potentis
potueris	potueritis	(used as adjective), <i>powerful</i>
potuerit	potuerint	

472

THE IRREGULAR VERB *EŌ**eō, ire, iī (ivī), itum, go*

## INDICATIVE

## SUBJUNCTIVE

## PRESENT

*I go*

eō	īmus	eam	eāmus
is	ītis	eās	eātis
it	eunt	eat	eant

## IMPERFECT

*I was going*

ībam	ībāmus	īrem	irēmus
ībās	ībātis	irēs	irētis
ībat	ībant	īret	irent

# FUTURE

*I shall go*

ibō	ibimus
ibis	ibitis
ibit	ibunt

## INFINITIVES

Pres. ire
Perf. iisse
Fut. itūrus esse

# PERFECT

*I have gone*

iī	iimus	ierim	ierimus
iistī	iistis	ierīs	ierītis
iit	iērunt	ierit	ierint

# PLUPERFECT

*I had gone*

ieram	ierāmus	iissem	iissēmus
ierās	ierātis	iissēs	iissētis
ierat	ierant	iisset	iissent

# FUTURE PERFECT

*I shall have gone*

ierō	ierimus
ieris	ieritis
ierit	ierint

## PARTICIPLES

Pres. Act. iēns (euntis)
Fut. Act. itūrus

# IMPERATIVE

i, go                      ite, go

# LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

## A

**ā, ab** *prep. with abl. (ab before vowels or h; ā or ab before consonants)* from; by

**abdō, abdere, abdidī, abditum** *tr.* hide; **sē abdere** *intr.* hide

**abeō, abire, abiī, abitum** go away, depart

**abhinc** *adv.* ago

**abiciō, abicere, abiēcī, abiectum** throw away

**ab sinistrā parte** on the left

**abstineō, abstinēre, abstinuī, abstentum** *intr.* refrain, abstain

**absum, abesse, āfuī** *intr.* be absent, be distant

**ac** *conj. used only before consonants* and, and also

**accēdō, accēdere, accessī, accessum** *with ad with acc.,* come to, draw near, approach

**accidō, accidere, accidī** *intr.* happen

**accipiō, accipere, accēpī, acceptum** *tr.* receive, welcome

**ācer, ācris, ācre** *adj.* sharp, keen, fierce

**Achillēs, Achillis** *m.* Achilles, a famous Greek hero

**aciēs, aciēī** *f.* line of battle, battle array; **aciem instruere** to draw up a line of battle

**ācritēr** *adv.* (ācrius, ācerrimē) sharply, fiercely

**ad** *prep. with acc.* to, towards, up to

**addō, addere, addidī, additum** add

**addūcō, addūcere, addūxī, adductum** *tr.* lead to, bring, influence

**adeō, adire, adiī, aditum** approach, advance; visit

**ā dextrō cornū** on the right wing

**adipīscor, adipīscī, adeptus sum** *dep.* gain, attain, acquire

**aditus, aditūs** *m.* approach, access, means of access

**administrō, administrāre, administrāvī, administrātum** administer, manage, control

**adorior, adorīrī, adortus sum** *dep.* attack, assault

**adsum, adesse, adfuī** *intr.* be near, be at hand, attend

**adulēscēns, adulēscētis** *m.* young man

**adventus, adventūs** *m.* arrival



**adversus, -a, -um** *adj.* facing, fronting  
**aedificium, aedificiī** *n.* building  
**aedificō, aedificāre, aedificāvī, aedificātum** *tr.* build  
**aeger, aegra, aegrum** *adj.* sick, ill  
**aegrē** *adv.* (aegrius, aegerrimē) scarcely, with difficulty  
**Aegyptus, -ī** *f.* Egypt  
**Aenēās, Aenēae** *m.* Aeneas  
**aequus, -a, -um** *adj.* just, right; even, level  
**aestās, aestātis** *f.* summer  
**aetās, aetātis** *f.* age  
**afferō (adferō), afferre, attulī, allātum** bring, bring word  
**Āfrica, -ae** *f.* Africa  
**ā fronte** in front, in the van  
**ager, agrī** *m.* field, land  
**aggredior, aggredi, aggressus sum** *dep.* attack  
**agmen, agminis** *n.* army on the march, column  
**agnus, -ī** *m.* lamb  
**agō, agere, ēgī, āctum** *tr.* drive; do; **agere cum** to treat with, to confer with  
**agricola, -ae** *m.* farmer  
**ā latere** on the flank  
**Alba Longa, Albae Longae** *f.* Alba Longa  
**Albānus, -a, -um** *adj.* Alban  
**albus, -a, -um** *adj.* white  
**Alexander, -drī** *m.* Alexander  
**Alexandriā, -ae** *f.* Alexandria, the city in Egypt founded by Alexander the Great  
**aliēnus, -a, -um** *adj.* belonging to another; unfavorable; **aliēnō locō** on unfavorable ground

**aliquī, aliqua, aliquod** *adj.* some  
**aliquis, aliquid** *pron.* someone, something  
**alius, alia, aliud** *adj.* other, another; **aliī . . . aliī** some . . . others  
**Alpēs, Alpium** *f.* the Alps  
**altē** *adv.* loftily, on high  
**alter, altera, alterum** *adj.* the other (of two); **alter . . . alter** the one . . . the other  
**altus, -a, -um** *adj.* high, deep, tall  
**alveus, alvei** *m.* channel, river-bed  
**Ambiorix, Ambiorigis** *m.* Ambiorix  
**ambulō, ambulāre, ambulāvī, ambulātum** *intr.* walk  
**amicitia, amicitiae** *f.* friendship; **amicitiam cōfirmāre** to establish friendship  
**amicus, -a, -um** *adj.* friendly, kind  
**amicus, -ī** *m.* friend  
**āmittō, āmittere, āmisī, āmissum** *tr.* lose  
**amō, amāre, amāvī, amātum** *tr.* love  
**amoenus, -a, -um** *adj.* pleasant, delightful  
**amor, amōris** *m.* love  
**Amphissus, -ī** *m.* Amphissus  
**Amūlius, Amūliī** *m.* Amulius  
**angustiae, -ārum** *fem. pl.* pass, defile  
**animadvertō, animadvertere, animadvertī, animadversum** notice, observe  
**animal, animālis** *n.* animal

<b>animus, -ī</b> <i>m.</i> soul, heart, spirit; courage	<b>Arethūsa, -ae</b> <i>f.</i> Arethusa, a nymph
<b>annus, -ī</b> <i>m.</i> year	<b>arma, -ōrum</b> <i>n. pl.</i> arms; <b>arma capere</b> to take up arms; <b>arma dēpōnere</b> to lay down arms
<b>ānser, ānseris</b> <i>m.</i> goose	<b>armātus, -a, -um</b> armed
<b>ante</b> <i>prep. with acc.</i> before, in front of	<b>arō, arāre, arāvī, arātum</b> <i>tr.</i> plough
<b>ante</b> <i>adv.</i> before, formerly	<b>arripiō, arripere, arripuī, arreptum</b> <i>tr.</i> snatch up
<b>anteā</b> <i>adv.</i> before, previously	<b>ars, artis</b> <i>f.</i> art, skill
<b>antequam</b> <i>conj.</i> before	<b>arx, arcis</b> <i>f.</i> citadel, castle
<b>Antiochus, -ī</b> <i>m.</i> Antiochus	<b>ascendō, ascendere, ascendi, ascēsum</b> <i>tr.</i> climb, embark on
<b>antīquus, -a, -um</b> <i>adj.</i> ancient	<b>Asia, -ae</b> <i>f.</i> Asia
<b>anus, anūs</b> <i>f.</i> old woman	<b>astrum, -ī</b> <i>n.</i> star
<b>aperiō, aperīre, aperuī, apertum</b> <i>tr.</i> open, reveal, disclose	<b>at</b> <i>conj.</i> but, however
<b>apertus, -a, -um</b> <i>adj.</i> open, unprotected, exposed	<b>ā tergō</b> in the rear
<b>appāreō, appārēre, appāruī, appāritum</b> <i>intr.</i> appear	<b>Athēnae, -ārum</b> <i>f. pl.</i> Athens
<b>appellō, appellāre, appellāvī, appellātum</b> <i>tr.</i> name, call	<b>atque</b> <i>conj.</i> and, and also
<b>Appius Claudius, Appii Claudii</b> <i>m.</i> Appius Claudius	<b>atrōx (gen. atrōcis), atrōx, atrōx</b> <i>adj.</i> fierce
<b>appropinquō, appropinquāre, appropinquāvī, appropinquātum</b> <i>intr.</i> approach	<b>attentus, -a, -um</b> <i>adj.</i> careful
<b>aptus, -a, -um</b> <i>adj.</i> suitable, suited, fit	<b>attonitus, -a, -um</b> <i>adj.</i> thunder-struck, astounded
<b>apud</b> <i>prep. with acc.</i> among, before, near	<b>auctor, auctōris</b> <i>m.</i> advocate, adviser
<b>aqua, -ae</b> <i>f.</i> water	<b>auctōritās, auctōritātis</b> <i>f.</i> influence, authority
<b>āra, -ae</b> <i>f.</i> altar	<b>audācia, -ae</b> <i>f.</i> boldness, daring
<b>arbitror, arbitrārī, arbitrātus sum</b> <i>dep.</i> think	<b>audācter</b> <i>adv.</i> boldly
<b>arcessō, arcessere, arcessivī, arcessitum</b> <i>tr.</i> summon, send for	<b>audāx (gen. audācis), audāx, audāx</b> <i>adj.</i> bold, daring
<b>ārdeō, ārdēre, ārsī</b> be on fire, burn	<b>audeō, audēre, ausus sum</b> <i>semi-dep.</i> dare, venture
<b>arduus, -a, -um</b> <i>adj.</i> steep, tall	<b>audiō, audīre, audīvī, auditum</b> <i>tr.</i> hear, listen to
<b>arēna, -ae</b> <i>f.</i> an arena	<b>auferō, auferre, abstulī, ablātum</b> <i>tr.</i> remove, take away

**augeō, augēre, auxī, auctum** *tr.*  
make greater, increase; *in pass.*  
*intr.* become greater, increase

**augurium, auguriī** *n.* augury,  
omen

**Aulus Postumius, Aulī Postumī**  
*m.* Aulus Postumius

**aureus, -a, -um** *adj.* golden

**aurum, ī** *n.* gold

**aut** *conj.* or; **aut . . . aut** either . . .  
or

**autem** *postpositive conj.* but,  
however, moreover

**autumnus, -ī** *m.* autumn

**auxilium, auxiliī** *n.* help, aid;  
**auxilium ferre** to bring aid, to  
give aid *with dat.*

**auxilia, auxiliōrum** *n. pl.*  
auxiliaries, reinforcements

**avārus, -a, -um** *adj.* greedy

**avē, avēte** *imper. of aveō, be well*  
hail! farewell!

**Aventīnus, -ī** *m.* the Aventine,  
one of the seven hills of Rome

**āvertō, āvertere, āvertī, āversum**  
turn away, avert

**avunculus, -ī** *m.* uncle

**avus, -ī** *m.* grandfather

## B

**barbarus, -ī** *m.* native, barbarian

**bellum, -ī** *n.* war; **bellum gerere**  
to wage war; **bellum indicere**  
to declare war; **bellum inferre**  
to make war on *with dat.*; **bel-**  
**lum parāre** to prepare for war

**bene** *adv.* well

**beneficium, -ī** *n.* kind deed,  
service

**Beneventum, -ī** *n.* Beneventum  
a city in central Italy

**benignē** *adv.* kindly

**bis** *num. adv.* twice

**Bithŷnia, -ae** *f.* Bithynia, a  
province in Asia Minor

**bonum, -ī** *n.* a good thing;  
treasure

**bonus, -a, -um** good

**bōs, bovis** *m. or f.* ox, cow

**Boudicca, -ae** *f.* Boadicea

**Brennus, -ī** *m.* Brennus

**brevī** *adv.* in a short time, quickly

**brevis, brevis, breve** short

**Britannia, -ae** *f.* Britain

**Britannus, -ī** *m.* a Briton

**Bŷcephala, -ōrum** *n.* Bucephala,  
a town founded by Alexander

**Bŷcephalas, -ae** *m.* Bucephalas,  
the horse of Alexander

## C

**cadō, cadere, cecidī, cāsum** *intr.*  
fall, fall dead

**caecitās, caecitātis** *f.* blindness

**caedēs, caedis** *f.* slaughter

**caelum, -ī** *n.* sky, heaven

**Caesar, Caesaris** *m.* Caesar,  
*in particular, Gaius Julius*  
Caesar

**calamitās, calamitātis** *f.*

misfortune, disaster, calamity;

**calamitātem accipere** to suffer  
disaster or defeat

**callidus, -a, -um** clever, shrewd

**camera, -ae** *f.* room

**Camillus, -ī** *m.* Camillus

**campus, -ī** *m.* plain, field

**canis, canis** (*gen. pl. canum*) *m.*  
 dog  
**canō, canere, cecinī, cantum** *tr.*  
 and *intr. sing*  
**capiō, capere, cēpī, captum** take,  
 capture, catch; **cōnsilium**  
**capere** to form a plan  
**captivus, -ī** *m.* captive  
**caput, capitis** *n.* head; capital  
**carrus, -ī** *m.* cart  
**Carthāginiēnsis, Carthāginiēnsis**  
*m.* a Carthaginian  
**Carthāgō, Carthāginis** *f.*  
 Carthage  
**cārus, -a, -um** dear  
**castellum, -ī** *n.* fort, stronghold  
**Castor, Castoris** *m.* Castor, *the*  
*son of Jupiter and Leda*  
**castra, -ōrum** *n. pl.* camp; **castra**  
**pōnere** to pitch camp  
**cāsus, cāsūs** *m.* event, accident,  
 misfortune  
**catulus, -ī** *m.* cub  
**causa, -ae** *f.* cause, reason  
**causā** *prep. with gen.* for the sake  
 of  
**cavea, -ae** *f.* cage, coop  
**cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessum** *intr.*  
 give way, retire, yield  
**celer** (*gen. celeris*), **celeris,**  
**celere** swift  
**celeritās, celeritātis** *f.* swiftness,  
 speed  
**celeriter** *adv.* quickly, swiftly  
**cēlō, cēlāre, cēlāvī, cēlātum** *tr.*  
 hide, conceal  
**cēna, -ae** *f.* dinner  
**centum** *indecl. num. adj.* one  
 hundred  
**centuriō, centuriōnis** *m.* centurion

**Cerēs, Cereris** *f.* Ceres, *the*  
*goddess of agriculture*  
**certāmen, certāminis** *n.* fight,  
 contest  
**certē, adv.** certainly, surely  
**certus, -a, -um** sure, certain;  
**certiōrem facere** to inform  
**cēteri, -ae, -a** *adj. pl.* the others,  
 the rest  
**Cicerō, Cicerōnis** *m.* Marcus  
 Tullius Cicero, *the orator*  
**Cilicia, -ae** *f.* Cilicia, *a country*  
*in Asia Minor*  
**Cīneās, Cīneae** *m.* Cineas  
**circiter** *adv.* about, approximately  
**circum** *prep. with acc.* around  
**circumeō, circumīre, circumī,**  
**circumitum** *tr.* go around  
**circumspiciō, circumspicere,**  
**circumspēxī, circumspectum**  
 look around  
**circumveniō, circumvenīre,**  
**circumvēnī, circumventum** *tr.*  
 surround  
**citrā** *prep. with acc.* on this side of  
**cīvīlis, cīvīlis, cīvīle** civil, civic  
**cīvis, cīvis** *m. and f.* citizen  
**cīvitās, cīvitātis** *f.* citizenship;  
 state  
**clādēs, clādis** *f.* disaster, defeat  
**clam** *adv.* secretly  
**clāmō, clāmāre, clāmāvī,**  
**clāmātum** *intr.* cry out, call  
**clāmor, clāmōris** *m.* shouting, din  
**clārus, -a, -um** clear, bright,  
 famous  
**classis, classis** *f.* fleet  
**claudō, claudere, clausī, clausum**  
*tr.* close, shut in  
**clēmentia, -ae** *f.* mercy, clemency

cliēns, clientis (*gen. pl.*  
 clientium) *m. and f.* client  
 Cloelia, -ae *f.* Cloelia, a Roman  
 maid  
 coepī, coepisse began  
 cōgitō, cōgitāre, cōgitāvī,  
 cōgitātum think, ponder,  
 intend  
 cognōscō, cognōscere, cognōvī,  
 cognitum *tr.* learn; *in perfect*  
*tenses* know  
 cōgō, cōgere, coēgī, coāctum *tr.*  
 collect; compel  
 cohors, cohortis *f.* cohort  
 cohortor, cohortāri, cohortātus  
 sum *dep.* encourage, urge,  
 exhort  
 Collatinus, -ī *m.* Collatinus  
 colligō, colligere, collēgī,  
 collēctum gather, collect  
 collis, collis (*gen. pl. collium*) *m.*  
 hill  
 collocō, collocāre, collocāvī,  
 collocātum *tr.* place, station  
 colloquium, -ī *n.* conversation,  
 conference  
 color, colōris *m.* color  
 Colossēum, -ī *n.* the Colosseum  
 comes, comitis *m. and f.*  
 companion  
 commercium, -ī *n.* trade,  
 commerce  
 committō, committere, commisi,  
 commissum *tr.* entrust, commit  
 commodō, commodāre,  
 commodāvī, commodātum lend  
 commūnis, commūnis, commūne  
 common, general  
 commūtātiō, commūtātiōnis *f.*  
 exchange

compleō, complēre, complēvī,  
 complētum *tr.* fill  
 complūrēs, complūra *pl. adj.*  
 several  
 comportō, comportāre,  
 comportāvī, comportātum *tr.*  
 bring together, collect  
 concidō, concidere, concidī  
*intr.* collapse, fall  
 concitō, concitāre, concitāvī,  
 concitātum rouse, stir up, incite  
 condiciō, condiciōnis *f.*  
 agreement, terms  
 conditor, conditōris *m.* founder  
 condō, condere, condidī,  
 conditum *tr.* found, establish  
 cōnferō, cōnferre, contulī  
 collātum bring together, collect  
 cōnfertus, -a, -um compact,  
 close, in close array  
 cōnfestim *adv.* at once,  
 immediately  
 cōnfiō, cōnficere, cōnfēcī,  
 cōnfectum *tr.* complete, finish  
 cōnfidō, cōnfidere, cōnfishus sum  
*semi-dep.* trust, rely on *with dat.*  
 cōnfirmō, cōnfirmāre,  
 cōnfirmāvī, cōnfirmātum  
 strengthen, encourage,  
 establish  
 coniciō, conicere, coniēcī,  
 coniectum hurl, throw  
 coniungō, coniungere, coniūnxī,  
 coniūnctum *tr.* join together,  
 unite  
 coniūnx, coniugis *f.* wife  
 cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus sum *dep.*  
 try, attempt  
 cōnscrībō, cōnscrībere, cōnscrīpsī,  
 cōnscrīptum enroll, enlist

cōsecrō, cōsecrāre, cōsecrāvī,  
 cōsecrātum consecrate;  
 doom to destruction  
 cōsequor, cōsequī, cōsecūtus  
 sum *dep.* overtake, pursue  
 cōsīdō, cōsīdere, cōsēdī,  
 cōsessum settle, encamp  
 cōsīlium, -ī *n.* plan, advice;  
 council of war; cōsīlium  
 capere to form a plan  
 cōsistō, cōsistere, cōstitī  
 halt, take up position  
 cōspectus, cōspectūs *m.* sight,  
 view  
 cōspiciō, cōspicere, cōspēxī,  
 cōspectum see, catch sight of  
 cōstantia, -ae *f.* firmness, reso-  
 lution  
 Cōstantinus, -ī *m.* Constantine  
 cōstituō, cōstituere, cōstituī,  
 cōstitutum decide, determine;  
 arrange  
 cōsuēscō, cōsuēscere, cōsuēvī,  
 cōsuētum *intr.* become  
 accustomed  
 cōsuētūdō, cōsuētūdinis *f.*  
 custom, habit  
 cōsul, cōsulis *m.* consul  
 cōsulō, cōsulere, cōsulūī,  
 cōsultum *tr.* consult, ask the  
 advice of; *intr.* take thought  
 for, consult the interests of,  
 with *dat.*  
 cōsūmō, cōsūmere, cōsūmpsī,  
 cōsūptum *tr.* spend, con-  
 sume, destroy  
 contemnō, contemnere, con-  
 tempsī, contemptum *tr.* despise  
 contendō, contendere, contendī,

contentum *intr.* strive, hasten;  
 fight  
 continēō, continēre, continuī,  
 contentum *tr.* hem in, restrain;  
 bound  
 contrā *prep.* with *acc.* against,  
 facing  
 contrōversia, -ae *f.* controversy,  
 dispute  
 contumēlia, -ae *f.* insult  
 conveniō, convenire, convēnī,  
 conventum *intr.* come together,  
 assemble  
 convertō, convertere, convertī,  
 conversum *tr.* turn  
 convocō, convocāre, convocāvī,  
 convocātum *tr.* call together,  
 summon, assemble  
 cōpia, -ae *f.* plenty, supply,  
 abundance; *pl.* troops, forces  
 Cornēlia, -ae *f.* Cornelia  
 cornū, cornūs *n.* horn; wing (*of an*  
*army*)  
 corpus, corporis *n.* body  
 Corsica, -ae *f.* Corsica  
 cotīdiē *adv.* daily  
 crās *adv.* tomorrow  
 Crassus, -ī *m.* Lucius Licinius  
 Crassus, a Roman orator  
 crēber, crēbra, crēbrum fre-  
 quent, numerous  
 crēdō, crēdere, crēdidī, crēditum  
 believe, entrust with *dat.*  
 creō, creāre, creāvī, creatum *tr.*  
 elect, make, create  
 Creūsa, -ae *f.* Creusa  
 crūdēlis, crūdēlis, crūdēle cruel  
 crūdēlītās, crūdēlītātis *f.*  
 cruelty  
 crūdēliter *adv.* cruelly



**culter, cultrī** *m.* knife  
**cum** *prep.* with *abl.* with, in company with; in conflict with  
**cum** *conj.* when, while, whenever; since; although  
**cum primum** *conj.* as soon as  
**cupiditās, cupiditātis** *f.* eagerness, desire  
**Cupīdō, Cupīdinis** *m.* Cupid, the god of love  
**cupidus, -a, -um** eager, desirous, ambitious  
**cupiō, cupere, cupīvī, cupītum** *tr.* wish, desire  
**cūr?** *adv.* why?  
**cūra, -ae** *f.* care, anxiety  
**cūrābilis, cūrābilis, cūrābile** curable  
**cūria, -ae** *f.* senate-house  
**cūrō, cūrāre, cūrāvī, cūrātum** *tr.* take care of, look after  
**currō, currere, cucurrī, cursum** *intr.* run  
**currus, currūs** *m.* chariot  
**custōdia, -ae** *f.* guard, protection; *f. pl.* guards, sentries  
**custōdiō, custōdire, custōdivī, custōdītum** guard  
**custōs, custōdis** *m.* guardian

## D

**damnō, damnāre, damnāvī, damnātum**, condemn  
**dē** *prep.* with *abl.* from, down from; about, concerning  
**dea, deae** *f.* goddess  
**dēbeō, dēbere, dēbuī, dēbitum** *tr.* owe, ought  
**decem** *indecl. num. adj.* ten

**decemvirī, -ōrum** *m. pl.* decemvirs, members of a commission of ten  
**dēcernō, dēcernere, dēcrēvī, dēcrētum** *tr.* decide, judge  
**decimus, -a, -um** tenth  
**dēcurrō, dēcurrere, dēcurrī, dēcursum** *intr.* run down, flow down  
**dēditiō, dēditiōnis** *f.* surrender  
**dēdō, dēdere, dēdidī, dēditum** *tr.* surrender, hand over  
**dēdūcō, dēdūcere, dēdūxī, dēductum** *tr.* lead away, withdraw  
**dēfectiō, dēfectiōnis** *f.* desertion, revolt  
**dēfendō, dēfendere, dēfendī, dēfensum** defend, protect  
**dēferō, dēferre, dētulī, dēlātum** carry down, bring, report  
**dēfessus, -a, -um** weary, tired  
**dēficiō, dēficere, dēfēcī, dēfectum** *intr.* desert, revolt  
**deinceps** *adv.* in succession  
**deinde** *adv.* then, afterwards  
**dēleō, dēlēre, dēlēvī, dēlētum** *tr.* destroy  
**dēligō, dēligere, dēlēgī, dēlēctum** *tr.* choose  
**dēmittō, dēmittere, dēmīsī, dēmīssum** lower, let down; *sē dēmittere* to descend  
**dēmōnstrō, dēmōnstrāre, dēmōnstrāvī, dēmōnstrātum** point out, mention  
**dēnūdō, dēnūdāre, dēnūdāvī, dēnūdātum** strip  
**dēnuō** *adv.* anew, once more

dēpōnō, dēpōnere, dēposui,  
 dēpositum lay down, put away  
 dērideō, dēridēre, dērisi,  
 dērisum *tr.* laugh at, mock  
 dēscendō, dēscendere, dēscendi,  
 dēscēsum *intr.* climb down,  
 descend  
 dēsiliō, dēsiliēre, dēsiluī,  
 dēsultum *intr.* leap down  
 dēsistō, dēsistere, dēstiti,  
 dēstitum *intr.* desist from,  
 abandon  
 dēspērō, dēspērāre, dēspērāvī,  
 dēspērātum *intr.* despair, lose  
 heart  
 dēspiciō, dēspicere, dēspēxi,  
 dēspectum *tr.* despise, look  
 down upon  
 dēsum, deesse, dēfui be lacking,  
 be wanting  
 dētrīmentum, -ī *n.* loss  
 deus, deī *m.* a god  
 dexter, -tra, -trum right  
 dicō, dicāre, dicāvī, dicātum  
 dedicate, consecrate  
 dicō, dicere, dixi, dictum say,  
 speak, tell  
 dictātor, dictātōris *m.* dictator  
 diēs, diēi *m.* day; diem dicere to  
 set a day  
 difficilis, difficilis, difficile hard,  
 difficult  
 difficultās, difficultātis *f.*  
 difficulty  
 digitus, -ī *m.* finger, finger  
 breadth  
 dignitās, dignitātis *f.* dignity,  
 grandeur, rank  
 dignus, -a, -um worthy  
 diligēns (*gen.* diligēntis),

diligēns, diligēns careful  
 diligēntia, -ae *f.* diligence, care  
 dīmittō, dīmittere, dīmisi,  
 dīmissum *tr.* send away,  
 dismiss  
 discēdō, discēdere, discessi,  
 discessum *intr.* depart,  
 withdraw; discēdere ab *with*  
*abl.* to withdraw from  
 discessus, discessūs *m.*  
 departure  
 discō, discere, didici learn  
 discordia, -ae *f.* discord, strife  
 dispōnō, dispōnere, disposui,  
 dispositum *tr.* place at  
 intervals, post  
 dissimilis, dissimilis, dissimile  
 unlike  
 distribuō, distribuere, distribuī,  
 distribūtum *tr.* divide,  
 distribute  
 diū *adv.* long, for a long time;  
*comp.* diūtius; *sup.* diūtissimē  
 dīves, dīvitis *adj.* rich  
 dīvidō, dīvidere, dīvisi, dīvisum  
*tr.* divide  
 dīvinus, -a, -um divine  
 dō, dare, dedi, datum *tr.* give  
 doceō, docēre, docui, doctum *tr.*  
 teach  
 dolor, dolōris *m.* grief, pain  
 dominus, -ī *m.* master, lord  
 domus, domūs *f.* house  
 dōnō, dōnāre, dōnāvī, dōnātum  
 give  
 dōnum, -ī *n.* gift, present  
 dormiō, dormīre, dormivī,  
 dormitum *intr.* sleep  
 dubitō, dubitāre, dubitāvī,  
 dubitātum *intr.* hesitate

dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum *tr.*  
lead  
dulcis, dulcis, dulce *sweet*  
dum *conj.* while  
duo, duae, duo *num. adj.* two  
duodecim *indecl. num. adj.*  
twelve  
duodēvigintī *indecl. num. adj.*  
eighteen  
dux, ducis *m.* leader, general

## E

ē *prep.* *see ex*  
edō, edere, ēdī, ēsum *tr.* eat  
ēdūcō, ēdūcere, ēdūxī, ēductum  
*tr.* lead out  
efficiō, efficere, effēcī, effectum  
*tr.* build, make; bring about,  
contrive  
effugiō, effugere, effūgī flee from,  
escape  
ego, meī *pers. pron.* I  
ēgredior, ēgredī, ēgressus sum  
*intr.* go out, depart from;  
nāvī ēgredī to disembark  
elephantus, -ī *m.* elephant  
ēmittō, ēmittere, ēmisī, ēmissum  
*tr.* send out  
emō, emere, ēmī, ēmptum *tr.* buy  
enim *postpositive conj.* for  
eō *adv.* thither, to that place  
eō, ire, iī, itum *intr.* go  
Ephesus, -ī *f.* Ephesus, a city in  
Asia Minor  
Ēpirōtae, -ārum *m. pl.* Epirotes,  
inhabitants of Epirus  
eques, equitis *m.* horseman;  
knight; *pl.* cavalry

equester, equestris, equestre  
*adj.* of cavalry, cavalry  
equitātus, equitātūs *m.* cavalry  
equus, -ī *m.* horse  
ergā *prep.* with *acc.* toward, with,  
in relation to  
errō, errāre, errāvī, errātum *intr.*  
wander  
ēruptiō, ēruptiōnis *f.* sally, sortie;  
ēruptiōnem facere to make a  
sortie  
et *conj.* and; et . . . et both . . . and  
etiam *conj. and adv.* even, also,  
still  
etiāmsī *conj.* even if  
Etrūscus, -ī *m.* an Etruscan  
etsī *conj.* although  
ex, ē *prep.* with *abl.* out of, from;  
in accordance with  
excēdō, excēdere, excessī,  
excessum *intr.* go out,  
withdraw  
excelsus, -a, -um high, lofty  
excitō, excitāre, excitāvī,  
excitātum *tr.* arouse, wake;  
incite  
ex cōsuētūdine according to  
custom  
exeō, exire, exiī, exitum *intr.* go  
forth, depart, leave (*with ex*  
*and abl.*)  
exercitus, exercitūs *m.* army  
exīstimō, exīstimāre, exīstimāvī,  
exīstimātum think, believe,  
suppose  
exitus, exitūs *m.* way out, exit  
ex omnibus partibus on all  
sides  
expeditus, -a, -um *adj.* in light  
marching order

expellō, expellere, expulī,  
 expulsum *tr.* drive out  
 experientia, -ae *f.* experience  
 explorātor, explorātōris *m.* scout  
 explorō, explorāre, explorāvī,  
 explorātum *tr.* examine,  
 reconnoiter  
 expugnō, expugnāre, expugnāvī,  
 expugnātum storm, capture  
 exspectō, exspectāre, exspectāvī,  
 exspectātum *tr.* await, wait for  
 exterior, exterius *comp. adj.* outer  
 exterus, -a, -um *adj.* outer,  
 outside  
 extimus or extrēmus *superl. adj.*  
 outermost  
 extrā *prep. with acc.* beyond

## F

fābula, -ae *f.* story  
 faciēs, faciēī *f.* form, face,  
 appearance  
 facile *adv.* easily  
 facilis, facilis, facile easy  
 faciō, facere, fecī, factum *tr.* do,  
 make; cause  
 factum, -ī *n.* deed  
 facultās, facultātis *f.* opportunity,  
 means; facultātem dare to give  
 an opportunity  
 Falērii, -ōrum *m.* Falerii  
 Faliscī, -ōrum *m.* Falisci,  
 inhabitants of Falerii  
 fallō, fallere, fefellī, falsum cheat,  
 deceive  
 falsus, -a, -um false  
 falx, falcis *f.* knife, scythe  
 fāma, -ae *f.* reputation, renown

famēs, famis *f.* hunger; *abl. sing.*  
 famē  
 familia, -ae *f.* family  
 familiāris, familiāris *m.* intimate  
 friend  
 fās (*nom. and acc. sing. only*) *n.*  
 right, law  
 fātum, -ī *n.* fate  
 Faustulus, -ī *m.* Faustulus  
 faveō, favēre, fāvī, fautum be  
 favorable to, favor *with dat.*  
 fēliciter *adv.* happily  
 fēlix (*gen. fēlicis*), fēlix, fēlix  
 happy  
 fēmina, -ae *f.* woman  
 ferē *adv.* almost, nearly  
 ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum *tr.* bear,  
 carry; lēgem ferre to propose  
 a bill  
 ferrum, -ī *n.* iron; sword  
 fidēlis, fidēlis, fidēle faithful,  
 loyal  
 fidēliter *adv.* faithfully  
 fidēs, fideī *f.* faith, loyalty  
 fīlia, -ae *f.* daughter  
 fīlius, -ī *m.* son  
 fīnis, fīnis *m.* end; *pl.* boundaries,  
 territory; fīnem (*with gen.*)  
 facere to make an end (of)  
 fīnitimī, fīnitimōrum *m. pl.*  
 neighbors  
 fīnitimus, -a, -um neighboring,  
 adjacent  
 fīō, fierī, factus sum *used as*  
*passive of faciō* be made,  
 become, happen  
 fīrmus, -a, -um strong, powerful  
 flamma, -ae *f.* flame  
 flōreō, flōrēre, flōruī flourish  
 flōs, flōris *m.* flower

flūmen, flūminis *n.* river  
 fluvius, fluvii *m.* river  
 foedus, foederis *n.* treaty  
 fōns, fontis *m.* spring, fountain  
 forsan *adv.* perhaps  
 fortasse *adv.* perhaps  
 forte *adv.* by chance  
 fortis, fortis, forte brave  
 fortiter *adv.* bravely, strongly  
 fortūna, -ae *f.* fortune, chance,  
 good fortune  
 forum, -ī *n.* market-place, Forum  
 fossa, -ae *f.* trench, moat  
 frangō, frangere, frēgī, frāctum  
*tr.* break, wreck  
 frāter, frātris *m.* brother  
 frūmentārius, -a, -um *adj.* of  
 grain  
 frūmentor, frūmentārī,  
 frūmentātus sum *dep.* forage  
 frūmentum, -ī *n.* grain  
 frūstrā *adv.* in vain  
 (frūx), frūgis *f.* fruit, herbs  
 fuga, -ae *f.* flight  
 fugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitum  
 flee  
 fugō, fugāre, fugāvī, fugātum  
*tr.* put to flight, rout  
 fulmen, fulminis *n.* thunderbolt,  
 lightning flash  
 fūmus, -ī *m.* smoke  
 fūrtim *adv.* secretly, stealthily

## G

Gāius, Gāi *m.* Gaius, a Roman  
 praenomen  
 Gallia, -ae *f.* Gaul (the country)  
 Gallus, -ī *m.* a Gaul (inhabitant  
 of Gaul)

gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvīsus sum  
*semi-dep. intr.* rejoice, be glad  
 gēns, gentis *f.* tribe, clan, nation  
 genus, generis *n.* kind, sort  
 Germānia, -ae *f.* Germany  
 Germānus, -ī *m.* a German  
 gerō, gerere, gessī, gestum *tr.*  
 carry on, wage; have, hold; do;  
 manage; wear  
 gladiātor, gladiātōris *m.* gladiator  
 gladius, -ī *m.* sword  
 glōria, -ae *f.* glory, fame, renown  
 glōrior, glōriārī, glōriātus sum  
*dep. intr.* boast, exult, glory in  
 gracilis, gracilis, gracile slender  
 Graecia, -ae *f.* Greece  
 Graecus, -ī *m.* a Greek  
 grātia, -ae *f.* favor, gratitude,  
 thanks; grātiam habēre to be  
 grateful; grātiās agere to thank  
 with *dat.*  
 grātus, -a, -um pleasing; grateful  
 gravis, gravis, grave heavy,  
 serious  
 graviter *adv.* heavily, seriously

## H

habeō, habēre, habuī, habitum  
*tr.* have, hold; consider;  
 ōrātiōnem habēre to make a  
 speech; prō certō habēre to  
 consider as certain  
 habitō, habitāre, habitāvī,  
 habitātum *intr.* live, dwell  
 haereō, haerēre, haesi, haesum  
 cling, stick  
 Hamilcar, Hamilcaris *m.*  
 Hamilcar

**Hannibal, Hannibalis** *m.*  
     Hannibal  
**Hasdrubal, Hasdrubalis** *m.*  
     Hasdrubal  
**hasta, -ae** *f.* spear  
**Hector, Hectoris** *m.* Hector,  
     eldest son of Priam, king of  
     Troy  
**Hecuba, -ae** *f.* Hecuba, wife of  
     Priam  
**Helen, -ae** *f.* Helen, wife of  
     Menelaus  
**Helvētius, -a, -um** *adj.* Helvetian  
**Helvētius, -ī** *m.* a Helvetian  
**Hēraclēa, -ae** *f.* Heraclea, a town  
     in southern Italy  
**herī** *adv.* yesterday  
**hīberna, -ōrum** *n. pl.* winter  
     quarters, winter camp  
**Hibernia, -ae** *f.* Ireland  
**hic, haec, hoc** *dem. pron. and adj.*  
     this; he  
**hīc** *adv.* here, in this place  
**hiemō, hiemāre, hiemāvī,**  
     **hiemātum** pass the winter,  
     winter  
**hiems, hiemis** *f.* winter  
**hinc** *adv.* hence, from this  
     place  
**Hispania, -ae** *f.* Spain  
**hodiē** *adv.* to-day  
**homō, hominis** *m.* man, human  
     being  
**honor, honoris** *m.* honor  
**hōra, -ae** *f.* hour  
**Hortēsius, -ī** *m.* Quintus  
     Hortensius Hortalus, a famous  
     Roman orator  
**hortor, hortārī, hortātus sum**  
     *dep. tr.* urge, encourage

**hostis, hostis** *m. and f.* an enemy;  
     *pl.* the enemy  
**hūc** *adv.* to this place, here  
**humilis, humilis, humile** low

I

**iaceō, iacēre, iacuī** *intr.* lie, be  
     prostrate  
**iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactum** *tr.*  
     throw  
**iam** *adv.* now, already, by this  
     time  
**ibi** *adv.* there, in that place  
**Icilius, -ī** *m.* Icilius  
**Īda, -ae** *f.* Mount Ida, near Troy  
**īdem, eadem, idem** *dem. pron.*  
     *and adj.* the same, identical  
**īdem . . . quī** the same . . . as  
**idōneus, idōnea, idōneum** fitting,  
     suitable  
**iēiūnus, -a, -um** hungry  
**igitur** *postpositive conj.* therefore,  
     accordingly  
**ignāvus, -a, -um** cowardly; as  
     *noun* ignāvus, -ī *m.* a coward  
**ignis, ignis** *m.* fire  
**ignōscō, ignōscere, ignōvī,**  
     **ignōtum** forgive *with dat.*  
**ille, illa, illud** *dem. pron. and adj.*  
     that  
**illigō, illigāre, illigāvī, illigātum**  
     tie, tie up  
**immittō, immittere, immīsī,**  
     **immissum** drive, let go  
**impedimentum, -ī** *n.* hindrance;  
     *pl.* baggage  
**impediō, impedīre, impedīvī,**  
     **impeditum** *tr.* hinder  
**impeditus, -a, um** hindered



**imperātor, imperātōris** *m.* general, commander-in-chief  
**imperītus, -a, -um** inexperienced in, ignorant of *with gen.*  
**imperium, -ī** *n.* command; rule; dominion  
**imperō, imperāre, imperāvī, imperātum** order, command; demand  
**impetus, impetūs** *m.* attack; **impetum facere** *with in and acc.* to make an attack (on)  
**imprōvisō** *adv.* unexpectedly, on a sudden  
**īmus, -a, -um** *superlative of inferus*  
*in prep. with acc.* into; *prep. with abl.* in, on, upon  
**incendō, incendere, incendi, incensum** *tr.* burn, set on fire  
**incidō, incidere, incidī** fall in, fall into  
**incipiō, incipere, incēpī, inceptum** begin  
**incognitus, -a, -um** unknown  
**incola, -ae** *m.* inhabitant  
**incolumis, incolumis, incolume** safe, unharmed  
**incommodum, -ī** *n.* misfortune, loss; **incommodum accipere** to suffer loss  
**incurrō, incurrere, incurri, incursum** *intr.* run in, rush in  
**inde** *adv.* then; thence, from that place  
**indicō, indicere, indixī, indictum** proclaim publicly; **bellum indicere** to declare war  
**Indicus, -a, -um** Indian  
**indūcō, indūcere, indūxī,**

**inductum** lead on, bring up  
**ineō, inīre, iniī, initum** enter, enter upon; **cōsiliū inīre** to adopt a plan  
**inferō, inferre, intulī, illātum** bring against, inflict  
**inferus, -a, -um** low, below; **inferior, inferius** *compar. adj.* lower, inferior; **īnīmus** or **īmus** *super. adj.* lowest, at the foot or base, bottom of  
**īnfīdus, -a, -um** faithless  
**inflō, inflāre, inflāvī, inflātum** *tr.* blow up, inflate  
**ingēns** (*gen. ingentis*), **ingēns, ingēns** huge, vast  
**ingredior, ingredī, ingressus** *sum dep.* enter, penetrate  
**iniciō, inicere, iniēcī, iniectum** throw in; put on; inspire  
**inimīcus, -a, -um** unfriendly  
**īnīquus, -a, -um** unfair, unjust  
**initium -ī** *n.* beginning  
**iniūria, -ae** *f.* injury, wrong, wrong-doing  
**iniussū** Caesaris without Caesar's orders  
**innocentia, -ae** *f.* innocence  
**inopia, -ae** *f.* want, lack, scarcity  
**inopīnāns** (*gen. inopīnantis*), **inopīnāns, inopīnāns** *adj.* not expecting, off one's guard  
**in** **prīmīs** especially  
**inquit** he says, he said; **inquiunt** they say, they said  
**inrīdeō, inrīdēre, inrīsī, inrīsum** *tr.* laugh at, mock  
**īnsānus, -a, -um** crazy, insane

**inscendō, inscendere, inscendī,**  
 inscēsum climb upon,  
 mount  
**inscius, -a, -um** not knowing,  
 ignorant  
**insequor, insequī, insecūtus sum**  
 follow up, pursue  
**insideō, insidēre, insēdī,**  
 inessum ride upon, sit  
 upon *with dat.*  
**insidiae, -ārum f. pl.** treachery;  
 ambush  
**instituō, instituere, institui,**  
 institūtum arrange; construct,  
 make, build  
**instruō, instruere, instrūxī,**  
 instrūctum *tr.* draw up, arrange  
**insula, -ae f.** island  
**integer, -gra, -grum** untouched,  
 fresh, unwearied  
**intelligō, intelligere, intellēxī,**  
 intellēctum *tr.* understand, be  
 aware  
**inter prep. with acc.** between,  
 among  
**intereā adv.** meanwhile  
**interficiō, interficere, interfēcī,**  
 interfectum kill, slay  
**interim adv.** meanwhile, in the  
 meantime  
**interimō, interimere, interēmī,**  
 interēptum destroy  
**interior, interius compar. adj.**  
 inner, interior  
**intermittō, intermittere,**  
 intermīsī, intermissum cease,  
 leave off, interrupt  
**interveniō, intervenīre, intervēnī,**  
 interventum *intr.* come  
 between, intervene

**intimus, -a, um superl. adj.**  
 inmost  
**intrā prep. with acc.** within  
**intrōdūcō, intrōdūcere,**  
 intrōdūxī, intrōductum *tr.*  
 bring in, introduce  
**inundō, inundāre, inundāvī,**  
 inundātum overflow  
**inūtilis, inūtilis, inūtile** useless  
**inveniō, invenīre, invēnī,**  
 inventum *tr.* come upon, find,  
 discover  
**invidēō, invidēre, invīdī, invīsum**  
*intr.* envy *with dat.*  
**invidia, -ae f.** envy  
**invidiōsus, -a, -um** envious  
**invītus, -a, -um** unwilling,  
 against one's will  
**ipse, ipsa, ipsum, intens. pron.**  
 self; very; *pl.* selves  
**īra, -ae f.** anger, wrath  
**īrātus, -a, -um** angry, angry at,  
*with dat.*  
**is, ea, id dem. adj. and pron.** this,  
 that; *as 3rd pers. pron.* he, she,  
 it; *pl.* they  
**ita adv.** so, thus  
**Italia, -ae f.** Italy  
**Italus, -a, -um** Italian  
**itaque conj.** and so, therefore  
**iter, itineris n.** way, road,  
 journey, march; **iter facere** to  
 march; **iter magnum** forced  
 march; **in itinere** on the march  
**iterum adv.** again, a second time  
**iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussum tr.**  
 order, command  
**iūdex, iūdicis m.** judge  
**iūdicō, iūdicāre, iūdicāvī,**  
 iūdicātum *tr.* judge

iugum, -ī *n.* yoke  
 Iūlia, -ae *f.* Julia  
 Iūlus, -ī *m.* Iulus (*three syllables*)  
 iumentum, -ī *n.* draught-animal,  
     beast of burden  
 iungō, iungere, iūnxī, iunctum  
*tr.* join, unite  
 Iūnō, Iūnōnis *f.* Juno, *sister and*  
*wife of Jupiter and queen of the*  
*gods*  
 Iuppiter, Iovis *m.* Jupiter or Jove,  
*the king of the gods*  
 iūrgium, iūrgiī *n.* strife,  
     altercation; abuse  
 iūs, iūris *n.* right, law; *pl.* rights  
 iūstē *adv.* justly  
 iūstitia, -ae *f.* justice  
 iūstus, -a, -um just, right,  
     proper  
 iuvenis, iuvenis, iuvene *adj.*  
     young; *masc. as noun iuvenis,*  
     *iuvenis (abl. sing. iuvene, gen.*  
     *pl. iuvenum) young man*  
 iuvō, iuvāre, iūvī, iūtum *tr.* help

## L

labor, labōris *m.* work, toil  
 labōrō, labōrāre, labōrāvī,  
     labōrātum *intr.* toil, labor  
 Lacedaemonius, -a, -um  
     Spartan; Lacedaemoniī, -ōrum  
     *m. pl.* the Spartans  
 lacrima, -ae *f.* tear  
 lacrimō, lacrimāre, lacrimāvī,  
     lacrimātum weep  
 lacus, lacūs *m.* lake; lacus  
     Rēgillus Lake Regillus  
 laetus, -a, -um glad, joyful;  
     laetē *adv.* gladly  
 lanianus, -ī *m.* butcher

Lars Porsena, Lartis Porsenae  
     *m.* Lars Porsena, *an Etruscan*  
     *prince*  
 Latinī, -ōrum *m. pl.* the Latins  
 Latinus, -a, -um Latin  
 Latinus, -ī *m.* Latinus  
 Latium, -ī *n.* Latium, *a district in*  
     *central Italy*  
 latrō, latrōnis *m.* robber, brigand  
 lātus, -a, -um wide, broad;  
     lātē *adv.* widely  
 latus, lateris *n.* side, flank; latus  
     apertum the exposed flank; ā  
     latere on the flank  
 laudō, laudāre, laudāvī,  
     laudātum *tr.* praise  
 laus, laudis *f.* praise, glory  
 Lavīnia, -ae *f.* Lavinia  
 Lavīnium, -ī *n.* Lavinium  
 lavō, lavāre, lāvī wash  
 Lēda, -ae *f.* Leda, *mother of*  
     *Helen*  
 lēgātus, -ī *m.* envoy, ambassador;  
     officer, general  
 legiō, legiōnis *f.* legion; legiō  
     expedita a legion in light  
     marching order  
 legō, legere, lēgī, lēctum *tr.* pick,  
     gather, choose; read  
 leō, leōnis *m.* lion  
 Leōnidās, -ae *m.* Leonidas  
 levis, levis, leve light, slight,  
     unimportant  
 lēx, lēgis *f.* law  
 liber, librī *m.* book  
 liber, libera, liberum free;  
     liberē *adv.* freely  
 liberālitās, liberālitātis *f.*  
     generosity  
 liberī, liberōrum *m.* children

**liberō, liberāre, liberāvī,**  
**liberātum** *tr.* free, set free  
**libertās, libertātis** *f.* freedom  
**Liscus, -ī** *m.* Liscus  
**littera, -ae** *f.* letter (*of the*  
*alphabet*); *pl.* an epistle, letter  
**lītus, litoris** *n.* shore  
**locus, locī** *m.* place; *pl.* **loca,**  
**locōrum** *n.* places, district;  
**loca superiōra** higher ground  
**longē** *adv.* at a distance, far;  
**longē lātēque** far and wide  
**longus, -a, -um** long; tall  
**loquor, loquī, locūtus sum** *dep.*  
speak  
**Lūcānī, -ōrum** *m. pl.* Lucanians  
**Lūcius, Lūciī** *m.* Lucius  
**Lucrētia, -ae** *f.* Lucretia  
**lūctus, lūctūs** *m.* grief, mourning  
**lupa, -ae** *f.* she-wolf  
**lupus, -ī** *m.* wolf  
**lūx, lūcis** *f.* light; **prīma lūx** dawn;  
**sub lūcem** just before dawn  
**lūxuria, -ae** *f.* luxury

## M

**maestus, -a, -um** sad  
**magis** *comp. adv.* more, rather  
**magister, -trī** *m.* teacher, master  
**magistrātus, -ūs** *m.* magistrate  
**magnitūdō, magnitūdinis** *f.*  
greatness, size; **magnitūdō**  
**corporis** stature  
**magnopere** *adv.* greatly, very  
much  
**magnus, -a, -um** great, large;  
**magnīs itineribus** by forced  
marches; **magnā vōce** in a loud  
voice  
**maior, maius** *comp. adj.* greater

**male** *adv.* badly  
**mālō, mālle, māluī** prefer  
**mālum, -ī** *n.* apple  
**malus, -a, -um** bad, wicked  
**Mamilius, -ī** *m.* Mamilius  
**maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsum**  
*intr.* stay, remain, wait  
**Mānilius, -ī** *m.* Gaius Manilius,  
a tribune  
**manus, manūs** *f.* hand  
**mare, maris** *n.* sea; **mare**  
**internum** the Mediterranean;  
**mare superum** the Adriatic  
**maritimus, -a, -um** *adj.* of the  
sea, maritime  
**marītus, -ī** *m.* husband  
**māter, mātis** *f.* mother  
**mātrimōnium, -ī** *n.* marriage;  
**in mātrimōnium dūcere** to  
marry  
**mātrōna, -ae** *f.* married woman,  
matron  
**mātūrus, -a, -um** early  
**maximē** *adv.* especially  
**maximus, -a, -um** greatest  
**medius, -a, -um** middle, in the  
midst; **media nox, mediae**  
**noctis** *f.* midnight  
**melior, melius** *comp. adj.* better  
**melius** *comp. adv.* better  
**memor, gen. memoris** *adj.*  
mindful, *with gen.*  
**memoria, -ae** *f.* memory;  
**memoriam dēpōnere** to forget,  
*with gen.*; **memoriam retinēre**  
to remember, *with gen.*  
**memorō, memorāre, memorāvī,**  
**memorātum** relate, recount  
**Menelāus, -ī** *m.* Menelaus  
**mēns, mentis** *f.* mind

mercātor, mercātōris *m.* trader, merchant  
 mercor, mercārī, mercātus *sum*  
*tr.* buy  
 Mercurius, -ī *m.* Mercury, the messenger of the gods  
 mereō, merēre, meruī, meritum  
 deserve, merit  
 meridiānus, -a, -um southern  
 meridiēs, meridiēī *m.* noon  
 meus, -a, -um my, mine  
 miles, militis *m.* soldier  
 milia, -ium *n. pl.* of mille  
 militāris, militāris, militāre  
 military  
 mille *indecl. num. adj.* one thousand (*pl.* milia, milium *neuter noun*)  
 minimē *adv.* by no means; not at all  
 minimus, -a, -um smallest, least  
 minor, minus *adj.* smaller, less  
 minus *adv.* less  
 miror, mirārī, mirātus *sum*  
 wonder, wonder at, admire  
 miser, misera, miserum  
 wretched, unhappy  
 Mithridātēs, -is *m.* Mithridates, a king of Pontus  
 Mithridāticus, -a, -um *adj.*  
 Mithridatic, with Mithridates  
 mittō, mittere, misi, missum *tr.*  
 send; throw  
 modo, *adv.* only, just now, lately;  
 modo...modo now.... now; at one time...at another; nōn modo...sed etiam not only ...but also  
 modus, -ī *m.* manner, way, means

moenia, moenium *n. pl.* walls, fortifications  
 molliō, mollire, mollivī, mollitum  
*tr.* soften, soothe  
 moneō, monēre, monuī, monitum  
*tr.* warn, advise  
 mōns, montis *m.* mountain  
 mōnstrō, mōnstrāre, mōnstrāvī, mōnstrātum *tr.* show, point out  
 monumentum, -ī *n.* memorial, monument  
 mora, -ae *f.* delay  
 morior, morī, mortuus *sum dep.*  
 die  
 Moritasgus, -ī *m.* Moritasgus  
 moror, morārī, morātus *sum*  
 delay  
 mors, mortis *f.* death  
 mortuus, -a, -um dead  
 mōs, mōris *m.* habit, custom  
 mōtus, mōtūs *m.* movement  
 moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtum  
*tr.* move  
 mox *adv.* soon, presently  
 Mūcius, -ī *m.* Gaius Mucius Cordus (Scaevola)  
 mulier, mulieris *f.* woman  
 multitudō, multitudinis *f.* great number, multitude, crowd  
 multō *adv.* by much, much  
 multum *adv.* much  
 multus, -a, -um much, many;  
 multis dē causis for many reasons  
 mūniō, mūnīre, mūnīvī, mūnitum  
*tr.* fortify, build  
 mūnitio, mūnitiois *f.* fortification  
 mūrus, -ī *m.* wall  
 mūtō, mūtāre, mūtāvī, mūtātum  
 change

## N

**nam** *conj.* for

**Nammeius, -ī** *m.* Nammeius

**nancīscor, nancīscī, nactus** *sum*

*dep.* get, obtain

**nārrō, nārrāre, nārrāvī, nārrātum**

*tr.* tell, narrate

**nāscor, nāscī, nātus** *sum dep.*

be born

**nātiō, nātiōnis** *f.* tribe, nation

**nātus, -a, -um** descended, born

**nauta, -ae** *m.* sailor

**nāvālis, nāvālis, nāvāle** naval

**nāvigātiō, nāvigātiōnis** *f.* sailing,

voyage

**nāvigium, nāvigii** *n.* boat

**nāvigō, nāvigāre, nāvigāvī,**

**nāvigātum** *intr.* sail

**nāvis, nāvis** *f.* ship; **nāvis longa**

warship; **nāvem (nāvēs)**

ascendere to go on board, to

embark; **nāvem (nāvēs)**

solvere to set sail

**-ne** (*enclitic*) introduces a question

**nē** *conj.* lest, that....not; **nē....**

**quidem** not....even

**nec or neque** *conj.* and not, nor,

but not; **neque....neque,**

neither....nor

**necessitās, -tātis** *f.* necessity

**necnōn** *conj.* and, and also

**necō, necāre, necāvī, necātum**

*tr.* kill

**nefās** *n. indecl.* crime

**neglegō, neglegere, neglēxī,**

**neglēctum** *tr.* neglect, disregard

**negō, negāre, negāvī, negātum**

deny, say....not

**negōtium, -ī** *n.* concern, business, affair

**nēmō** (*gen. nūllius*) *pron.* no

one, nobody

**neque** *see nec*

**nēsciō, nēscīre, nēscīvī, nēscītum**

not to know, be ignorant

**neuter, neutra, neutrum** neither

(of two); *pl.* neither party

**niger, nigra, nigrum** black

**nihil or nīl** *indecl. noun* nothing

**nihilō** *adv.* by nothing, no

**nihilōminus** *adv.* none the less

**nimbus, -ī** *m.* raincloud, cloudy

splendor

**nisi** *conj.* unless, if not, except

**nītor, nīti, nīxus or nīsus** *sum*

strive, exert oneself

**nōbilis, nōbilis, nōbile** well-born,

noble, illustrious

**noceō, nocēre, nocuī, nocitum**

injure, harm *with dat.*

**noctū** *adv.* at night

**nōlō, nōlle, nōluī** be unwilling

**nōmen, nōminis** *n.* name,

reputation

**nōn** *adv.* not, no

**nōndum** *adv.* not yet

**nōnne** *interrog. adv.* introducing a

question inviting an affirmative answer

**nōnnūllī, -ae, -a** some; some few

**nōn solum....sed etiam** not only

....but also

**nōnus, -a, -um** ninth

**nōs, nostrī and nostrum** *pron.*

we

**noster, -tra, -trum** our

**nōtus, -a, -um** known

**novem** *indecl. num. adj.* nine



**novendecim** *indecl. num. adj.*  
 nineteen  
**novissimus, -a, -um** newest, last;  
**novissimum agmen** rearguard  
**novus, -a, -um** new, strange;  
**novae rēs f. pl.** change, revolution  
**nox, noctis f.** night; **sub noctem**  
 at nightfall  
**nūdō, nūdāre, nūdāvī, nūdātum**  
*tr.* strip, expose  
**nūllus, -a, -um** no, none  
**num** *interrog. adv.* introducing a  
 question inviting a negative  
 answer  
**num** *conj.* whether  
**numerus, -ī m.** number  
**Numitor, -ōris m.** Numitor  
**Numitōrius, -ī m.** Numitorius  
**numquam** *adv.* never  
**nunc** *adv.* now  
**nūntiō, nūntiāre, nūntiāvī,**  
**nūntiātum** *tr.* announce  
**nūntius, -ī m.** messenger; message  
**nūper** *adv.* recently  
**nympha, -ae f.** nymph

○

**ob** *prep. with acc.* on account of  
**oblītus, -a, -um** forgetful *with gen.*  
**obses, obsidis m. and f.** hostage  
**obsideō, obsidēre, obsēdī,**  
**obsessum** *tr.* besiege, blockade  
**obsidiō, obsidiōnis f.** siege,  
 blockade  
**obtinēō, obtinēre, obtinūī,**  
**obtentum** *tr.* hold fast, occupy  
**obviam** *adv.* in the way; **obviam**  
*īre with dat.* to go to meet

**occāsiō, occāsiōnis f.** opportunity  
**occāsus, occāsūs m.** setting  
**occidō, occidere, occidī, occāsum**  
 fall, be killed, perish  
**occidō, occidere, occidī, occisum**  
*tr.* kill, slay  
**occupātus, -a, -um** busy, occupied,  
 engaged  
**occupō, occupāre, occupāvī,**  
**occupātum** *tr.* seize, lay hold of  
**occurrō, occurrere, occurri,**  
**occursum** *intr.* meet, run into  
*with dat.*  
**octāvus, -a, -um** eighth  
**octō** *indecl. num. adj.* eight  
**octōdecim** *indecl. num. adj.* eight-  
 een  
**octōgintā** *indecl. num. adj.* eighty  
**officium, -ī n.** duty, service  
**ōlim** *adv.* formerly, once upon a  
 time  
**Olympus, -ī m.** Olympus, a  
 mountain in northern Greece,  
 supposed home of the gods  
**omnīnō** *adv.* in all, altogether;  
*with neg.* at all  
**omnis, omnis, omne** all, every  
**onus, oneris n.** load, burden,  
 weight  
**opera, -ae f.** work, exertion,  
 pains; **operam dare** to pay heed,  
 to take pains  
**oppidum, -ī n.** town  
**opprimō, opprimere, oppressi,**  
**oppressum** overcome,  
 overpower, crush  
**oppugnātiō, oppugnātiōnis f.**  
 attack, assault  
**oppugnō, oppugnāre, oppugnāvī,**  
**oppugnātum** *tr.* attack

optimus, -a, -um best  
 opus, operis *n.* work, task  
 ōra, ōrae *f.* shore, coast; ōra  
     maritima sea-shore  
 ōrāculum, -ī *n.* oracle  
 ōrātiō, ōrātiōnis *f.* speech, oration;  
     ōrātiōnem habēre to deliver a  
     speech  
 ōrātor, ōrātōris *m.* orator  
 orbis, orbis *m.* ring, circle; orbis  
     terrārum or orbis terrae the  
     earth  
 Orcus, -ī *m.* Orcus; the abode of  
     the dead, the underworld  
 ōrdō, ōrdinis *m.* order, rank  
 Orgetorix, -rīgis *m.* Orgetorix  
 orior, orīrī, ortus sum *dep. intr.*  
     arise, rise  
 ōrnō, ōrnāre, ōrnāvī, ōrnātum *tr.*  
     adorn  
 ōrō, ōrāre, ōrāvī, ōrātum *tr.*  
     ask, beg, pray  
 ōs, ōris *n.* mouth, face  
 ōsculum, -ī *n.* kiss  
 ostendō, ostendere, ostendī,  
     ostentum or ostēsum *tr.*  
     show, display  
 ovis, ovis *f.* sheep  
 ōvum, -ī *n.* egg

P

paene *adv.* nearly, almost  
 paeninsula, -ae *f.* peninsula  
 Palātīnus (mōns) *m.* the Palatine  
     hill in Rome  
 palma, -ae *f.* palm, prize  
 palmus, -ī *m.* palm, hand  
     breadth

pār (*gen. paris*), pār, pār equal  
 parātus, -a, -um ready, prepared  
 parcō, parcere, pepercī or parsī,  
     parsum spare, with *dat.*  
 parēns, parentis (*gen. pl. paren-*  
     *tum and parentium*) *m. and f.*  
     parent  
 pārēō, pārēre, pārui, pārītum  
     obey, be subject to with *dat.*  
 Paris, Paridis *m.* Paris, a son of  
     Priam  
 parō, parāre, parāvi, parātum *tr.*  
     prepare; parātus, -a, -um as  
     *adj.* ready, prepared  
 pars, partis *f.* part; direction  
 partior, partiri, partitus sum  
     *dep.* divide, share  
 parum *adv.* little, too little  
 parvus, -a, -um little, small  
 passus, passūs *m.* pace  
 pāstor, pāstōris *m.* shepherd  
 pater, patris *m.* father; patrēs  
     cōscriptī senators  
 patior, patī, passus sum *dep.*  
     allow; suffer, endure  
 patria, -ae *f.* fatherland, country  
 patricius, -ī *m.* a patrician  
 patrōnus, -ī *m.* patron  
 pauci, -ae, -a few  
 paulātīm *adv.* little by little,  
     gradually  
 paulō *adv.* by a little, somewhat  
 pauper, *gen. pauperis adj.* poor;  
     *noun* poor man  
 pāx, pācis *f.* peace  
 pectus, pectoris *n.* breast, chest  
 pecūnia, -ae *f.* money  
 pedes, peditis *m.* footsoldier; *pl.*  
     infantry  
 peditātus, peditātūs *m.* infantry

peior, peius *compar. adj.* worse  
 Pēleus, -ī *m.* Peleus, father of Achilles  
 pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsum *tr.*  
 drive, defeat, rout  
 penātēs, penātium *m. pl.* household gods  
 penitus *adv.* completely, wholly  
 per *prep.* with acc. through  
 perdō, perdere, perdidī, perditum  
*tr.* destroy, lose  
 pereō, perire, perīī, peritum *intr.*  
 perish, be lost  
 perferō, perferre, pertulī, perlātum  
*tr.* carry through, bring, report  
 perfidia, -ae *f.* faithlessness, perfidy  
 periculōsus, -a, -um dangerous  
 periculum, -ī *n.* danger  
 peritus, -a, -um experienced, skilled with gen.  
 permaneō, permanēre, permānsī, permānsūm *intr.* hold out, last, continue  
 permittō, permittere, permīsī, permissum entrust  
 perpetuus, -a, -um perpetual, lasting; perpetuō *adv.* forever, constantly; in perpetuum forever  
 perrumpō, perrumpere, perrūpī, perruptum break through  
 Persa, -ae *m.* a Persian  
 persequor, persequī, persecūtus sum *dep. tr.* pursue, follow up  
 Persicus, -a, -um Persian  
 Persis, Persidis *f.* Persia  
 persuādeō, persuādēre, persuāsī, persuāsum persuade, induce with dat.

perterreō, perterrēre, perterrui, perterritum *tr.* terrify  
 pertineō, pertinēre, pertinui *intr.* extend, reach  
 perveniō, -ire, -vēnī, -ventum *intr.* with ad or in with the acc., come to, arrive at, reach.  
 pēs, pedis *m.* foot; pedem referre to fall back, give way  
 pessimus, -a, -um worst  
 petō, petere, petivī, petītum *tr.* seek, ask, demand  
 pictūra, -ae *f.* picture, painting  
 pīlum, -ī *n.* javelin; pīlum mittere to hurl a javelin  
 pīrāta, -ae *m.* pirate  
 placidus, -a, -um calm, gentle, peaceful  
 plānē *adv.* quite, plainly  
 plēbēius, -ī *m.* a plebeian  
 plēbs, plēbis *f.* common people, plebeians  
 plēnus, -a, -um full  
 plērumque *adv.* as a rule, for the most part  
 plūrimum *adv.* most, very much  
 plūrimus, -a, -um *superl.* of multus, most, very many  
 plūs, plūris *compar.* of multus more; plūs *adv.* more  
 Plūtō, Plūtōnis *m.* Pluto, ruler of the underworld  
 poena, -ae *f.* penalty, punishment; poenās dare to pay the penalty, to be punished  
 Poenī, -ōrum *m.* Carthaginians  
 polliceor, pollicērī, pollicitus sum *dep. tr.* promise  
 Pollūx, Pollūcis *m.* Pollux, son of Jupiter and Leda

Pompeius, -ī *m.* Gnaeus Pompeius Magnus, *Pompey the Great, a famous Roman general*  
 pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positum *tr.*  
 put, place; castra pōnere to pitch a camp  
 pōns, pontis *m.* bridge  
 Pontus, -ī *m.* Pontus, a country south of the Black Sea  
 populus, -ī *m.* people, nation  
 Porsena, -ae *m.* Porsena, a king of Etruria  
 porta, -ae *f.* gate  
 portō, portāre, portāvī, portātum *tr.* carry  
 portus, portūs *m.* harbor, port  
 poscō, poscere, poposci *tr.* demand, ask for  
 possum, posse, potuī can, be able  
 post *prep. with acc.* behind, after; *adv.* after  
 postea *adv.* afterwards  
 posterior, -ius *compar. adj.* later  
 posterus, -a, -um next, following  
 postquam *conj.* after  
 postrēmus, -a, -um or postumus, -a, -um *superl. adj.* last; postrēmō *adv.* at last  
 postulō, postulāre, postulāvī, postulātum *tr.* ask, demand  
 potēns (*gen. potentis*), potēns, potēns powerful  
 potenter *adv.* powerfully  
 potestās, potestātis *f.* power, ability; potestātem facere to give an opportunity  
 praeda, -ae *f.* booty, plunder  
 praeficiō, praeficere, praefēcī, praefectum put in charge of,

set in command of *with acc. and dat.*  
 praemittō, praemittere, praemisī, praemissum send ahead  
 praemium, -ī *n.* reward  
 praesēns (*gen. praesentis*), praesēns, praesēns *adj.* present, at hand, in person  
 praesertim *adv.* especially  
 praesidium, -ī *n.* garrison  
 praestō, praestāre, praestiti, praestitum or praestātum excel, be superior to  
 praesum, praeesse, praefuī be in command of, be in charge of *with dat.*  
 praeter *prep. with acc.* beyond, except  
 praeterea *adv.* besides, moreover  
 praetor, praetōris *m.* praetor  
 prātum, -ī *n.* meadow  
 precēs, precum *f. pl.* prayers, entreaties  
 precor, precārī, precātus sum *dep.* pray, implore  
 premō, premere, pressī, pressum *tr.* press, overwhelm, harass; premī or graviter premī to be hard pressed  
 pretium, -ī *n.* price, value  
 Priamus, -ī *m.* Priam, the last king of Troy  
 primō *adv.* at first  
 primum *adv.* first, in the first place  
 primus, -a, -um first; primum agmen *n.* van, vanguard; prima lūx *f.* daybreak, dawn; primum vēr *n.* the beginning of spring

**prīnceps, prīncipis** *m.* chief,  
 leader; *as adj.* first  
**prior, prius** *compar. adj.* former  
**prius** *adv.* before, formerly  
**prīusquam** *conj.* before  
**prīvātīm** *adv.* privately,  
 unofficially  
**prō** *prep. with abl.* in front of; for;  
 in behalf of  
**probō, probāre, probāvī,**  
**probātum** approve  
**prōcēdō, prōcēdere, prōcessī,**  
**prōcessum** move forward,  
 advance  
**procul** *adv.* at a distance, far off  
**prōditor, prōditōris** *m.* traitor  
**prōdō, prōdere, prōdidī, prōditum**  
 betray  
**proelium, -ī** *n.* battle; **proelium**  
 committere to join battle;  
**proelium facere** to fight a  
 battle  
**proficīscor, proficīscī, profectus**  
**sum** *dep.* set out  
**prōgredior, prōgredī, prōgressus**  
**sum** *dep.* advance, proceed  
**prohibeō, prohibēre, prohibuī,**  
**prohibitum** hold back, prevent  
**prōmittō, prōmittere, prōmīsī,**  
**prōmissum** *tr.* promise  
**prope** *prep. with acc.* near  
**properō, properāre, properāvī,**  
**properātum** *intr.* hasten  
**propior, -ius** *compar. adj.* nearer  
**propter** *prep. with acc.* on ac-  
 count of  
**Prōserpina, -ae** *f.* Proserpina,  
 the daughter of Ceres and  
 Jupiter  
**prōspere** *adv.* successfully

**prōvideō, prōvidēre, prōvidī,**  
**prōvisum** *intr.* be careful for  
**prōvincia, -ae** *f.* province  
**proximus, -a, -um** nearest, next  
**prūdēns** (*gen. prūdētis*), **prūdēns,**  
**prūdēns** wise, foreseeing  
**prūdētia, -ae** *f.* prudence, good  
 sense  
**pūblicē** *adv.* publicly  
**pūblicus, -a, -um** *adj.* of the state,  
 public  
**puella, -ae** *f.* girl  
**puer, puerī** *m.* boy  
**pugna, -ae** *f.* battle, fighting  
**pugnō, pugnāre, pugnāvī,**  
**pugnātum** *intr.* fight  
**pulcher, -chra, -chrūm** pretty,  
 beautiful  
**pulchritūdō, pulchritūdinis** *f.*  
 beauty  
**pulvis, pulveris** *m.* dust  
**pūniō, pūnīre, pūnivī, pūnītum**  
*tr.* punish  
**pūrus, -a, -um** pure, blameless  
**putō, putāre, putāvī, putātum**  
 think  
**Pyrrhus, -ī** *m.* Pyrrhus

## Q

**quā dē causā?** for what reason?  
 why?  
**quaerō, quaerere, quaesivī,**  
**quaesītum** seek, ask, enquire  
**quālis, quālis, quāle** *adj.* of what  
 sort  
**quam** *conj.* than; *adv.* how  
**quamdiū** *conj.* as long as, while  
**quam prīmum,** as soon as possible  
**quamquam** *conj.* although

quandō? *interrog. adv.* when? at  
 what time?  
 quantus, -a, -um *how great? how  
 large?*  
 quārtus, -a, -um *fourth*  
 quattuor *indecl. num. adj.* four  
 quattuordecim *indecl. num. adj.*  
 fourteen  
 -que *conj. enclitic* and; -que....  
 -que *both....and*  
 quī, quae, quod *rel. pron.* who,  
 which, that  
 quī? quae? quod? *interrog. adj.*  
 which?  
 quī, qua (quae), quod *indef. adj.*  
 any  
 quibus dē causīs? *for what  
 reasons?*  
 quīdam, quaedam, quiddam  
*indef. pron.* a certain one  
 quiēs, quiētis *f.* rest, quiet  
 quīndecim *indecl. num. adj.* fifteen  
 quīnque *indecl. num. adj.* five  
 quīntus, -a, -um *fifth*  
 quis? quid? *interrog. pron.* who?  
 what?  
 quisque, quidque *indef. pron.* each  
 quō? *interrog. adv.* to what place?  
 whither?  
 quoad *conj.* as long as  
 quod *conj.* because  
 quōmodo? *adv.* how? in what  
 manner?  
 quondam *adv.* once upon a time  
 quoque *adv.* also, too  
 quot? *indecl. interrog. adj.* how  
 many?

## R

rāna, -ae *f.* frog

rapiō, rapere, rapuī, raptum *tr.*  
 seize  
 ratiō, ratiōnis *f.* method, manner,  
 way  
 recipiō, recipere, recēpī, receptum  
*tr.* recover, regain, receive;  
 sē recipere *to retreat, recover*  
 reddō, reddere, reddidī, redditum  
*tr.* give back, return  
 redeō, redīre, rediī, reditum *intr.*  
 go back, return  
 reditus, reditūs *m.* return  
 redūcō, redūcere, redūxī,  
 reductum *tr.* lead back  
 referō, referre, rettulī, relātum  
*tr.* carry back, report; sē  
 referre *return, betake oneself*  
 reficiō, reficere, refēcī, refectum  
*tr.* repair, remake, restore  
 rēgālis, rēgālis, rēgāle *royal*  
 rēgia, -ae *f.* royal palace  
 Rēgillus *see lacus Rēgillus*  
 rēgina, -ae *f.* queen  
 regiō, regiōnis *f.*, region, district  
 rēgnō, rēgnāre, rēgnāvī,  
 rēgnātum *intr.* rule, reign  
 rēgnum, -ī *n.* royal power,  
 kingdom  
 regō, regere, rēxī, rēctum *tr.*  
 rule, direct  
 Rēgulus, -ī *m.* Regulus  
 relinquiō, relinquere, reliquī,  
 relictum *tr.* leave, leave behind  
 reliquus, -a, -um *remaining, rest  
 of*  
 remittō, remittere, remīsī,  
 remissum *tr.* send back  
 removeō, removēre, remōvī, re-  
 mōtum *tr.* remove, move  
 away; withdraw



**Remus, -ī m.** Remus, brother of *Romulus*  
**repellō, repellere, reppulī, repulsum tr.** drive back, repulse  
**repentīnus, -a, -um** sudden, unexpected  
**reportō, reportāre, reportāvī, reportātum tr.** carry back, bring back; **victōriam reportāre** to gain a victory  
**requirō, requirere, requisivī, requisitum tr.** seek, search for  
**rēs, rei f.** thing, affair, fact; **rēs frumentāria f.** supply of grain; **rēs gerere** to manage affairs; **rēs gesta, rei gestae f.** deed, exploit; **rē infectā** with his (their) work undone; **rēs militāris, rei militāris f.** the art of war; **rēs publica, rei publicae f.** state, government; public interest  
**resistō, resistere, restitī resist** with *dat.*  
**respectō, respectāre, respectāvī, respectātum intr.** look back  
**respondeō, respondēre, respondī, respōsum** answer, reply  
**restituō, restituere, restitui, restitutum tr.** restore, renew  
**retineō, retinēre, retinui, retentum tr.** hold back, restrain  
**revertō, revertere, revertī, re-versum** used chiefly in the perfect tenses, return, come back  
**revertor, revertī, reversus sum dep.** turn back, return  
**revocō, revocāre, revocāvī, revocātum tr.** recall, call back

**rēx, rēgis m.** king  
**Rhea Silvīa, Rheae Silviae f.** Rhea Silvia, mother of *Romulus* and *Remus*  
**Rhēnus, -ī m.** the Rhine  
**Rhodanus, -ī m.** the Rhone  
**rideō, ridēre, risī, risum** laugh  
**ripa, -ae f.** bank (of a river)  
**rivus, -ī m.** stream  
**rogō, rogāre, rogāvī, rogātum tr.** ask, ask for  
**Rōma, -ae f.** Rome  
**Rōmānus, -a, -um** Roman  
**Rōmānus, -ī m.** a Roman  
**Rōmulus, -ī m.** Romulus, the founder of Rome  
**rumpō, rumpere, rūpī, ruptum tr.** break, break down, burst  
**rursus adv.** again, back  
**rūs, rūris n.** the country

## S

**Sabīnus, -a, -um adj.** Sabine  
**Sabīnus, -ī m.** a Sabine; *pl.* the Sabines, a people near Rome  
**sacer, sacra, sacrum** sacred  
**Sacra Via, Sacrae Viae f.** the Sacred Way  
**sacrificō, sacrificāre, sacrificāvī, sacrificātum intr.** sacrifice  
**saepe adv.** often  
**sagitta, -ae f.** arrow  
**salūs, salutis f.** health; safety; **salūtem fugā petere** to seek safety in flight  
**salūtō, salutāre, salutāvī, salutātum tr.** salute, greet  
**salvē (imperative of salveō** be well) greetings, hail!

**sānē** *adv.* yes, of course  
**sanguis, sanguinis** *m.* blood  
**sānō, sānāre, sānāvī, sānātum**  
*tr.* heal  
**sānus, -a, -um** sound, healthy  
**sapiēns** (*gen. sapientis*), **sapiēns**,  
**sapiēns** *wise*  
**sapientia, -ae** *f.* wisdom  
**Sardinia, -ae** *f.* Sardinia  
**satis** *adv.* sufficiently, quite;  
enough; *as indecl. noun with*  
*gen.* enough, sufficient  
**saxum, -ī** *n.* rock, stone  
**Scaevola, -ae** *m.* Scaevola (left-  
handed)  
**scelus, sceleris** *n.* crime  
**schola, -ae** *f.* school  
**scientia, -ae** *f.* knowledge  
**sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītum** *tr.* know  
**Scīpiō, -ōnis** *m.* Publius Corne-  
lius Scipio Africanus, the  
*conqueror of Hannibal*  
**scriba, -ae** *m.* secretary, scribe  
**scribō, scribere, scripsī, scriptum**  
*tr.* write  
**scūtum, -ī** *n.* shield  
**sēcrētō** *adv.* privately  
**secundus, -a, -um** second  
**sed** *conj.* but  
**sēdecim** *indecl. num. adj.*  
sixteen  
**sedeō, sedēre, sēdī, sessum sit**  
**semper** *adv.* always  
**sempiternus, -a, -um** perpetual,  
eternal  
**senātor, senātoris** *m.* senator  
**senātus, senātūs** *m.* senate  
**senex, senis** (*gen. pl. senum*) *m.*  
an old man  
**sententia, -ae** *f.* opinion

**sentiō, sentire, sēnsī, sēnsus**  
*tr.* feel, perceive  
**septem** *indecl. num. adj.* seven  
**septendecim** *indecl. num. adj.*  
seventeen  
**septimus, -a, -um** seventh  
**sequor, sequī, secūtus sum** *dep.*  
follow  
**sērus, -a, -um** late  
**serva, -ae** *f.* female slave, maid-  
servant  
**serviō, servīre, servīvī, servītum**  
be a slave  
**servitūs, servitūtis** *f.* slavery  
**servō, servāre, servāvī, servātum**  
*tr.* keep, guard, preserve  
**servus, -ī** *m.* slave, man-servant  
**sex** *indecl. num. adj.* six  
**sextus, -a, -um** sixth  
**Sextus, -ī** *m.* Sextus  
**sī** *conj.* if  
**sīc** *adv.* thus, so  
**Sicilia, -ae** *f.* Sicily  
**Siculus, -a, -um** Sicilian  
**sicut** *adv.* just as  
**signum, -ī** *n.* signal, standard;  
**signum proeliī** (*gen.*) **dare** to  
give the signal for battle  
**silentium, -ī** *n.* silence  
**silva, -ae** *f.* forest  
**similis, similis, simile** like  
**simul** *adv.* at the same time,  
together; **simul ac, simul**  
**atque** as soon as  
**sine** *prep. with abl.* without  
**singulī, -ae, -a** *adj.* one at a time,  
single, separate  
**sinister, -tra, -trum** *adj.* left  
**socius, sociī** *m.* ally, comrade  
**sōl, sōlis** *m.* sun

soleō, solēre, solitus sum *semi-*  
*dep.* be accustomed  
 sōlus, -a, -um alone, only  
 solvō, solvere, solvī, solūtum *tr.*  
 loose, set free  
 soror, sorōris *f.* sister  
 Sparta, -ae *f.* Sparta, a city of  
 Southern Greece  
 spatium, spatii *n.* space, distance  
 spectāculum, -ī *n.* show, spectacle  
 spectō, spectāre, spectāvī,  
 spectātum look, look at  
 spēlunca, -ae *f.* cave  
 spērō, spērāre, spērāvī,  
 spērātum hope, hope for  
 spēs, speī *f.* hope  
 splendor, -ōris *m.* brightness  
 Spurius Lartius, Spuriī Lartiī *m.*  
 Spurius Lartius  
 statim *adv.* immediately  
 statio, -ōnis *f.* station; outpost,  
 guard  
 statua, -ae *f.* statue  
 statuō, statuere, statuī, statūtum  
*tr.* decide, determine  
 stella, -ae *f.* star  
 stō, stāre, steti, statum *intr.*  
 stand  
 studeō, studēre, studuī be eager  
 for, devote oneself to *with dat.*  
 studium, studiī *n.* earnestness,  
 zeal  
 stultus, -a, -um foolish, silly  
 suādēō, suādēre, suāsī, suāsum  
 urge, advise *with dat.*  
 suā sponte of one's own accord  
 sub *prep.* with *acc.* and *abl.* under,  
 close up to; of time, toward;  
 sub lūcem just before dawn;

sub noctem at nightfall  
 subitō *adv.* suddenly  
 subsidium, -ī *n.* support, rein-  
 forcement  
 successor, -ōris *m.* successor  
 suī, sibi, sē or sēsē *reflex pron.*  
 3rd *pers.* himself, herself, itself,  
 themselves  
 sum, esse, fuī be, exist  
 summa, -ae *f.* total; summa  
 imperiī supreme command  
 summus, -a, -um the highest, the  
 top of; greatest  
 sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsī, sūmptum  
*tr.* take, borrow  
 super *prep.* with *acc.* above,  
 on top of; in addition to  
 superbus, -a, -um proud, haughty  
 superior, -ius *compar. adj.* higher  
 up; former; superiōra loca *n.*  
*pl.* higher ground, heights  
 superō, superāre, superāvī,  
 superātum surpass, excel,  
 conquer  
 superus, -a, -um above, upper  
 suprā *adv.* above, previously  
 suprēmus, -a, -um last; highest  
 suscipiō, suscipere, suscēpī, sus-  
 ceptum *tr.* undertake  
 suspicor, suspicārī, suspicātus  
 sum *dep.* suspect  
 sustineō, sustinēre, sustinuī,  
 sustentum *tr.* hold, withstand;  
 endure, bear  
 suus, sua, suum *poss. adj. reflex.*  
 3rd *pers.* his, her, its, their

# T

taberna, -ae *f.* shop, store

**tabula**, -ae *f.* table (*of the law*),  
a brief code  
**taceō**, tacēre, tacuī, tacitum *intr.*  
be silent, keep quiet  
**tālis**, tālis, tāle such, of such  
a kind  
**tam** *adv.* so; **tam . . . quam**  
as . . . as  
**tamen** *adv.* however, nevertheless,  
still  
**tandem** *adv.* finally, at length  
**tangō**, tangere, tetigī, tāctum *tr.*  
touch  
**tantus**, -a, -um so great, so large  
**Tarentinī**, -ōrum *m.* the people of  
Tarentum, Tarentines  
**Tarentum**, -ī *n.* Tarentum, a city  
in Southern Italy  
**Tarquinius Superbus**, **Tarquinii**  
**Superbī** *m.* Tarquin the Proud  
**Tarquiniī**, -ōrum *m. pl.* the  
Tarquins  
**tēlum**, -ī *n.* weapon, missile  
**tempestās**, -tātis *f.* storm,  
tempest  
**templum**, -ī *n.* temple  
**temptō**, temptāre, temptāvī,  
temptātum try, attempt  
**tempus**, temporis *n.* time;  
**tempus annī** time of year,  
season  
**Tenedos (us)**, -ī *f.* Tenedos, an  
island near Troy  
**teneō**, tenēre, tenuī *tr.* hold  
**tergum**, -ī *n.* back, rear; **ā tergō**  
in the rear; **post tergum** in the  
rear; **terga vertere** to turn and  
flee, take to flight  
**terminus**, -ī *m.* boundary  
**terra**, -ae *f.* earth, land; **terra**

**Helvētia**, **terrae Helvētiae** *f.*  
Switzerland  
**terreō**, terrēre, terruī, territum  
*tr.* frighten, terrify  
**terror**, **terrōris** *m.* alarm, panic,  
terror  
**tertius**, -a, -um third  
**Thetis**, **Thetidis** *f.* Thetis, a sea-  
nymph, mother of Achilles  
**Tiberinus**, -a, -um *adj.* of the  
Tiber  
**Tiberis**, *is m.* the river Tiber  
**timeō**, timēre, timuī *tr.* fear,  
be afraid of  
**timor**, **timōris** *m.* fear, alarm  
**Titus Aebutius**, **Titī Aebutī** *m.*  
Titus Aebutius  
**Titus Herminius**, **Titī Herminiī**  
*m.* Titus Herminius  
**tollō**, tollere, sustulī, sublātum  
*tr.* lift, raise; take away  
**tot indecl. num. adj.** so many  
**tōtus**, **tōta**, **tōtum** all, the whole  
**trādō**, trādere, trādidī, trāditum  
*tr.* give up, surrender; hand  
down, relate  
**trahō**, trahere, trāxī, tractum *tr.*  
drag, draw, lead  
**trānō**, trānāre, trānāvī, trānātum  
swim across  
**trāns prep. with acc.** across, over  
**trānseō**, trānsīre, trānsiī, trāns-  
itum cross, pass, go over  
**trānsfigō**, trānsfigere, trānsfixī,  
trānsfixum *tr.* pierce, stab  
**trānsportō**, trānsportāre,  
trānsportāvī, trānsportātum  
transport, carry across  
**trecentī**, -ae, -a *num. adj.* three  
hundred

**tredecim** *indecl. num. adj.* thirteen  
**trēs, tria** *num. adj.* three  
**tribūnal, tribūnālis** *n.* judgment seat  
**tribūnicus, -a, -um** *adj.* of a tribune; **vir tribūnicus** *ex-tribune*  
**tribūnus, -ī** *m.* tribune  
**trīgintā** *indecl. num. adj.* thirty  
**trīstis, trīstis, trīste** *sad, sorrowful*  
**Trōia, -ae** *f.* Troy  
**Trōiānus, -a, -um** *Trojan*  
**Trōiānus, -ī** *m.* a Trojan  
**tū, tuī** *pers. pron.* you, thou  
**tueor, tuērī, tūtus (or tuitus)** *sum dep.* protect, guard, defend  
**tum** *adv.* then  
**turba, -ae** *f.* throng, crowd  
**turbulentus, -a, -um** *muddy*  
**Turnus, -ī** *m.* Turnus, *opponent of Aeneas in Italy*  
**turris, turris** *f.* tower  
**tūtus, -a, -um** *safe*  
**tuus, tua, tuum** *poss. adj.* your (*referring to one person*)

## U

**ubi** *adv.* where? where; when  
**ubique** *adv.* everywhere  
**ulcīscor, ulcīscī, ultus** *sum dep.* punish, avenge  
**ūllus, ūlla, ūllum** *any*  
**ulterior, -ius** *compar. adj.* farther  
**ultimus, -a, -um** *farthest, last, latest*  
**umbra, -ae** *f.* shade, shadow  
**umquam** *adv.* ever, at any time

**ūnā** *adv.* at the same time, together  
**unde** *adv.* whence? whence  
**ūndecim** *indecl. num. adj.* eleven  
**ūndētrīgintā** *indecl. num. adj.* twenty-nine  
**ūndēvigintī** *indecl. num. adj.* nineteen  
**undique** *adv.* from all sides, on all sides  
**ūnus, ūna, ūnum** *one, only; ūnā ex parte* on one side  
**urbs, urbis** *f.* city  
**usque** *all the way to, as far as*  
**ūsus, ūsūs** *m.* use, service; experience  
**ut** *conj.* as; in order that; so that  
**uter, utra, utrum** *which of two? which?*  
**uterque, utraque, utrumque** *each (of two), both*  
**ūtilis, ūtilis, ūtile** *useful*  
**utinam** *conj.* O that, Would that!  
**ūtor, ūtī, ūsus** *sum dep.* use *with abl.*  
**uxor, uxōris** *f.* wife

## V

**vacca, -ae** *f.* cow  
**vādō, vādere** *go, walk*  
**vagor, vagārī, vagātus** *sum dep.* wander  
**valdē** *adv.* yes  
**valē** (*imperative of valeō*) *farewell, good-bye*  
**valeō, valēre, valuī** *intr.* be strong, be well  
**validus, -a, -um** *strong, well*  
**vallēs, vallis** *f.* valley

vāllum, -ī *n.* wall, palisade  
 varius, -a, -um changing, various  
 vāstō, vāstāre, vāstāvī, vāstātum  
*tr.* lay waste, destroy  
 vātēs, vātis *m.* prophet, sooth-  
 sayer  
 -ve *conj.* enclitic or  
 vectigal, vectigālis *n.* tax, tribute,  
 revenue  
 vehō, vehere, vēxī, vectum *tr.*  
 carry  
 Vēiī, Vēiōrum *m.* Veii, a town  
 near Rome  
 vēndō, vēndere, vēndidī, vēn-  
 ditum *tr.* sell  
 venēnātus, -a, -um poisoned  
 venēnum, -ī *n.* poison  
 venia, -ae *f.* favor, pardon,  
 permission  
 veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventum  
 come  
 Venus, Veneris *f.* Venus, the  
 goddess of love and beauty  
 vēr, vēris *n.* spring  
 verberō, verberāre, verberāvī,  
 verberātum *tr.* beat, strike,  
 whip  
 verbum, -ī *n.* word  
 vereor, verērī, veritus *sum*  
*dep.* fear, be afraid of  
 Verginia, -ae *f.* Verginia  
 Verginius -ī *m.* Verginius  
 vēritās, -tātis *f.* truth  
 vērō *adv.* truly, yes  
 vertō, vertere, vertī, versum *tr.*  
 turn, change  
 vērus, -a, -um true  
 Vesta, -ae *f.* Vesta, goddess of the  
 hearth and home  
 vester, -tra, -trum *poss. adj.*

your, yours (*referring to more  
 than one person*)  
 vestis, vestis *f.* clothing, garment  
 vetō, vetāre, vetuī, vetitum *tr.*  
 forbid  
 vetus, *gen.* veteris old  
 via, -ae *f.* way, road, street; Via  
 Appia *f.* the Appian way, a  
 famous Roman road  
 viātor, viātoris *m.* traveler  
 victor, victoris *m.* victor  
 victōria, -ae *f.* victory; victōriam  
 reportāre to gain a victory  
 vīcus, -ī *m.* village  
 videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsum *tr.* see,  
 perceive  
 vigilia, -ae *f.* watch (*fourth part  
 of a night*)  
 vīgintī *indecl. num. adj.* twenty  
 villa, -ae *f.* farmhouse, villa  
 vincō, vincere, vīcī, victum *tr.*  
 defeat, conquer  
 vīnum, -ī *n.* wine  
 vir, virī *m.* man  
 virga, -ae *f.* switch, wand  
 virgō, virginis *f.* maiden  
 virtūs, virtūtis *f.* courage,  
 valor  
 vīs *f.* strength, force; *pl.* vīrēs,  
 vīrium strength, vigor  
 vīta, -ae *f.* life  
 vīvō, vīvere, vīxī, vīctum live  
 vīvus, -a, -um alive, living  
 vix *adv.* hardly, scarcely, with  
 difficulty  
 vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātum *tr.*  
 call, invite  
 volō, volāre, volāvī, volātum *intr.*  
 fly  
 volō, velle, voluī wish, be willing



**voltur, volturis** *m.* vulture  
**voluntās, -tātis** *f.* wish, desire  
**vorāgō, vorāginis** *f.* chasm,  
 fissure  
**vōx, vōcis** *f.* voice  
**Vulcānus, -ī** *m.* Vulcan, *the god*  
*of fire*  
**vulnerō, vulnerāre, vulnerāvī,**  
**vulnerātum** *tr.* wound

**vulnus, vulneris** *n.* a wound

## X

**Xanthippus, -ī** *m.* Xanthippus  
**Xerxēs, Xerxis** *m.* Xerxes

## Z

**zōna, -ae** *f.* girdle, belt

# ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

## A

abandon *relinquō, relinquere, reliquī, relictum; dēsistō, dēsistere, dēstitī, dēstitum*

able, be *possum, posse, potuī*

about (= *concerning*) *dē prep. + abl.; (= around) circum prep. + acc.; adv. circiter*

above *super prep. + acc.; adv. suprā*

absent, be *absum, abesse, āfui*

abundance *cōpia, -ae f.*

access *aditus, aditūs m.*

accident *cāsus, cāsūs m.*

accord, of one's own *suā sponte*

accordingly *itaque; igitur, post-positive conjunction*

account, on account of *ob, propter preps. + acc.*

accustomed, be *soleō, solēre, solitus sum; perfect tenses of cōnsuēscō, cōnsuēscere, cōnsuēvī, cōnsuētum*

accustomed, become *cōnsuēscō, cōnsuēscere, cōnsuēvī, cōnsuētum*

acquire *adipīscor, adipīscī, adeptus sum*

across *trāns prep. + acc.*

add *addō, addere, addidī, additum*

adjacent *finitimus, -a, -um*

administer *administrō, administrāre, administrāvī, administrātum*

adopt a plan, to *cōnsilium capere; cōnsilium inire*

advance *prōgredior, prōgredī, prōgressus sum; prōcēdō, prōcēdere, prōcessī, prōcessum; adeō, adīre, adī, aditum*

advice *cōnsilium, -ī n.*

advise *moneō, monēre, monuī, monitum; suādeō, suādēre, suāsī, suāsum + dat.*

adviser, advocate *auctor, auctōris m.*

Aeneas *Aenēās, -ae m.*

affair *negōtium, -ī n.; rēs, rei f.*

afraid, be afraid of *timeō, timēre, timuī; vereor, verērī, veritus sum*

Africa *Āfrica, -ae f.*

after *post prep. + acc.; adv. post; conj. postquam*

afterwards *postea adv.*

again *iterum; rūsus*

against *contrā prep. + acc.*

age aetās, aetātis *f.*  
 agreement condiō, condiōnis *f.*  
 aid auxilium, -ī *n.*; *verb* iuvō,  
   iuvāre, iūvī, iūtum; aid, bring,  
   give auxilium ferō  
 aim at studeō, studēre, studiī,  
   + *dat.*  
 aların terror, terrōris *m.*  
 alive vīvus, -a, -um  
 all (= *every*) omnis, omnis,  
   omne; (= *the whole of*) tōtus,  
   tōta, tōtum  
 all the way to usque ad  
 allow patior, patī, passus sum  
 ally socius, -ī *m.*  
 almost paene; ferē  
 alone sōlus, -a, -um  
 along with ūnā cum  
 Alps Alpēs, Alpium *f.*  
 already iam  
 also quoque; etiam  
 altar āra, -ae *f.*  
 although quamquam; etsī; cum  
 always semper  
 ambassador lēgātus, -ī *m.*  
 ambitious cupidus, -a, -um  
 ambush insidiae, -ārum *f. pl.*  
 among apud; inter; *preps.* + *acc.*  
 ancient antīquus, -a, -um  
 and et, -que; atque, ac; and also,  
   and further atque, ac; and not  
   neque, nec; and so itaque  
 angry irātus, -a, -um; angry at  
   irātus + *dat.*  
 animal animal, animālis *n.*  
 announce nūntiō, nūntiāre,  
   nūntiāvī, nūntiātum  
 another alius, -a, -ud  
 another's aliēnus, -a, -um  
 answer respondeō, respondēre,

respondī, respōnsum  
 anxiety cūra, -ae *f.*  
 any *adj.* ūllus, -a, -um; quī, qua,  
   quod; aliquī, aliqua, aliquod  
 anyone quis; aliquis  
 anything quid; aliquid  
 appoint creō, creāre, creāvī,  
   creātum  
 approach adventus, adventūs *m.*;  
   (= *means of approach*) aditus,  
   aditūs *m.*  
 approach adeō, adīre, adīi,  
   aditum; accēdō, accēdere,  
   accessī, accessum + *ad* +  
   *acc.*; appropinquō, appropin-  
   quāre, appropinquāvī, appro-  
   pinquātum + *dat.*  
 approve probō, probāre, probāvī,  
   probātum  
 approximately circiter *adv.*  
 arise orior, orīrī, ortus sum  
 arm armō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum  
 armed armātus, -a, -um  
 arms arma, -ōrum *n. pl.*; to take  
   up arms arma capere; to lay  
   down arms arma dēponere  
 army exercitus, exercitūs *m.*;  
   army on the march agmen,  
   agminis *n.*  
 around circum *prep.* + *acc.*  
 arouse excitō, excitāre, excitāvī,  
   excitātum  
 arrange instruō, instruere, in-  
   strūxī, instructum; instituō,  
   instituere, institui, institūtum  
 arrival adventus, adventūs *m.*  
 arrive at, perveniō, -īre, -vēnī,  
   -ventum, *with ad or in*  
   *with acc.*  
 arrow sagitta, -ae *f.*

art *ars, artis f.*; art of war *rēs militāris*  
 as (= *since*) *cum*; (= *when*) *cum*;  
 (= *while*) *dum*; (*in clause of comparison*) *ut*  
 ascend *ascendō, ascendere, ascendī, ascēsum*  
 ascertain *cognōscō, cognōscere, cognōvī, cognitum*  
 Asia *Asia, -ae f.*  
 ask (= *inquire*) *quaerō, quaerere, quaesivī, quaesitum*; *rogō, rogāre, rogāvī, rogātum*; (= *request*) *petō, petere, petivī, petitum*; *rogō, rogāre, rogāvī, rogātum*; (= *beg*) *orō, orāre, orāvī, orātum*  
 ask for *poscō, poscere, poposci*  
 ask the advice of *cōsulō, cōsulare, cōsuluī, cōsultum + acc.*  
 as long as *quoad; quamdiū*  
 assault *oppugnātiō, oppugnātiōnis f.*; *verb* *adorior, adorirī, adortus sum*  
 assemble (= *call together*) *convocō, convocāre, convocāvī, convocātum*; (= *come together*) *conveniō, convenire, convēnī, conventum*  
 as soon as *simul ac; simul atque; cum primum*  
 as soon as possible *quam primum*  
 assist *see help*  
 assistance *auxilium, -ī n.*  
 at a distance *procul adv.*; *longē adv.*  
 at hand *praesēns (gen. praesentis), praesēns, praesēns*  
 at hand, be *adsum, adesse, adfui*

Athens *Athēnae, -ārum f. pl.*  
 at length *tandem*  
 at night *noctū*  
 at once *statim; cōnfestim*  
 at one time...at another *modo ...modo*  
 attack *impetus, impetūs m.*;  
*oppugnātiō, oppugnātiōnis f.*;  
*verb* *adorior, adorirī, adortus sum; aggredior, aggredī, aggressus sum; oppugnō, oppugnāre, oppugnāvī, oppugnātum; impetum faciō + in + acc.*

attain *adipiscor, adipiscī, adeptus sum*  
 attempt *cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus sum; temptō, temptāre, temptāvī, temptātum*  
 at the same time *simul*  
 authority *auctōritās, auctōritātis f.*  
 autumn *autumnus, -ī m.*  
 avert *āvertō, āvertere, āvertī, āversum*  
 await *exspectō, exspectāre, exspectāvī, exspectātum*  
 aware (be) *intellegō, intellegere, intellēxī, intellēctum*  
 away (be) *absum, abesse, āfui*

## B

back *tergum, -ī n.*; *adv. rursus*  
 bad *malus, -a, -um*  
 badly *male*  
 baggage *impedimenta, -ōrum n. pl.*  
 bank *rīpa, -ae f.*  
 barbarian *barbarus, -ī m.*

battle **proelium**, -ī *n.*; pugna, -ae  
*f.*; battle array **aciēs**, **aciēī** *f.*;  
 to fight a battle **proelium**  
**facere**  
 be **sum**, **esse**, **fuī**  
 be absent, be away **absum**,  
**abesse**, **āfuī**  
 be afraid **timeō**, **timēre**, **timuī**;  
**vereor**, **verērī**, **veritus sum**  
 be at hand, be near, be present  
**adsum**, **adesse**, **adfuī**  
 be born **nāscor**, **nāscī**, **nātus sum**  
 be eager for **studeō**, **studēre**,  
**studuī** + *dat.*  
 be glad **gaudeō**, **gaudēre**, **gāvīsus**  
**sum**  
 be ignorant of **nēsciō**, **nēscīre**,  
**nēscīvī**, **nēscītum**  
 be lacking, wanting **dēsum**,  
**desse**, **dēfuī**  
 be mistaken **errō**, **errāre**, **errāvī**,  
**errātum**  
 be on fire **ārdeō**, **ārdēre**, **ārsī**  
 be strong, well **valeō**, **valēre**,  
**valuī**  
 be superior to **praestō**, **praestāre**,  
**praestitī**, **praestitum** *and*  
**praestātum**  
 bear **portō**, **portāre**, **portāvī**,  
**portātum**; **ferō**, **ferre**, **tulī**,  
**lātum**  
 bear arms (to) **arma ferre**  
 beast of burden **iumentum**, -ī *n.*  
 beautiful **pulcher**, **pulchra**,  
**pulchrum**  
 because **quod**  
 because of **ob**; **propter** *preps.* +  
*acc.*  
 become **fiō**, **fieri**, **factus sum**  
 before **ante** *prep.* + *acc.*

beg **orō**, **orāre**, **orāvī**, **orātum**  
 begin **incipiō**, **incipere**, **incēpī**,  
**inceptum**; began **coepī**; to  
 begin battle **proelium** **commit-**  
**tere**  
 beginning **initium**, -ī *n.*  
 beginning of spring **prīmum vēr**  
 behalf, on behalf of **prō** *prep.* +  
*abl.*  
 behind **post** *prep.* + *acc.*  
 believe **crēdō**, **crēdere**, **crēdidī**,  
**crēditum** + *dat.*  
 belonging to another **aliēnus**, -a,  
 -um  
 beseech **precor**, **precārī**, **precātus**  
**sum**  
 beset **premō**, **premere**, **pressī**,  
**pressum**  
 besides **praetereā** *adv.*  
 besiege **obsideō**, **obsidēre**,  
**obsēdī**, **obsessum**  
 best **optimus**, -a, -um  
 betake oneself **sē recipere**  
 betray **prōdō**, **prōdere**, **prōdidī**,  
**prōditum**  
 better **melior**, **melius**; *adv.* **melius**  
 between **inter** *prep.* + *acc.*  
 beyond **praeter** *prep.* + *acc.*  
 black **niger**, **nigra**, **nigrum**  
 blockade **obsidiō**, **obsidiōnis** *f.*;  
*verb* **obsideō**, **obsidēre**, **obsēdī**,  
**obsessum**  
 blood **sanguis**, **sanguinis** *m.*  
 boat **navigium**, -ī *n.*  
 body **corpus**, **corporis** *n.*  
 bold **audāx** (*gen.* **audācis**), **audāx**,  
**audāx**  
 boldly **audācter**  
 boldness **audācia**, -ae *f.*  
 book **liber**, **librī** *m.*

booty *praeda*, -ae *f.*  
 borders *finēs*, *fīnium m.*  
 born (be) *nāscor*, *nāscī*, *nātus sum*  
 both *uterque*, *utraque*, *utrumque*  
 both...and et...et  
 bottom of *īmus*, -a, -um  
 boundaries *finēs*, *fīnium m.*  
 boy *puer*, *puerī m.*  
 brave *fortis*, *fortis*, *forte*  
 bravely *fortiter*  
 break *frangō*, *frangere*, *frēgī*,  
*frāctum*; *rumpō*, *rumpere*,  
*rūpī*, *ruptum*  
 break down *rumpō* (*see above*)  
 break through *perrumpō*,  
*perrumpere*, *perrūpī*,  
*perruptum*  
 breast *pectus*, *pectoris n.*  
 bridge *pōns*, *pontis m.*  
 brigand *latrō*, *latrōnis m.*  
 bright *clārus*, -a, -um  
 bring (= *carry*) *portō*, *portāre*,  
*portāvī*, *portātum*; *ferō*, *ferre*,  
*tulī*, *lātum*; (= *lead to*)  
*addūcō*, *addūcere*, *addūxī*,  
*adductum*  
 bring aid *auxilium ferō*  
 Britain *Britannia*, -ae *f.*  
 Briton *Britannus*, -ī *m.*  
 broad *lātus*, -a, -um  
 brother *frāter*, *frātris m.*  
 build *aedificō*, *aedificāre*, *aedifi-*  
*cāvī*, *aedificātum*; *efficiō*, *effi-*  
*cere*, *effēcī*, *effectum*; *instituō*,  
*instituere*, *instituī*, *institutū-*  
*tum*; *mūniō*, *mūnīre*, *mūnīvī*,  
*mūnītum*  
 building *aedificium*, -ī *n.*  
 burden *onus*, *oneris n.*

burn *incendō*, *incendere*, *incendī*,  
*incēsum*; *ārdeō*, *ardēre*, *ārsī*  
 business *rēs*, *rei f.*; *negōtium*, -ī  
*n.*  
 busy *occupātus*, -a, -um  
 but *sed*; *at*; *autem* (*postpositive*)  
 but not *nec*, *neque*  
 buy *emō*, *emere*, *ēmī*, *emptum*  
 by no means *minimē adv.*  
 by this time *iam adv.*

## C

Caesar *Caesar*, *Caesaris m.*  
 calamity *calamitās*, *calamitātis f.*  
 call *vocō*, *vocāre*, *vocāvī*, *vocā-*  
*tum*; call back *revocō*, *revo-*  
*cāre*, *revocāvī*, *revocātum*; call  
 by name *appellō*, *appellāre*,  
*appellāvī*, *appellātum*; call to-  
 gether *convocō*, *convocāre*,  
*convocāvī*, *convocātum*  
 camp *castra*, -ōrum *n. pl.*  
 can *possum*, *posse*, *potuī*  
 capital *caput*, *capitis n.*  
 captive *captīvus*, -ī *m.*  
 capture *capīō*, *capere*, *cēpī*,  
*captum*  
 care *cūra*, -ae *f.*; *diligentia*, -ae *f.*  
 careful *diligēns* (*gen. diligēntis*),  
*diligēns*, *diligēns*  
 carry *portō*, *portāre*, *portāvī*,  
*portātum*; *ferō*, *ferre*, *tulī*,  
*lātum*; carry across, carry over  
*transportō*, *transportāre*, *trans-*  
*portāvī*, *transportātum*; carry  
 back *reportō*, *reportāre*, *re-*  
*portāvī*, *reportātum*; *referō*,  
*referre*, *rettulī*, *relātum*; carry  
 down *dēferō*, *dēferre*, *dētulī*,



dēlātum; carry off rapiō,  
 rapere, rapuī, raptum; carry  
 on gerō, gerere, gessi, gestum  
 cart carrus, -ī *m.*  
 Carthage Carthāgō, Carthāginis  
*f.*  
 Carthaginian (a) Carthāginiēnsis,  
 Carthāginiēnsis *m.*  
 Carthaginians Poenī, -ōrum *m.*  
*pl.*  
 cast coniciō, conicere, conicēi,  
 coniectum  
 catch sight of cōspiciō, cōn-  
 spicere, cōspēxi, cōspectum  
 cattle bovēs, bovinum *m. and f. pl.*  
 cause causa, -ae *f.*  
 cavalry equitēs, equitum *m. pl.*;  
 equitātus, equitātūs *m.*; *adj.*  
 equester, equestris, equestre  
 cease intermittō, intermittere,  
 intermisī, intermissum; dē-  
 sistō, dēsistere, dēstiti,  
 dēstitum  
 centurion centuriō, centuriōnis *m.*  
 certain certus, -a, -um  
 certain, a quīdam  
 certainly certē  
 chance cāsus, cāsūs *m.*; fortūna,  
 -ae *f.*; by chance cāsū  
 change novae rēs, novārum rērum  
*f. pl.*  
 chariot currus, currūs *m.*  
 cheat fallō, fallere, fefellī,  
 falsum  
 check retineō, retinēre, retinui,  
 retentum  
 chest pectus, pectoris *n.*  
 chief, chief man princeps,  
 principis *m.*  
 children liberī, -ōrum *m.*

choose dēligō, dēligere, dēlēgi,  
 dēlēctum; legō, legere, lēgi,  
 lēctum  
 circumstance rēs, rei *f.*  
 citadel arx, arcis *f.*  
 citizen cīvis, cīvis *m. and f.*  
 city urbs, urbis *f.*  
 civic, civil cīvilis, cīvilis, cīvile  
 clan gēns, gentis *f.*  
 clear clārus, -a, -um  
 client cliēns, clientis (*gen. pl.*  
 clientium) *m. and f.*  
 climb ascendō, ascendere,  
 ascendī, ascēsum  
 cling haereō, haerēre, haesi,  
 haesum  
 close claudō, claudere, clausī,  
 clausum  
 close, in close array cōnfertus, -a,  
 -um  
 close up to sub + *acc.*  
 coast lītus, litoris *n.*; ōra, ōrae *f.*  
 cohort cohors, cohortis *f.*  
 collapse concidō, -ere, -cidi  
 collect cōgō, cōgere, coēgi, co-  
 āctum; cōnferō, cōnferre,  
 contulī, collātum; comportō,  
 comportāre, comportāvi,  
 comportātum  
 column agmen, agminis *n.*  
 come veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventum;  
 come back revertor, revertī,  
 reversus sum; come to accēdō,  
 accēdere, accessī, accessum,  
 with ad with *acc.*; pervenō,  
 -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, with ad  
 or in with *acc.*; come together  
 conveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum;  
 come upon inveniō, -īre, -vēnī,  
 -ventum

command *imperium*, -ī *n.*; *verb*  
*imperō, imperāre, imperāvī,*  
*imperātum + dat.; iubeō,*  
*iubēre, iussī, iussum + acc.*  
 command, be in *praesum,*  
*praeesse, praeui*  
 commander *imperātor,*  
*imperātōris m.*  
 common *commūnis, commūnis,*  
*commūne*; by common con-  
 sent *commūnī cōnsiliō*  
 commons, common people *plēbs,*  
*plēbis f.*  
 commonwealth *rēs pūblica, rei*  
*pūblīcae f.*  
 compact *cōnfertus, -a, -um*  
 companion *comes, comitis m.*  
 company with, in *cum prep. +*  
*abl.*  
 compel *cōgō, cōgere, cōēgī,*  
*coāctum*  
 complete *cōnficiō, cōnficere,*  
*cōnfēcī, cōnfectum; efficiō,*  
*efficere, effēcī, effectum*  
 comrade *socius, -ī m.*  
 concerning *dē prep. + abl.*  
 confer with *agere cum + abl.;*  
*agō, agere, ēgī, āctum*  
 conference *colloquium, -ī n.*  
 conquer *superō, superāre, super-*  
*āvī, superātum; vincō,*  
*vincere, vīcī, victum*  
 consider *arbitror, arbitrārī,*  
*arbitrātus sum*  
 construct *īstituō, īstituere,*  
*īstituī, īstitūtum; efficiō,*  
*efficere, effēcī, effectum*  
 consul *cōnsul, cōnsulis m.*  
 consult *cōnsulō, cōnsulere,*  
*cōnsulūī, cōnsultum + acc.*

consult the interests of *cōnsulō,*  
*cōnsulere, cōnsulūī, cōnsultum*  
*+ dat.*  
 consume *cōnsūmō, cōnsūmere,*  
*cōnsūmpsī, cōnsūptum*  
 contempt, hold in *see* despise  
 contest *certāmen, certāminis n.*  
 control *imperium, -ī n.; verb*  
*administrō, administrāre,*  
*administrāvī, administrātum*  
 controversy *contrōversia,*  
*-ae f.*  
 conversation *colloquium, -ī n.*  
 country *patria, -ae f.*  
 country (the) *rūs, rūris n.*  
 courage *virtūs, virtūtis f.;*  
*animus, -ī m.*  
 create *creō, creāre, creāvī,*  
*creātum*  
 Cretans *Crētēnsēs, Crētēnsium*  
*m. pl.*  
 crime *scelus, sceleris n.*  
 cross, cross over *trānseō, trānsire,*  
*trānsīī, trānsitum*  
 crowd *multitūdō, multitūdinis f.;*  
*turba, -ae f.*  
 cruel *crūdēlis, crūdēlis, crūdēle*  
 cruelly *crūdēliter*  
 cruelty *crudēlītās, crudēlītātis, f.*  
 crush *opprimō, opprimere,*  
*oppressī, oppressum*  
 cry *clāmor, clāmōris m.*  
 cry (= weep) *lacrimō, lacrimāre,*  
*lacrimāvī, lacrimātum*  
 cry out *clāmō, clāmāre, clāmāvī,*  
*clāmātum*  
 custom *mōs, mōris m.; cōnsuē-*  
*tūdō, cōnsuētūdinis f.;*  
 according to custom *ex*  
*cōnsuētūdine*

cut down occidō, occidere,  
occidī, occisum

## D

daily cotidiē  
danger periculum, -ī *n.*  
dangerous periculōsus, -a, -um  
dare audeō, audēre, ausus sum  
daring audācia, -ae *f.*; *adj.*  
audāx (*gen.* audācis), audāx,  
audāx  
dart tēlum, -ī *n.*  
daughter fīlia, -ae *f.*  
dawn prīma lūx *f.*; just before  
dawn sub lūcem  
day diēs, diēi *m.*; daybreak  
prīma lūx; every day  
cotidiē  
dear cārus, -a, -um  
death mors, mortis *f.*  
deceive fallō, fallere, fefellī,  
falsum  
decide cōstituō, cōstituere,  
cōstituī, cōstitutum; iūdicō,  
iūdicāre, iūdicāvi, iūdicātum;  
statuō, statuere, statuī,  
statūtum  
declare ostendō, ostendere,  
ostendī, ostentum *or* ostēsum  
declare war bellum indicō,  
indicere, indicī, indictum  
deed factum, -ī *n.*; rēs gesta,  
reī gestae *f.*  
deep altus, -a, -um  
defeat clādēs, clādis *f.*; *verb* vincō,  
vincere, vicī, victum; pellō,  
pellere, pepulī, pulsum; superō,  
superāre, superāvi, superātum

defend dēfendō, dēfendere, dē-  
fendī, dēfēsum; tueor,  
tuērī, tūtus *or* tuitus sum  
defile angustiae, -ārum *f. pl.*  
delay mora, -ae *f.*; moror, morārī,  
morātus sum  
deliver a speech ōrātiōnem habēre  
demand postulō, postulāre, post-  
ulāvī, postulātum; poscō,  
poscere, poposci  
deny negō, negāre, negāvi,  
negātum  
depart discēdō, discēdere, dis-  
cessī, discessum; abeō, abīre,  
abīi, abitum; exeō, exīre, exīi,  
exitum; ēgredior, ēgredi,  
ēgressus sum  
departure discessus, discessūs *m.*  
descend sē dēmittere  
desert dēficiō, dēficere, dēfēcī,  
dēfectum  
desertion dēfectiō, dēfectiōnis *f.*  
design cōsiliū, -ī *n.*  
desire cupiditās, cupiditātis *f.*;  
*verb* cupiō, cupere, cupīvi,  
cupītum  
desirous cupidus, -a, um  
despair dēspērō, dēspērāre,  
dēspērāvi, dēspērātum  
despise dēspiciō, dēspicere, dē-  
spēxi, dēspectum; contemnō,  
contemnere, contempsī,  
contemptum  
destroy dēlēō, dēlēre, dēlēvi,  
dēlētum; vāstō, vāstāre, vāst-  
tāvī, vāstātum; cōsūmō, cōn-  
sūmere, cōsūmpsī, cōsūmp-  
tum; perdō, perdere, perdidī,  
perditum  
detain retineō, retinēre, retinuī,  
retentum

determine cōstituō, cōstituere,  
cōstituī, cōstitutum  
devastate vāstō, vāstāre, vāstāvī,  
vāstātum  
devote oneself to, studeō, stu-  
dēre, studuī + *dat.*  
dictator dictātor, dictātōris *m.*  
die morior, morī, mortuus sum;  
*ful. part. moritūrus*  
difficult difficilis, difficilis,  
difficile  
difficulty difficultās, difficultātis  
*f.*; with difficulty aegrē,  
*compar. aegrius, superl.*  
aegerrimē  
dignity dignitās, dignitātis *f.*  
din clāmor, clāmōris *m.*  
dinner cēna, -ae, *f.*;  
direct regō, regere, rēxī, rēctum  
disaster clādēs, clādis *f.*; cala-  
mitās, calamitātis *f.*  
disclose aperiō, aperīre, aperuī,  
apertum  
discord discordia, -ae *f.*  
disembark nāvī ēgredior, ēgredi,  
ēgressus sum  
dismiss dīmīto, dīmītere,  
dīmīsī, dīmīssum  
dispatch litterae, -ārum, *f.*  
dispute contrōversia, -ae *f.*  
disregard neglegō, neglegere,  
neglēxī, neglēctum  
distance spatium, -ī *n.*; in the  
distance procul  
distant, be absum, abesse, āfuī  
distress dolor, dolōris *m.*  
distribute distribuō, distribuere,  
distribuī, distribūtum  
district loca, locōrum *n. pl.*;  
regiō, regiōnis *f.*  
ditch fossa, -ae *f.*

divide distribuō, distribuere,  
distribuī, distribūtum; dīvidō,  
dīvidere, dīvisī, dīvisum;  
partior, partīrī, partītus sum  
divine dīvīnus, -a, -um  
do faciō, facere, fēcī, factum;  
agō, agere, ēgī, āctum  
dog canis, canis *m.*; *gen. pl.*  
canum  
dominion imperium, -ī *n.*  
down from dē *prep.* + *abl.*  
draft-animal iumentum, -ī *n.*  
drag, draw trahō, trahere, trāxī,  
tractum  
draw near accēdō, accēdere,  
accessī, accessum  
draw up īnstruō, īnstruere, īn-  
strūxī, īnstrūctum; draw up  
line of battle aciem īnstruere  
drive agō, agere, ēgī, āctum;  
pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsum;  
drive back, repellō, repellere,  
reppulī, repulsum; drive out  
expellō, expellere, expulī, ex-  
pulsum  
duty officium, -ī *n.*  
dwell habitō, habitāre, habitāvī,  
habitātum

## E

each quisque; uterque  
eager cupidus, -a, -um  
eagerness studium, -ī *n.*;  
cupiditās, cupiditātis *f.*  
early mātūrus, -a, -um  
earth terra, -ae *f.*  
easily facile  
easy facilis, facilis, facile  
Egypt Aegyptus, -ī *f.*

eight octō  
 eighteen octōdecim; duodēviginti  
 eighth octāvus, -a, -um  
 either...or aut...aut  
 elect creō, creāre, creāvī,  
     creātum  
 eleven ūndecim  
 embark nāvem ascendō, ascen-  
     dere, ascendī, ascēsum  
 empire imperium, -ī *n.*  
 employ: *see* use  
 encamp cōnsīdō, cōnsīdere,  
     cōnsēdī, cōnsessum  
 enclose contineō, continēre,  
     continūī, contentum  
 encourage cōfirmō, cōfirmāre,  
     cōfirmāvī, cōfirmātum; hor-  
     tor, hortārī, hortātus sum;  
 cohortor, cohortārī, cohortātus  
     sum  
 end finis, finis *m.*; *verb* cōficiō,  
     cōficere, cōfēcī, cōfectum;  
     finem faciō, facere, fēcī,  
     factum  
 endure patior, patī, passus sum  
 enemy hostis, hostis *m.*; the  
     enemy hostēs, hostium *pl.*  
 engaged occupātus, -a, -um  
 enlist cōscribō, cōscribere,  
     cōscripsī, cōscriptum  
 enough satis  
 enquire quaerō, quaerere,  
     quaesivī, quaesitum  
 enroll cōscribō, cōscribere,  
     cōscripsī, cōscriptum  
 enter ineō, inīre, iniī, initum;  
     ingredior, ingredī, ingressus  
     sum  
 entreaties precēs, precum *f. pl.*  
 entrust committō, committere,

commisi, commissum; per-  
 mittō, permittere, permisi,  
 permissum  
 envoy lēgātus, -ī *m.*  
 envy invidia, -ae *f.*; *verb* invidēō,  
     invidēre, invidī, invīsum  
 Ephesus Ephesus, -ī *f.*  
 equal pār (*gen.* paris), pār, pār  
 escape fuga, -ae *f.*; *verb* effugiō,  
     effugere, effūgī  
 especially maximē; praesertim  
 establish cōfirmō, cōfirmāre,  
     cōfirmāvī, cōfirmātum  
 Etruscan Etrūscus, -ī *m.*  
 even etiam  
 event rēs, rei *f.*; cāsus, cāsūs *m.*  
 ever umquam  
 every omnis, omnis, omne;  
     everybody omnēs, omnium;  
     everything omnia  
 every day cotidiē  
 everywhere ubique  
 examine explōrō, explōrāre,  
     explōrāvī, explōrātum  
 excel superō, superāre, superāvī,  
     superātum; praestō, praestāre,  
     praestiti, praestitum *and*  
     praestātum  
 exert oneself nītor, nīti, nīxus *or*  
     nīsus sum  
 exertion opera, -ae *f.*  
 exhort cohortor, cohortārī,  
     cohortātus sum  
 exist sum, esse, fui  
 exit exitus, exitūs *m.*  
 experience ūsus, ūsūs *m.*  
 experienced perītus, -a, -um  
 exploit rēs gesta, rei gestae *f.*  
 exposed apertus, -a, -um; exposed  
     flank latus apertum

extend *pertineō, pertinēre, pertinui*  
extent *magnitūdō, magnitudinis f.*

## F

facing *contrā prep. + acc.*  
fact *rēs, rei f.*  
fail *dēsum, deesse, dēfui*  
faith, faithfulness *fidēs, fidei f.*  
faithful *fidēlis, fidēlis, fidēle*  
fall *cādō, cādere, cecidī, cāsum*;  
fall down *concidō, concidere, concidī*;  
fall in battle *cādō*;  
occidō, occidere, occidī, occāsum;  
fall back (= *retreat*)  
*pedem referō, referre, rettulī, relātum*  
false *falsus, -a, -um*  
fame *glōria, -ae f.*  
family *familia, -ae f.*  
famous *clārus, -a, -um*  
far *longē*; far and wide *longē lātēque*;  
far off *procul*  
farewell *valē, valēte*  
farmer *agricola, -ae m.*  
farther *ulterior, -ius*  
farthest *ultimus, -a, -um*;  
*extrēmus, -a, -um*  
father *pater, patris m.*  
fatherland *patria, -ae f.*  
favor, be favorable to *faveō, favēre, fāvī, fautum + dat.*  
favor *grātia, -ae f.*  
fear *timor, timōris m.*; *verb timeō, timēre, timui*;  
*vereor, verērī, veritus sum*  
feel *sentiō, sentire, sēnsī, sēsum*  
few *pauci, -ae, -a*  
field *ager, agrī m.*

fierce *ācer, ācris, ācre*  
fiercely *ācriter*  
fifteen *quīndecim*  
fifth *quīntus, -a, -um*  
fight *pugna, -ae f.*; *verb pugnō, pugnāre, pugnāvī, pugnātum*;  
*contendō, contendere, contendī, contentum*  
fight a battle, to *proelium facere*  
fill *compleō, complēre, complēvī, complētum*  
finally *tandem*  
find *inveniō, invenīre, invēnī, inventum*  
find out *cognōscō, cognōscere, cognōvī, cognitum*  
finish *cōnficiō, cōnficere, cōnfēcī, cōnfectum*;  
*finem faciō, facere, fēcī, factum*  
fire *ignis, ignis m.*; set on fire  
*incendō, incendere, incendi, incēsum*  
firmness *cōstantia, -ae f.*  
first *prīmus, -a, -um*;  
*adv. first prīmum*;  
at first *prīmō*;  
in the first place *prīmum*  
fit *aptus, -a, -um*  
fitting *idōneus, -a, -um*  
five *quīque*  
flame *flamma, -ae f.*  
flank *latus, lateris n.*; on the flank  
*ā latere*  
flee *fugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitum*;  
flee from *effugiō, effugere, effūgī*  
fleet *classis, classis f. (gen. pl. classium)*  
flight *fuga, -ae f.*; put to flight  
*fugō, fugāre, fugāvī, fugātum*  
fly *volō, volāre, volāvī, volātum*



follow sequor, sequī, secūtus  
 sum; follow up persequor, per-  
 sequī, persecūtus sum; inse-  
 quor, insequī, insecūtus sum  
 following of time posterus, -a, -um  
 foolish stultus, -a, -um  
 foot pēs, pedis *m.*  
 foot-soldier pedes, peditis *m.*  
 for nam; enim (*postpositive*)  
 for (*on behalf of*) prō + *abl.*  
 forage frūmentor, frūmentārī,  
 frūmentātus sum  
 for a long time diū  
 forbid vetō, vetāre, vetuī, vetitum  
 for many reasons multīs dē  
 causīs  
 force vīs *f.*  
 forced march magnum iter *n.*  
 forces cōpiae, -ārum *f. pl.*  
 foreseeing prūdēns (*gen. prūden-*  
*tis*), prūdēns, prūdēns  
 foresight prūdentia, -ae *f.*  
 forest silva, -ae *f.*  
 forget memoriam dēpōnō + *gen.*  
 forgetful oblitus, -a, -um  
 forgive ignōscō, ignōscere,  
 ignōvī, ignōtum + *dat.*  
 form a plan cōsiliū capere;  
 cōsiliū inīre  
 former prior, prius  
 formerly ōlim  
 fortification mūnitiō, mūnitiōnis  
*f.*; fortifications moenia,  
 moenium *n.*  
 fortify mūniō, mūnīre, mūnivī,  
 mūnītum  
 fortune fortūna, -ae *f.*  
 forum forum, -ī *n.*  
 found (*a city*) condō, condere,  
 condidī, conditum

founder conditor, conditōris *m.*  
 fountain fōns, fontis *m.*  
 four quattuor  
 fourteen quattuordecim  
 fourth quārtus, -a, -um  
 free liber, libera, liberum; *verb*  
 liberō, liberāre, liberāvī,  
 liberātum  
 freedom libertās, libertātis *f.*  
 freely liberē  
 frequent crēber, crēbra, crēbrum  
 fresh integer, integra, integrum  
 friend amīcus, -ī *m.*  
 friendly amīcus, -a, -um  
 friendship amīcītia, -ae *f.*  
 frighten terreō, terrēre, terruī,  
 territum; frighten thoroughly  
 perterreō, perterrēre, perterruī,  
 perterritum  
 from ā, ab; dē; ē, ex *preps.* +  
*abl.*  
 from a distance procul  
 from all sides undique  
 from that place inde  
 front, in front of ante *prep.* +  
*acc.*; prō *prep.* + *abl.*  
 full plēnus, -a, -um  
 furthermore praetereā

## G

gain adipīscor, adipīscī, adeptus  
 sum; to gain a victory  
 victōriam reportāre  
 garrison praesidium, -ī *n.*  
 gate porta, -ae *f.*  
 gather legō, legere, lēgī, lēctum;  
 cōferō, cōferre, contulī,  
 collātum  
 Gaul (*the country*) Gallia, -ae *f.*

Gaul (*inhabitant of the country Gaul*) Gallus, -ī *m.*  
 general dux, ducis *m.*; lēgātus, -ī *m.*  
 generosity liberālītās, liberālītātis *f.*  
 German Germānus, -ī *m.*  
 Germany Germānia, -ae *f.*  
 gift dōnum, -ī *n.*  
 girl puella, -ae *f.*  
 give dō, dare, dedī, datum; give back reddō, reddere, reddidī, redditum; give up dēdō, dēdere, dēdidī, dēditum; trādō, trādere, trādidī, trāditum; give way cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessum  
 glad laetus, -a, -um; gladly laetē  
 gladiator gladiātor, gladiātōris *m.*  
 glory glōria, -ae *f.*  
 go eō, īre, iī, itum; go across trānseō, trānsīre, trānsiī, trānsitum; go around circumeō, circumīre, circumiī, circumitum; go away abeō, abīre, abiī, abitum; go back redeō, redīre, rediī, reditum; go forth, go out exeō, exīre, exiī, exitum; go into ineō, inīre, iniī, initum; go out excēdō, excēdere, excessī, excessum; ēgredior, ēgredi, ēgressus sum; go to adeō, adīre, adiī, aditum; go to meet, to obviam īre + *dat.*  
 god deus, deī *m.*  
 goddess dea, deae *f.*  
 gold aurum, -ī *n.*  
 golden aureus, -a, -um  
 good bonus, -a, -um

good-bye vālē, *pl. vālēte*  
 good fortune fortūna, -ae *f.*  
 goods bona, -ōrum *n. pl.*  
 good sense prūdētia, -ae *f.*  
 goodwill grātia, -ae *f.*  
 government rēs pūblica, rei pūblicae *f.*  
 gradually paulātīm  
 grain frūmentum, -ī *n.*; of grain frūmentārius, -a, -um  
 grandeur dignitās, dignitātis *f.*  
 grandfather avus, avī *m.*  
 grateful, to be grātiam habēre  
 gratitude grātia, -ae *f.*  
 great magnus, -a, -um; *compar. maior, maius; superl. maximus, -a, -um*  
 great, so tantus, -a, -um  
 great number multitūdō, multitūdinis *f.*  
 greatly magnopere  
 greatness magnitūdō, magnitūdinis *f.*  
 Greece Graecia, -ae *f.*  
 Greek, a Graecus, -ī *m.*; *adj. Graecus, -a, -um*  
 greet salūtō, salūtāre, salūtāvī, salūtātum  
 grief dolor, dolōris *m.*; lūctus, lūctūs *m.*  
 ground loca, locōrum *n. pl.*  
 guard custōs, custōdis *m.*; (= *protecting force*) praesidium, -ī *n.*; (= *watch, sentries*) custōdiae, -ārum *f.*, statio, statiois *f.*; *verb* servō, servāre, servāvī, servātum  
 guard, off one's guard inopināns (*gen. inopinantis*), inopināns, inopināns

## H

habit cōsuētūdō, cōsuētūdinis  
*f.*; mōs, mōris *m.*  
 halt cōsistō, cōsistere, cōstiti  
 hand manus, manūs *f.*  
 hand over trādō, trādere, trādidī,  
 trāditum  
 happen accidō, accidere, accidi  
 happy laetus, -a, -um  
 harass premō, premere, pressi,  
 pressum  
 harbor portus, portūs *m.*  
 hard difficilis, difficilis, difficile  
 hardly vix  
 hard pressed, to be premī, gra-  
 viter premī  
 hardship labor, labōris *m.*  
 harm noceō, nocēre, nocuī,  
 nocitum + *dat.*  
 hasten properō, properāre,  
 properāvī, properātum;  
 contendō, contendere,  
 contendī, contentum  
 haughty superbus, -a, -um  
 have habeō, habēre, habuī,  
 habitum  
 head caput, capitis *n.*  
 hear audiō, audīre, audīvī,  
 auditum  
 heart animus, -ī *m.*  
 heavy gravis, gravis, grave  
 heights, higher ground, loca  
 superiōra *n. pl.*  
 help auxilium, -ī *n.*; *verb* iuvō,  
 iuvāre, iūvī, iūtum; to give  
 help auxilium ferre  
 hem in contineō, continēre,  
 continuī, contentum  
 hence hinc

here hīc; (= *hither*) hūc  
 hesitate dubitō, dubitāre,  
 dubitāvī, dubitātum  
 hide abdō, abdere, abdidī,  
 abditum  
 high altus, -a, -um  
 higher ground loca superiōra *n. pl.*  
 hill collis, collis *m.*  
 hinder impediō, impedire,  
 impedivī, impedītum  
 hindrance impedimentum, -ī *n.*  
 hold teneō, tenēre, tenuī; obtin-  
 eō, obtinēre, obtinuī, obten-  
 tum; habeō, habēre, habuī,  
 habitum; hold back prohibeō,  
 prohibēre, prohibuī, prohibi-  
 tum; retineō, retinēre, retinuī,  
 retentum  
 home domus, domūs *f.*  
 honor honor, honoris *m.*  
 hope spēs, speī *f.*; *verb* spērō,  
 spērāre, spērāvī, spērātum;  
 hope for spērō + *acc.*  
 horn cornū, cornūs *n.*  
 horse equus, equī *m.*  
 horseman eques, equitis *m.*  
 hostage obses, obsidis *m.*  
 hostile inimicus, -a, -um  
 hour hōra, -ae *f.*  
 house domus, domūs *f.*  
 how (*with adj. or adv.*) quam;  
 (= *in what manner?*) quōmodo?  
 however at; autem (*postpositive*);  
 tamen  
 how great? quantus, -a, -um?  
 how many? quot? (*indeclinable*)  
 huge ingēns (*gen. ingentis*),  
 ingēns, ingēns  
 human being homō, hominis *m.*  
 or *f.*

hundred *centum* (*indeclinable*)  
 hunger *famēs*, *famis* *f.*  
 hurl *coniciō*, *conicere*, *coniēcī*,  
*coniectum*  
 hurry *properō*, *properāre*,  
*properāvī*, *properātum*;  
*contendō*, *contendere*,  
*contendī*, *contentum*  
 husband *vir*, *virī* *m.*

# I

if *sī*; if not *nisi*  
 ill *aeger*, *aegra*, *aegrum*  
 illustrious *nōbilis*, *nōbilis*,  
*nōbile*  
 immediately *statim*; *cōnfestim*  
 immense *ingēns* (*gen. ingentis*),  
*ingēns*, *ingēns*  
 impede *impediō*, *impedīre*,  
*impedivī*, *impeditum*  
 implore *precor*, *precārī*, *precātus*  
*sum*  
 in *in* *prep.* + *abl.*; in behalf of  
*prō* + *abl.*; in front of *prō* +  
*abl.*; *ante* + *acc.*; in that place  
*ibi*; in this way *ita*  
 incite *concitō*, *concitāre*, *conci-*  
*tāvī*, *concitātum*; *excitō*, *ex-*  
*citāre*, *excitāvī*, *excitātum*  
 increase *tr.* *augeō*, *augēre*, *auxī*,  
*auctum*; *intr.* *augeor*, *augērī*,  
*auctus sum*  
 inexperienced *imperītus*, *-a*, *-um*  
 + *gen.*  
 infantry *peditēs*, *peditum* *m.*;  
*peditātus*, *peditātūs* *m.*; *adj.*  
*pedester*, *pedestris*, *pedestre*  
 inflict *inferō*, *inferre*, *intulī*,  
*illātum*

influence *auctōritās*, *auctōritātis*  
*f.*; *grātia*, *-ae* *f.*; *verb* *addūcō*,  
*addūcere*, *addūxī*, *adductum*  
 inform, to *certiōrem* *facere*  
 inhabitant *incola*, *-ae* *m.*  
 injure *noceō*, *nocēre*, *nocuī*,  
*nocitum* + *dat.*  
 injury *iniūria*, *-ae* *f.*  
 inmost *intimus*, *-a*, *-um*  
 inner *interior*, *interius*  
 innocence *innocentia*, *-ae* *f.*  
 interrupt *intermittō*, *intermittere*,  
*intermīsī*, *intermissum*  
 intimate friend *familiāris*,  
*familiāris* *m.*  
 inquire *quaerō*, *quaerere*,  
*quaesivī*, *quaesitum*  
 into *in* *prep.* + *acc.*  
 in vain *frūstrā*  
 invite *vocō*, *vocāre*, *vocāvī*,  
*vocātum*  
 Ireland *Hibernia*, *-ae* *f.*  
 iron *ferrum*, *-ī* *n.*  
 island *īnsula*, *-ae* *f.*  
 Italian *Italus*, *-ī* *m.*  
 Italy *Italia*, *-ae* *f.*

# J

javelin (heavy) *pīlum*, *-ī* *n.*  
 join *iungō*, *iungere*, *iūnxī*, *iūnc-*  
*tum*; *coniungō*, *coniungere*,  
*coniūnxī*, *coniūctum*  
 join battle, to *proelium*  
*committere*  
 journey *iter*, *itineris* *n.*  
 joyful *laetus*, *-a*, *-um*  
 judge *iūdicō*, *iūdicāre*, *iūdicāvī*,  
*iūdicātum*; *arbitror*, *arbitrārī*,  
*arbitrātus sum*

Juno Iūnō, Iūnōnis *f.*  
 Jupiter Iuppiter, Iovis *m.*  
 just iūstus, -a, -um; aequus, -a, -um  
 just now modo

## K

keen ācer, ācris, ācre; keenly ācriter  
 keep servō, servāre, servāvī, servātum  
 kill interficiō, interficere, interfēcī, interfectum; necō, necāre, necāvī, necātum; occidō, occidere, occidī, occisum  
 kind genus, generis *n.*; *adj.* amīcus, -a, -um  
 kind deed beneficium, -ī *n.*  
 king rēx, rēgis *m.*  
 kingdom rēgnum, -ī *n.*  
 kiss ōsculum, -ī *n.*  
 know sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītum; cognōvī (*see* cognōscō); not know nēsciō, nēscīre, nēscīvī, nēscītum  
 knowledge scientia, -ae *f.*  
 known nōtus, -a, -um

## L

labor labōrō, labōrāre, labōrāvī, labōrātum  
 lack inopia, -ae *f.*  
 lacking, be dēsum, deesse, dēfuī  
 lake lacus, lacūs *m.*  
 land ager, agrī *m.*; terra, -ae *f.*; *verb* ēgredior, ēgredī, ēgressus sum  
 large magnus, -a, -um

last ultimus, -a, -um; at last postrēmō  
 lasting perpetuus, -a, -um  
 late sērus, -a, -um  
 lately modo  
 Latin Latīnus, -a, -um  
 Latins, the Latīnī, -ōrum *m.*  
 law lēx, lēgis *f.*; iūs, iūris *n.*  
 lay down dēpōnō, dēpōnere, dēposuī, dēpositum  
 lay waste vāstō, vāstāre, vāstāvī, vāstātum  
 lead dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum; lead back redūcō, redūcere, redūxī, reductum; lead off dēdūcō, dēdūcere, dēdūxī, dēductum; lead out ēdūcō, ēdūcere, ēdūxī, ēductum; lead to addūcō, addūcere, addūxī, adductum  
 leader dux, ducis *m.*  
 leading man prīnceps, prīncipis *m.*  
 leap down dēsiliō, dēsilīre, dēsiluī, dēsultum  
 learn cognōscō, cognōscere, cognōvī, cognitum; discō, discere, didicī  
 leave, leave behind relinquo, relinquere, reliquī, relictum  
 leave (= *depart*) discēdō, discēdere, discessī, discessum; exeō, exīre, exiī, exitum; ēgredior, ēgredī, ēgressus sum  
 left (= *on the left hand*) sinister, sinistra, sinistrum; on the left ab sinistrā parte  
 legion legiō, legiōnis *f.*; legion in light marching order legiō expedita

length, at length **tandem**  
 less *adj.* minor, minus; *adv.*  
**minus**  
 let down **dēmittō, dēmittere,**  
**dēmīsī, dēmissum**  
 let go **dīmittō, dīmittere, dīmīsī,**  
**dīmissum**  
 letter (of the alphabet) **littera,**  
**-ae f.; (= epistle) litterae,**  
**-ārum f. pl.**  
 level **aequus, -a, -um**  
 levy **cōnscrībō, cōnscrībere,**  
**cōnscrīpsī, cōnscrīptum**  
 liberty **libertās, libertātis f.**  
 life **vīta, -ae f.**  
 lift **tollō, tollere, sustulī,**  
**sublātum**  
 light **lūx, lūcis f.; adj. levis, levis,**  
**leve**  
 light marching order, in  
**expeditus, -a, -um**  
 like **similis, similis, simile; verb**  
**amō, amāre, amāvī, amātum**  
 line of battle **aciēs, aciēi f.**  
 lion **leō, leōnis m.**  
 listen to **audiō, audīre, audīvī,**  
**audītum**  
 little **parvus, -a, -um; adv. parum;**  
 by a little **paulō**; little by little  
**paulātum**; too little **parum**  
 live **vīvō, vivere, vixī, vīctum;**  
 (= dwell) **habitō, habitāre,**  
**habitāvī, habitātum**  
 living **vīvus, -a, -um**  
 load **onus, oneris n.**  
 long **longus, -a, -um; for a long**  
**time diū**  
 longing **cupiditās, cupiditātis f.**  
 look after **cūrō, cūrāre, cūrāvī,**  
**cūrātum**

look at **spectō, spectāre, spectāvī,**  
**spectātum**  
 look down upon **dēspiciō, dēspi-**  
**cere, dēspēxī, dēspectum**  
 lose **āmittō, āmittere, āmīsī,**  
**āmissum**  
 loss **incommodum, -ī n.; dētrī-**  
**mentum, -ī n.**  
 love **amor, amōris m.; verb amō,**  
**amāre, amāvī, amātum**  
 low **humilis, humilis, humile**  
 lower **inferior, inferius**  
 lowest **īnfimus; īmus**  
 loyal **fidēlis, fidēlis, fidēle**  
 loyalty **fidēs, fideī f.**  
 Lucius **Lūcius, Lūciī m.**

## M

magistrate **magistrātus, -ūs m.**  
 maiden **virgō, virginis f.**  
 make **faciō, facere, fēcī, factum;**  
 make an end, to **fīnem (+ gen.)**  
**facere**; make war on, to **bellum**  
**inferre + dat.**  
 man **vir, virī m.; homō, hominis**  
**m.**  
 manage **administrō, administrāre,**  
**administrāvī, administrātum**  
 manner **modus, -ī m.; ratiō,**  
**ratiōnis f.**  
 many **multī, -ae, -a; very many**  
**plūrimī, -ae, -a**  
 march **iter, itineris n.; forced**  
 march **iter magnum**; on the  
 march in **itinere**; *verb* **iter**  
**facere**  
 maritime **maritimus, -a, -um**  
 market-place **forum, -ī n.**  
 marriage **mātrīmōnium, -ī n.; to**  
 marry in **mātrīmōnium dūcere**



marvel at *mīror, mīrārī, mīrātus sum + acc.*  
 masses, the *plēbs, plēbis f.*  
 master *magister, magistrī m.*  
 matron *mātrōna, -ae f.*  
 matter *rēs, rei f.; negōtium, -ī n.*  
 means *modus, -ī m.; means of access aditus, aditūs m.; by no means minimē*  
 meanwhile, in the meantime *intereā; interim*  
 meet *occurrō, occurrere, occurri, occursum + dat.; to go to meet obviam ire + dat.*  
 memory *memoria, -ae f.*  
 mention *dēmōnstrō, dēmōnstrāre, dēmōnstrāvī, dēmōnstrātum*  
 merchant *mercātor, mercātōris m.*  
 message *nūntius, -ī m.*  
 messenger *nūntius, -ī m.*  
 method *modus, -ī m.; ratiō, ratiōnis f.*  
 mid-day *merīdiēs, merīdiēi m.*  
 middle, in the midst of *medius, -a, -um*  
 midnight *media nox, mediae noctis f.*  
 might *vīs f.*  
 mile *mille passūs; miles milia passuum*  
 military *militāris, militāris, militāre*  
 mind *mēns, mentis f.; animus, -ī m.; have in mind cōgitō, cōgitāre, cōgitāvī, cōgitātum*  
 mindful *memor, memoris + gen.*  
 mine *meus, mea, meum*  
 misfortune *cāsus, cāsūs m.;*

*incommodum, -ī n.; calamitās, calamitātis f.*  
*missile tēlum, -ī n.*  
 moat *fossa, -ae f.*  
 money *pecūnia, -ae f.*  
 more *plūs, plūrēs; adv. magis*  
 moreover *autem (postpositive); praetereā*  
 most *plūrimus, -a, -um; adv. plūrimum*  
 mother *māter, mātris f.*  
 mountain *mōns, montis m.*  
 mourning *lūctus, lūctūs m.*  
 mouth *ōs, ōris n.*  
 move *moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtum; move back removeō, removēre, remōvī, remōtum; move forward prōcēdō, prōcēdere, prōcessī, prōcessum*  
 much *multus, -a, -um; by much multō; adv. multum*  
 multitude *multitūdō, multitūdinis f.*  
 my *meus, mea, meum*

## N

name *nōmen, nōminis n.; verb appellō, appellāre, appellāvī, appellātum*  
 nation *populus, -ī m.; nātiō, nātiōnis f.; gēns, gentis f.*  
 native *barbarus, -ī m.*  
 naval *nāvālis, nāvālis, nāvāle*  
 near *prope, apud preps. + acc.*  
 nearer *propior, propius*  
 nearest *proximus, -a, -um*  
 nearly *paene; ferē*  
 neglect *neglegō, neglegere, neglēxī, neglēctum*

neighboring finitimus, -a, -um  
neighbors finitimī, -ōrum *m.*  
neither *adj.* neuter, -tra, -trum;

neither . . . nor neque . . . neque  
never numquam

nevertheless tamen

new novus, -a, -um

newly nūper

next posterus, -a, -um; proximus,  
-a, -um; *adv.* deinde

night nox, noctis *f.*; by night

noctū; at nightfall sub noctem

nine novem

nineteen ūndēvigintī

ninth nōnus, -a, -um

no nōn; minimē

no *adj.* nūllus, -a, -um

noble nōbilis, nōbilis, nōbile

noon meridiēs, meridiēi *m.*

no one nēmō (*gen.* nūlliūs)

nor nec, neque

not nōn; not at all minimē; not  
even nē . . . quidem; not only  
. . . but also nōn solum . . .

sed etiam; not yet nōndum

nothing nihil (*indeclinable*)

notice animadvertō,

animadvertere, animadvertī,

animadversum

now nunc; (= *already*) iam

number numerus, -ī *m.*; great

number multitudō, multitudinis  
*f.*; magnus numerus *m.*

numerous crēber, crēbra,  
crēbrum

○

obey pāreō, pārēre, pārui,  
pāritum + *dat.*

observe animadvertō, animad-  
vertere, animadvertī, animad-  
versum

obtain adipīscor, adipīscī,  
adeptus sum; nancīscor,  
nancīscī, nactus sum

occupied occupātus, -a, -um + *in*  
+ *abl.*

of (= *about, concerning*) dē +  
*abl.*

of course sānē

off from *prep.* dē + *abl.*

often saepe; so often totiēs

old vetus, *gen.* veteris

old man senex, senis (*gen. pl.*  
senum) *m.*

omit neglegō, neglegere, neglēxi,  
neglēctum

on *in prep.* + *abl.*; on account of  
ob, *propter preps.* + *acc.*; on  
all sides undique; on this side  
of citrā + *acc.*

once, once upon a time ōlim; at  
once statim

one ūnus, ūna, ūnum; one . . .

another alius . . . alius; the one  
. . . the other alter . . . alter

one hundred centum (*indecl.*)

only ūnus, ūna, ūnum; sōlus, -a,  
-um; *adv.* modo

open apertus, -a, -um; *verb* aperiō,  
aperīre, aperui, apertum

opinion sententia, -ae *f.*

opportunity facultās, facultātis *f.*;  
occāsiō, occāsiōnis *f.*; give an  
opportunity facultātem dare;  
potestātem facere

or aut

oracle ōrāculum, -ī *n.*

oration ōrātiō, ōrātiōnis *f.*

orator *ōrātor, ōrātōris m.*  
 order *imperō, imperāre, imperāvī, imperātum + dat.; iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussum + acc.;* without Caesar's orders *iniussū Caesaris*  
 other *alius, alia, aliud; the other (of two) alter, altera, alterum; the others ceterī, -ae, -a; reliquī, -ae, -a; of others adj. aliēnus, -a, -um*  
 ought *dēbeō, dēbēre, dēbuī, dēbitum*  
 our *noster, nostra, nostrum; our men nostrī, -ōrum*  
 out of *ē, ex prep. + abl.*  
 outer *exterior, exterius; outermost extimus, extrēmus; outside exterus, -a, -um*  
 outpost *statiō, statiōis f.*  
 over *trāns prep. + acc.*  
 overcome *opprimō, opprimere, oppressī, oppressum; vincō, vincere, vicī, victum*  
 overlook *neglegō, neglegere, neglēxī, neglēctum*  
 overpower *opprimō, opprimere, oppressī, oppressum*  
 overtake *cōnsequor, cōnsequī, cōnsecūtus sum*  
 ox *bōs, bovis m.*

## P

pace *passus, passūs m.*  
 pain *dolor, dolōris m.*  
 pains *opera, -ae f.; to take pains operam dare*  
 painting *pīctūra, -ae f.*  
 panic terror, *terrōris m.*

pardon *ignōscō, ignōscere, ignōvī, ignōtum + dat.*  
 parent *parēns, parentis m. and f.*  
 part *pars, partis f.*  
 particularly *praesertim*  
 pass *angustiae, -ārum f. pl.; verb trāseō, trānsire, trānsiī, trānsitum*  
 patrician *patricius, -ī m.*  
 patron *patrōnus, -ī m.*  
 pay attention to, pay heed to *operam dō, dare, dedī, datum*  
 peace *pāx, pācis f.*  
 penalty *poena, -ae f.; to pay the penalty poenās dare*  
 people *populus, -ī m.; hominēs, hominum m.; common people plēbs, plēbis f.; adj. of the people pūblicus, -a, -um*  
 perceive *cōspiciō, cōspicere, cōspēxī, cōnspectum; intellegō, intellegere, intellēxī, intellēctum; sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsū; videō, vidēre, vidī, vīsum*  
 peril *periculum, -ī n.*  
 perish *pereō, perīre, perīī, peritum*  
 permit *patior, patī, passus sum*  
 perpetual *perpetuus, -a, -um*  
 Persian, a *Persa, -ae m.*  
 person, in *ipse, ipsa, ipsum; adj. praesēns (gen. praesentis), praesēns, praesēns*  
 persuade *persuadeō, persuādēre, persuāsī, persuāsum + dat.*  
 pick *legō, legere, lēgī, lēctum*  
 picture *pīctūra, -ae f.*  
 pirate *pīrāta, -ae m.*

pitch (a camp) pōnō, pōnere,  
 posuī, positum  
 place locus, -ī *m.*; *pl.* loca,  
 locōrum *n.*; *verb* collocō,  
 collocāre, collocāvi,  
 collocātum; pōnō, pōnere,  
 posuī, positum; place at  
 intervals dispōnō, dispōnere,  
 disposuī, dispositum  
 place of, in prō *prep.* + *abl.*  
 place, from this hinc  
 plain campus, -ī *m.*  
 plan cōnsilium, -ī *n.*  
 pleasing grātus, -a, -um  
 plebeians plēbs, plēbis *f.*  
 plenty cōpia, -ae *f.*  
 plow arō, arāre, arāvī, arātum  
 plunder praeda, -ae *f.*  
 point out mōnstrō, mōnstrāre,  
 mōnstrāvī, mōnstrātum;  
 dēmōnstrō, dēmōnstrāre,  
 dēmōnstrāvī, dēmōnstrātum;  
 ostendō, ostendere, ostendī,  
 ostentum *or* ostēnsium  
 ponder cōgitō, cōgitāre, cōgitāvī,  
 cōgitātum  
 poor pauper *gen.* pauperis  
 population numerus incolārum  
 port portus, portūs *m.*  
 position locus, -ī *m.*; take up  
 position cōsistō, cōsistere,  
 cōstitī  
 possess obtineō, obtinēre, obtinuī,  
 obtentum  
 post dispōnō, dispōnere, disposuī,  
 dispositum  
 power potestās, potestātis *f.*  
 powerful potēns (*gen.* potentis),  
 potēns, potēns; firmus, -a, -um  
 powerfully potenter

praetor praetor, praetōris *m.*  
 praise laus, laudis *f.*; *verb* laudō,  
 laudāre, laudāvī, laudātum  
 pray ōrō, ōrāre, ōrāvī, ōrātum;  
 precor, precārī, precātus sum  
 prayers precēs, precum *f. pl.*  
 prefer mālō, mālle, mālui  
 prepare parō, parāre, parāvī,  
 parātum  
 prepared parātus, -a, -um  
 present dōnum, -ī *n.*; *adj.* prae-  
 sēns (*gen.* praesentis), prae-  
 sēns, praesēns  
 presently mox  
 preserve servō, servāre, servāvī,  
 servātum  
 press premō, premere, pressī,  
 pressum  
 pretty pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum  
 prevent prohibeō, prohibēre,  
 prohibuī, prohibitum  
 previously antea  
 price pretium, -ī *n.*  
 prisoner captīvus, -ī *m.*  
 privately privātum  
 proceed prōgredior, prōgredī,  
 prōgressus sum  
 promise polliceor, pollicērī, pol-  
 licitus sum; prōmittō, prō-  
 mittere, prōmisi, prōmissum  
 proper iustus, -a, -um  
 property bona, -ōrum *n. pl.*; rēs,  
 rei *f.*  
 protect mūniō, mūnīre, mūnīvi,  
 mūnītum; tueor, tuērī, tūtus  
 (*or* tuitus) sum; dēfendō, dē-  
 fendere, dēfendī, dēfēnsium  
 protection custōdia, -ae *f.*  
 proud superbus, -a, -um  
 province prōvincia, -ae *f.*

provisions *rēs frūmentāria, rei frūmentāriae f.*  
 prudence *prudentia, -ae f.*  
 public *pūblicus, -a, -um; public business, public interest rēs pūblica, rei pūblica f.*  
 punish *pūniō, pūnīre, pūnīvī, pūnitum; ulcīscor, ulcīscī, ultus sum*  
 punished, to be *poenās dare*  
 punishment *poena, -ae f.*  
 pursue *īnsequor, īnsequī, īnsecūtus sum; persequor, persequī, persecūtus sum*  
 put *pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positum*  
 put an end to *finem (+ gen.) facere*  
 put in command of *praeficiō, praeficere, praefēcī, praefectum*

## Q

queen *rēgīna, -ae f.*  
 quickly *celeriter; brevī*  
 quiet, keep *taceō, tacēre, tacuī, tacitum*

## R

race *gēns, gentis f.*  
 raise *tollō, tollere, sustulī, sublātum*  
 rally, to *sē recipere*  
 rampart *vāllum, -ī n.*  
 rank *ōrdō, ordinis m.; dignitās, dignitātis f.*  
 rapid *celer, celeris, celere*  
 rapidly *celeriter*  
 reach *pervenīō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, with ad or in with acc.*

read *legō, legere, lēgī, lēctum*  
 ready *parātus, -a, -um*  
 rear *tergum, -ī n.; (= rearguard) novissimum agmen; in the rear ā tergō; post tergum*  
 reason *causa, -ae f.; for many reasons multis dē causis; for what reason quā dē causā; for what reasons quibus dē causis*  
 rebuild *restituō, restituere, restitui, restitūtum*  
 recall *revocō, revocāre, revocāvī, revocātum*  
 receive *accipiō, accipere, accēpī, acceptum*  
 recently *nūper*  
 recommend, *suādeō, suādēre, suāsī, suāsum + dat.*  
 reconnoiter *explōrō, explōrāre, explōrāvī, explōrātum*  
 recover *tr. recipiō, recipere, recēpī, receptum; intr. sē recipere*  
 reflect upon *cōgitō, cōgitāre, cōgitāvī, cōgitātum*  
 refuse *nōlō, nōlle, nōluī*  
 regain *recipiō, recipere, recēpī, receptum*  
 region *regiō, regiōnis f.*  
 reign *rēgnō, rēgnāre, rēgnāvī, rēgnātum*  
 reinforcements *subsidium, -ī n.; auxilia, -ōrum n. pl.*  
 rejoice *gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvīsus sum*  
 relate *dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictum*  
 release *solvō, solvere, solvī, solūtum*  
 rely on *cōfidō, cōnfīdere, cōnfīsus sum + dat.*

remain maneō, manēre, mānsi, mānsum	reditum; restituō, restituere, restitui, restitutum; reficiō, reficere, refēcī, refectum
remaining reliquus, -a, -um	restrain contineō, continēre, continui, contentum
remake reficiō, reficere, refēcī, refectum	retire pedem referō, referre, retuli, relatum; cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessum
remember memoriam (+ <i>gen.</i> ) retineō, retinēre, retinui, retentum	retreat, to sē recipere; pedem referre
remembering <i>adj.</i> memor + <i>gen.</i>	return reditus, reditūs <i>m.</i> ; <i>verb</i> redeō, redire, rediī, reditum; revertō, revertere, reverti, reversum ( <i>perfect tenses</i> ); revertor, reverti, reversus sum ( <i>present, imperfect and future tenses</i> )
remove auferō, auferre, abstulī, ablātum	return (= <i>give back</i> ) reddō, reddere, reddidī, redditum
renew restituō, restituere, restitui, restitutum	reveal aperiō, aperire, aperui, apertum
renown glōria, -ae <i>f.</i> ; fāma, -ae <i>f.</i>	revenue vectigal, vectigālis <i>n.</i>
repair reficiō, reficere, refēcī, refectum	revolt defectiō, defectionis <i>f.</i> ; <i>verb</i> dēficiō, dēficere, dēfēcī, dēfectum
reply respondeō, respondēre, respondi, respōnsum	revolution novae rēs, novārum rērum <i>f. pl.</i>
report referō, referre, rettuli, relatum; dēferō, dēferre, dētuli, dēlātum; perferō, perferre, pertuli, perlātum	reward praemium, -ī <i>n.</i>
repose quiēs, quiētis <i>f.</i>	Rhine Rhēnus, -ī <i>m.</i>
repulse repellō, repellere, reppulī, repulsum	Rhone Rhodanus, -ī <i>m.</i>
reputation fāma, -ae <i>f.</i> ; nōmen, nōminis <i>n.</i>	rich dives, <i>gen.</i> divitis
resist resistō, resistere, restitī + <i>dat.</i>	right iūs, iūris <i>n.</i> ; <i>adj.</i> (= <i>fair, just</i> ) iūstus, -a, -um; <i>adj.</i> ( <i>opposite to left</i> ) dexter, dextra, dextrum
resolution cōstantia, -ae <i>f.</i>	right up to usque ad + <i>acc.</i>
resolve statuō, statuere, statui, statūtum	rise orior, oriri, ortus sum
respond respondeō, respondēre, respondi, respōnsum	river flūmen, flūminis <i>n.</i> ; fluvius, -ī <i>m.</i>
rest <i>noun</i> quiēs, quiētis <i>f.</i> ; rest (= <i>the rest</i> ) cēteri, -ae, -a; reliqui, -ae, -a; rest of, the reliquus, -a, -um	road via, -ae <i>f.</i> ; iter, itineris <i>n.</i>
restore reddō, reddere, reddidī,	



roam about *vagor, vagārī, vagātus sum*  
 rock *saxum, -ī n.*  
 Roman *Rōmānus, -ī m.; adj.*  
     *Rōmānus, -a, -um*  
 Rome *Rōma, -ae f.*  
 room *camera, -ae f.*  
 rouse *concitō, concitāre, concitāvī, concitātum*  
 rout *pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsum; fugō, fugāre, fugāvī, fugātum*  
 royal power *rēgnūm, -ī n.*  
 ruin *perdō, perdere, perdidī, perditum*  
 rule *imperium, -ī n.; verb rēgnō, rēgnāre, rēgnāvī, rēgnātum; regō, regere, rēxī, rēctum*  
 run *currō, currere, cucurrī, cursum; run away effugiō, effugere, effūgī; run together, rush concurrō, concurrere, concurrī, concursum*

## S

Sabine *Sabīnus, -a, -um*  
 Sabines *Sabīnī, -ōrum m. pl.*  
 sacred *sacer, sacra, sacrum*  
 sacrifice *sacrificō, sacrificāre, sacrificāvī, sacrificātum*  
 sad *trīstis, trīstis, trīste; maestus, -a, -um*  
 safe *incolumis, incolumis, incolume; tūtus, -a, -um*  
 safety *salūs, salūtis f.*  
 said, says he *inquit*  
 sail *nāvigō, nāvigāre, nāvigāvī, nāvigātum; set sail nāvem solvō, solvere, solvī, solūtum*

sailing *nāvigātiō, nāvigātiōnis f.*  
 sailor *nauta, -ae m.*  
 sake, for the sake of *causā (following the genitive)*  
 sally *ēruptiō, ēruptiōnis f.*  
 salute *salūtō, salūtāre, salūtāvī, salūtātum*  
 same *īdem, eadem, idem; same . . . as īdem. . . quī*  
 Sardinia *Sardinia, -ae f.*  
 save *servō, servāre, servāvī, servātum*  
 say *dicō, dicere, dixī, dictum; say . . . not negō, negāre, negāvī, negātum*  
 scarcely *vix; aegrē*  
 scarcity *inopia, -ae f.*  
 scout *explōrātor, explōrātōris m.*  
 sea *mare, maris n.; of the sea maritimus, -a, -um; sea coast, sea shore ōra maritima, ōrae maritimae f.*  
 season *tempus annī, temporis annī n.*  
 second *secundus, -a, -um*  
 second time, a *īterum*  
 secretly *clam*  
 see *videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsum; cōspiciō, cōspicere, cōspēxī, cōspectum*  
 seek *quaerō, quaerere, quaesivī, quaesitum; petō, petere, petivī, petitum; seek safety in flight, to salutem fugā petere*  
 seem *videor, vidērī, vīsus sum*  
 seize *occupō, occupāre, occupāvī, occupātum*  
 senate *senātus, senātūs m.*  
 senate house *cūria, -ae f.*  
 senator *senātor, senātōris m.*

senators patrēs cōscriptī  
send mittō, mittere, mīsī,  
missum; send ahead, in ad-  
vance praemittō, praemittere,  
praemīsī, praemissum; send  
back remittō, remittere,  
remīsī, remissum; send out  
ēmittō, ēmittere, ēmīsī,  
ēmissum; send under the yoke  
sub iugum mittere

sentries custōdiae, -ārum  
*f. pl.*

separate dīvidō, dīvidere, dīvīsī,  
dīvīsum

serious gravis, gravis, grave;  
seriously graviter

service ūsus, ūsūs *m.*; officium, -ī  
*n.*; beneficium, -ī *n.*

set a day diem dīcō, dīcere, dīxī,  
dictum

set free liberō, liberāre, liberāvī,  
liberātum

set in command praeficiō, prae-  
ficere, praefēcī, praefectum

set on fire incendō, incendere,  
incendī, incēsum

set out proficīscor, proficīscī,  
profectus sum

seven septem

seventeen septendecim

seventh septimus, -a, -um

several complūrēs, complūra

severe gravis, gravis, grave;  
severely graviter

shade, shadow umbra, -ae *f.*

share partior, pārtīrī, partītus  
sum

sharp ācer, ācris, ācre

sharply ācriter

shatter frangō, frangere, frēgī,  
frāctum

shepherd pāstor, pāstōris *m.*

shield scūtum, -ī *n.*

ship nāvis, nāvis *f.*

shore lītus, lītōris *n.*; ōra, ōrae *f.*

short brevis, brevis, breve; in a  
short time brevī

shout, shouting clāmor, clāmōris  
*m.*

show spectāculum, -ī *n.*; *verb*  
mōnstrō, mōnstrāre, mōnstrāvī,  
mōnstrātum; ostendō, osten-  
dere, ostendī, ostentum *or*  
ostēsum

shut, shut in claudō, claudere,  
clausī, clausum

Sicily Sicilia, -ae *f.*

sick aeger, aegra, aegrum

side latus, lateris *n.*; on all sides  
ex omnibus partibus; on one  
side ūnā ex parte

siege obsidiō, obsidiōnis *f.*

sight cōspectus, cōspectūs *m.*

signal signum, -ī *n.*; signal for  
battle signum proeliī

silence silentium, -ī *n.*

silent be taceō, tacēre, tacuī,  
tacitum

silly stultus, -a, -um

since cum

sister soror, sorōris *f.*

sit sedeō, sedēre, sēdī, sessum

six sex

sixteen sēdecim

sixth sextus, -a, -um

size magnitūdō, magnitūdinis *f.*

skill ars, artis *f.*

skilled perītus, -a, -um + *gen.*

slaughter caedēs, caedis *f.*

slave *servus*, -ī *m.*  
 slavery *servitūs*, *servitūtis f.*  
 slay *interficiō*, *interficere*,  
     *interfēcī*, *interfectum*  
 sleep *dormiō*, *dormīre*, *dormīvī*,  
     *dormītum*  
 slender *gracilis*, *gracilis*, *gracile*  
 slight *levis*, *levis*, *leve*  
 small *parvus*, -a, -um; smaller  
     *minor*, *minus*; smallest  
     *minimus*, -a, -um  
 smoke *fūmus*, -ī *m.*  
 so *tam*, *sic*, *ita*; so great, so large  
     *tantus*, -a, -um; so many *tot*  
     *indeclinable*  
 soldier *miles*, *militis m.*  
 some *nōnnūllī*, -ae, -a; some one  
     *aliquis*; something *aliquid*;  
     some . . . others *alii . . . alii*  
 son *filius*, -ī *m.*  
 soon *mox*  
 sorrowful *trīstis*, *trīstis*, *triste*  
 sort *genus*, *generis n.*; what sort  
     of *quālis*, *quālis*, *quāle*  
 sortie *ēruptiō*, *ēruptiōnis f.*  
 soul *animus*, -ī *m.*  
 sovereignty *rēgnum*, -ī *n.*  
 space *spatium*, -ī *n.*  
 Spain *Hispānia*, -ae *f.*  
 spare *parcō*, *parcere*, *pepercī*,  
     *parsum + dat.*  
 speak *loquor*, *loquī*, *locūtus sum*  
 spear *hasta*, -ae *f.*  
 spectacle *spectāculum*, -ī *n.*  
 speech *ōrātiō*, *ōrātiōnis f.*; to  
 deliver a speech *ōrātiōnem*  
     *habēre*  
 speed *celeritās*, *celeritātis f.*  
 spend *cōsumō*, *cōsumere*,  
     *cōsumpsī*, *cōsumptum*

*spirit animus*, -ī *m.*  
 spring *vēr*, *vērīs n.*  
 staff-officer *lēgātus*, -ī *m.*  
 stand *stō*, *stāre*, *stetī*, *statum*  
 standard *signum*, -ī *n.*  
 state *civitās*, *civitātis f.*; *rēs*  
     *pública*, *reī públicae f.*; of the  
     state *adj. públicus*, -a, -um  
 station *collocō*, *collocāre*,  
     *collocāvī*, *collocātum*  
 stature *magnitūdō* (*magnitūdinis*  
     *f.*) *corporis*  
 stay *maneō*, *manēre*, *mānsī*,  
     *mānsūm*; moror, *morārī*,  
     *morātus sum*  
 stick *haereō*, *haerēre*, *haesi*,  
     *haesum*  
 stimulate *excitō*, *excitāre*,  
     *excitāvī*, *excitātum*  
 stir up *concitō*, *concitāre*,  
     *concitāvī*, *concitātum*  
 stone *saxum*, -ī *n.*  
 storm *tempestās*, *tempestātis f.*  
 storm (= *take by assault*) *expug-*  
     *nō*, *expugnāre*, *expugnāvī*,  
     *expugnātum*  
 street *via*, *viae f.*  
 strengthen *cōfirmō*, *cōfirmāre*,  
     *cōfirmāvī*, *cōfirmātum*  
 strife *discordia*, -ae *f.*  
 strive *nitor*, *nītī*, *nixus or nīsus*  
     *sum*  
 strong *firmus*, -a, -um; *validus*,  
     -a, -um  
 stronghold *castellum*, -ī *n.*  
 struggle *certāmen*, *certāminis n.*  
 such *tālis*, *tālis*, *tāle*  
 sudden *repentīnus*, -a, -um; of a  
 sudden *imprōvisō*; suddenly  
     *subitō*

suffer *patior, patī, passus sum*;  
 to suffer defeat *calamitātem*  
 accipere; to suffer loss incom-  
 modum accipere  
 sufficient *satis*  
 suitable *idōneus, -a, -um; aptus,*  
*-a, -um*  
 suited *aptus, -a, -um*  
 summer *aestās, aestātis f.*  
 summon *vocō, vocāre, vocāvī,*  
*vocātum; convocō, convocāre,*  
*convocāvī, convocātum*  
 supply *cōpia, -ae f.*; supply of  
 grain *rēs frūmentāria, rei*  
*frūmentāriae f.*  
 support *subsidium, -ī n.*  
 supreme command *summa (-ae*  
*f.) imperiī*  
 sure *certus, -a, -um; surely*  
*certē*  
 surpass *superō, superāre,*  
*superāvī, superātum*  
 surrender *dēditio, dēditionis f.*;  
*verb trans. dēdō, dēdere, dēdidī,*  
*dēditum; trādō, trādere,*  
*trādidī, trāditum; intrans. mē*  
*dēdō*  
 surround *circumveniō, circum-*  
*venīre, circumvēnī, circum-*  
*ventum*  
 suspect *suspīcor, suspicārī,*  
*suspīcātus sum*  
 sustain *sustineō, sustinēre,*  
*sustinuī, sustentum*  
 swear *iūrō, iūrāre, iūrāvī,*  
*iūrātum*  
 swift *celer, celeris, celere;*  
 swiftly *celeriter*  
 swiftness *celeritās, celeritātis f.*  
 sword *gladius, -ī m.*

## T

take *capiō, capere, cēpī, captum*;  
 take away *tollō, tollere,*  
*sustulī, sublātum; auferō,*  
*auferre, abstulī, ablātum*; take  
 by storm *expugnō, expugnāre,*  
*expugnāvī, expugnātum*; take  
 care of *cūrō, cūrāre, cūrāvī,*  
*cūrātum*; to take pains *operam*  
*dare*; take place *geror, gerī,*  
*gestus sum*; take thought for  
*cōsulō, cōsulere, cōsului,*  
*cōsultum + dat.*; to take up  
 arms *arma capere*; take up  
 position *cōnsidō, cōnsidere,*  
*cōnsēdī, cōnsessum*  
 tall (*of a person*) *longus, -a, -um*  
 Tarentum *Tarentum, -ī n.*  
 task *opus, operis n.*  
 tax *vectīgal, vectīgālis n.*  
 teach *doceō, docēre, docuī,*  
*doctum*  
 teacher *magister, magistrī m.*  
 tear *lacrima, -ae f.*  
 tell (*a story*) *nārrō, nārrāre,*  
*nārrāvī, nārrātum*  
 temple *templum, -ī n.*  
 ten *decem*  
 tenth *decimus*  
 terms *condiciō, condiciōnis f.*  
 terrify *terreō, terrēre, terruī,*  
*territum; perterreō, perterrēre,*  
*perterruī, perterritum*  
 territory *finēs, finium m. pl.*  
 terror *terror, terrōris m.*  
 than *quam*  
 thank *grātiām (grātiās) agō,*  
*agere, ēgī, āctum + dat.*  
 that *ille, illa, illud; is, ea, id*

then *tum*, *deinde*, *inde*  
 thence *inde*  
 there *ibi*; (= *thither*) *eō*  
 therefore *itaque*; *igitur*  
 (*postpositive*)  
 thereupon *deinde*  
 thing *rēs*, *rei* *f.*  
 think *arbitror*, *arbitrārī*, *arbi-*  
*trātus sum*; *existimō*,  
*existimāre*, *existimāvī*,  
*existimātum*; (= *judge*)  
*iūdicō*, *iūdicāre*, *iūdicāvī*,  
*iūdicātum*; *putō*, *putāre*,  
*putāvī*, *putātum*  
 third *tertius*, -*a*, -*um*  
 thirteen *tredecim*  
 thirty *trīgintā*  
 this *hīc*, *haec*, *hōc*; *is*, *ea*, *id*  
 thought, take thought for  
*cōsulō*, *cōsulere*, *cōsului*,  
*cōsultum* + *dat.*  
 thousand *mīlle*; thousands *mīlia*,  
*mīlium n.*  
 three *trēs*, *trēs*, *tria*  
 three hundred *trecentī*, -*ae*, -*a*  
 throng *turba*, -*ae f.*  
 through *per* + *acc.*  
 throw *iaciō*, *iacere*, *iēcī*, *iactum*;  
*coniciō*, *conicere*, *coniēcī*,  
*coniectum*; throw away *abiciō*,  
*abicere*, *abiēcī*, *abiectum*  
 thus *ita*  
 Tiber *Tiberis*, *Tiberis m.*  
 time *tempus*, *temporis n.*; for a  
 long time *diū*  
 tired *dēfessus*, -*a*, -*um*  
 to *ad* + *acc.*  
 today *hodiē*  
 together *simul*  
 toil *labor*, *labōris m.*; *verb* *labōrō*,

*labōrāre*, *labōrāvī*, *labōrātum*  
 tomorrow *crās*  
 too *quoque*  
 top of *summus*, -*a*, -*um*  
 touch *tangō*, *tangere*, *tetigī*,  
*tāctum*  
 toward *ad* + *acc.*  
 tower *turris*, *turris f.*  
 town *oppidum*, -*ī n.*  
 trader *mercātor*, *mercātōris m.*  
 traitor *prōditor*, *prōditōris m.*  
 transport *trānsportō*, *trānspor-*  
*tāre*, *trānsportāvī*, *trānsportā-*  
*tum*  
 trap *īnsidiae*, -*ārum f. pl.*  
 traveler *viātor*, *viātōris m.*  
 treachery *īnsidiae*, -*ārum f. pl.*  
 treat with, to *agere cum* + *abl.*  
 treaty *foedus*, *foederis n.*  
 trench *fossa*, -*ae f.*  
 tribe *gēns*, *gentis f.*; *nātiō*,  
*nātiōnis f.*  
 tribune *tribūnus*, -*ī m.*  
 tribute *vectigal*, *vectigālis n.*  
 Trojan, a *Trōiānus*, -*ī m.*; Trojan  
*adj.* *Trōiānus*, -*a*, *um*  
 troops *cōpiae*, -*ārum f. pl.*  
 Troy *Trōia*, -*ae f.*  
 true *vērus*, -*a*, -*um*  
 trust *cōnfidō*, *cōnfidere*,  
*cōnfisus sum* + *dat.*  
 trustworthy *fidēlis*, *fidēlis*,  
*fidēle*  
 try *cōnor*, *cōnārī*, *cōnātus sum*;  
*temptō*, *temptāre*, *temptāvī*,  
*temptātum*  
 turn *vertō*, *vertere*, *vertī*, *versum*;  
*convertō*, *convertere*, *convertī*,  
*conversum*; turn away *āvertō*,  
*āvertere*, *āvertī*, *āversum*;

turn back **revertō, revertere, revertī, reversum** (*chiefly in perfect tenses*); **revertor, revertī, reversus sum** (*chiefly in present, imperfect and future tenses*);  
 turn and flee, to **terga vertere**  
 twelve **duodecim**  
 twenty **vīgintī**  
 twice **bis**  
 two **duo, duae, duo**  
 two hundred **ducentī, -ae, -a**  
 type: *see kind*

## U

unawares **inopināns** (*gen. inopinantis*), **inopināns, inopināns**  
 uncle **avunculus, -ī m.**  
 under **sub + acc. and abl.**  
 understand **intellegō, intellegere, intellēxī, intellēctum**  
 undertake **suscipio, suscipere, suscepī, susceptum**  
 undone **infectus, -a, -um;**  
 with one's work undone **rē infectā**  
 unexpected **repentinus, -a, -um;**  
 unexpectedly **imprōvisō**  
 unfair **inīquus, -a, -um**  
 unfavorable **aliēnus, -a, -um;** on  
 unfavorable ground **aliēnō locō**  
 unfriendly **inimicus, -a, -um**  
 unimportant **levis, levis, leve**  
 unite **iungō, iungere, iūnxī, iūnctum;** **coniungō, coniungere, coniūnxī, coniūnctum**  
 unjust **inīquus, -a, -um**  
 unknown **incognitus, -a, -um**  
 unless **nisi**

unlike **dissimilis, dissimilis, dissimile**  
 unlooked-for **repentinus, -a, -um**  
 unofficially **privātim**  
 unprotected **apertus, -a, -um**  
 unskilled **imperītus, -a, -um**  
 unwearied **integer, integra, integrum**  
 unwilling **invītus, -a, -um;** be  
 unwilling **nōlō, nōlle, nōluī**  
 upper **superus, -a, -um**  
 urge **hortor, hortārī, hortātus sum;** **cohortor, cohortārī, cohortātus sum;** **suādeō, suādēre, suāsī, suāsum + dat.**  
 use **ūsus, ūsus m.**  
 use **ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum + abl.**  
 useful **ūtilis, ūtilis, ūtile**  
 useless **inūtilis, inūtilis, inūtile**

## V

vain, in vain **frustrā**  
 valley **vallēs, vallis f.**  
 valor **virtūs, virtūtis f.**  
 value **pretium, -ī n.**  
 van, vanguard **primum agmen, primī agminis n.**  
 vast **ingēns** (*gen. ingentis*), **ingēns, ingēns**  
 vengeance, take vengeance on  
**ulcīscor, ulcīscī, ultus sum**  
 venture **audeō, audēre, ausus sum**  
 very little **minimē** (*adv.*)  
 very much **plūrimum** (*adv.*)  
 victor **victor, victōris m.**  
 victory **victōria, -ae f.**  
 view **cōspectus, cōspectus m.**  
 vigor **vīrēs, vīrium f. pl.**



village *vīcus*, -ī *m.*  
 violence *vīs f.*  
 visit *adeō, adīre, adiī, aditum*  
 voice *vōx, vōcis f.*; in a loud voice  
*magnā vōce*  
 voyage *nāvigātiō, nāvigātiōnis f.*

## W

wage *gerō, gerere, gessī, gestum*  
 wait *maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsum; moror, morārī, morātus sum*  
 walk *ambulō, ambulāre, ambulāvī, ambulātum*  
 wall *mūrus, -ī m.*; (of a camp) *vāllum, -ī n.*; city walls *moenia, moenium n. pl.*  
 wander *errō, errāre, errāvī, errātum; vagor, vagārī, vagātus sum*  
 want *inopia, -ae f.*  
 war *bellum, -ī n.*; to prepare for war *bellum parāre*  
 warn *moneō, monēre, monuī, monitum*  
 war-ship *nāvis longa, nāvis longae f.*  
 watch *vigilia, -ae f.*  
 water *aqua, -ae f.*  
 way (= road) *iter, itineris n.*; *via, viae f.*; (= manner) *modus, -ī m.*; *ratio, ratiōnis f.*; way out *exitus, exitūs m.*; in the way *obviam*  
 weapon *tēlum, -ī n.*  
 weary *dēfessus, -a, -um*  
 weather *tempestās, tempestātis f.*  
 weep *lacrimō, lacrimāre, lacrimāvī, lacrimātum*

welcome *accipiō, accipere, accēpī, acceptum*  
 well *bene*  
 well-born *nōbilis, nōbilis, nōbile*  
 what sort of *quālis, quālis, quāle*  
 when *ubi, cum; interrogative quandō*  
 whence *unde*  
 where *ubi*  
 which (*rel. pron.*) *quī, quae, quod*  
 which (of two) *uter, utra, utrum*  
 while *dum*  
 white *albus, -a, -um*  
 whither *quō*  
 who (*rel. pron.*) *quī, quae, quod; (inter. pron.) quis, quid*  
 whole *tōtus, -a, -um*  
 why, *cūr, quam ob rem*  
 wicked *malus, -a, -um*  
 wickedness *scelus, sceleris n.*  
 wide *lātus, -a, -um*; widely *lātē*  
 wife *uxor, uxōris f.*; *coniūnx, coniugis f.*  
 will *voluntās, voluntātis f.*;  
     against one's will *invītus, -a, -um*  
 willing, be willing *volō, velle, voluī*  
 wine *vīnum, -ī n.*  
 wing (of an army) *cornū, cornūs n.*; on the right wing *ā dextrō cornū*  
 winter *hiems, hiemis f.*; verb  
     winter, pass the winter *hiemō, hiemāre, hiemāvī, hiemātum*;  
 winter camp, winter quarters *hīberna, -ōrum, n. pl.*  
 wisdom *sapientia, -ae f.*

wise sapiēns (*gen. sapientis*),  
sapiēns, sapiēns; prūdēns  
(*gen. prūdentis*), prūdēns,  
prūdēns

wish voluntās, voluntātis *f.*; *verb*  
volō, velle, voluī; cupiō,  
cupere, cupīvī, cupītum

withdraw (= *go away*) discēdō,  
discēdere, discessī, discessum;  
excēdō, excēdere, excessī,  
excessum; (= *lead away*)  
dēdūcō, dēdūcere, dēdūxī,  
dēductum; removeō, removēre,  
remōvī, remōtum

withdrawal discessus, discessūs  
*m.*

within intrā + *acc.*

without sine + *abl.*

withstand sustineō, sustinēre,  
sustinuī, sustentum

woman fēmina, -ae *f.*; mulier,  
mulieris *f.*

wonder, wonder at mīror, mīrārī,  
mīrātus sum

wood silva, -ae *f.*

word verbum, -ī *n.*

work opus, operis, *n.*; *verb* labō-  
rō, labōrāre, labōrāvī,  
labōrātum

worse peior, peius; worst  
pessimus, -a, -um

wound vulnus, vulneris *n.*; *verb*  
vulnerō, vulnerāre, vulnerāvī,  
vulnerātum

wreck frangō, frangere, frēgī,  
frāctum

wretched miser, misera, miserum

write scribo, scribere, scripsī,  
scriptum

wrong, wrongdoing iniūria, -ae *f.*

## Y

year annus, -ī *m.*

yes certē, sãnē, vērō, valdē, etiam

yesterday herī

yield cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessum

yoke iugum, -ī *n.*

young man adulēscēns, adulēs-  
centis, (*gen. pl. adulēscēntium*)  
*m.*; iuvenis, iuvenis, (*gen. pl.*  
iuvenum) *m.*

your (*of one person*) tuus, tua,  
tuum; (*of more than one person*)  
vester, vestra, vestrum

## Z

zeal studium, -ī *n.*

# GLOSSARY OF PROPER NAMES

A few simple rules can be given to facilitate English pronunciation of Latin names.

1. The place of the accent in the word remains the same in English as it was in Latin.
2. Long vowels are most often pronounced as they are pronounced in the alphabet in English. For example, **Gallī** transferred to English becomes *Galleye*. Short vowels have approximately the same pronunciation in both languages.
3. Of the common diphthongs, **ae** and **oe** become long *e* as in **Cloelia**, *Clee/li/a* or short *e* as in **Aenēās**, *Ē/nee/as*; **eu** is pronounced as in English *Europe* and **au** is pronounced as in English *Paul*.
4. Consonants are approximately the same in both languages. However, note the values of the following:  
**c** before **e** or **i** is soft and is usually pronounced like *s*, as in *civil*.  
**g** before **e** or **i** is soft and is pronounced like *j*, as in *gesture*.  
**i**, as a consonant, becomes *j* as in **Iuppiter**, *Jupiter*.  
**ph** and **th** are pronounced as in *amphitheater*.  
**v** is soft as in *venture*.

5. The combinations **ci**, **si** and **ti** in names ending in **-cius**, **-cia**, **-cium**; **-sius**, **-sia**, **-sium**; **-tius**, **-tia**, **-tium** (and the corresponding plurals) are pronounced like the *ti* in *nation* as in **Cilicia**, *Si/li/sha*; **Hortēsius**, *Hor/ten/shus*; **Helvētiū**, *Hel/vee/shi/eye*.

**Aebutius**, **Titus**, **Aebutī**, **Titī**, *m.*, master of horse (cavalry commander) at the battle of Lake Regillus

**Achillēs**, **-is**, *m.*, champion of the Greeks at Troy

**Aenēās**, **-ae**, *m.*, famous Trojan hero

**Agamemnon**, **-nonis**, *m.*, chief leader of the Greeks against Troy

**Alba Longa**, **Albae Longae**, *f.*, Italian city founded by Iulus

**Amūlius**, **-iū**, *m.*, king of Alba Longa who deposed his brother, Numitor

**Arethūsa**, **-ae**, *f.*, Sicilian water nymph

**Aventinus**, **-i**, *m.*, one of the seven hills of Rome

**Beneventum**, **-i**, *n.*, site of the defeat of Pyrrhus, 275 B.C.

**Caesar**, **-aris**, *m.*; C. Iulius Caesar, famous Roman general; statesman, writer

**Camillus**, **-i**, *m.*: cognomen of several members of the *gens* Furia; Marcus Furius Camillus, Roman dictator; conqueror of Veii and Falerii

**Carthāgō**, **-ginis**, *f.*, Carthage, a city in North Africa

**Castor**, **-oris**, *m.*, Greek hero who, with his twin brother Pollux, fought with the Romans against the Latin tribes

**Cerēs**, **Cereris**, *f.*, Roman goddess of agriculture; sister of Jupiter and Pluto

**Cicerō**, **-ōnis**, *m.*; Marcus Tullius Cicero, Roman consul famous for his orations and philosophical writings

**Cilicia**, **-ae**, *f.*, region in Asia Minor

**Cineās**, **Cīneae**, *m.*, envoy of Pyrrhus to the Roman Senate

- Claudius**, -ii, *m.*: name of two Roman *gentes*; Appius Claudius Crassus, the most notorious of the decemvirs of 451 B.C.; Appius Claudius Caecus, censor 312 B.C., builder of several public works
- Cloelia**, -ae, *f.*, Roman girl given as a hostage who escaped to Rome by swimming the Tiber
- Colossæum**, -i, *n.*, huge amphitheater at Rome, the site of gladiatorial combats
- Creûsa**, -ae, *f.*, Trojan wife of Aeneas
- Cupidô**, -inis, *m.*, son of Venus; god of love
- Didô**, -ûs, *f.*, founder and queen of Carthage
- Discordia**, -ae, *f.*, goddess of strife
- Ēpirus**, -i, *f.*, a region in northwest Greece
- Etrûria**, -ae, *f.*, a district in northwest Italy
- Etrûscî**, -ôrum, *m.*, inhabitants of Etruria
- Fabricius**, -ii, *m.*: name of a Roman *gens*; C. Fabricius Luscinius, consul, conqueror of the Samnites and opponent of Pyrrhus
- Falerii**, -ôrum, *m.*, chief town of the Falisci in Etruria
- Faustulus**, -i, *m.*, legendary shepherd who rescued and reared Romulus and Remus
- Forum**, -i, *n.*, center of public activity: business, commercial, political and judicial
- Hector**, -oris, *m.*, bravest of the Trojan warriors; killed by Achilles
- Hecuba**, -ae, *f.*, queen of Troy; wife of Priam
- Helena**, -ae, *f.*, beautiful wife of Greek Menelaus, abducted by Trojan Paris
- Helvétii**, -ôrum, *m.*, tribe of Gauls living in what is now Switzerland
- Hispânia**, -ae, *f.*, Spain
- Horâtius**, -ii, *m.*, name of a Roman *gens*; Horatius Cocles, hero who defended the bridge over the Tiber against Porsena
- Hortênsius**, -ii, *m.*, Roman orator at the time of Cicero
- Îda**, -ae, *f.*, Mount Ida, near Troy
- Îûlus**, -i, *m.*, Ascanius, son of Aeneas; founder of Alba Longa
- Iûnô**, -ônîs, *f.*, queen of the gods; sister and wife of Jupiter
- Iuppiter**, Iovis, *m.*, king of gods and father of men
- Lacedaemonii**, -ôrum, *m.*, Spartans
- Latinus**, -i, *m.*, king of Latium who gave his daughter in marriage to Aeneas
- Latium**, -ii, *n.*, district of Italy in which Rome was situated
- Lavinia**, -ae, *f.*, daughter of Latinus; Italian wife of Aeneas
- Leônidâs**, -ae, *m.*, king of Sparta; hero of the battle of Thermopylae
- Lucrêtia**, -ae, *f.*, Roman matron ravished by the son of king Tarquin the Proud
- Mamilius**, -ii, *m.*, king of the Latins defeated by the Romans at Lake Regillus
- Mânilius**, -ii, *m.*: name of a Roman *gens*; C. Manilius, Roman tribune of the people 67 B.C.
- Mare Internum**, Maris Interni, *n.*, the Mediterranean
- Menelâus**, -i, *m.*, Greek husband of Helen; brother of Agamemnon
- Mercurius**, -ii, *m.*, son of Jupiter and Maia; messenger of the gods
- Minerva**, -ae, *f.*, daughter of Jupiter; goddess of wisdom; patroness of all the arts and sciences
- Mithridâtês**, -is, *m.*, king of Pontus
- Mûcius**, -ii, *m.*: name of a Roman *gens*; C. Mucius Scaevola, intending to kill Porsena, killed a scribe by mistake
- Numitor**, -ôris, *m.*, deposed king of Alba; grandfather of Romulus and Remus
- Oenônê**, -ês, *f.*, nymph loved and deserted by Paris
- Olympus**, -i, *m.*, mountain in northern Greece, supposed home of the gods
- Orcus**, -i, *m.*, the realm of the dead, the underworld
- Palâtinus**, -i, *m.*, the Palatine, one of the seven hills of Rome
- Paris**, Paridis, *m.*, son of Priam; Trojan husband of Helen
- Persae**, -ârum, *m.*, Persians
- Plutô**, Plûtônîs, *m.*, brother of Jupiter and Neptune; ruler of the underworld
- Poenî**, -ôrum, *m.*, Carthaginians, originally from Phoenicia

- Pollux**, -ūcis, *m.*, a Greek hero who, with his twin brother Castor, fought with the Romans against the Latin tribes
- Pompeius**, -iī, *m.*: name of a Roman *gens*; Cn. Pompeius, Pompey the Great (106-48 B.C.), triumvir with Caesar and Crassus; conqueror of Mithridates and the pirates
- Pontus**, -ī, *m.*, a district of Asia Minor, the realm of Mithridates
- Porsena**, -ae, *m.*, king of Etruria who fought against the Romans in order to restore the exiled king, Tarquinius Superbus
- Postumius**, -iī, *m.*; Aulus Postumius, Roman dictator; conqueror of the Tarquins and Latin tribes at Lake Regillus
- Priamus**, -ī, *m.*, king of Troy, father of Hector and Paris
- Prôserpina**, -ae, *f.*, daughter of Ceres; wife of Pluto
- Pyrrhus**, -ī, *m.*, a king of Epirus in Greece; enemy of the Romans
- Regillus**, -ī, *m.*, Lake Regillus, site of Roman victory over the Latins 496 B.C.
- Rēgulus**, -ī, *m.*: surname in the *gens* Atilia; Marcus Atilius Regulus, a Roman consul, voluntarily went back to Carthage as captive in the first Punic War
- Remus**, -ī, *m.*, twin brother of Romulus, first king of Rome, who killed him in a quarrel
- Rhea Silvia**, **Rheae Silviae**, *f.*, daughter of Numitor; mother of Romulus and Remus
- Rōmulus**, -ī, *m.*, son of Rhea Silvia and Mars; twin brother of Remus; founder and first king of Rome
- Sabīni**, -ōrum, *m.*, ancient people of Italy; neighbors of the Latins to the north
- Sardinia**, -ae, *f.*, Mediterranean island west of Italy
- Sibylla**, -ae, *f.*, prophetess and priestess of Apollo
- Tarentum**, -ī, *n.*, Greek city of southern Italy which sought aid from Pyrrhus against the Romans
- Tarquinius Superbus**, **Tarquiniī Superbī**, *m.*, last of the kings of Rome
- Tenedos**, -ī, *f.*, island in the Aegean Sea near Troy
- Thetis**, **Thetidis**, *f.*, sea-nymph; mother of Achilles
- Tiberis**, -beris, *m.*, river in Italy on the banks of which Rome was built
- Trōia**, -ae, *f.*, Troy, city of Asia Minor besieged and finally captured by the Greeks
- Turnus**, -ī, *m.*, king of the Rutuli in Italy, killed by Aeneas in hand-to-hand combat
- Ulixēs**, -is, *m.*, Greek warrior famed for his cunning and wanderings after the fall of Troy
- Veiī**, -ōrum, *m.*, town of Etruria, long the rival of Rome, finally captured by Camillus
- Venus**, **Veneris**, *f.*, goddess of love; wife of Vulcan; mother of Cupid
- Verginia**, -ae, *f.*, daughter of Verginius, the centurion. She was killed at the hands of her father who wished to save her from the designs of Appius Claudius
- Verginius**, -iī, *m.*: the name of a Roman *gens*; Lucius Verginius, a centurion who killed his daughter in the market place to save her from the decemvir, Appius Claudius
- Vesta**, -ae, *f.*, goddess of the hearth and domestic life
- Via Appia**, **Viae Appiae**, *f.*, a road begun by the censor Appius Claudius Caecus, which led from Rome to Capua, afterward extended to Brundisium
- Vulcānus**, -ī, *m.*, son of Jupiter and Juno; husband of Venus; god of fire who forged the weapons and thunderbolts of the gods
- Xanthippus**, -ī, *m.*, Carthaginian conqueror of Regulus and the Romans
- Xerxēs**, -is, *m.*, king of the Persians who, having invaded Greece, was defeated at Salamis

# I N D E X

The numbers refer to sections unless otherwise stated; *fn.* indicates footnote.

- ā, ab**, 29, 217
- abbreviations of Latin proper names, 298 *fn.*
- ablative case
  - absolute, 228-230, 316, 357
  - accompaniment, 32
  - agent, 217, 223
  - comparison, 280
  - manner, 181
  - means, 31
  - measure of difference, 288
  - respect, 256
  - time when, 209 (2)
  - time within which, 209 (3)
  - with prepositions, 33-34, 131
- absum**, 269
- accent, *see* p. 4
- accompaniment, 32, 123, 163 (c), 246, 271, 299
- accusative case
  - direct object, 20, 300
  - duration of time, 209 (1)
  - extent of space, 264
  - subject of infinitive, 138, 336
  - time how long, 209 (1)
  - with prepositions, 22, 33-34, 131
- accusative and infinitive construction, 336, 341-343
- adjectives
  - agreement, 72, 74, 112
  - comparison, 276-279; of **-er** adjectives, 285; of **-ilis** adjectives, 285; of irregular adjectives, 285
  - dative with, 158
  - declension: of comparatives, 278, 286-287, 433; of first and second declension, 73, 77, 79, 429; of third declension, 157, 430; of nine irregular, 185
  - genitive with, 374
  - interrogative, 246
  - numeral, cardinal, 187-189, 263, 434; ordinal, 208, 434
  - possessive, 82, 164
  - used as nouns, 257
- adsum**, 232
- adverbs
  - comparison, 294
  - formation, 293
- Aenēās**, 251; declension of, 422
- agent, 217, 223
- agreement
  - of adjectives, 72, 74, 112
  - of noun in apposition, 65
  - of relative pronoun, 271
  - of verbs, 12, 216, 223, 322, 342
- Alba Longa, *see* p. 154
- alius**, 185-186 (1)
- alphabet, *see* p. 2
- alter**, 185-186 (2)
- animal**, declension of, 152
- antequam**, 318 *fn.*
- apposition, 65
- articles, no Latin, 11
- audeō**, 349, 355, 359
- augeō**, 232



- Augustus, *see* p. 161  
 Caesar, Julius, *see* p. 160  
 cardinal numerals, 187-189, 263, 434  
 Carthage, *see* pp. 158, 339  
 cases in Latin, 47  
**castra**, 67  
**certiōrem facere**, 281  
**cēterī**, 186 (4)  
 change of spelling of English derivative, 68  
 Christian Church, *see* p. 1  
**coepī**, 170  
 Colosseum, 108  
 commands  
     direct, 129  
     negative, 129  
 comparative adjectives, declension of, 278, 286-287, 433  
 comparison  
     of adjectives, 276-279, 285-287  
     of adverbs, 294  
 complementary infinitive, 147, 233  
**complūrēs**, 287  
 consonants, pronunciation of, *see* p. 3  
 consuls, *see* p. 155  
 co-ordinating relative, 270 *fn.*  
**cum**  
     accompaniment, 32  
     enclitic, 123, 163 (c), 246, 271, 299  
 daily life of a well-to-do Roman, 325  
 dative case  
     double, 331  
     indirect object, 38  
     interest, 330-331  
     purpose, 329, 331  
     with adjectives, 158  
     with compound verbs, 328  
     with special verbs, 39, 327  
 declension of nouns  
     first, 48, 422  
     second, 54-59, 63-64, 78, 423  
     third, 109, 111, 152, 424-425  
     fourth, 194, 427  
     fifth, 206, 428  
 demonstrative pronouns  
     **hic**, 180, 438  
     **idem**, 305, 438  
     **ille**, 180, 438  
     **is**, 163-164, 180, 438  
 deponent verbs, 347-348, 355-359, 365, 371, 379-380, 456-469  
 derivatives: *see* word study  
 description, genitive of, 306  
**dēsistō**, 233  
 dictator, 193 *fn.*  
**diēs**, 206, 210  
 diphthongs, pronunciation of, *see* p. 3  
**discēdō**, 177  
**dō**, 4 *fn.*  
**domus**, 195  
 dress of a Roman citizen, 155  
 dress of a Roman woman, 178  
**dum** clauses, 130, 315  
**duo**, declension of, 188  
**ego**, declension of, 123, 436  
 emphatic pronoun, 304, 439  
 English derivative study: *see* word study  
 English Grammar, Essentials of, 387-408  
**enim**, 283  
**eō** and compounds, 252, 312, 321, 340, 472  
 Etruscans, *see* pp. 154-155  
**ex**, equal to partitive, 384  
 expressions of place: *see* place

- expressions of time: *see* time
- extent of space, 264
- fables, *see* pp. 151-153, 218, 279, 328, 373, 431
- future participle active, 321-322
- future perfect, use of, 175
- Gauls, *see* p. 155
- gender
  - in first declension, 16
  - in second declension, 54-55, 63
  - in third declension, 109, 111
  - in fourth declension, 194
  - in fifth declension, 206
- genitive case
  - of description, 306
  - partitive, 383
  - possessive, 45
  - with adjectives, 374
- girlhood and marriage in ancient Rome, 127
- gods of the Romans, 116, 205
- Gracchi, *see* p. 159
- hic**, 180, 438
- history of Rome, 143, 298, 326, 339; *see* pp. 154-161
- hoping, promising, swearing, construction with verbs of, 343
- hostis**, declension of, 152
- i-stem nouns, 152
- idem**, 305, 438
- ille**, 180, 438
- imperative, 129
- imperō**, with dative, 39
- imus**, 258
- indirect object, 38
- indirect statements, 336, 341-343
- infinitives
  - accusative and, 336, 341-343
  - active forms, 136, 335, 340
  - as subject of verb, 137
  - complementary, 147, 233
  - deponent and semi-deponent forms, 347, 349, 359
  - in indirect statements, 336, 341-343
  - passive forms, 335, 340
  - time expressed by, 341
- "inform," 281
- interrogative particles, 7, 118
- interrogative pronoun, 245, 246, 441
- interest, dative of, 330-331
- ipse**, 304, 439
- irregular adjectives, 185-186, 432
- is**, 163-164, 180, 438
- is quī**, 271
- Iuppiter**, declension of, 426
- iūrō**, 343
- Julius Caesar, *see* p. 160
- kings of Rome, 143
- Latin and modern languages, *see* p. 1
- Latin Syntax, Review of, 409-421
- Latium, *see* p. 154
- legendary history of Rome, 251
- liberī**, children, 78
- liberō**, ablative with, 177
- locative case, 196
- locus**, 290
- magister equitum**, 193 *fn.*
- manner, ablative of, 181
- mare**, declension of, 152
- means, ablative of, 31
- measure of difference, ablative of, 288
- medius**, 167 *fn.*, 258
- meus**, 82
- mileage, Roman, 267
- mille**, **mīlia**, 266
- minor**, declension of, 286
- mōns**, declension of, 152
- months, names of, 192

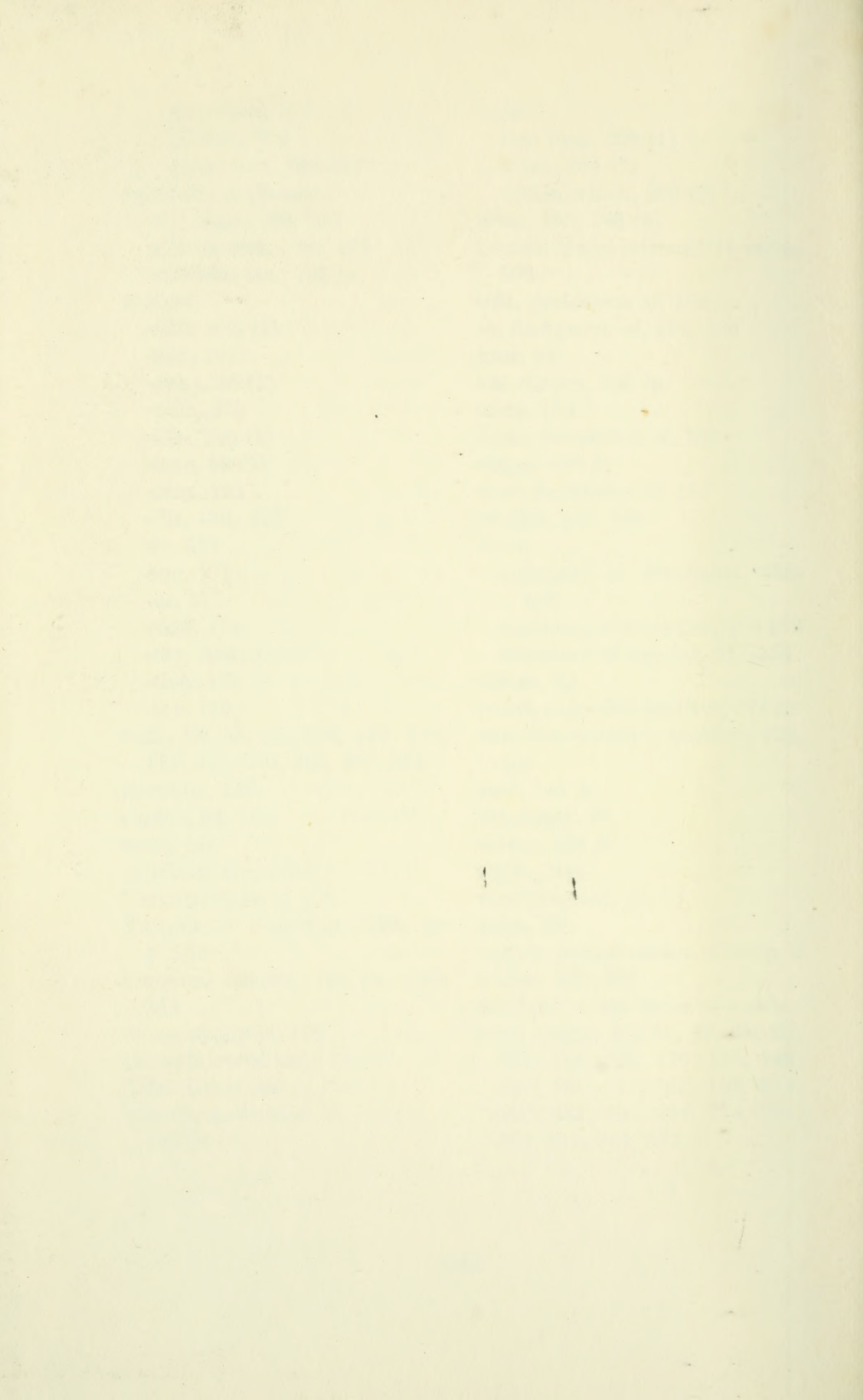
- motion to or from, with names
  - of towns, 196
- nāvis**, declension of, 152
- ne**, sign of a question, 7
- nē**
  - in wishes, 373, 382
  - with hortatory subjunctive, 366
  - with jussive subjunctive, 367
  - with optative subjunctive, 373, 382
- negative command, 129
- negō**, 336
- nēmō**, 191 *fn.*
- neuter**, 185
- nominative case
  - as subject, 11
  - predicate, 14
- nōnne**, 118
- noster**, 79, 82
- nostrī**, objective genitive, 374 *fn.*
- nostrum**, partitive genitive, 123, 383
- nūllus**, 185
- num**, 118
- numerals
  - cardinals, 187-189, 263, 434
  - compound, 263
  - mille**, **mīlia**, 266
  - ordinals, 208, 434
- object
  - direct, 20
  - indirect, 38
- omnis**, 257-258
- order of words, 21, 38, 75, 105B *fn.*, 202
- ordinal numerals, 208, 434
- participles
  - definition of, 202
  - equivalents for Latin participle, 314-315
  - future active, 321-322
  - of deponents, 355-358
  - of semi-deponents, 355-358
  - perfect passive, 202
  - present active, 311-316, 431
  - used as nouns, 314
- passive voice, 201
- pecūnia**, 41
- perfect with force of present, 324
- personal endings
  - active, 2
  - in perfect indicative active, 89
  - passive, 235
- personal pronouns, 123, 163-164, 436
- pervenīō**, 100
- place, expressions of, 33-34, 196
- plūrēs**, **plūs**, 287
- Pompey, *see* p. 159
- populus Rōmānus**, 82
- possession, 45
- possessives, 82, 164
- possum**, 146-147, 471
- postpositive, defined, 273 *fn.*
- postquam** clauses, 125 *fn.*
- predicate nominative, 14
- prefixes
  - ā**, **ab**, 121, 126, 233, 319
  - ad**, 49, 107, 121, 142
  - ante**, 134
  - circum**, 134
  - col**, **com**, **con**, 49, 107, 121, 126, 233, 319
  - dē**, 121, 126
  - ē**, **ex**, 49, 107, 121, 126, 142, 233, 319
  - in**, **im**, 134, 226, 233
  - inter**, 134
  - per**, 49
  - post**, 134
  - prō**, 142, 319

- re**, 49, 107, 142, 233, 319
- sub**, 134
- trāns**, 134
- prepositions
  - with ablative, 33-34, 131
  - with accusative, 22, 33-34, 131
- principal parts of verbs, 84-88, 347
- priusquam** clauses, 125 *fn.*
- prohibeō**, with object infinitive, 139
- pronouns
  - co-ordinating relative, 270 *fn.*
  - demonstrative, 163-164, 180, 438
  - emphatic, 304, 439
  - idem**, 305, 438
  - interrogative, 245, 246, 441
  - personal, 123, 163-164, 436
  - reflexive, 299, 437
  - relative, 271, 440
- pronunciation, *see* pp. 2-3
- purpose
  - dative of, 329, 331
  - expressed by future participle, 322
- Pyrrhus, 326
- quam**
  - with comparative, 280
  - with superlative, 295
- que**, 66
- questions
  - answers to, 7, 118
  - deliberative, 372
  - direct, 7, 118, 247
  - simple, 7, 118
  - with **-ne**, 7
  - with **nōnne** and **num**, 118
- quī**, relative pronoun, 271, 440
- quīdam**, 384
- quis**, interrogative pronoun, 245, 246, 441
- reflexive pronouns, 299, 437
- relative pronoun, 271, 440
- relinquō**, 177
- reliquus**, 186 (3-4), 258
- respect, ablative of, 256
- Review of Syntax, 409-421
- Roman boy grows up, 101
- Roman camp, 67
- Roman dress, 101, 155, 178
- Roman Empire, *see* p. 158
- Roman gods, 116, 205
- Roman house, 243
- Roman marriage, 127
- Roman months, 192
- Roman names, 127, 298 *fn.*
- Roman roads, 26
- Roman schools, 101
- Romance languages, *see* p. 1
- satis**, use of, 383
- semi-deponent verbs, 349, 355-359, 365, 371, 379-380
- simul atque** clauses, 125 *fn.*
- slaves and freedmen in ancient Rome, 353
- sōlus**, 185
- space, extent of, 264
- spērō**, 343
- stem of verb
  - perfect, 85 (2)
  - present, 3, 85 (1), 96-97
  - supine, 85 (3)
- struggle for written laws, 298
- subjunctive mood
  - in a principal clause or independent sentence, 364
    - deliberative, 372
    - hortatory, 366
    - jussive, 367
    - optative, 373, 382
- paradigms of
  - present, 365

- imperfect, 371
- perfect, 379
- pluperfect, 380-381
- subordinate clauses
  - with **dum**, 130, 315
  - with **sī**, **nisi**, **cum**, 175
  - with **ubi**, etc., 125 *fn.*
- suffixes
  - able, 226 (1)
  - ālis, 161
  - ānus, 80 (1)
  - bilis, 226
  - ible, 226 (2)
  - icus, 80 (2)
  - idus, 261
  - ilis, -īlis, 352
  - iō, 171
  - ion, 171
  - or, 377
  - sion, 171
  - tās, -tūs, 150
  - tion, 171
  - tor, 115
- sum**, 13, 88, 92, 104, 117, 146, 174, 321, 340, 365, 371, 381
- summus**, 258
- supine, 84, 199
- suus**, 164
- syllables, *see* p. 3-4
- Tarentum, *see* p. 158
- Tarquinius Superbus, 143, *see* p. 155
- temporal clauses, 125 *fn.*, 130, 315
- tenses synopsis, 176
- there, introductory, 15
- Tiber River, *see* p. 154
- Tiberis**, declension of, 152 *fn.*
- time
  - how long, 209 (1)
  - when, 209 (2)
  - within which, 209 (3)
- tōtus**, 185, 186 (5)
- transitive and intransitive verbs, 300
- trēs**, declension of, 188
- tū**, declension of, 123, 436
- tuus**, 82
- ubi** clauses, 125 *fn.*
- ūllus**, 185
- ūnus**, declension of, 188
- usque**, 234 *fn.*
- uter**, declension of, 185
- utinam**, 373, 382
- verbs
  - summary of deponents, 456-469
  - summary of irregular, 470-472
  - summary of regular, 442-455
- vester**, 82
- vestrī**, objective genitive, 374 *fn.*
- vestrum**, partitive genitive, 123, 383
- vetō**, 140 *fn.*
- Via Appia**, 26
- videor**, 236 *fn.*
- vigilia**, 210
- vocative case, 59, 73
- voice, 201
- vowels, pronunciation of, *see* p. 2
- wishes, 373, 382
- word order: *see* order of words
- word study, 23, 41, 49, 68, 80, 107, 115, 121, 126, 134, 142, 150, 161, 171, 192, 199, 212, 226, 233, 250, 261, 274, 291, 309, 319, 352, 377









CHARLES E. MERRILL PUBLISHING CO.  
A BELL & HOWELL COMPANY



BELL & HOWELL

6248